

**Bangkok to Beijing  
via Laos and Vietnam  
February – April 2007**

**Appendix\_2**

**Hong Kong to Beijing  
China in Depth**

**April 2007**

**Jim Russell**



# Contents

Contents .....	1
Introduction .....	5
China – Ethnic Minorities – Continued .....	5
Tujia.....	5
Tujia (1) .....	5
Tujia (2) .....	9
Ba Culture and History.....	11
Ba (state).....	11
The Brave and Elusive Ba .....	12
Three Gorges Archaeology: Mysteries of the Ancient Ba People	15
Mysteries About Boat of Ancient Ba People.....	20
Mysterious Tiger of Ancient Ba People .....	22
China – Religions .....	26
Taoism (Daoism) .....	26
Taoism – (1).....	26
Confucianism.....	29
Confucianism (1) .....	29
Guangzhou .....	33
Guangzhou Travel Guide.....	33
Guangzhou .....	35
Guangzhou History .....	44
Guangzhou Tourism .....	44
Guangzhou Travel .....	46
Wuhan .....	56
Wuhan .....	56
Yichang .....	66
Yichang .....	66
Yichang .....	68
Yichang – Basic Facts.....	71
Yangzi River .....	74
The Yangzi River .....	74
Yangtze River .....	76
Yangzi River - Three Gorges dam project.....	83
The Three Gorges Dam.....	83
Three Gorges Dam - The Great Wall Across the Yangtze .....	86

Three Gorges Dam Hydroelectric Power Plant, China.....	88
Three Gorges Dam .....	93
White Emperor City - Baidicheng.....	105
Baidi Cheng (White Emperor City).....	105
Baidicheng of Fengjie.....	109
Feng Jie.....	111
Fengjie .....	111
Fengjie Town Moves to Make Way for Three Gorges Project...	112
Hangzhou .....	113
Hangzhou.....	113
Hangzhou - West Lake (Xī Hú) .....	121
Hangzhou - Lingyin Si Temple .....	125
Huangshan (Yellow Mountain Area) .....	129
Huangshan Guide .....	129
Huangshan Mountains .....	143
Huang Shan .....	146
Shanghai .....	150
Shanghai.....	150
SHANGHAI – Sight Seeing.....	175
Shanghai - History .....	177
Graham Earnshaw's Shanghai .....	177
Shanghai Museum.....	179
Shanghai Museum .....	179
The Bund .....	182
Shanghai Acrobatics Troupe .....	187
History of Shanghai .....	188
Zhouzhuang.....	197
Zhouzhuang (1).....	197
Zhouzhuang (2).....	199
Suzhou .....	202
Suzhou (1) .....	202
Suzhou (2) .....	208
Suzhou Gardens.....	210
Suzhou Gardens .....	210
Garden of the Master of the Nets : .....	212
Master of the Nets Garden .....	214
The Humble Administrator's Garden (Zhuozheng Yuan): .....	216
Xi'an.....	218



Xi'an .....	218
Xi'an .....	225
Terracotta Warriors.....	232
Emperor Qin' s Terracotta Warriors .....	232
Terracotta Army.....	239
Museum of Qin Terra Cotta Warriors and Horses .....	244
Emperor Qin Shi Huang.....	257
Qin Shi Huang .....	257
Great Mosque – Xi' an.....	270
Great Mosque of Xi'an .....	270
The Great Mosque Xian.....	271
Big Wild Goose Pagoda (Dayan Ta) .....	275
Forest of Stone Steles Museum.....	278
Pingyao .....	280
Pingyao (1) .....	280
Pingyao (2) .....	285
Wang Family Grand Courtyard .....	288
Hanging Monastery at Hunyuan .....	293
Hanging Monastery (Xuankong Si) .....	293
The Hanging Monastery .....	294
Datong.....	297
Datong.....	297
Yungang Grottoes .....	299
Yungang Grottoes (1) .....	299
Yungang Grottoes (2) .....	301
Beijing .....	304
Beijing.....	304
Beijing.....	304
Beijing.....	311
Beijing – History .....	338
Beijing's History .....	338
History of Beijing.....	342
Tiananmen Square .....	346
Tiananmen Square .....	346
Tiananmen Square protests of 1989.....	350
Forbidden City .....	370
Forbidden City -Beijing .....	370
The Forbidden City .....	378

Ancient Secrets: The Forbidden City .....	383
Summer Palace .....	386
The Summer Palace.....	386
Summer Palace (1) .....	388
Summer Palace (2) .....	391
Old Summer Palace.....	405
Old Summer Palace (1).....	405
Old Summer Palace (2).....	411
Temple of Heaven .....	412
Temple of Heaven .....	412
Lamaist Monastery .....	415
Lamaist Pagoda .....	415
Great Wall (of China).....	417
Simatai Great Wall .....	447
Great Wall of China .....	449
the Great Wall .....	456
Grand Canal (of China).....	459
The Grand Canal.....	459
Grand Canal of China.....	461
Grand Canal System .....	468

# Introduction

Notes for China, Ethnic Minorities, Hong Kong, Yangshou, and Guilin are to be found in **Appendix\_1: Bangkok to Hong Kong via Laos and Vietnam – February – March 2007.**

## China – Ethnic Minorities – Continued

### Tujia

<http://library.thinkquest.org/05aug/01780/chinese-ethnic-group/tujia.htm>

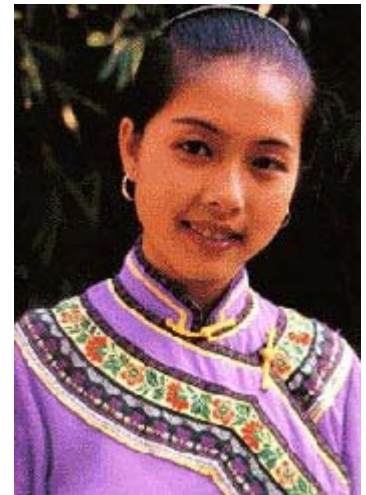
## *Tujia (1)*

#### Population and Distribution

The Tujia ethnic group, having a population of 5,704,223, mainly live in compact communities in the Tujia and Miao Autonomous Prefecture in western Hunan Province and Enshi Tujia Autonomous Prefecture in Hubei Province. There are also some scattered in Shizhu, Xiushan, Qianjiang and other counties in Sichuan Province.

#### History

The Tujia people called themselves "Bizika", which means "native dwellers".



Although their name suggests that they are natives, their exact origin is still uncertain. Some people trace their ancestry to the ancient "Ba" people while others claim they come from the Wuman, who moved to western Hunan from Guizhou Province. There are also some that believe that they came from Jiangxi Province at the end of the Tang Dynasty (618-907). The only thing we can be sure of is that the Tujia ethnic group had come into being by the early Five Dynasties period, around the year 910.

#### Language

The Tujia people have their own language which belongs to the Tibeto-Burman group of the Sino-Tibetan language family. They have no written script and the language of the Han people is in common usage. The language of the Miao ethnic group is also used.

#### Economy

The area inhabited by the Tujia people is mostly highland with an altitude ranging between 400 and 1500 meters. Blessed with a mild climate and rich waters, this area provides ideal conditions for the development of forestry, agriculture, fishery and stock rising. Tujia people grow a variety of crops including wet rice, wheat, maize, and sweet potatoes. Other profitable cash crops include sugar beets, ramie, lacquer, cotton, tea, etc. This area also abounds in various timber resources, rare medicinal herbs, minerals, aquatic products and giant salamanders.

## Art

Tujia women are good at weaving. "Xilankapu," also known as "Knitting Floral Bedclothes", is the masterpiece of the Tujia crafts. Woven on a simple wooden machine, this kind of brocade, thick and durable, simple but gorgeous, is reputed to be one of the three most famous brocades in Southwestern-China. According to the custom of Tujia nationality, the Tujia girls will start learning knitting with colorful threads when at the age of eleven or twelve. Young ladies should have their own "Xilankapu" as dowries at the time of marriage.

## Diet

The Tujia people normally have four meals per day during the busy season and two during the idle seasons. Their staple foods include rice and corn. Bacon, glutinous rice cake and rice ball are their favorite food. In the past, the sweet potato was taken as the main food but today it is only used as the preserved food for the winter. The Tujia people like to eat chili, peppers and spice. They also like drinking and the wine they use is mostly home-produced.

## Residence

The Tujia people have usually built their villages at the foot of a mountain or on the lower slopes near a water source. The members in a village belong to the same clan and their village is named after the surname of the clan.

Square in shape, the Houses of Tujia people are made of wood or a combination of wood, stone, and brick. Houses are usually two stories, using the ground floor for storage of supplies and livestock and the second floor as family living quarters. The central room on the second floor is where ancestors are enshrined and worshipped. This is also the place for family activities and entertaining guests. The bedrooms are often on the left of the central room while the kitchen is on the right.

## Fashion

The Tujia costumes are made of cloth they weave with their own hands. They like the colors black and blue the best, using bright colorful embroidery on the hems and scarves.

Traditionally, Tujia women like to wear loose jackets and long skirts. Their jackets are always buttoned down on the left side being trimmed with lace and having short, broad sleeves. They often coil their hair up and wear a cap or wrap it within a cloth. They often wear various ornaments such as necklaces, earrings, and wrist and ankle bracelets.

Tujia men wear short jackets with many buttons in front and wind red or white cloths about their heads. The traditional hand-woven "xitong" cloth with intricate designs is the main material used for clothing.

## Religion

The Tujia people have various beliefs which include shamanism, Taoism, ancestral worship, and earlier beliefs involving ghosts and evil spirits.

Besides which the Tujia people also have their unique White Tiger Worship. The white tiger occupies an important status in the mind of Tujia people and the Tujia people call themselves "offspring of White Tiger". As the story goes, in remote antiquity, Bawuxiang, the forefather of the Tujia ethnic group was chosen as the headman of the Wuxing tribe, popularly known as the "Granary Monarch". The Granary Monarch led his men to Yanyang by water and killed the cruel goddess of the Yanshui River. Then they settled down and the Granary Monarch gained the respect and esteem of his people. Later, the Granary Monarch died and his soul turned into a white tiger and was raised to the skies. From then on Tujia people deified the white tiger and piously worship it every now and then. Nowadays a statue of a white tiger can be found in the main hall of each family.

## Social Life

The Tujia people are good at singing and dancing, and they use song and dance to tell epic sagas and creation myths, expressing love and grief.

The Tujia have a popular dance named Baishou dance (Hand dance). It is a traditional mass collective performance of the Tujia people. It has a history of over 500 years and was originally a dance of triumph. This dance, now with its seventy ritual gestures that represent war, hunting, farming and other aspects of life, is popular at the New Year's festival, the Lunar New Year and other festive occasions.

Another popular dance is the "Maogusi" dance. "Maogusi" means grandpa in Chinese. It is an old dance for commemorating the exploits of ancestors. The dance often needs 15-16 participators, of which the head is an elder called "Babu Father" and the others being juniors. When they perform this dance, the body of the members, including their faces, will be packaged with straw, couch grass and leaves. There are five plaits made of palm leaves on their head with four of the plaits bent down slightly and hanging from four sides.

"Maogusi" dance is unique in its forms and contents. Local dialects will be used through the performance and the appearances of the actors are funny and humorous. They advance and retreat in quick short steps, or go down on their knees and shake their bodies, or jump and swing from right to left, quivering all over. They shake their heads and shrug and the couch grass rustles. This is in imitation of the straightforward manners of the ancient people.

The "Maogusi" dance often lasts six nights. It is an integration of singing, dancing and drama, and it is a native drama for deity. This form is seldom seen in other nationalities and is called the "Living Fossil" of the ancient culture.

## Festivals

The "Diaonian Meeting," "Zhongwu Holiday" and "Guozu Festival" are the three most important holidays the Tujia people celebrate in a year.

Diaonian Festival, also named Gannian Festival, is the Spring Festival of the Tujia people. It comes one day earlier than the New Year's Eve of the Han people and is the most ceremonious festival of the Tujia people. During this festival the Tujia people will carry out many activities celebrating the festival. These activities will last several days, perhaps even more than ten days.

## Tujia (2)

### Population and Distribution:

With a population of approximately 8 million people, the Tujia are an ethnic minority found in the provinces of Hunan, Hubei, Sichuan, and Guizhou. The Tujia have a long history, dating back 2,000 years, when their ancestors first immigrated to the western parts of Hunan and Hubei.

### Language and Religion:

Their language is very similar to the language used in Tibet and Burma. Because it has no written form, many Tujia people use Chinese. The Tujia believe in the power of ancestors and gods, and hold sacrificial ceremonies during festivals. White tigers are highly revered and are thought to prevent evil.



### Economy:

The Tujia live mainly on agriculture and fish. Industrial crops, such as tung oil and tea are the main economic drivers in the area. Tourism is also popular, driven by scenic spots such as [Zhangjiajie](#), Mt Wuling and [Mt. Wudang](#), which have attracted tens of thousands of people. The natural abundance of the area and its great scenery are indeed a source of pride for the Tujia.

### Food

Not surprisingly, the main staples of the Tujia are rice and corn. Wine, brewed out of glutinous rice and pickled vegetables are common culinary items. During the busy harvest, an additional breakfast is included to indicate the auspiciousness of the occasion.

### Culture:

The cultures of the Tujia include the [Nuo drama](#). Derived from a god-worshipping ceremony, it combines drama, poetry, music and dance into a complicated art and is famed as a living fossil. As such, Tujia culture has caught the eye of experts from home to abroad.

### Crafts and Clothes:

Traditional cloth, woven by the Tujia women includes bedspread known as Xilangkapu. They make it colorful



with over one hundred patterns. People wear short coat with loose sleeves and flowery chiffons, and men's are also short. Only during grand festivals, will they wear traditional clothes and Tujia clothing for daily life is similar to that of the Han.

#### House:

The houses of the Tujia, known as [Diaojiaolou](#) are very functional and similar to those of the [Miao](#). On the lower floor, there is livestock; while the girls' bedrooms are kept upstairs. This design focuses on the use of small rooms but is also well ventilated, damp-proof and clean.

#### Festivals:

The grandest festival is the Tujia Year which is called 'Gannian' or 'Diaonian Meeting', and celebrated one day before the lunar New Year of the Han people. On that day, people prepare for sumptuous dinners and dance together. They also celebrate the Dragon Boat Festival, Sheri (on the second day of the second lunar month) and so on.



## Ba Culture and History

[http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ba\\_\(state\)](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ba_(state))

# ***Ba (state)***

From Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia

**Ba** (巴) was an ancient state in eastern [Sichuan](#), [China](#). Its original capital was Zhi ([Fuling](#)), [Chongqing](#). Ba was conquered by [Qin](#) in [316 BCE](#).

Ba, often described as a loose [confederation](#) or a collection of [chiefdoms](#), consisted of several loosely-affiliated independent clans who recognised a king. The Ba clans were highly diverse, being composed of multiple ethnicities. Archaeological evidence shows that the Ba people relied primarily on fishing and hunting, with low levels of agriculture (no evidence of [irrigation](#)).

Ba may have aided the founders of the [Zhou Dynasty](#) in its overthrow of the [Shang Dynasty](#) at the [Battle of Muye](#); however, Ba's first definitive appearance in recorded history occurred in [703 BCE](#); the [Zuo Zhuan](#) recorded that Ba took part in a joint military operation with Chu against Deng.

Ba territory originally included areas in the [Han River valley](#); the ascendance of [Chu](#) pushed Ba westwards and further into the [Sichuan basin](#). Chu expansion forced Ba to move its capital several times. According to [Chang Qu](#), capitals or administrative centers of Ba included Jiangzhou (Chongqing), Dianjiang ([Hechuan](#)), and Pingdu ([Fengdu](#)), with its final capital at Langzhong (閬中). During the [Warring States Period](#), Qin, Chu and [Shu](#), all more powerful states, shared a common border with Ba.

Although Chu sometimes encroached on Ba territory, Ba shared a complex relationship with Chu, with strong trade and marriage ties. Chu also employed many Ba mercenaries as soldiers in its own army. This practice sometimes caused problems for Chu; in one instance, Ba mercenaries employed by Chu rebelled and sieged the Chu capital in 676 or 675 BCE.

Ba and Zu allied with Qin in Qin's invasion of Shu. After the successful invasion, Qin immediately conquered its two allies and captured the last Ba king. Ba was then converted into a Qin commandery. Unlike its management of Shu, Qin allowed the Ba elite to retain direct rule and did not force large -scale migrations of Qin people into Ba territory. The Ba elite would later be marginalized through a policy of [divide and rule](#).

## Ba culture

The [tiger](#) was an important part of Ba mythology, with the white tiger being held in highest esteem. Artifacts from Ba archaeological sites often employ tiger motifs. Other distinctive features of Ba culture include its distinctive curved blades, boat-shaped coffin burials and Ba-style bronze drums (*chunyu* 钟于), which were used to communicate in battle.

Warfare played an important role in Ba society. The Ba people were famous for their war songs and dances. Their warriors were often employed as mercenaries by other states, and weapons were prevalent in Ba grave goods.

Ba and Shu developed their own writing systems, found on bronzeware. There are three scripts. One [pictographic](#) script was unique to Ba, and two (possibly [phonetic](#)) scripts were found at Ba and Shu sites. All three scripts remain [undecipherable](#) today.

## References

- Sage, Steven F., *Ancient Sichuan and the Unification of China*, [ISBN 0-7914-1038-2](#)
- Kleeman, Terry F., *Great Perfection: Religion and Ethnicity in a Chinese Millennial Kingdom*, [ISBN 0-8248-1800-8](#)

Retrieved from "[http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ba\\_%28state%29](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ba_%28state%29)"

<http://www.china.org.cn/english/2003/Jun/66716.htm>

## *The Brave and Elusive Ba*



The Ba people lived in the Three Gorges' area from the sixteenth century (BC). They grew rice paddy and wheat on the banks of the Yangtze and made their own history in bloody fighting between the clans.

According to history, the Ba was a mysterious clan, famous for their bravery and great warriors. The Ba culture has remained an enigma, mainly due to a lack of related archaeology evidence. The Ba also left no written evidence.

The Three Gorges Project, the largest hydroelectric project undertaken in the world, began in 1996. This created a huge archaeology excavation that began in 2001. Before that, small-scale excavations, that began in the middle of the twentieth century, only found clues to the history of the Ba. But today, large-scale excavations in the area bring hope of resolving this great mystery.

Many found relics have revitalized the ancient Ba culture. Huge skeletons and funerary bronze ware give evidence of bloody wars they engaged in long ago.

In September 2001, archaeologists from Sichuan University were busy at the excavation site on the banks of the Pengxi River, a branch of the Yangtze. This is a huge Ba site, which had already been excavated for years. But there were still many mysteries buried in the mud.

On a summer morning in 1984, Liu of Lijiaba, a primary school teacher found a Ba bronze ware relic by accident, in a depression by the river, when he want to fetch water. This little discovery was an archaeological breakthrough of the history of Three Gorges area.

The archaeologists at Sichuan University went to the Pengxi River and a full-scale excavation began. The area they excavated expanded and the excavation lasted a long time. A mysterious world appeared beneath their feet. This was to be the Lijiaba site, later listed in the top ten archaeological discoveries of China.

Most relics excavated here are bronze ware, including swords, lances, daggers and arrowheads. They seem more like newly-finished artworks than relics rusted over time. But there are hints of blood and war in the find.

The Lijiaba site stimulated archaeologists. As they grew excited at the new discoveries, they found a 5,550-square-meter warrior grave in the Yujiaba, a place of Kaixian County in the upper part of the Pengxi River. Surprised at the large scale and splendid spectacle, archaeologists named it "The Warriors of the Warring States Period (475 BC □ 221 BC)". These graves buried a period of little known history. What wars happened here? When did the warriors die? There's not a single word recorded in the history books. The weapons found there varied. All they show are the earth shattering fights that would have happened there.

Perhaps, the Ba is the only nationality which wrote their history through war. The Ba history is simply a fighting history -- abundant bronze ware was found in the excavation of Ba sites from the 1950s. Most of the bronze ware were weapons and other things related to war.

Ba's historical situation was that to the east lay the kingdom of Chu, and to the north, the kingdom of Qin. Chu and Qin were the two strongest kingdoms in the world at that time. So how did the weaker Ba contend with them? According to history, there were battles between them, and once even the Ba kingdom intimidated Jiangling, the capital of Chu. It seems some answers come from the Ba's weapons. Centuries ago, the brave and seasoned Ba people had great destructive weapons. In the age of cold steel, weapons' quality directly decided the result of the battle.

Dong Yawei, who engaged in copying ancient bronze ware for years, shows the procedures of making a bronze sword in the Ezhou Museum of Hubei Province. All this brings you back to the Bronze Age of 2,000 years ago. At that time the Ba people had already had the exquisite skill of smelting and forging, which was not inferior to the Chu, Qin and other strong kingdoms and had much greater varieties and more exquisite patterns.

The Ba people, who lived more than 2,000 years ago, owned a systematic manufacturing procedure and had very accurate component proportions. The proportions of metal in all bronze ware was almost the same as that made by modern equipment. The bronze content enabled the heavy weight to retain stiffness and energy. In the Spring and Autumn Period (770 BC □ 476 BC) and the Warring States Period, generations of craftsmen from the Ba kingdom made weapons only according to their own experiences. They did not have any reference or examining equipment -- all the manufacturing procedures and metal proportions were handmade.

From the Qin terracotta warriors and horses, we can imagine the might of the Qin kingdom, and that which was equal to it, the Chu kingdom occupied half of China. Besides the superior weapons and solid national power, the Qin and Chu kingdoms had the skill of being excellent makers of armory.

Nowadays, from Ba weapons excavated, it seems they had power equal to that of the Qin and the Chu. But archaeologists never found any armor. Without doubt, the brave Ba people couldn't simply antagonize their enemies with just their bodies. So in years of war, how did they protect themselves?

The Qin and Chu were based on the plains, whereas the Ba were in the mountainous region. The special landform determined that the Ba had little metal. So they had to abandon metal armor for other material. The ancient Ba area had developed raising animal stock. Also many wild Lianas or strong vines grew in the hills. The Ba people parched the vines with fire to make them firm, then, weaved them as armor. The Ba people adapted this light armor with vines and leather, which allowed them to move with agility in the hills and valleys. The shields of the Ba were made of adsorbent and flexible wood so that when the swords of their enemies chopped at it, it was hard to draw out. The results were imaginable.

What disappeared with the vine armory were the brave Ba people themselves. The kingdom disappeared long ago, and when archaeologists nowadays face the huge skeletons and bronze weapons, which tampered with the souls of the Ba people, they feel the story of the Ba people is just beginning.

In the 21st century, people of Tujia ethnic group, who live in many areas of south China, are considered descendants of the Ba people. The Tujia, who are honest with fierce tempers, narrate their lives only through song and dance. From these, which fill the air with stories of war and fighting, the mysterious connection with an ancient time can be felt.

Because of their pugnacious character, the Ba people's songs and dances of battle have been handed down to today. Until the Han Dynasty (206 BC □ 220 AD) the "Ba Yu dance" was still popular at the royal court. To the Ba people the meaning of the songs and dances were special -- it's their brave temper. According to specialists, the "baishou wu" (hand-waving dance) evolved from the Ba's dance, but it has changed to be used for festivity and sacrifice only now.

The actions of the Tujia dance show communal cooperation and reflect collective consciousness. The key point of the Ba people's bravery was its collective consciousness and unique way of pouring out fear in face of death, which was displayed in battle: a power beyond normal. In the 1800s, on the other side of the world, the Zulu people, original inhabitants of Africa, defeated England troops who were equipped with modern firearms and claimed to be No. 1 in the world, using only primitive weapons and the powers of collective consciousness, a useful annotation of the kind that was the Ba people's bravery.

In 1999, some remains of the Ba people were sent to Professor Zhuang Kongshao's laboratory in the Central University for Nationalities. Professor Zhuang's study lasted for two years until 2001, when he had found similar gene compositions. Then genes collected from the Tujia people were sent to prove the blood relationship with the Ba people. But because such a long time had passed, the scientific experiments couldn't get the appropriate result. Professor Zhuang and his assistants are still working and hopeful of a discovery.

The ancient history books of other kingdoms gave us not such a detailed but still coherent history sequence of the Ba kingdom. War has been the only culture of the Ba people from the Spring and Autumn Period to the founding of the Qin Dynasty (221 BC □ 206 BC).

To every man in the Ba kingdom, bloody fights and honorable death permeated his whole life. They drove out the shadow of death and prolonged the honor of their ancestors through romantic songs and dances and a tenacious reproductive capacity.

(CCTV.com translated by Chen Lin for China.org.cn, June 11, 2003)

<http://www.china.org.cn/english/2003/Aug/72396.htm>

## ***Three Gorges Archaeology: Mysteries of the Ancient Ba People***

The Ba people, an ethnic group living in eastern Sichuan and western Hubei provinces in ancient China, were well known for their boldness and gallantry. Records about them can be found in historical documents from the Shang (c.1600– c.1100 BC) and Zhou (c. 1100– 771 BC) dynasties. For a time, the Ba Kingdom was even more powerful than the Zhou who conquered the Central Plains, but it suddenly declined during the Warring States Period (475-221 BC) and was eradicated in 316 by the Qin State.

In more than 2,000 years, the Ba people made significant contributions to the development of the vast area from the Daba, Wushan, Wuling mountains to the Qingjiang, Yuanshui, Lishui, Wujiang and Jialingjiang rivers. Its sudden disappearance in the long river of time left later generations numerous mysteries: How did the Ba people come into being? Where on earth are the mausoleums of the Ba kings?

Were the Ba people aboriginals of the Three Gorges or immigrants from other places? Where are the Ba people's descendants?

The ongoing Three Gorges Project provides a rare chance, or maybe the last chance, for us to solve these riddles.

#### Tomb Group of the Ba Aristocrats

It is hard to believe that Xiaotianxi Village in Fuling, Chongqing, was the final rest place of the ancient Ba aristocrats of about 2,000 years ago.

In this small village built on a mound near the Wujiang River, with dozens of households, however, a large amount of bronzes and jade wares typical of Ba culture were unearthed. The findings are unparalleled in the Three Gorges Reservoir area, either in quality, diversity or amount.

According to Fang Gang, an archeologist with the Chongqing Cultural Relics Institute who was working at the site, the Xiaotianxi Village Ruins were found by accident in 1972. The village became famous overnight because of the bronzes found here. It was the first time that such abundant bronzes of the Ba people were found in the Three Gorges area. It coincided with the depiction in *Records of the States South of Mt. Hua*: "Most of the mausoleums of its (Ba's) former kings were in Zhi." Zhi refers to Fuling.

Between 1972 and 1993, four salvage excavations were conducted on the Xiaotianxi Ruins and cultural relics from nine of the tombs were collected and studied. In 1994, the Sino-Japanese Archaeological Physical Exploration Experimental Research Team employed the CT technology in exploring underground relics and received abnormal signals, so they guessed they might have found the mausoleums of the Ba kings. Meanwhile, numerous bronzes were unearthed. The most important of those, a set of 14-piece chime bells, is now preserved in the Fuling Museum.

Fang said that the current excavation has cleaned up 11 shaft tombs, ranging from the early Warring States Period to the early Eastern Han Dynasty (25-220). From these tombs, large quantity of bronze and jade articles were dug out. There were also two skeletons, including a complete one, and two Chu-style jade swords which were found for the first time in Ba tombs. From Tomb No. 12, archeologists unearthed the most diversified high-class bronzes. On the surfaces of kettles and vessels, handicraft with inlaid silver filigree was witnessed; while on *chunyu* (a kind of ancient bronze musical instrument), dagger-axes, bells, Ba-style swords and spears, archaeologists found patterns such as hair bun, hand palm, clouds, tiger, boat and fish.

In a small tomb measuring no more than four meters long and two meters wide, a strange bird-shaped vessel was found one meter underneath the ground. The vessel has duck-web feet, cock's nib and bird's wings. Though many feathers have fallen off, the excellent workmanship stands out clearly. The



remaining feathers show traces of finely polished nail-sized turquoises which were stuck on the bird's body.

Were these mausoleums belonging to the former Ba kings?

Though among the findings from these tombs are *chunyu* and *zheng*, two musical instruments used by ancient rulers to call on their troops, and other high-class belongings, such as chime bells and jade swords, they were not items exclusively possessed by Ba kings. What's more, the bird-shaped vessel in some way features the Central Plains culture. All the tombs are not in a very large scale, and most of them are of the middle and late Warring States Period. From these facts, Sun Hua, professor from the School of Archaeology and Museology of Peking University, concluded that the tombs should have belonged to the aristocrats who remained on the land after the Ba Kingdom was conquered by the Qin State, who later united China.

Then, where are the true mausoleums of the ancient Ba kings?

## **Lijiaba Ruins, Tombs of Common Ba People**

Unlike the Xiaotianxi Ruins, which are thought to be occupied by the ancient Ba aristocrats, the Lijiaba Ruins in Yunyang, where a total of 30,000 square meters of land have been unearthed, seem to be tombs of common Ba people.

Bai Bin and Huang Wei, both associate professors with the Archaeology Department of Sichuan University, said that Lijiaba might have been a community center of the Ba people because they found not only tombs but also houses of the ancient tribe, though there is no such record in any historical book. The ruins dated from the Shang Dynasty to the Han Dynasty (206 BC-220 AD). The discovery provides unique reference to the studies on the Ba people.

Also, for the first time in history, archaeologists found human sacrifices in Ba tombs, which verified the record that after Lin Jun died, his soul turned into a white tiger. The later generations of the Ba people watered it with human blood and offered human bodies as sacrifices.

According to Huang Wei, spears and dagger-axes were usually placed at the head of tomb occupants; while tomahawks and swords were put at their waist side. At the feet position of these tombs, they found potteries and human skeleton, which, obviously, are signs of the use of human sacrifices during that period. Men used as sacrifices were usually of a different race or war prisoners.

In addition to human sacrifices, there were also accompanying buries. Among the latter, some of the dead were buried outside the master coffin, while others had coffins and tombs of their own. Since no

trace of struggle was found, these people should have been killed before they were buried. They were probably relatives or clan members of each tomb occupant.

Huang said that both human sacrifice and accompanying burials show the influence of cannibalism, which had been abolished in the Central Plains during the Warring States Period.

Were the Ba People Aboriginals of the Three Gorges?

Through years of salvaging excavation, great progress has been made in archaeological research of the Ba people, but it is still not decided whether the Ba people were natives of the Three Gorges or immigrated from other places.

## **Historical materials show that the Ba people originated from Hubei.**

According to *History of Eastern Han*, Wuxiang, chieftain of the Ba tribe, "was born in the Wuluo Zhongli Mountains (near Changyang, Hubei Province)." He became the leader of the Ba people because of his bravery and wisdom. He was the legendary "Linjun". In 1989, about 10,000 Ba relics, including tortoise and oracle bones, were unearthed in an area of 400 square meters in Xianglushi, not far from the Wuluo Zhongli Mountains.

Another saying holds that the Ba people came from Yunmeng area of the Jiangnan Plain. Ren Naiqiang, a famous archaeologist and Tibetologist, wrote in his book *Huayang Guozhi Jiaobu Tuzhu [Records of the States South of Mt. Hua Collated, Supplemented with Illustrations and Annotations]*: "The capital (of the Ba) is Baqiu, which is located north of today's Yueyang, Hunan Province."

However, archaeological findings in recent years could not rule out the possibility that the Ba people were original inhabitants of the Three Gorges area. According to Wang Fengzhu, deputy director of Three Gorges Office of Hubei Provincial Cultural Relics Bureau, some kettles and round-bottom pots have been dug out in dozens of Xia and Shang ruins in the Xiling Gorge (one of the Three Gorges), and they are from the same time and of the same size with that unearthed in Xianglushi. Most of them feature local Ba flavors. If these ruins are proved to belong to the Ba people, archaeologists can conclude that they were aboriginals living in the area between the Qingjiang River and the Three Gorges.

Deng Hui, deputy director of the Wuhan Cultural Relics Research Institute, believes that the small area of Xianglushi might have been the center of the Ba community, but their activities should have extended to a wider area. Deng said the legendary story about the war between Linjun and the Goddess of Salt probably reflects the transition of the Ba society from matrilineal to patriarchal.

## **Ba Symbols: Hard to Decipher**



Did the Ba people have their own written language?

On the weapons and bronzes unearthed in Xiaotianxi, the most frequently spotted design was tiger, proving the Ba people's worship for tiger. There were also designs of combined patterns. For instance, on top of a *chunyu*, six combinations were found around a tiger-shaped button. Of these, some look like boats, dotted with several branches; some resemble hand palm and snake head; some seem to be a fish jumping out of water; while others are patterns hard to define. Archaeologists call them "Ba and Shu graphics," but haven't decided yet whether they are characters or symbols for the memory.

What's more, eight square-shaped characters have been found on a bronze dagger-axe excavated from Lijiaba, but not yet deciphered. Huang Wei, associate professor with the Archaeology Department of Sichuan University, assumed that the Ba people might have had a set of characters of their own but did not pass them down.

Pointing to a newly unearthed one-ear bronze helmet with round bottom, Huang said this typical Ba item was actually dug out from a Chu tomb. At the same time, a large number of Chu utensils were also found in Ba tombs. It shows that the Ba and Chu cultures co-existed and merged with each other at that time.

## **Reason of Declination: Lack of a Powerful Army**

The Ba people were known for their gallantry. This can be seen from the unearthed daggers, which were often used in short-distance fighting. However, the Ba Kingdom declined sharply after a short period of prosperity. What's the reason?

Deng Hui, deputy director of the Wuhan Cultural Relics Research Institute, believes that the Ba Kingdom was not a state in real sense, but rather an early form of state. It seemed to be a state in geographical location, but didn't possess complete state agencies and political entity. Therefore, the Ba people could win only partial victories. Without a powerful army, it was unable to contend with the Chu and Qin, which boasted great military forces. Consequently, the kingdom ended with declination. However, the Ba people later became pioneers and valiant soldiers fighting for the Qin and Han dynasties.

As to the tombs of the Ba people in the Spring and Autumn Period and Warring States Period, Huang said that the Lijiaba Ruins were obviously a public cemetery for a Ba clan. Generally speaking, the tomb occupants varied little in status. Huang then concludes that the Ba people did not have a strict hierarchy system. Of the many ethnic groups in that area, the Ba people took the lead in forming a kingdom. But at the same time, it showed the weakness in the culture.

Though the Ba Kingdom was later conquered by the Qin, its culture did not disappear immediately but continued through to the Han Dynasty. That is why Ba-style round-bottom pots were found in later Han tombs.

An interesting phenomenon is that no Qin tombs has ever been found in the Ba area. According to Huang, this is closely related to the special ruling strategy of the Qin featuring the centralization of state power. As the Ba people were extremely bold and their characters and culture differed greatly from that of Qin, the Qin rulers used Ba personnel to rule the Ba people. This gave a chance to the Ba culture for further development and expanding to the Central Plains. Emperor Gaozu, or Liu Bang, founder of the Han Dynasty, carried on this policy in his reign. By the time of Emperor Wu, all branches of Chinese civilization have joined to form a great torrent, with the Ba, Shu and Chu cultures becoming part of the mainstream.

As we tried to sew together these patches of ancient civilization, we are actually examining our present and future. While some former mysteries disappear along with the construction of the Three Gorges project, new attractions will appear for human beings to continue their journey of discovery.

(*Beijing Youth Daily* translated by Li Jinhui for China.org.cn, August 14, 2003)

<http://www.china.org.cn/english/culture/65826.htm>

## ***Mysteries About Boat of Ancient Ba People***



In a book entitled *Mysterious 30 Degrees North Latitude*, the author has made a mystery of this special area by depicting a series of dangerous and supernatural phenomena such as the disappearance of planes and ships in Bermuda and the magical curses from Pharaoh in the Pyramids. These occurrences happened at 30 degrees north latitude, turning this area into a black hole in human knowledge.

Thirty degrees north latitude crosses the Wuling Mountains of China, which span several provinces and autonomous regions and are the habitat to many people from the Tujia ethnic group. The area, with dense forest and roaring water, is believed to be the last home of the ancient Ba people. It is evident that the present Tujia people still share many customs from their Ba ancestors.

Tao Yuanming, a famous poet of the Jin Dynasty (265-420), wrote an article entitled, “ Peach Blossom Shangri-la” about a group of extraordinary people who lived in spectacular mountains and rivers.

Tao would be surprised to know the area he once described still remains as mystical as if he lived there today. The people he represented had long since disappeared by the time he wrote about them.

In 221 BC, General Sima Cuo of the Qin State led his army to conquer the Shu State in western Sichuan Province. He advanced his troops onward to Jianmenguan, attempting to take the Ba State in the middle reaches of the Yangtze River. Several months later, the Ba State came to an end under the converging attack of Qin and Chu.

Many folk customs of the Tujia people in the Wuling mountainous area are rarely known by people. “Climbing the tree ladder with knife” is one of them. Even though performers of the act themselves can’t tell how the activity originated, they regard it as a form of entertainment today, and believe the ceremony’s significance is of interest to anthropology.

On an unearthed artifact of significance from the Ba people, graphics have been found. Most of them hard to decipher. The item found is an ancient form of a bronze musical instrument.

The boat is often found on these unearthed articles, with different boats possessing different meanings. For example, a graphic in the shape of the Chinese character “*zhong*” (meaning middle) in a boat’s stem may mean “sacrifice”, which might be a combination of sacrifices and sacred trees. While the symbol “+” is generally considered to represent the sun.

The sacred tree was an intermediate between human and celestials or gods. Historical documents show that the ancient Ba people offered sacrifices to both gods and spirits. For them, sacrificial activities had the same importance as war. And they believed burning sacred articles would narrow the distance between themselves and heaven.

A sacred tree excavated from the Sanxingdui Ruins and belonging to an ancient Shu State contains similar graphics to that from the Ba people. Both show a thick tree trunk, and on top, a flower design. A bird stands on the tree and the branches are stooped. According to historical records, Ba and Shu cultures had completely blended by the time of the last Shu king. In this sense, can we believe the “sacred tree” was the origin of the “knife tree” activity of today?

Ancient Egyptians thought that, “the soul of the departed could avoid ghosts if it stepped onto the big sun boat, thereby finally reaching paradise.” However, ancient Ba people endowed greater meaning to the boat’s significance.

In the 1950s, archaeologists found dozens of boat-shaped coffins in both Dongsunba of Baxian County and Baolunsi of Zhaohua in Chongqing. Wang Jiayou, who participated in the excavation, can still vividly remember the scene,

“ When the boat coffins were unearthed, all the bones had disintegrated, except for the teeth. However, the burial articles enabled us to imagine the lives of the ancient Ba people. Weapons, wooden combs, pottery, remains of various fruit and dozens of lacquerware and wooden plates, all seemed to be displayed in the order of a common house.”

The ancient Ba people made boat coffins in the way they built canoes. The boat coffins were to be their home after death. They were a typical riverside people that lived with water and died in their boats. These boats therefore were to compose an important part of the history of the ancient Ba people.

Dragon boats are a symbol between the past and present and originate from the ancient ceremonies of searching for a lost soul. Today the dragon boat race can be seen everywhere in the Three Gorges area.

The designs on unearthed Ba and Shu bronze ware show large-scale boat troops of the ancient Ba people. They used ships to carry many soldiers rather than the former canoe made from one log. Today, on the Daning River, a tributary of the Yangtze River, we can still see canoes which look similar to boat coffins or are like the “ sacred boat” graphics unearthed. The canoe owners live on their boats rather than farming. On cliffs on both sides of the river, many hanging coffins and boat coffins can be found. We know that the canoe owners are guarding the souls of their ancestors there.

History has recorded: “ In the 7th year of Emperor Zhou He, Sima Cuo led 100,000 people of Ba and Shu states on 10,000 ships, taking with them 6 million *hu* s of rice (*hu* is an ancient dry measure), crossing the river to attack the Chu. They took Shangyu and renamed it Qianzhong Prefecture.”

By then, the Ba State had turned to Ba Prefecture of the Qin Dynasty. Depending on its strong boat troop and rich resources, Ba and Shu helped Qin conquer its greatest enemy: the Chu State. The Ba culture gradually disappeared in history.

A team of the ancient Ba people, on their magic canoes, entered the Wuling Mountains and brought the spirit of their ancestors there. They left, to later generations, many endless mysteries about themselves.

(CCTV.com translated by Li Jinhui for China.org.cn, May 30, 2003)

<http://www.china.org.cn/english/2003/Jun/67630.htm>

## ***Mysterious Tiger of Ancient Ba People***

In ancient China, the White Tiger is a collection of seven stars in the western group of 28 Constellations (while the eastern, northern and southern seven-star groups are respectively called Gray Dragon, Black Turtle and Red Phoenix). The White Tiger is said to oversee the weapons and wars of mankind, and is known as a god of fighting and killing. During the wars of the Western Zhou (c.1100 BC □ c. 771 BC) and

Shang Dynasty (c.1600 BC □ c. 1100 BC), a brave and resourceful army got high praise from King Wu of Zhou, thereby claiming the name of "huben" and "hushi", both meaning "brave warriors." These were warriors of the ancient Ba people. The tiger later became an important component of central Han culture.



The *History of the Eastern Han* depicts the totems and origins of the Ba people and their first king Lin Jun. Many historians regard it as an important source for solving Ba mysteries. The book says, "After Lin Jun died, his soul turned into a white tiger. The later Ba generations watered it with human blood and offered human bodies as sacrifices for it." This gives written evidence that the ancient Ba people took the white tiger as their totem and thought it to be their ancestors.

Archaeological discoveries in the Three Gorges area in 1998 provided further evidence that the ancient Ba people sacrificed men for the tiger. In a Ba-style tomb, archaeologists found two human skulls at the foot of the remains of a Ba warrior, besides common burial articles such as bronze weapons. Obviously, the skulls were sacrifices. In another tomb, the dead had been cut into several sections to be used for sacrifice. These accidental or inevitable occurrences gave people thousands of years later the possibility to decipher its ancient mysteries.

The book doesn't give a detailed conclusion about the death of Lin Jun, the Ba's first king, but you can still imagine the scene then: the Ba people mastered the skills of fishing and hunting and military conflict and conquest were frequent among the tribes. As a military leader who set up the Ba State, Lin Jun could only be thought of to have died in battle. The later Ba people respected him as their god -- the white tiger.

In the minds of the ancient Ba people, the white tiger was the same as their ancestors and that's why the custom of offering sacrificial humans to the tiger was handed down.



Qingjiang River, called Yishui in the past, originates from Enshi County of Hubei Province and flows through such places as Lichuan, Badong, Digui and Jianshi. Most of these areas hosted the Ba culture throughout history. Today we can still find the Tujia ethnic group there, who are thought to be the direct descendants of the Ba. It is completely appropriate if we compare the present Tujia area as a frozen space in historic time. The primitive scenes of the Ba culture

are preserved well and handed down. For example, today's Tujia people still imitate the jumping, fishtailing and face washing actions of a tiger when offering sacrifices to the dead. Meanwhile, they sing songs about tigers and the tiger also appears in different images on the front gate of the *diaojiolou* (houses seated on wooden columns) of the Tujia ethnic group. Human were still sacrificed to the tiger until the 1930s, but today the Tujia people only have their forehead cut in a gesture of sacrifice to the white tiger.

The Tujia people living along the Qingjiang River in today's Changyang County, Hubei Province, still offer sacrifice in their boats. The deity they worship is the Wuluo Zhongli Mountain nearby, where they believe their ancestor Lin Jun was born. Many activities today are symbolic rather than being heavy and magical in remote antiquity. History has recorded the religion, belief and customs of ancient ethnic groups.

*Shiben (Origin of the World)*, compiled by the Qin and Han people and after which Sima Qian of the Western Han Dynasty (206 BC-25 AD) wrote his *Historical Records*, said that there were two caves in the Wuluo Zhongli Mountain, one was red, the other black. The first king of the Ba State Lin Jun was born in the red cave. The Ba people were composed of five family groups with different surnames. Lin Jun, due to his accuracy in throwing swords and leading positions in boat-racing, became the leader of the five groups. Now the red cave and the temple to worship Lin Jun can still be found. Standing on the Wuluo Zhongli Mountain and looking far into the dark blue Qingjiang River, one can be lost in history.

To the east of Wuluo Zhongli Mountain and on a platform of the Qingjiang River Valley, people found the Xianglushi (Stone used as an incense burner) Cultural Ruins, which cover an area of 70 square meters. From the articles unearthed there, we can vividly see the ancient scenes as recorded in historical documents. The huge oracle bones were mainly sculptured from gill covering of big fish or tortoise shells. This, to some degree, shows the fishing and hunting life of the early-stage Ba people. The oracle fish bone has not been found in any other ruins of the same period.

For the Ba people, migration was as important as war. Previous archaeological surveys came to the conclusion that the Ba people entered the Yangtze River by way of the juncture where the Qingjiang River joins the Yangtze. However, some later facts reversed this conclusion. Archaeologists believed that the ancient Yangtze River had a larger volume of water than today and landslides occurred time and again. Therefore, it was hardly possible for the ancient Ba people to go upstream among turbulent rivers and treacherous shoals in their simple canoes.

On the contrary, there is proof that the Ba people entered the Yangtze River through the Daxi. The Daxi has become a dry river bed today and is situated about 30 km to the east of Qutang Gorge. In the past, it moved toward the Qingjiang River, parallel to the Yangtze River. Going across the watershed between the Qingjiang and Yangtze rivers, Daxi entered Enshi. The Enshi section was available for navigation until the 5th century. During the Spring and Autumn Period (770 BC-476 BC), Ba troops were frequently spotted in Zhijiang, Songzi and Jiangling of Hubei Province. So we can say that the Ba people went eastward along the Daxi.

The Yangtze River became a new starting point for the Ba people. The usually strong Ba people began a pastoral life on two banks of the Yangtze River. They planted rice and oats, collected mulberries to raise silkworms and brewed wine with high-quality grain. As they got abundant food to eat, they used their surplus rice to make cosmetics. At intervals of wars, the Ba women would try their best to show their beauty.



According to archaeologists, the Ba people set up their homes mainly on tributaries of the Yangtze River as they first entered the area. The relatively weak Ba people found flat platforms and fertile soil convenient for living. Later, the Ba became prosperous in division and unity with the Chu and Shu states. As a result, they built capitals in Fengdu, Zhongxian and Fuling along the river.

Chongqing, now the largest industrial and commercial city in west China, used to be the most important capital of the Ba State and called Jiangzhou. Though more than 2,000 years have passed, we can still feel the enthusiasm and straightforwardness of the men and beauty of the women in the city. The residential houses supported by wooden columns, the boats connecting with each other and the endless stone stages may remind us of the past Ba life style.

In history, any ethnic group which adored war would never cease migrating. In the following hundreds and thousands of years, the Ba people covered nearly half of China. But later their force gradually decreased.

(CCTV.com translated by Li Jinhui for China.org.cn, June 21, 2003)

# China – Religions

## Taoism (Daoism)

### *Taoism – (1)*

<http://www.travelchinaguide.com/intro/religion/taoism/>

Taoism is a genuinely Chinese religion. Some hold the opinion that without understanding Taoism, there can be no understanding of Chinese culture.

Doctrines of Taoism

Lao Zi was the creator of Taoism. According to the Shi Ji, or Records of the Historian, by [Sima Qian](#), Lao Zi was named Li Er, with Dan as his alias. He was a reputed thinker around 6th century B.C. There are many legends about Lao Zi but few historical records. He left a 5,000-word book and went on his ox from Hangu Pass and to where nobody knows! Lao Zi's 5,000 words are rather concise compared to his profound ideological system but there were numerous books interpreting the true meaning of his book.



Tao, originally, meant 'road' and then implied 'to rule' and 'principle'. Lao Zi used Tao to propound his ideological system; therefore his school of thinking is called Taoism. At the time Lao Zi created Taoism, it was simply a school of philosophy. It was during the Eastern Han Dynasty that Taoism became a religion.

Tao is the origin of the eternal world. It is boundless in time and space. Ordinary people can become gods when they have Tao. Taoism pursues immortality and preservation of health; its uttermost goal is to become an immortal being. Taoism claims this can be obtained through cultivating one's moral character and perfecting one's moral integrity.

A phrase from Taoism is to say an ordinary man can become immortal if he does good 3,000 times and accomplishes 800 exploits. Of course the number is symbolic. It requires people to do good without making it known to others as the gods will know it naturally, much like the Christian principle expressed in Matthew 6:3-4, "But when you give alms, do not let your left hand know what your right hand is doing, so that your alms may be done in secret; and your Father who sees in secret will reward you."

Tao is wu wei, namely Non-action. Non-action is to follow the rule of nature instead of overriding it. By conforming to the natural rules, Tao does nothing but it can do everything. Tao makes everything run smoothly but it does not boast about its own achievement. Those learning Taoism should be pure and take non-action.



Dialectic thinking is abundant in Lao Zi's system. He contended that Tao turned to the opposite during the circulation, like existing and non-existing, up and down, long and short, front and back, fortune and misfortune, strong and weak. Based on his thinking, a proverb was later devised, "Things will develop in the opposite direction when they become extreme." For example, Taoism holds that flexibility can defeat strength. Water was used as a metaphor in Lao Zi to explain the prowess of flexibility. Nothing can be more flexible and soft than water but it can defeat all tough things. Similarly, Taoism emphasizes humbleness and tenderness.





Taoism has its drawbacks. For example, Lao Zi promoted the idea of a return to a small state with a small population; people did not socialize though they lived so near that the barks of dogs could be heard. These ideas prevented social development. Also, Chinese intellectuals resorted to a hermitic way of life whenever they met setbacks; when they were successful, they would say "the less hermitry was to live in the remote areas while the great hermitry was to live in the court". The inner worldly and outer worldly attitudes made the Chinese intellectuals hover between the active Confucianism and the passive Taoism.

### **Development of Taoism**

Taoism became a religion during the Eastern Han Dynasty and Lao Zi was respected as the creator of Taoism.

During Three Kingdoms, many scholar-bureaucrats practiced Taoism and it soon became separated into an aristocrat sect and a folk sect. This situation lasted till the Jin Dynasty but doctrines were not strictly adhered to due to the chaotic political background.

Sui Emperors professed to Buddhism but still placed importance on Taoism. Ten Taoist temples were constructed in Chang'an (today's Xian) under the order of Emperor Yang, the notorious tyrant of Chinese history.

Tang Emperors regarded themselves as offspring of Lao Zi and Taoism developed rapidly and had a profound repercussion on the subsequent dynasties.

Unlike Buddhism, Taoism does not advocate asceticism. It pursues longevity and holds an open view toward sex. In the heyday of Taoism during the Tang Dynasty, there is no strict restriction on this. Taoist nuns were not uncommon. A poem satirizes that beautiful nuns were used to attract people as a means to compete with Buddhist temples.

In the middle years of the Tang Dynasty, aristocratic women, court maidens, and almes flocked to join the Taoist nuns, which had the effect of making this group more romantic and better endowed from a cultural and artistic point of view. The reasons why women became nuns varied; which meant that their prime purpose was not merely an ascetic life filled with devotion. Many were so beautiful that the temples were filled with people coming to solely to admire them. All these facts were noted in the Tang records. Many poets fell in love with Taoist nuns and many beautiful and sentimental poems were left when their love was unrequited. As Taoist nuns were called Nv Guan and later Nv Guan Zi, became a ci pai, a name of the tunes to which ci poems were composed.

Special institutions were set up by the Ming court to rule over the Taoist affairs. Another big event is the integration of the stories of the Eight Immortals. Over its long history, many legends about Taoist figures emerged and the most well-known are those of the Eight Immortals. A colloquial phrase has it, "like the Eight Immortals crossing the sea, each one showing his or her special feats". These Eight Immortals are seven men and a woman. The images of the Eight immortals can be seen in many artifacts, from the bridal sedan to cakes, vases, paper-cutting and paintings.

Taoism was suppressed by the Qing rulers as well as by the foreign invaders consequent upon the Opium War. Taoism has been faced with a huge impact from foreign culture but it remains an influential system of thought among the Chinese people.

### **Famous Taoist Holy Mountains:**

[Mt.Wudang](#), [Mt.Longhushan](#), [Mt.Qingcheng](#), [Mt.Qiyun](#), [Mt.Huashan](#), [Mt.Laoshan](#), [Mt.Huangshan](#), [Mt.Hengshan](#) in Hunan, [Mt.Hengshan](#) in Shanxi, [Mt.Songshan](#), [Mt.Taishan](#), [Mt. Wuyishan](#), etc.

### **Famous Taoist Holy Temples:**

[Taoist Temple of the Eight Immortals](#) (Ba Xian An) in Xian

[Qingyang Temple](#) in Chengdu

[Wong Tai Sin Temple](#) in Hong Kong.

Zixiao (Purple Heaven) Temple on Mt. Wudang in Hubei

Louguan Terrace in Shaanxi.

## Confucianism

# Confucianism (1)

<http://www.travelchinaguide.com/intro/religion/confucianism/index.htm>



Confucianism is the cornerstone of traditional Chinese culture. It is a complete ideological system created by Confucius, based on the traditional culture of the Xia, Shang and Zhou Dynasties. Confucianism has dominated a feudal society that in essence has lasted 2000 years and for that reason its influence over the history, social structure and the people of China cannot be overlooked.

### Life of Confucius

Confucius has proved to be the greatest influence over the Chinese character. Besides being a great educationist, thinker and unsuccessful politician, he was first of all an intellect with a noble morality. He pursued truth, kindness and perfection throughout his life and his success and failure were largely due to his character, which had an everlasting impact on Chinese intellect.

Confucius was born in 551B.C in the State of Lu which is known today as [Qufu](#) in Shandong Province.. In Chinese, his name was Kong Qiu. Kong was the family name while Qiu was his given name. This was because his parents had prayed for a son at Niqu Hill and 'Qiu' was an appropriate token of their thanks and joy at having their prayers answered. Sadly, his father died when Confucius was very young but despite a hard life, he dedicated himself to study at the age of 15.

Patriotism was the driving force for the young Confucius and he set his sights on an official career as a means to apply his political ideals. He had gained some fame by the time he was 30 but it was not until he was 51 that his official life really assumed great importance. This eventful career was to last for only four years as he was forced to resign when he found it impossible to agree with the authorities. Such was the opposition to his ideas that he was obliged to leave his country and to travel around the states. During these 14 years, he was in danger on many occasions and even risked his life. At the age of 68 he was welcomed back to Lu but he was set up as a respected gentleman without any authority. He died of illness at the age of 73. A brilliant star fell into silence. His students treated him as father and wore the willow for three years. Zigong, one of the famous disciples, set up a cabinet near his tomb and stayed there for six years to mourn his beloved teacher. Confucius could never have dreamed that his lonely tomb would develop into the large [Cemetery of Confucius](#) and that his ideological system would become the norm for Chinese society.

Compared to his frustrated political career, Confucius' career as a teacher and philosopher was brilliant and full of achievements.

Much of his approach to education was avant-garde as he promoted the ideas "to educate all despite their social status" and "to teach according to the students' characteristics". The first of these broke with tradition as only the aristocracy had the privilege of education.



Confucius also proposed a complete set of principles concerning study. He said, "Studying without thinking leads to confusion; thinking without studying leads to laziness." Today's quality-education was nothing new to Confucius.

Imparting knowledge was only part of his teaching; he was a living example of the concepts he promoted and this had a deep and lasting influence upon his disciples. Confucius' private life was a model of his doctrines. The Analects of Confucius provide a vivid record of his teachings but although he wrote nothing personally, his words were collected and recorded for posterity by his disciples. The accumulated words of wisdom have come down to us as "The Analects", one of the most important of all the Chinese classics.

Confucius took great delight in studying and was modest enough to learn from anyone. He never tired of teaching his disciples while diligence, his unremitting pursuit of truth, ideas and perfect personality, his integrity, kindness, modesty and courteousness inspired his disciples and the intellects of subsequent generations. Uniquely, only he is qualified to be called "the teacher of ten thousand generations". It is said that among 3000 of Confucius' disciples, there were 72 who were brilliant and who succeeded in morality, literature, language, and especially politics. These politicians contributed much to the spreading, formation and development of Confucianism.

Confucius stuck to righteousness, saying, "Improper fortunes are just flowing clouds to me. For proper fortunes, I will do jobs such as a driver." He was quite easy with his ideas despite of poverty. He was virtuous, always ready to help others and treated others with tolerance and honesty. To him, a benevolent person is one who loves others. He said, "Do not give others what you do not want yourself", similar to the Bible teaching of "All those things which you would have men do to you, even so do you to them: because this is the law and the prophets." (Matthew 7:12)

Influenced by Confucianism, in Chinese culture, an intellectual is not limited in study alone. He should be successful in being a human and in his bearing of himself. A key objective of an intellectual should be to make full use of his ability, personality and intelligence to do good for the state, society and the world at large. This idea is so precious that we cannot help asking why the products of today's education system

are far from satisfactory! Why do not we pay attention to our ancestor's core values instead of wasting so much of our time and energy in word puzzles!

Confucius' marriage was ignored purposefully by his followers. All we know is he got married at 19 and divorced his wife at 23 and remained single for the rest of his life. As Confucianism laid down the social ethnics of the Chinese society, why Confucius divorced remained a puzzle. We cannot find out how he behaved as a husband or as a father. However, the records show that he loved his disciples as much as his own children. He was not a cold or dull old man; instead, he was affectionate, humorous and optimistic. It is something of an enigma that this humble and wise man should have been first apotheosized as a Saint then demonized only to be re-established as a Saint by succeeding generations. In Chinese, he was known as Kong Sheng Ren (Saint Kong). We hope our introduction goes some way to show Confucius as a truly human being.

### **The background of Confucianism**

Confucius lived in the Spring and Autumn Periods, a time when the established system could not meet the demand of development as the ruling classes of China experienced the transition from a slave to feudal society. It was a time of "the collapse of etiquette and the deterioration of music", which implies the ethics and moralities of society were in decline. The intellectuals of the day were concerned about the future mode of society, hence the most brilliant contention of a hundred schools of thought, such as Legist, Taoist, thrived in a vibrant period in Chinese history. This is often regarded as the most exciting of times for Chinese intellectuals as no single doctrine dominated their lives.

Confucius' proposal was to discipline oneself and to revive the ethics of Zhou Dynasty. Therefore, he brought forward a series of norms, which step by step developed into Confucianism.

### **Confucianism and its development in the history**

Confucianism was further developed by Mencius (372B.C.-289B.C.) and Xun Zi. It was in the reign of Emperor Wu during the Han Dynasty that Confucianism was promoted to being the state ideology. Since then, Confucianism became the orthodox doctrine of Chinese society. And Confucius was glorified as a Saint instead of an ordinary man.

In the coming Wei and Jin Dynasties, Confucianism coexisted with Buddhism and Taoism. Up to the Sui and Tang Dynasties, the struggle for dominance between the three became heated. The Song Dynasty witnessed a vital period of the development of Confucianism. Featuring Confucian school of idealist philosophy of the Song and Ming dynasties, Confucianism restored its orthodox role for the following 700 years.

Waving the banner of science and democracy, the New Cultural Movement from 1915 attacked the feudal system, including its core ideological system of Confucianism. During the Cultural Revolution, Confucianism was once again under violent attack.

In recent years people can look at Confucianism with a more rational state of mind, some even suggest returning to Confucianism for wisdom while opponents hold that Confucianism should be held responsible for the backwardness of China's development and for that reason its dominance should not be revived. In any event, that would not be possible.

To our delight, many scholars devote themselves to the study of Confucianism and its application to modern society. Such study is important as the Chinese language has experienced considerable changes over the centuries and the lack of any punctuation in the ancient classics has made it difficult for us to fully comprehend Confucius' ideology.

Confucianism is succinct as well as intensive. Strictly speaking, it is not a religion but more a doctrine than belief, while the meaning behind the beautiful words renders wordy post-modernism pale and dull. Confucianism is part of world cultural heritage and an integral part of Chinese life.



## Guangzhou

<http://www.travelchinaguide.com/cityguides/guangzhou.htm>

# Guangzhou Travel Guide

Guangzhou, the South Gate of China, is a prosperous metropolis full of vigor.

Guangzhou is the capital city of Guangdong, and the center of its political, economic, scientific, educational and cultural life.

Sui (Ears of Rice) is short for Guangzhou and the City of Ram

(Yang Cheng) is also an alias of Guangzhou. The kapok is the city flower and the kapok tree is the city tree of Guangzhou.

Guangzhou is located in the middle south of Guangdong Province, north of the Pearl River Delta. It lies close to the South China Sea, Hong Kong, and Macau. Zhujiang (The Pearl River), the third largest river of China, runs through Guangzhou and is navigable to the South China Sea. Situated in such an excellent geographical region, Guangzhou is called China's South Gate.

Covering an area of 7434.4 square kilometers (2870 square miles), Guangzhou is home to more than 11 million people, including a 3.7 million transitory population. With the opening of China to the outside world, a large number of people from other regions of China swarmed into Guangzhou, one of the first "open" cities in China. This has accelerated its economic development.

Guangzhou is a famous historical city. In ancient days, Guangzhou was the capital city for three Chinese dynasties: the Nan Yue (South Yue), the Nan Han (South Han) and the Nanming (South Ming). Thus it was put in the list of the 24 most famous historical cultural cities and became a tourist destination. You can not understand most Chinese cities deeply until you know their history. This is true of Guangzhou. Many historic sights: the Western Han Nanyue King's Tomb Museum, the Zhenhai Tower and the Sun Yat-sen Memorial Hall tell us the 2,000-year history of Guangzhou.

Today, Guangzhou retains its ancient customs, but is also a large city full of vigor and current fashions. You can find something worth taking home in Shangxia Jiu Lu, Beijing Lu and Di Shi Fu Lu.

Trying Yue Cai (Cantonese Cuisine), one of eight Chinese famous cuisines, is definitely a must in Guangzhou! Eat delicious food with ingredients you have never heard of.

Hotel facilities and service in Guangzhou are fine. A word of warning: Do make a reservation beforehand if you decide to visit Guangzhou during the



Canton Fair. For visitors, especially those plan to attend the Canton Fair, transportation in Guangzhou is more and more convenient. You can choose plane, train, ship or bus.

Guangzhou is famous as a hometown for overseas Chinese. It boasts the largest population of overseas Chinese people. These overseas Chinese do a great deal of good for Guangzhou: opening international markets, bridging Guangzhou and the rest of the world, and establishing many schools, hospitals, nurseries, kindergartens and rest homes in Guangzhou.



<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Guangzhou>

# Guangzhou

From Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia

For the Chinese province, see [Guangdong](#).

For other uses, see [Canton](#).

Guangzhou	
<b>Traditional Chinese:</b>	廣州
<b>Simplified Chinese:</b>	广州
<b>Mandarin</b>	
<b>Hanyu Pinyin:</b>	Guǎngzhōu
<b>Wade-Giles:</b>	Kuang-chou
	<span>[Listen]</span> <span>(help·info)</span>
<b>Cantonese</b>	
<b>Jyutping:</b>	Gwong <sup>2</sup> zau <sup>1</sup>
<b>Min Nan</b>	<b>Pe̍h-ōe-jī:</b> kńg-chiu
<b>Hakka</b>	<b>romanization:</b> [gong <sub>31</sub> zu <sub>24</sub> ]
<b>Postal map spelling:</b>	Canton

Guangzhou is the [capital](#) and the [sub-provincial city](#) of [Guangdong Province](#) in [southern mainland China](#). The name Canton is based upon a [French language transliteration](#) of the name of the province in [Cantonese](#). It is a port on the [Pearl River](#), [navigable](#) to the [South China Sea](#). As of the [2000 census](#), the city has a population of 6 million, and a metropolitan population of 12.6 million, making it the most populous city in the province and the [third most populous metropolitan area](#) in [China](#).

## Name

The [Chinese](#) abbreviation of Guangzhou is **Sui** (穗; pinyin: suì; Jyutping: seoi6; Yale: seuī h) or sometimes GZ. The city has the nicknames of **Wuyangcheng** (City of Five Rams), **Yangcheng** (City of Rams), **Huacheng** (City of Flowers), or **Suicheng** (City of Wheats). The city can also be referred to as the

## Guangzhou (Canton)



Pearl River at night

**Nickname:** "The Flower City"



Location within China

**Coordinates:** [23°20'N 113°30'E](#)

<b>Country</b>	<a href="#">People's Republic of China</a>
<b>Province</b>	<a href="#">Guangdong</a>
<b>Officiated</b>	1918
<b>Mayor</b>	Zhang Guangning
<b>Area</b>	
<b>- City</b>	3718.8 <a href="#">km²</a> (1436.1 <a href="#">sq mi</a> )
<b>Elevation</b>	8 <a href="#">m</a> (26 <a href="#">ft</a> )
<b>Population</b>	
<b>- Urban</b>	6,560,500
<b>- Metro</b>	12 600 000
<b>Time zone</b>	<a href="#">UTC (UTC+8)</a>
<b>Website:</b>	<a href="http://www.guangzhou.gov.cn/">http://www.guangzhou.gov.cn/</a>

**MuMianCheng** (City of Wood Wools), a reference to a tall, native tree that produces wool fiber in its red blossoms.

"Canton" was the convenient [Portuguese romanisation](#) of "Guangdong" Province, and the city Guangzhou is the capital of the province and frequently referred as 廣東省城 ("the Canton Province Capital City") or simply 省城 ("the Province City") by Cantonese people. The city naturally represents the province and thus was erroneously used as the city's name. It may have been more convenient for [Europeans](#) who during the colonial period generally did not understand Chinese nor the written logographic [characters](#) (see [exonym and endonym](#)). When the term "Canton" is pronounced in Portuguese it provides a closer oral rendering of the name in its original [Cantonese](#)<sup>[citation needed](#)</sup>. **Guangzhou** is the [pinyin](#) romanisation of the [Mandarin](#) name for the city.

## Contents

- [1 Name](#)
- [2 Geography](#)
  - [2.1 Administrative divisions](#)
- [3 History](#)
- [4 Modern Guangzhou](#)
  - [4.1 Economy](#)
  - [4.2 Transportation](#)
  - [4.3 Guangzhou in recent news](#)
  - [4.4 Tourist attractions](#)
  - [4.5 Parks](#)
  - [4.6 Significant buildings](#)
  - [4.7 Media](#)
  - [4.8 Tourist attractions](#)
  - [4.9 Parks](#)
  - [4.10 Significant buildings](#)
  - [4.11 Media](#)
  - [4.12 Culture](#)
- [5 Education](#)
- [5.1 Major educational institutions](#)
  - [6 Sister cities](#)
  - [6.1 See also](#)
- [7 Notes](#)
- [8 External links](#)

- [Liwan District](#)
- [Haizhu District](#)
- [Tianhe District](#)
- [Baiyun District](#)
- [Huangpu District](#)
- [Huadu District](#)
- [Panyu District](#)
- [Nansha District](#)
- [Luogang District](#)

County-level cities

Capital City") or simply 省城 ("the Province City") by Cantonese people. The city naturally represents the province and thus was erroneously used as the city's name. It may have been more convenient for [Europeans](#) who during the colonial period generally did not understand Chinese nor the written logographic [characters](#) (see [exonym and endonym](#)). When the term "Canton" is pronounced in Portuguese it provides a closer oral rendering of the name in its original [Cantonese](#)<sup>[citation needed](#)</sup>. **Guangzhou** is the [pinyin](#) romanisation of the [Mandarin](#) name for the city.

## Geography

Guangzhou is located at 112°57'E to 114°3'E and 22°26'N to 23°56'N. The city is part of the [Pearl River Delta](#).

## Administrative divisions

Guangzhou is a [sub-provincial city](#). It has direct jurisdiction over ten [districts](#) and two [county-level cities](#).

Districts

- [Yuexiu District](#)



*CITIC Plaza*

- [Zengcheng City](#)
- [Conghua City](#)

As of [April 28, 2005](#), the districts of [Dongshan](#) and [Fangcun](#) have been abolished and merged into [Yuexiu](#) and [Liwan](#) respectively; at the same time the district of [Nansha](#) is established out of parts of [Panyu](#), and the district of [Luogang](#) is established out of parts of [Baiyun](#), [Tianhe](#), [Huangpu](#), and [Zengcheng](#).

## History

It is believed that the first city built at the site of Guangzhou was Panyu (番禺, later simplified to 番禺; the locals pronounced this in Cantonese as *Poon Yu*) founded in [214 BC](#). The city has been continuously occupied since that time. Panyu was expanded when it became the capital of the [Nanyue](#) Kingdom (南越) in [206 BC](#).

Recent archaeological founding of her palace suggests that the city might have traded frequently with foreigners by the sea routes. The foreign trade continued through every following dynasty and the city remains a major international trading port to this day.

The [Han Dynasty](#) annexed Nanyue in [111 BC](#), and Panyu became a provincial capital and remains so until this day. In [226 AD](#), the city became the seat of the Guang Prefecture (廣州; Guangzhou). Therefore, "Guangzhou" was the name of the prefecture, not of the city. However, people grew accustomed to calling the city Guangzhou, instead of Panyu.

Although the Chinese name of Guangzhou replaced Panyu as the name of the walled city, Panyu was still the name of the area surrounding the walled city until the end of [Qing](#) era.

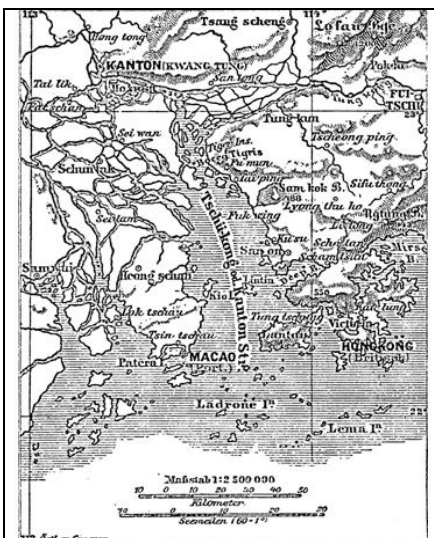
[Arabs](#) and [Persians](#) sacked Guangzhou (known to them as **Sin-Kalan**) in AD 758, <sup>2</sup> according to a local Guangzhou government report on [October 30, 758](#), which corresponded to the day of *Guisi* (癸巳) of the ninth [lunar](#) month in the first year of the [Qianyuan era](#) of [Emperor Suzong](#) of the [Tang Dynasty](#).<sup>[1][2][3]</sup>

During the Northern Song Dynasty, a celebrated poet called Su Shi visited Guangzhou's [Baozhuangyan Temple](#) and wrote the inscription "Liu Rong" (Six Banyan Trees) because of the six banyan trees he saw there. It has since been called the Temple of the Six Banyan Trees.

The [Portuguese](#) were the first Europeans to arrive to the city by sea, obtaining the monopoly for external trade with its harbour by [1511](#). They were later expelled from their settlements in Guangzhou (in Portuguese Canton or Cantao), but instead granted use of [Macao](#) (first occupied in [1511](#)) as a trade base with the city in [1557](#). They would keep a near monopoly of foreign trade in the region until the arrival of the Dutch in the early [XVII century](#).

After China brought [Taiwan](#) under its control in 1683, the Qing government became open to encouraging foreign trade. Guangzhou quickly emerged as one of the most adaptable ports for negotiating commerce and before long, many foreign ships were going there to procure cargos. Portuguese in Macao, Spanish in Manila, and Armenians and Muslims from India were already actively trading in the port by the 1690s, when the French and English East India companies' ships began frequenting the port. Other companies were soon to follow: the Ostend General India Company in 1717; Dutch East India Company in 1729; the first Danish ship in 1731, which was followed by a Danish Asiatic Company ship in 1734; the Swedish East India Company in 1732; followed by an occasional Prussian and Trieste Company ship; the Americans in 1784; and the first ships from Australia in 1788. By the middle of the 18th century, Guangzhou had emerged as one of the world's great trading ports, which was a distinction it maintained until the outbreak of the Opium War in 1839 and the opening of other ports in China in 1842.

Guangzhou was one of the five Chinese [treaty ports](#) opened by the [Treaty of Nanking](#) (signed in 1842) at the end of the [First Opium War](#) between [Britain](#) and [China](#). The other ports were [Fuzhou](#), [Xiamen](#), [Ningbo](#), and [Shanghai](#).



**1888 German map of Hong Kong, Macau, and Guangzhou**

In 1918, "Guangzhou" became the official name of the city, when an urban council was established in it. Panyu became a county's name south of Guangzhou. In both 1930 and 1953, Guangzhou was promoted to the status of a Municipality, but each promotion was cancelled within the year.

Japanese troops occupied Guangzhou from [1938-10-12](#) to [1945-09-16](#).

Communist forces entered the city on October 14, 1949. Their urban renewal projects improved the lives of many residents. New housing on the shores of the Pearl River provided homes for the poor [boat people](#). Reforms by [Deng Xiaoping](#), who came to power

in the late 1970s, led to rapid economic growth due to the city's close proximity to [Hong Kong](#) and access to the Pearl River.

As labor costs increased in Hong Kong, [manufacturers](#) opened new plants in the cities of [Guangdong](#) including Guangzhou. As the largest city in one of China's wealthiest provinces, Guangzhou attracts farmers from the countryside looking for factory work. Cantonese links to overseas Chinese and beneficial tax reforms of the 1990s have aided the city's rapid growth.

In 2000, [Huadu](#) and [Panyu](#) were merged into Guangzhou as districts, and [Conghua](#) and [Zengcheng](#) became county-level cities of Guangzhou.

# Modern Guangzhou

## Economy



**This article or section needs to be updated.** Parts of this article or section have been identified as no longer being up to date. Please update the article to reflect recent events, and remove this template when finished.



Guangzhou is the economic centre of the [Pearl River Delta](#) and the heart of one of [mainland China's](#) leading commercial and manufacturing regions. In 2006, the GDP exceeded ¥600 billions(USD 76.8 billions), per capita was ¥85,000 (about US \$11,000), [ranking First](#) among 659 Chinese cities.<sup>[*citation needed*]</sup>

The [Chinese Export Commodities Fair](#), also called "Canton Fair", is held each [spring](#) and [autumn](#) by Bo Liu. Inaugurated in the spring of 1957, the Fair is a major event for the city.

## Transportation



*One of the new buses*

With the [Guangzhou Metro](#), opened in 1999, Guangzhou is the fourth city in China to build an underground railway system. Currently there are four lines operational with an ambitious plan to expand rapidly with three lines under construction and four lines that are being planned.

Guangzhou's main [airport](#) is the [New Baiyun International Airport](#) in [Huadu](#) District, that opened on [5 August 2004](#) replacing old [Baiyun International Airport](#) close to the city centre.

Guangzhou is connected to [Hong Kong](#) by train, bus and ferry services. Express trains arrive in Hong Kong at the [Hung Hom KCR station](#). They cover the 182 km route in approximately two hours. Daily ferry sailings include an overnight steamer, which takes eight hours, and high-speed catamarans and hydrofoils which take three hours to reach the [China Ferry Terminal](#) or [Macau Ferry Pier](#) in Hong Kong.





*The Guangzhou Metro station at [Sun Yat-Sen University](#) is among several stations that serve the city.*

- [Guangdong Olympic Stadium](#)
- [CITIC Plaza](#)
- [Sky Central Plaza](#)
- [Guangdong TV Tower](#)
- [Guangzhou TV Tower](#)
- [China Hotel](#)

Plans are also underway to build what will become the world's tallest free-standing TV tower.

## Media

Guangdong and the greater Guangzhou city is served by several [Guangdong Radio](#) stations and [Guangdong TV](#). There is an international station [Radio Guangdong](#) which broadcasts information about this region to the entire world through the [World Radio Network](#).

## Tourist attractions

- [Chenjiaci \(陈家祠\)](#)
- [Guangdong Museum of Folk Handcraft](#)
- [Shamian Island](#)
- [Guangdong Provincial Museum](#)
- [Museum of the Tomb of the King of Southern Yue in Western Han Dynasty](#)

## Guangzhou in recent news

Guangzhou will hold the 16th Asian Games in November, 2010. The city would spend about 220 billion yuan (US\$26.5 billion) in the run-up to the 2010 event to improve infrastructure, build an athletes' village, a new railway station, as well as completing the second phase of the new Baiyun International Airport.

## Significant buildings



*Shishi Holy Heart Cathedral*

- [Temple of the Six Banyan Trees](#)
- [Shishi Holy Heart Cathedral](#)
- [Huaisheng Mosque](#)
- [Chen Family Confucian Academy](#)

## Parks

- [Baiyun Mountain](#) (白云山)
- [Lie shi ling yuan](#) (烈士陵园)
- [Yue Xiu Park](#) (越秀公园)

## Significant buildings

- [Guangdong Olympic Stadium](#)
- [CITIC Plaza](#)
- [Sky Central Plaza](#)
- [Guangdong TV Tower](#)
- [Guangzhou TV Tower](#)
- [China Hotel](#)

Plans are also underway to build what will become the world's tallest free-standing TV tower.

## Media

Guangdong and the greater Canton city is served by several [Guangdong Radio](#) stations and [Guangdong TV](#). There is an international station [Radio Guangdong](#) which broadcasts information about this region to the entire world through the [World Radio Network](#).

## Culture

- [Cantonese \(linguistics\)](#)
- [Cantonese cuisine](#)
- [Cantonese opera](#)
- [Guangdong music \(genre\)](#)

## Education

### Major educational institutions



*Temple of the Six Banyan Trees*



## National

- [Sun Yat-sen University](#) (中山大学) (founded 1924)
- [South China University of Technology](#) (华南理工大学)
- [Jinan University](#) (暨南大学) (founded 1906)

## Public



- [Guangdong University of Foreign Studies](#) (广东外语外贸大学)
- [South China Agricultural University](#) (华南农业大学) (founded 1909)
- [Zhongkai Agrotechnical College](#) (仲恺农业技术学院) (founded 1927)
- [South China Normal University](#) (华南师范大学)
- [Guangzhou Medical College](#) (广州医学院)
- [Guangzhou University of TCM](#) (广州中医药大学)
- [Guangdong College of Pharmacy](#) (广东药学院)
- [Guangdong University of Technology](#) (广东工业大学)
- [Guangzhou University](#) (广州大学)
- [Guangdong Business College](#) (广东商学院)
- [Guangzhou Academy of Fine Arts](#) (广州美术学院)
- [Xinghai Conservatory of Music](#) (星海音乐学院)
- [GuangDong Polytechnic Normal University](#) (广东技术师范学院)
- [Guangzhou Physical Education Institute](#) (广州体育学院)

Note: Institutions without full-time bachelor programs are not listed.

## Sister cities

Canton is [twinned](#) with the following cities:

-  [Fukuoka, Japan](#) (May, 1979)
-  [Los Angeles, United States](#) ([March 2, 1982](#))
-  [Manila, Philippines](#) (November, 1982)
-  [Vancouver, Canada](#) (March, 1985)
-  [Sydney, Australia](#) (May, 1986)
-  [Bari, Italy](#) (November, 1986)
-  [Frankfurt am Main, Germany](#) ([April 11, 1988](#))
-  [Lyon, France](#) (November, 1988)
-  [Auckland, New Zealand](#) (February, 1989)
-  [Gwangju, South Korea](#) (October, 1996)
-  [Linköping, Sweden](#) (November, 1997)
-  [Durban, South Africa](#) (July, 2000)
-  [Bristol, United Kingdom](#) (May, 2001)
-  [Yekaterinburg, Russia](#) ([July 10, 2002](#))

-  [Arequipa, Peru](#) (October 27, 2004)
-  [Birmingham, United Kingdom](#) (Dec, 2006)

## See also

- [Whampoa Military Academy](#)
- [Guangzhou Uprising](#) (1927)
- [Canton porcelain](#)
- [Lingnan University \(Guangzhou\)](#)
- [Current events in Guangdong](#)

## Notes

1. <sup>↑</sup> Welsh, Frank (1974). Maya Rao: *A Borrowed Place: The History of Hong Kong*, 13. [ISBN 1-56836-134-3](#).
2. <sup>↑</sup> Needham, Joseph (1954). *Science & Civilisation in China*. [Cambridge University Press](#), 1, 179.
3. <sup>↑</sup> [Sima Guang](#). *Zizhi Tongjian* (in Chinese).

## External links

- [China Medical University](#)
- **(Chinese)** [Official Guangzhou Website](#)
- [Life of Guangzhou](#)
- [Photos from the Mountains](#)
- [Satellite photo of the city](#)
- [Guangzhou Photo Gallery](#)
- [http://www.nudieman.com/anrg/flower\\_pagoda.htm](http://www.nudieman.com/anrg/flower_pagoda.htm) (A description of the Flower Pagoda)
- <http://www.orientalarchitecture.com/> (With descriptions and many pictures of the: Chen Family Confucian Academy, Guangxiaosi Temple, Sun Yat-sen Memorial (1929-31), Wong Tai Sin Temple, Wuxianguan Temple, Zhenhai Tower)
- **(Japanese)** [raildog in the attic-photo weblog](#)

## Guangzhou History

<http://www.newsgd.com/citiesandtowns/guangzhou/info/200309170100.htm>

# Guangzhou Tourism

Latest Updated by 2003-09-16 16:03:33

Guangzhou's history began with a beautiful legend of five fairy rams, which probably describes the locals' strong desire for a prosperous and peaceful life, rather than a war between evil and good as in the other places in China. Zhenhailou (Five-Story) Tower appeasing the sea displays the unique personality and temperament of the Yue people, who took the snake as their totem. A great number of ancient sculptures about the amity between men and snakes are found among the ancient objects unearthed from the tomb of the Nanyue King Zhao Tuo (206 BC).

This rich land has been nurtured by the Pearl River since time immemorial. The Pearl rushes down from the Yunnan-Guizhou Plateau, and then meanders peacefully through Lingnan Region before pouring into the South China Sea. The Pearl River has created a long scroll of green mountains, blue rivers and a far stretching river delta on the lower reaches of the Pearl River in the long past. As a Chinese saying goes, "Rich land fosters talents." In the long history, there appeared innumerable heroic figures, celebrities or men of letters. Zhao Tuo (206 BC), king of the Nanyue Kingdom, left behind a great many of brilliant and sinful legacies. Dharma (526 AD) with his followers crossed the sea from India and landed at Xilaichudi of Guangzhou. He built a thatched house by the Pearl. That might be the original of today's Hualin Temple. Dharma, as the first Buddhist preacher in China, began his Buddhist teaching in Guangzhou. Dharma is one of the founders of China's Zen Buddhism. Han Yu, a great prose writer of the Tang Dynasty, once came to Guangzhou and Chaozhou. Su Shi, an outstanding poet of the Song Dynasty, left his handwritings in the Liurong (Six-Banyan) Temple.

Guangzhou is also one of the starting points of the ancient Marine Silk Road connecting China with the outside world about 2 000 years ago. Nanhai Polo Temple at Huangpu Harbor is an evidence of this overseas trading tradition. It is called Polo, for it comes originally from the word "paramita" in Sanskrit, meaning reaching the other side of the ocean. It is said when foreign ships saw Nanhai Polo Temple, they knew they succeeded in crossing the tough ocean, and finally arriving in Guangzhou. They couldn't help shouting "Paramita!" and hence the name "Nanhai Polo Temple" in the rough imitation of "paramita". This is a wonderful blessing word for Guangzhou from the Buddhist Sanskrit.

In Chinese modern history, Guangzhou has its brilliant pages. Hong Xiuquan (1814-1864) from Guanlubu Village led the Taiping Rebellion (1851) against the Qing Dynasty. Kang Youwei (1858-1927) and Liang Qichao (1873-1929) launched the 100-day reform in 1898 during the later Qing Dynasty. The heroic deeds against the British invaders at Sanyuanli (1841) still reminds us of what the "Western civilization" is. Below the Yuewangtai Terrace is located the headquarters where Sun Yat-sen (1866-1925) plotted to

overthrow the Chinese monarch. Huanghuagang has become a reminder of the Xinhai (1911) Revolution and Anti-Japanese invasion in 1940s.

History has also made Guangzhou a convergence of the Chinese and Western cultures. East has met west here for hundreds of years. A combination of the traditional Chinese culture of Central China, Western influence and cultural exchanges and local features has formed a Lingnan school of the Chinese culture. Now, the Chinese State Council has selected Guangzhou one of the 68 famous historic cultural cities in China. With a 2200-year long history, Guangzhou is rich in tourist resources. It has become an attractive coastal southern city with 101 scenic spots. On the list of local tourism attractions, there are specially selected ones: top scenic spots, top historical cultural relics, top modern sightseeing spots, 8 top festivals, a dozen tourist parks and 4 nationally-famous Buddhist monasteries.

Editor: Catherine

<http://wikitravel.org/en/Guangzhou>

This reference is included in part as it adds a little to the History of Guangshuo included in <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Guangzhou>

# Guangzhou Travel

From Wikitravel

For other places with the same name, see [Canton \(disambiguation\)](#).



*Locals on the run outside the Grandview Plaza in Tianhe District. In the background is the 80-story CITIC Plaza.*

**Guangzhou** (广州 *Guǎ ngzhō u* or just simply **GZ**) is the capital of [Guangdong Province](#) in Southern [China](#) and has a population of over 10 million (The official registered population is 7.3 million, with over 3 million unregistered residents). It is adjacent to [Hong Kong](#) and [Macau](#). In the era of tea clippers, Guangzhou was known in the West as "Canton". The food and the language of the area are still known as "Cantonese", and the airport code is CAN.

While Guangzhou is not usually high on the list of Asian tourist destinations, it is amazing how much the city actually has to offer.



*Nightlife at Shangxiajiu in Liwan District.*

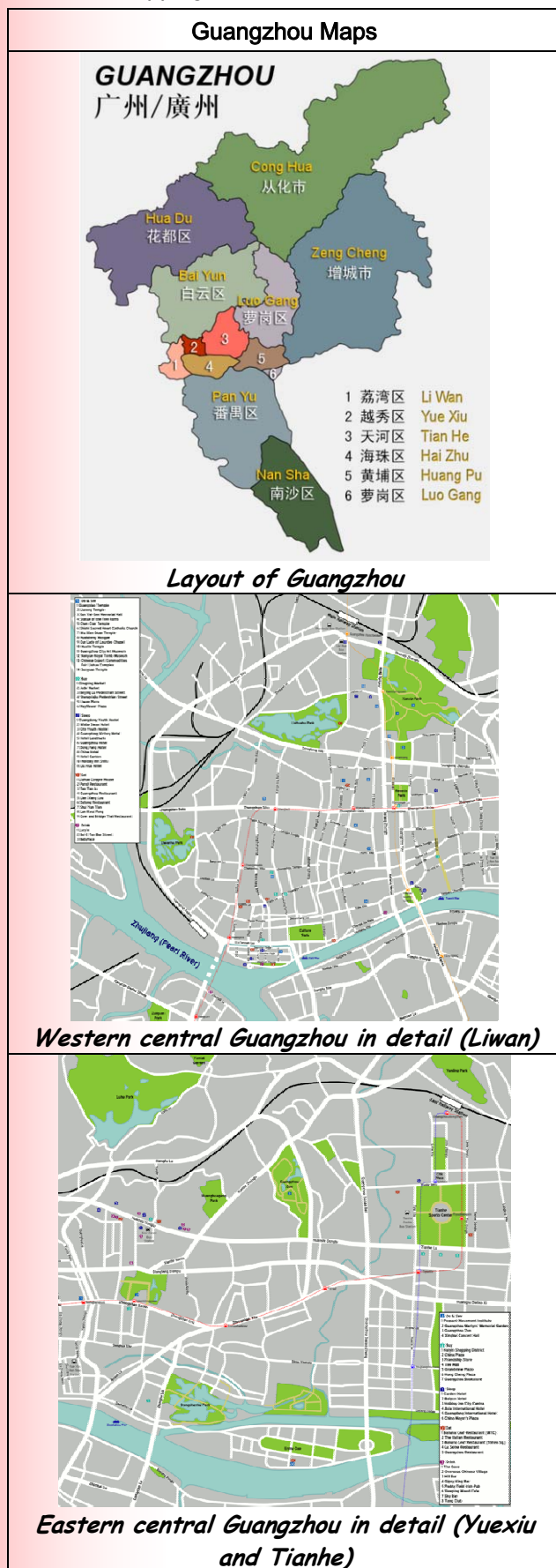
## Districts

The official list consists of the following 10 districts:

- **Liwan** (荔湾 *Liwā n*) - This is the old Guangzhou, and is combined with the old **Fangcun** (芳村 *Fā ngcū n*) area in the southwest. Tourist highlights include the colonial Shamian Island, Xiguan Old Houses, and Shangxiajiu



## Shopping districts.



- **Yuexiu (越秀 Yuèxiù)** - This is the political and cultural center, including the old **Dongshan (东山, Dō ngshā n)** area. Highlights include Yuexiu Park, Beijing Lu Shopping District, and Huanghuagang Martyrs Memorial Park.
- **Haizhu (海珠 Hǎ izhū)** - Located south of the Pearl River, the district is becoming more business focus, especially in the areas of Real Estate and trading. Locals refer to this part of Guangzhou as Henan, meaning south of the river. Highlights include the Canton Fair Pazhou Exhibition Center, Sun Yat-Sen University, and Pearl River Harbor Walk along the river.
- **Tianhe (天河 Tiā nhē)** - This is the new city center. It is an area with many new developments, including skyscrapers like the Citic Plaza. Highlights include Dongzhan Square and many shopping centers.
- **Baiyun (白云 Báiyún)** - The district has a big rural touch, but is slowly taken over by new developments, including the new airport. Highlights include the Baiyun Mountain.
- **Huangpu (黄埔 Huángpǔ)** - Not well known for foreign tourists, the district is the secondary center of eastern part of the city. Highlights include the former Huangpu Military Academy.
- **Panyu (番禺 Pā nyū)** - This is the new area focusing on technology and economic development. Highlights include the Lianhua Mountain, two wild animal theme parks and the new University City.
- **Huadu (花都 Huā dū)** - This is a developing industrial area. Highlights include the Huadu Square.

- **Nansha** (南沙 *Nánshā*) - This is an industrial area at the southern tip of the city. It offers little to tourists.
- **Luogang** (萝岗 *Luógǎng*) - This is the designated center of the eastern part of the city, famous for its plum forest. It is not a popular tourist destination, but it has some historical sites.
- In addition to the 10 districts, two nearby cities have been drafted into Guangzhou's jurisdiction:
- **Zengcheng** (增城 *Zēngchéng*) - This city is famous for its lychee fruit, which are picked in the months of June and July.
- **Conghua** (从化 *Cónghuà*) - This city is known for its hot springs and Tian (Heavenly) Lake Recreation area.

The main tourist areas and metropolitan areas are in the northern part of the city, including Liwan, Yuexiu and Tianhe. (see Maps)

## Understand



At first sight, Guangzhou appears less a city that's developing than one that's about to explode. Every corner seems packed with high-rise buildings, overpasses, and people running a marathon. It can be overwhelming, and the initial instinct of many travelers is to get out as soon as possible. However, those that overcome this urge and stay longer will discover a gentler and more personable side to the city.

As a major entry point for overseas culture for many centuries, foreigners are not the anomaly here that they are in other Chinese cities. Consequently, travelers are afforded more personal space and freedom. In addition, tucked away in the back streets, the old Guangzhou of traditional neighborhoods still moves at an age-old pace, with families and friends sitting outdoors enjoying tea and banter.

Guangzhou also boasts the largest urban park in China, an island of refurbished colonial buildings and some world class galleries and exhibition spaces. In addition, possibly due to the warm climate and distance from the political centers, the citizens of Guangzhou have developed a laid back and play-hard approach to life.

Today, Guangzhou is recognized as one of China's most prosperous, liberal, and cosmopolitan cities. However, despite the fact that the city is an international trade hub, there is a lack of signs in English.



## History

Formerly known as **Canton** in the West, the city of Guangzhou has a history dating back around 2,500 years, and many of the inhabitants in the Chinatowns around the world can trace their ancestry back to this city.

Although the actual origins of the city are lost in the mists of time, the most popular legend tells of five celestial beings riding into the area that is now Guangzhou on five rams and carrying sheaves of rice. The celestials bestowed blessings on the land and offered the sheaves to the people of the city as a symbol of prosperity and abundance. After the celestials left, the rams turned into stone, and Guangzhou quickly developed into an affluent and influential city. Due to this legend, Guangzhou has gained several popular nicknames: *Yangcheng* (City of Rams), *Suicheng* (Sheaves of Rice City) and *Wuyangcheng* (City of Five Rams). In addition, due to the abundance of flowers along the city's main thoroughfares, Guangzhou is often referred to as *Huacheng* (City of Flowers).

According to historical records, the city was built in 214BC and was known as **Panyu** (番禺). The name Guangzhou actually referred to the prefecture in which Panyu was located. However, as the city grew, the name Guangzhou was adopted for the city itself.

As a major sea port, Guangzhou's history is full of color. In 786 the city was sacked by the Persians, while in 1711 the British East India Company established a trading post there. In 1842 the Treaty of Nanjing was signed, which designated the city as one of the five ports that allowed business transactions with foreign nations.

Guangzhou was also part of the so called "Maritime Silk Road" that linked southern China with India, South-East Asia, the Middle East, and Africa. As a result of the links with the Middle East, a mosque was established in the city in 627, and a small Muslim community continues to this day. Furthermore, because the sixth patriarch of Zen Buddhism was born in Guangzhou, taught the famous Platform Sutra there, and established a monastery to the north of the city, Guangzhou has maintained a strong connection with this school of Buddhism.

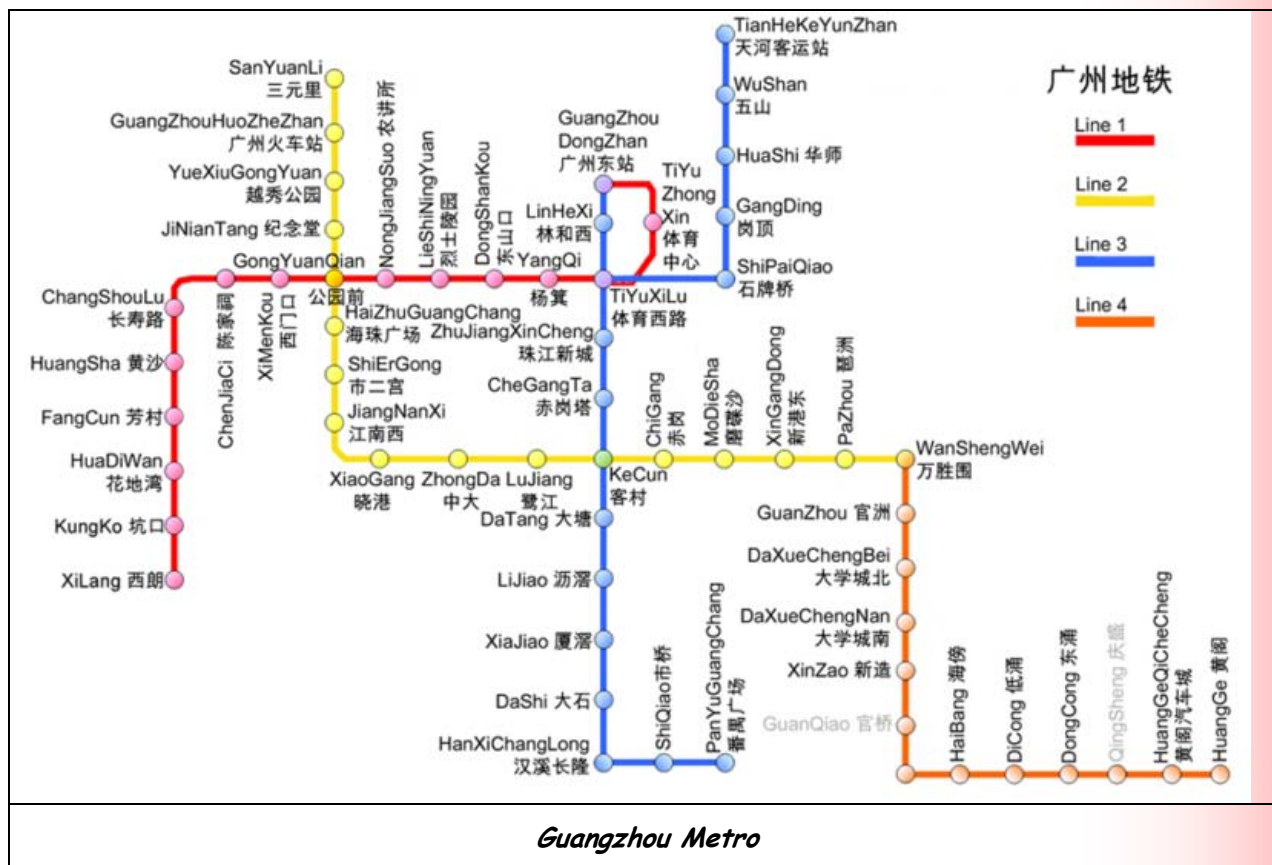
## When to visit

Climate wise, the best time to visit Guangzhou is in October and November. Alternatively, April and May are also good months. Guangzhou has a sub-tropical climate with humidity levels at their highest in the summer, so unless you enjoy Turkish steam baths, this is a season to avoid! Typhoon season is from June to September. Please note that the Canton Fairs take place annually in October and April, so finding accommodation at these times can be difficult (See the warning section under [Sleep](#)).

## Get around

Guangzhou has a fairly efficient public transportation system. It is rapidly improving, where more metro lines will be added in the next several years.

## By subway



Guangzhou has an efficient **metro system** opened in 1999, which covers much of the city center and is growing rapidly outward. The fare ranges from ¥2 to ¥12. Most of the signs and announcements are also in English. Tickets are bought from vending machines in the stations. Bills or coins from ¥1 - ¥20 are accepted at ticket vending machines. You can change smaller bills at the customer service counter. The ticket is a small plastic token, which you use at the gate entering the platform, and at the exit. Multi-Pass and Yang-Cheng-Tong are also accepted and can be purchased at the customer service counter.<sup>[5]</sup>

## By bus

There is also a comprehensive public bus service that covers Guangzhou from end to end. By far, it is the cheapest way to move around. Bus fares are ¥1 for the older buses and ¥2 for the air-conditioned ones, although the older buses are slowly being retired.

There are also 3 tourist bus lines, passing through many scenic spots in the city.

## By taxi

This is the most popular way for foreigners to get around, and it is very affordable. The starting charge is ¥7 for the first 2.3 kilometers, or about 1.4 miles. After that is ¥2.6 for each kilometer. The cost may be slightly different, depending on the taxi operators. ¥1 fuel surcharge is now added. Although widely publicized, many of them actually do not accept Yang Cheng Tong as payment. The taxi hot line is 96900. This comes in handy when you forget your valuables in a taxi. Save your receipt because it contains the taxi's identification number.

**Tip:** Business names and addresses on this guide are also in Chinese. Print them out and show them to the taxi drivers. Most drivers do not speak English; many not even Cantonese.

## By car

While driving in Guangzhou is an option, drivers unfamiliar with the driving conditions in China's large and densely populated cities should be aware that the experience can be a extremely daunting and even potentially dangerous.

## By motorcycle

Although a convenient way to navigate the city's back alleys and lanes, motorcycles are totally banned from the downtown area of city, and riding a motorcycle into these prohibited areas can lead to fines and possible confiscation of the bike.

## Yang Cheng Tong



If you intend to stay in Guangzhou for an extensive period of time, it is highly advisable to purchase a multi-purpose Yang Cheng Tong (羊城通) stored value card, similar to the Octopus Card in [Hong Kong](#). It can be used not only for public transportation (bus, subway, parking meters and some taxis), but also for public phones and designated shops, places of interests and certain vending machines. The card includes a ¥30 refundable deposit.

While you can purchase the cards in many places, returning your card at the end of the trip is a hassle, since service locations are limited. The best place to do so is at the service center at the metro Gong Yuan Qian station. It may be worth it to simply keep it as a souvenir.

## Talk

The primary language of Guangzhou is Cantonese, although standard Mandarin, or *Putonghua*, is fast becoming the *lingua franca* due to the large influx of migrants. English is not common, but is still better

understood than in most other Chinese cities, especially in restaurants and bars. Be sure to check out the [Cantonese phrasebook](#) and [Chinese phrasebook](#).

## See

### Landmarks



*Sun Yat Sen Memorial*

- **Guangxiao Temple** (光孝寺 *guā ng-xiào-sì*) 109 Guangxiao Lu (光孝路). As the sixth patriarch of Zen Buddhism, Hui Neng, trained at this temple in the 7th Century, it is a popular pilgrimage site for Zen Buddhists. The temple has been destroyed several times by fire, and the current buildings date only from the

mid 19th century. (Admission ¥4) [Metro 1 Xi Men Kou - Exit C]

- **Liurong Temple** (六榕寺 *liù-róng-sì*) 87 Liurong Lu (六榕路). The Temple of Six Banyan Trees, which includes the 17 story, eight-sided Hua Ta, or Flowering Pagoda, is one of the most popular attractions in Guangzhou. The temple dates back to the 6th century, while the pagoda predates it by about 300 years. (Admission ¥5; Flower Pagoda: ¥10) [Metro 1 Gong Yuan Qian - Exit I]
- The buildings and streets of the former British and French concession on **Shamian Island** (沙面岛) have been beautifully renovated, creating an oasis of tranquility in an otherwise bustling and hectic metropolis. One of the old structures is **Our Lady of Lourdes Chapel**, located at 14 Shamian Street. Attractions on the island are all free.[Metro 1 Huang Sha - Exit D]
- **Sun Yat-Sen Memorial Hall** (中山纪念堂 *zhō ng-shā n-jì-niàn-táng*), located on Dongfeng Zhong Lu, is dedicated to the founder of the Republic of China and local hero Dr. Sun Yat-Sen. It was constructed in 1931 and built on the original site of Sun Yat-sen's presidential office on Yuexiu Hill. (8AM-6PM; Admission ¥5 to the park; ¥20 to go inside the hall) [Metro 2 Ji Nian Tang - Exit C]
- **Chen Clan Temple** (陈家祠 *chén-jia -cí*) [6] Zhongshan 7 Lu (中山七路) This is a very well preserved architecture from the 19th century. It used to belong to a wealthy family by the name of Chen and now houses many articles including ivory sculptures and artistic statues. (Admission ¥10) [Metro 1 Chen Jia Ci - Exit D]
- **Shishi Sacred Heart Catholic Church** (石室圣心大教堂 *shí-shì-shèng-xī n-jiao-táng*) 56 Yide Lu (一德路旧部前). It is one of the oldest church structures in the city, and the largest of its kind of



Southern China. It is currently in use for worship. Visiting hours are limited to Sunday morning only from 7AM-10AM. (Admission: Free) [Metro 2 Hai Zhu Guang Chang]

- **Huangpu Military Academy** (黄埔军校旧址 *huáng-pǔ -jǔ n-xiào-jiù-zhǐ*) is located on Changzhou Island. It was founded in 1924 by Sun Yat-sen, along with the Chinese Communist Party at the time. Many famous Chinese war heroes were trained here. (Admission ¥15)
- **Wu Xian Guan Temple** (五仙观 *wǔ -xiā n-guā n*) Weifu Xi Lu (惠福西路). (Admission ¥5) [Metro 1 Xi Men Kou Exit C]
- **Huasheng Mosque** (怀圣寺 *huái-shèng-sì*) 56 Guangta Lu (光塔路) It is one of the oldest Muslim mosques in China, built in 627. The mosque is not open to the public, but you can take a peek outside. [Metro 1 Xi Men Kou Exit C]
- **Sanyuan Temple** (三元宫 *sā n-yuán-gō ng*) Yingyuan Lu. This is the largest and oldest Taoist temple in the city. [Metro 2 Ji Nian Tang - Exit C]
- **Xiguan Residence** (西关大屋 *xī -guā n-dà-wū*) See the traditional Cantonese architectures from ancient Guangzhou, used to be occupied by the upper class. [Metro 1, Chang Shou Lu]



*Our Lady of Lourdes Cathedral, on Shamian Island*

- **Hualin Temple** (华林寺 *huá-lín-sì*) [Tour Bus No. 2; Metro 1, Chang Shou Lu]

## Museums and galleries

- **Guangzhou City Art Museum** (广州美术馆 *guǎ ng-zhō u-mě i-shù-guǎ n*), located near the Zhehai Building in Yuexiu Park, this impressive gallery has more than 10,000 pieces of art work, including calligraphy, traditional Chinese paintings, sculptures

and Tibetan Buddhist art (*Thangka*). [Metro 2 Yue Xiu Gong Yuan]

- **Guangdong Museum of Art** (广东美术馆 *guǎ ng-dō ng-mě i-shù-guǎ n*), 8 Yanyu Lu, Er-sha Island [7]. 9AM-5PM, Tu-Su. The museum is located on Er-Sha Island focusing on contemporary Chinese art, with particular emphasis on Guangdong artists. (Admission ¥15; under 18: free with paying parents) [Tour Bus No.2]
- **Nanyue Royal Tomb Museum** (南越王墓 *nán-yuè-wáng-mù*), 867 Jiefang Bei Lu (解放北路867号) - across from Yuexiu Park. This is a tomb of a king of ancient South China. (9AM-5:30PM; ¥12, 20 8666 0885) [Metro 2 Yue Xiu Gong Yuan]
- **Guangzhou Sculpture Park** (广州雕塑公园 *guǎ ng-zhō u-diā o-sù-gō ng-yuán*), Tongxin Lu at the foot of Baiyun Mountain. [Tour Bus No. 1, 3]
- **President Sun Yat-Sen Museum** (孙中山大元帅府纪念馆) [8] 18 Dongsha Jie, Fangzhi Lu (纺织路东沙街18号). +86 20 3428-1366. (Admission ¥6; 9am-5pm; closed Monday)

- **Guangzhou Uprising Museum** (广州起义旧址纪念馆) 200 Qiyi Lu (起义路200号). The Museum is at the site of the first Communist government building. (9am—12pm; 1:30pm-4:30pm; closed Monday). [Metro 1, 2 Gong Yuan Qian Exit J]
- **Guangdong Revolutions History Museum** (广东革命历史博物馆) 2 Lingyuan Xi Lu [b8907[p (陵园西路2号大院之2). Sun Yat-Sen was sworn in here in 1921 as the president of Republic of China. The museum tells stories from the Opium War to the founding of the new China. [Metro 2 Lie Shi Ling Yuan Exit D]
- **Peasant Movement Institute** (农民运动讲习所 *nóng-jiǎ ng-suǒ*) 42 Zhongshan 4 Lu (中山四路42号). This is the original site of Communist training center founded by Mao Tse-tong in the 1920s. Now it is a museum covering the recent China revolutionary history. (9am-4:30pm; closed Monday) [Metro 1, Nong Jiang Suo Exit C]

## Parks

- **Huanghua Gang Commemoration Park** (黄花岗公园 *huáng-huā -gǎ ng-gō ng-yuán*) [9] 79 Xianlie Zhonglu. This is a park set in a poignant mood. The main attraction is the monument built to commemorate the 72 martyrs who died during the 1911 uprising. (6:00AM-8:30PM; Phone: +86 20 3758-8321; Admission ¥8) [Tour Bus No. 1]
- **Yuexiu Park** (越秀公园 *yuè-xiù-gō ng-yuán*) [10] the largest urban park in China, is a lush green area that flows over acres of hills and includes several lakes, the Ming Dynasty Zhenhai Tower (镇海楼 *zhèn-hǎ i-lóu*), now home to the City Museum with relics dating back to the 15th century, and an up-to-date miniature of Guangzhou. Also here in this park is the Stone Statue of the Five



*Yuntai Garden*

Rams (五羊石像), the symbol of Guangzhou (For more details, see 'History' section of [Understand](#)). (6AM-9PM; Admission: ¥5; Zhenhai Tower: ¥10) [Metro 2 Yue Xiu Gong Yuan Exit B1]

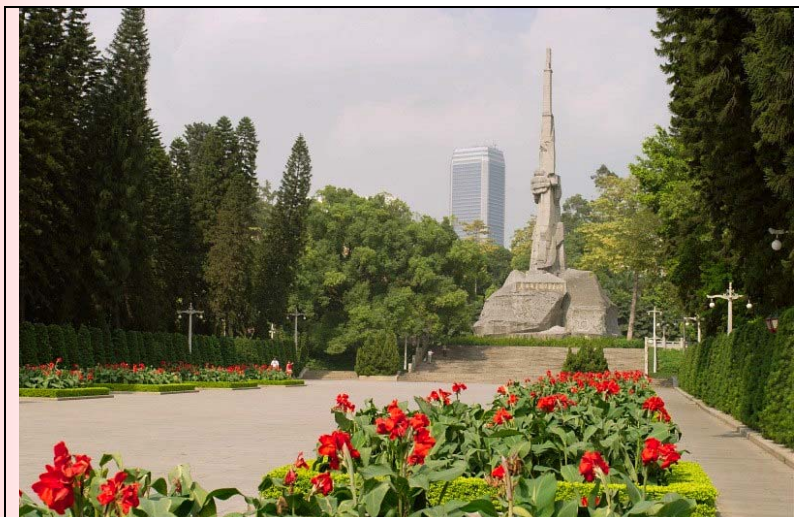
- **Yuntai Garden** (云台花园 *yún-tái-huā -yuán*) is situated at the foot of Baiyun (White Cloud)

Mountain, famous for its wide variety of rare flowers and trees. From now to January 8, 2007, there is a beautiful 3-D flower exhibit. During this period, admission is ¥20, but it is well worth it. (Admission ¥10) [Tour Bus No. 1, 3]

- **Huadu Square** (花都广场 *huā -dū -guǎ ng-chǎ ng*) is a park-cum-recreation square located in the north part the city and near the government office buildings of Huadu District (花都区). The

square incorporates, among other attractions, an outdoor theater, large fountain, outdoor dance area and statues. There is a large grass area that is similar to a Western style meadow, and also an area of subtropical forest and ornamental flower beds.

- **Xiangjiang Wild Animal Safari Park** (香江野生动物世界 *xiā ng-jiā ng-yě -shē ng-dòng-wù-shì-jiè*) is in Panyu district.



*Communist monument in Martyrs' Memorial Garden*

**Park** (广州世界大观 *guǎ ng-zhō u-shì-jiè-dà-guā n*) [11] 888 (天河东圃大观园南路888号). 8:30AM-5:30PM. [Bus 548, 224, 245]

- **Guangzhou Martyrs' Memorial Garden** (广州起义烈士陵园 *guǎ ng-zhō u-qǐ -yì-liè-shì-líng-yuán*) Zhongshan 2 Lu (中山二路). The park was dedicated to those who fought and died in the Communist Uprising in 1927. [Metro 1 Lie Shi Ling Yuan Exit D]
- **Grand World Scenic** Daguan Yuan Nan Lu

## Mountains

- The **Baiyun Shan (White Cloud Mountain)** (白云山 *bái-yún-shā n*) [12] is a great place to relax and enjoy a day among lush, rolling hills. It also offers great views over the city. The road to the top is restricted to park trams and pedestrians. To get to the top lookout point, you can use the main roads or trails. There are many places to rest and refreshments are available along the way. It is a great place to see people enjoying nature and playing games, such as badminton, football (soccer) and even bungee jump. There are many bus routes to and from different parts of the city, as well as taxis usually available near the park gate. (6AM-7PM; Park entrance ¥5; Cable Car: ¥40 round trip; tram: from ¥20; other attractions ¥5-¥10) [Tour Bus No. 1, 3]
- **Lianhua Shan (Lotus Mountain)** (莲花山 *lián-huā -shā n*) features an impressive quarry from which red sand stones were mined about 2,000 years ago, a pagoda from 1612, and a barrack from 1664. The obligatory statue of Guanyin, the Buddhist Goddess of compassion, at the side of the Buddhist temple is also not to be missed. From Guangzhou, take bus 308 or 302 and exchange bus at **Panyu** (番禺). The bus takes about 2 hours and costs ¥14. There is a ferry service from Guangzhou at Tianzi Pier (天字码头) at Beijing Lu Nan (北京路南) for ¥25. The boat leaves at 8:15AM and returns at 3:15PM (Admission ¥30).



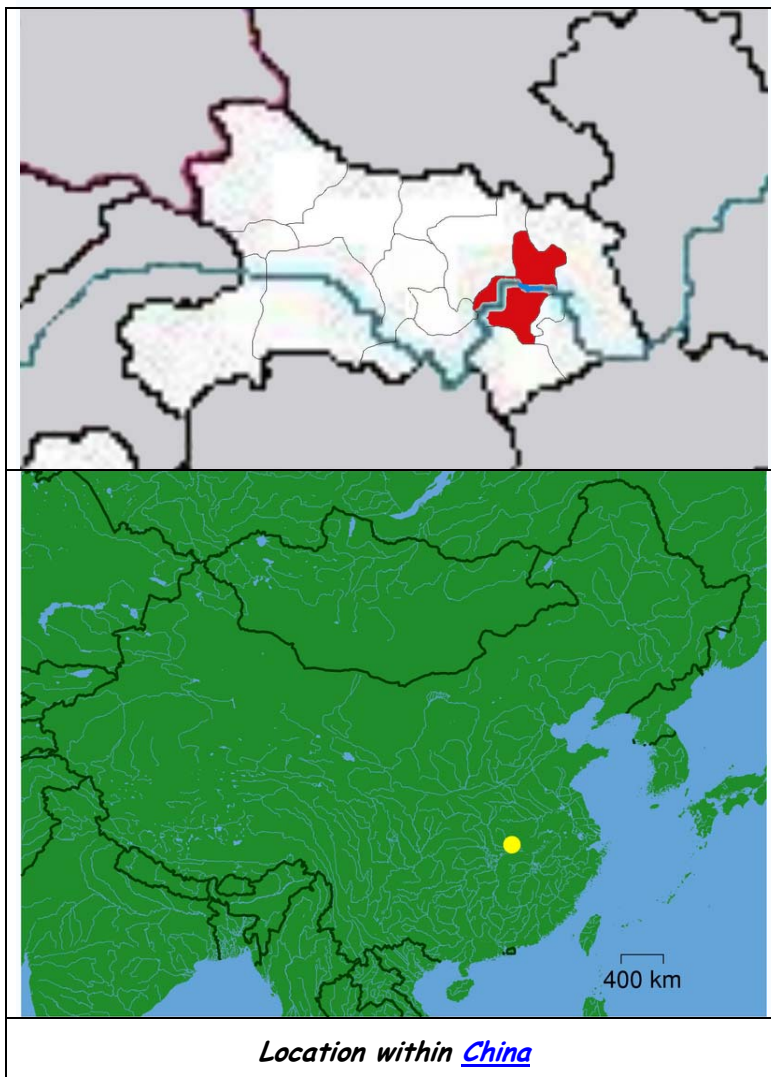
# Wuhan

<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wuhan>

## Wuhan

From Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia

For the *brand* of *cymbal*, see *Wuhan cymbals*.



**Wuhan** ([help](#)·[info](#)) ([Simplified Chinese](#): 武汉; [Traditional Chinese](#): 武漢; [pinyin](#): Wǔ hàn) is the capital of [Hubei](#) province, and is the most populous city in central [China](#). It lies at the confluence of the [Yangtze](#) and [Han River](#). It has a population of approximately 9,100,000 people ([2006](#)). In the [1920s](#), Wuhan was the capital of a leftist [Chinese Nationalist](#) government led by [Wang Jingwei](#) in opposition to [Chiang Kai-shek](#). It is considered, in American terms, as the "Chicago of China."

### Contents

- [1 Geography](#)
- [2 History](#)
- [3 Transport](#)
  - [3.1 First bridge](#)
  - [3.2 The second bridge](#)
  - [3.3 The third bridge](#)
  - [3.4 Railway station](#)
  - [3.5 Wuhan Metro](#)
- [4 Tourist sites](#)
- [5 Economy](#)
- [6 Colleges and universities](#)
  - [6.1 National](#)
  - [6.2 Public](#)
- [7 Language](#)
- [8 Folklore](#)
- [9 Popular foods](#)
- [10 Famous people](#)
- [11 Astronomical phenomena](#)
- [12 Soccer](#)
- [13 Sister Cities](#)
- [14 See also](#)
- [15 References](#)
- [16 External links](#)



*Modern and ancient*

## Geography

The metropolitan area consists of three parts - [Wuchang](#), [Hankou](#), and [Hanyang](#), commonly called the "Three Towns of Wuhan" (hence the name "Wuhan", combining "Wu" from the first city and "Han" from the other two). These three parts face each other across the rivers and are linked by bridges, including one of the first modern bridges in China, known as the *First Bridge*. It is simple in geographical structure - low and flat in the middle and hilly in the south, with the Yangtze and Han rivers winding through the city.

## History

The area was first settled more than 3,000 years ago.

During the [Han Dynasty](#), Hanyang became a fairly busy port. In the [3rd century AD](#), walls were built to protect Hanyang (AD [206](#)) and Wuchang (AD [223](#)). The latter event marks the foundation of Wuhan. In AD [223](#), the [Yellow Crane Tower](#) (黄鹤楼) was constructed on the Wuchang side of the Yangtze River. [Cui Hao](#), a celebrated poet of [Tang Dynasty](#), visited the building in the early 8th Century; his poem made the building the most celebrated building in southern China. The city has long been renowned as a center



*View from the Yellow Crane Tower*

for the arts (especially poetry) and for intellectual studies. Under the Mongol ruler ([Yuan Dynasty](#)), Wuchang was promoted to the status of provincial capital. By approximately 300 years ago, Hankou had become one of the country's top four trading towns.

In the late 1800s railroads were extended on a north-south axis through this city, which then became an important

transshipment point between rail and river traffic. At this time foreign powers extracted mercantile concessions, with the riverfront of Hankou being divided up into various foreign controlled merchant districts. These districts contained trading firm offices, warehouses, and docking facilities.

In [1911](#), [Sun Yat-sen](#)'s followers launched the [Wuchang Uprising](#) that led to the collapse of the [Qing Dynasty](#) and the establishment of the [Republic of China](#). Wuhan was the capital of a leftist [Kuomintang](#) government led by [Wang Jingwei](#) in opposition to [Chiang Kai-shek](#) during the 1920s.

In [1938](#), Wuhan and its proximities became the battlefield of the [Battle of Wuhan](#), a major conflict in the [Second Sino-Japanese War](#). After being taken by the Japanese in 1938, Wuhan became a major Japanese logistics center for operations in southern China. In December 1944, the city was largely destroyed in U.S. firebombing raids conducted by the 14th Army Air Force.



*Wuhan Custom House, opened in [1862](#)*

The city has been subject to numerous devastating floods, which are supposed to be controlled by the ambitious [Three Gorges Dam](#). That project is set to be completed in 2009, but is plagued by environmental, technical, and social issues.

## Transport

### First bridge

The *First Chang River Bridge* at Wuhan was built over the [Yangtze River](#) (Chang Jiang) in [1957](#), carrying the [railroad](#) directly across the river between Snake Hill (on the left in the picture below) and Turtle Hill. Before this bridge was built it could take up to an entire day to [barge](#) railcars across. Including its approaches, it is 5,511 feet (1680 m) long, and it accommodates both a double-track railway on a lower deck and a four lane roadway above.



*The First Bridge at Wuhan. This view is upstream, toward the distant [Three Gorges](#) and [Chongqing](#)*

### The second bridge

The second bridge, a [cable-stayed](#) bridge, built of pre-stressed concrete, has a central span of 400 meters. The Wuhan Second Changjiang Bridge is 4,678 meters in length (including 1,877 meters of the main bridge) and 26.5 to 33.5 meters in width. Its main bridgeheads are 90 meters high each, pulling 392

thick slanting cables together in the shape of double fans, so that the central span of the bridge is well poised on the piers and the bridge's stability and vibration resistance are ensured. With six lanes on the deck, the bridge is designed to handle 50,000 motor vehicles passing every day.

## The third bridge

The Third Wuhan Changjiang Bridge was completed in September 2000. Located 8.6 kilometers southwest of the First Bridge, construction of Baishazhou Bridge started in 1997. With an investment of over 1.4 billion yuan (about 170 million U.S. dollars), the bridge, which is 3,586 meters long and 26.5 meters wide, has six lanes and has a capacity of 50,000 vehicles a day. The bridge is expected to serve as a major passage for the future Wuhan Ring Road, enormously easing the city's traffic and aiding local economic development.

## Railway station

In 2006, construction was starting on a new railway station with 11 platforms.

## Wuhan Metro

In September 2004, Wuhan became the sixth Chinese city with a metro (after [Beijing](#), [Tianjin](#), [Shanghai](#), [Guangzhou](#) and [Shenzhen](#)). The first 10.2km line (10 stations) is an elevated metro (and therefore called 'light rail' in Chinese terminology). It runs from Huangpu to Zongguan in the downtown area of the Hankou District, and it is the first one in the country to use a communication-based train control system, provided by [Alcatel]. The designed minimum interval is only 90 seconds between two trains and driverless operation.

## Tourist sites



*Replica instruments of ancient originals are played at the Hubei Provincial Museum. A spectacular replica set of bronze concert bells is in the background and a set of stone chimes is to the right*

- At [Wuchang](#) you can find East Lake, the largest lake within a city in China.



- The Hubei Provincial Museum includes many artifacts excavated from ancient tombs, including a magnificent and unique concert bell set. A dance and orchestral show is given here, using reproductions of the original instruments.
- The Rock and Bonsai Museum includes a magnificent mounted [platybelodon](#) skeleton, many unique and finely figured rocks, a giant quartz crystal (as large as an automobile) and an outdoor garden with miniature trees in the [penjing](#) ("Chinese Bonsai") style.
- Some luxury [Riverboat](#) tours begin here after a flight from [Beijing](#) or [Shanghai](#), with several days of flatland cruising and then climbing through the [Three Gorges](#) with passage upstream past the [Gezhouba](#) and [Three Gorges](#) dams to the city of [Chongqing](#). With the completion of the dam a number of cruises now start from the upstream side and continue east, with tourists traveling by motor coach from Wuhan. Although there is no longer the excitement of fast water cruising through the three gorges, and some of the historic wall carvings will soon be underwater, much of the drama of the high cliffs and narrow passages remains.



*Ancient bronze concert bells at the Hubei Provincial Museum*

- The Yellow Crane Tower (aka. Huanghelou), modern in structure, ancient in lore and legend. The original tower is presumed to have been first built in approximately 220 AD. The tower has been destroyed and reconstructed numerous times, was burned last in [1884](#). Complete reconstruction took place in [1981](#). The reconstruction utilized modern materials and even includes an elevator, yet in outward

appearance and detail is true in spirit to the traditional design of the tower through the centuries.

- [Jiqing Street](#)(吉庆街), a street full of road side restaurants and street performers during the evening, well-known by Chinese due to a novel Live Show (生活秀) with stories of events on this street by [Chi Li](#). It's a great place to know how locals live, eat, and to enjoy some local performance. Each song costs around 10 RMB, and you can order 3 songs with 20 RMB, provided you know those song names in Chinese. Performances include [pop music](#), [folk songs](#), [rock'n'roll](#), [stand-up comedy](#), and so on, mostly in Mandarin or local dialect.

## Economy

Wuhan is a [sub-provincial city](#). Its GDP was RMB 223.8 billion and GDP per capita was approximately RMB 26,000 (US\$3,245) in 2005.<sup>[1]</sup> In 2005, the city's average [disposable income](#) was 10,850 yuan, up 13.4% from a year earlier.<sup>[2]</sup>

Wuhan has currently attracted about 50 [French](#) invested companies, over one third of French investment in China, the most among Chinese cities.<sup>[1]</sup>

Wuhan has a solid economic foundation. It is an important functional center for economy, trade, finance, transportation, information and technology and education in Central China. Its major sectors include



*Yellow Crane Tower*

modem manufacture industry with optic-electronic information, auto- mobile manufacture as the key components, steel manufacturing, new pharmaceutical sector, biology engineering, new material industry, environmental protection. Wuhan Iron & Steel (Group) Co. and Dongfeng-Citroen Automobile Co., Ltd settle in this city. Besides, there are in this city 35 higher educational institutions including the well-known Wuhan University, Huazhong University of Science & Technology, 3 state-level development zones and many enterprise incubators. The comprehensive strength of science and technology ranks the third in China. <sup>[3]</sup>

## Colleges and universities

There are eight national colleges and universities<sup>[2]</sup>, and fourteen public colleges and universities<sup>[3]</sup> in Wuhan.

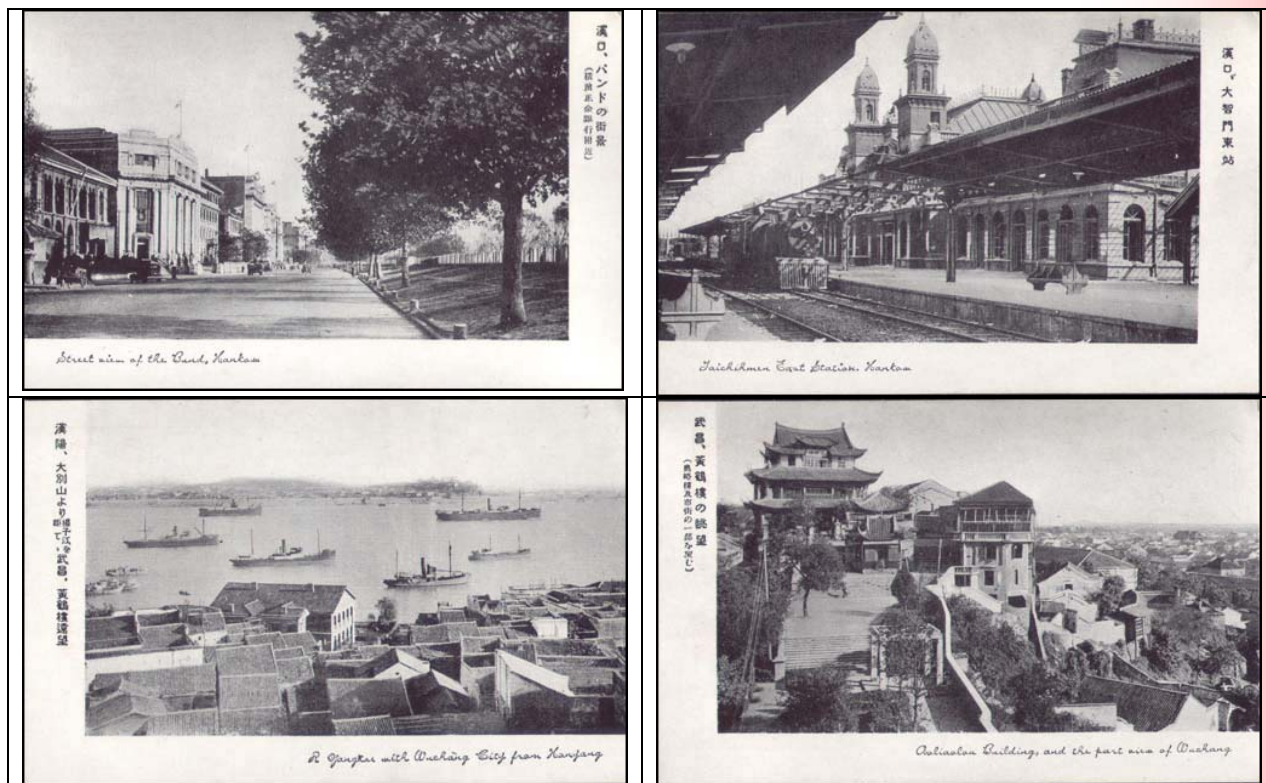
### National

<a href="#">Wuhan University</a> (founded in 1893) <a href="#">武汉大学</a>	<a href="#">Huazhong University of Science and Technology</a> <a href="#">华中科技大学</a>	<a href="#">China University of Geosciences</a> <a href="#">中国地质大学 (武汉)</a>	<a href="#">Wuhan University of Technology</a> <a href="#">武汉理工大学</a>
<a href="#">Huazhong Agricultural University</a> (founded in 1898) <a href="#">华中农业大学</a>	<a href="#">Central China Normal University</a> <a href="#">华中师范大学</a>	<a href="#">Zhongnan University of Economics and Law</a> <a href="#">中南财经政法大学</a>	<a href="#">South-Central University for Nationalities</a> <a href="#">中南民族大学</a>

## Public

Hubei University <a href="#">湖北大学</a>	Wuhan University of Science and Technology <a href="#">武汉科技大学</a>	Jiangnan University <a href="#">江汉大学</a>	Hubei University of Technology <a href="#">湖北工业大学</a>
Wuhan Institute of Technology <a href="#">武汉工程大学</a>	Wuhan University of Science and Engineering <a href="#">武汉科技学院</a>	Wuhan Polytechnic University <a href="#">武汉工业学院</a>	Hubei College of Traditional Chinese Medicine <a href="#">湖北中医学院</a>
Wuhan Institute of Physical Education <a href="#">武汉体育学院</a>	Hubei Institute of Fine Arts <a href="#">湖北美术学院</a>	Hubei Police College <a href="#">湖北警官学院</a>	Wuhan Conservatory of Music <a href="#">武汉音乐学院</a>
Hubei University of Economics <a href="#">湖北经济学院</a>	Wuhan Bioengineering Institute <a href="#">武汉生物工程学院</a>		

Note: Institutions without full-time bachelor programs are not listed.







## Language

Wuhan natives speak a dialect of Southwestern [Mandarin Chinese](#). Because it also has a blend of southern Chinese elements, the Wuhan dialect was once promoted as the ideal basis for a standard Chinese dialect. [Standard Chinese](#) however is now based on the [Beijing dialect](#).

## Folklore

Because of its hot summer weather, Wuhan is known as one of the [Four Furnaces](#) of China, along with [Nanjing](#), [Nanchang](#) and [Chongqing](#). Wuhan is by far the hottest of the Four Furnaces; the average temperature in July is 37.2°C (99°F), and the maximum often exceeds 40°C (104°F).

The [Lute Platform](#) in [Hanyang](#) was where the legendary musician [Yu Boya](#) is said to have played. Yu Boya played for the last time over the grave of his friend [Zhong Ziqi](#), then smashed his lute because the only person able to appreciate his music was dead.

## Popular foods

- [Hot and Dry Noodle, "Re gan mian"](#) (热干面) is a kind of noodle which is very popular in this city. The Chinese word "Re" means hot and "gan" means dry. The most 'Wuhaneseful' food.
- [Duck's Neck, "Ya Bo Zi"](#) (鸭脖子) is a local version of this popular Chinese dish, made of duck necks and spices.
- [Bead Pan, "Dou Pi"](#) (豆皮) is a popular local dish with a soy skin containing egg, rice, beef, mushrooms and beans.
- [Soup Bun, "Tang Bao"](#) (汤包) is a kind of dumpling with thin skin made of flour, steamed with very juicy meat inside, it is called Tang(soup)Bao(bun) is this, because every time one takes a bite from it the soup inside spills out.
- [Salty Doughnut, "Mian Wo"](#)(面窝) is a kind of doughnut with salty taste. It's much thinner than common doughnut, and is a typical Wuhan local food.

## Famous people

- Dong Bi Wu was the first judge for the highest court in the People's Republic of China. He founded the famous school Wuhan high school in 1920.
- Modern Writer Chi Li is from Wuhan.
- Tennis Players [Li Na](#) and [Li Ting](#) are from Wuhan and reside in [Hankou](#).
- Olympic gold medal [diver Fu Mingxia](#) is from Wuhan and resided in [Hankou](#).
- Famous table tennis player [Qiao Hong](#) is from Wuhan.
- Vice Premier and Minister Of Health of China Wu Yi, is a native of Wuhan. She was ranked the 2nd Most Powerful Woman in the World by Forbes.com
- Famous actress Xu Fan is from Wuhan.
- [Olympic Games](#) medal winner [diver Hailiang Xiao](#) is from Wuhan.

## Astronomical phenomena

- The next total [solar eclipse](#) fully visible at Wuhan will be the [Solar eclipse of 2009-Jul-22](#) to occur on [July 22, 2009](#)
- The last total solar eclipse fully visible at Wuhan was on [September 21, 1941](#)

## Soccer

In May [2006](#) top Chinese [soccer](#) team [Wuhan Huanghelou](#) announced that they had formed a lucrative deal with top [English](#) team [Bolton Wanderers](#) which would see both coaching and commercial methods exchanged.

## Sister Cities

-  [Arnhem](#), [Netherlands](#), since June [1999](#)
-  [Bordeaux](#), [France](#), since [June 18, 1998](#)
-  [Cheongju](#), [Republic of Korea](#), since [October 29, 2000](#)
-  [Christchurch](#), [New Zealand](#), since [April 4, 2006](#)
-  [Duisburg](#), [Germany](#), since [October 8, 1982](#)
-  [Galați](#), [Romania](#), since [August 12, 1987](#)
-  [Győr](#), [Hungary](#), since [October 19, 1995](#)
-  [Khartoum](#), [Sudan](#), since [September 27, 1995](#)
-  [Kiev](#), [Ukraine](#), since [October 19, 1990](#)
-  [Manchester](#), [United Kingdom](#), since [September 16, 1986](#)
-  [Markham](#), [Canada](#), since [September 12, 2006](#)
-  [Ōita](#), [Japan](#), since [September 7, 1979](#)
-  [Pittsburgh](#), [United States of America](#), since [September 8, 1982](#)
-  [Sankt Pölten](#), [Austria](#), since [December 20, 2005](#)

## See also

- [List of cities in the People's Republic of China by population](#)
- [List of current and former capitals of subnational entities of China](#)
- [Wuhan Hospital for Children's Welfare](#)

## References

1. <sup>^</sup> People's Daily Online ([2005-10-25](#)). [Wuhan absorbs most French investment in China](#). *People's Daily*. Retrieved on [2006-10-23](#).
2. <sup>^</sup> [National Colleges and Universities \(in Simple Chinese\)](#). *Hubei Provincial Department of Education* ([2006-08-31](#)).
3. <sup>^</sup> [Public Colleges and Universities \(in Simple Chinese\)](#). *Hubei Provincial Department of Education* ([2006-08-31](#)).

## External links

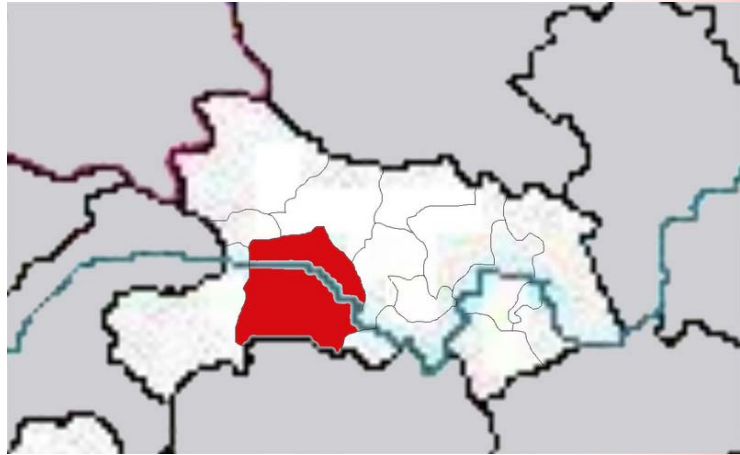
- [Official site, in English](#)
- [Wuhan city guide](#)
- [Google map centered on \*First Bridge\*](#)
- [www.wh.gov.cn](http://www.wh.gov.cn)
- [Experience Wuhan](#)

## Yichang

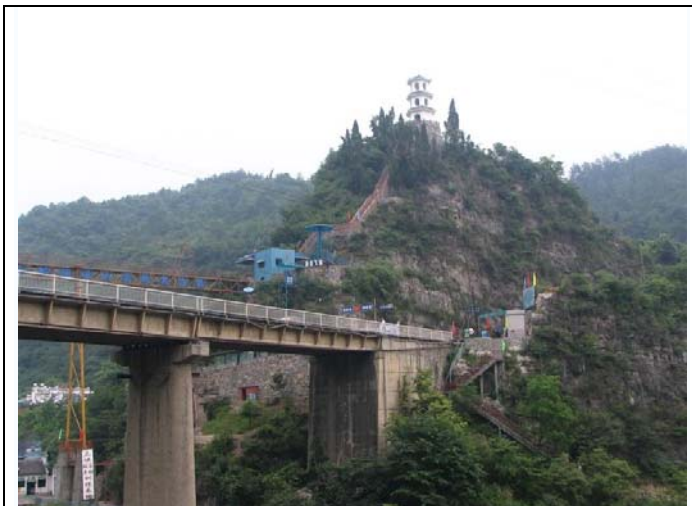
<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Yichang>

# Yichang

From Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia



Yichang ([Chinese](#): 宜昌; [pinyin](#): Yíchā ng) is a city in the [Hubei](#) province of [China](#).



*A temple in Yichang*

## Contents

- [1 Geography](#)
- [2 Demographics](#)
- [3 Economy](#)
- [4 History](#)

## Geography

Yichang covers 21,084 km². It sits in western Hubei Province at the eastern end of the [Xiling Gorge](#) (西陵峡), one of the [Three](#)

[Gorges](#) on the [Yangtze River](#). The temperature averages 16-18°C.

## Demographics

Yichang has a population of 3.89 million and is inhabited by the [Tujia](#) ethnic group. The city itself has 600,000 inhabitants. Yichang is also a place connecting the cultures of [Ba](#) in the west (an ancient state in the eastern part of what is now [Sichuan](#) Province) and the [Chu State](#) in the east (an ancient state in what is now Hubei Province and northern [Hunan](#) Province).

## Economy

Yichang has long been a major transit port and distribution center of goods. It is fueled by the Gezhouba Hydra Project ([Gezhouba Dam](#)) and the [Three Gorges Dam](#), which is 40 km upstream.



*3 gorges dam part of Yichang district*

## History

In ancient times Yichang was known as Yiling. There are historical records telling that in the year [278 BC](#) during the [Warring States period](#) the [Qin](#) general [Bai Qi](#) set fire to Yiling. Yichang was also the site of a famous battle during the [Three Kingdoms](#) era, the [Battle of Yiling](#).

In [1876](#), under the [Qing](#) Emperor [Guangxu](#), Yichang [was opened to foreign trade](#) as a trading port after the [Second](#)

[Opium War](#) with [Britain](#). The imperial government set up a navigation company there. Wharves were built as well, but before 1949 the wharf area was only less than half a kilometer in length. After 1949, more than 50 wharves have been constructed at the port so that its wharf area is now over 15 km long. There are the [shiplocks](#) at [Gezhouba Water Control Project](#).



# Yichang

Situated at the eastern mouth of the gorges, Yichang is the administrative centre of nine surrounding counties. Its population is engaged in light industry, chemical and steel production. The construction of the Gezhou Dam helped Yichang to grow from a small town of 30,000 into a city. The Three Gorges Dam is only 44 kilometres (27 miles) upstream. Thus although some houses and factories will be submerged, a plethora of new buildings has been built higher up, in anticipation of the economic boom in the Yichang administrative region.

## HISTORY OF YICHANG

History records that as early as 278 BC the town was razed to the ground in a battle between the armies of Chu and Qin. In the Three Kingdoms period 50,000 Wu troops set fire to the encampments of the Shu army, utterly routing Liu Bei. Who retreated upriver to Baidi Cheng.

Yichang became a treaty port in April 1877, in accordance with the Chefoo(Yantai) Convention of 1876 signed with Britain and continued to be the furthest inland treaty port for many years, as large merchant and passenger vessels were not yet able to navigate the gorges upstream to



Chongqing. Here, cargo was unloaded from the larger boats plying the stretch of river between Yichang and Wuhan, and reloaded onto smaller ones running between Yichang and Chongqing.

An American traveller in 1921 described the port as 'crowded, incessantly busy, a perfect maelstrom of sampans, junks, lighters with cargo, steamers and gunboats.' Eventually technology enabled ships to continue the journey upstream and Chongqing itself became a treaty port in 1891. The English trader Archibald Little, noting his expenses for a night's stay in the treaty port, showed how far four English pennies went in late 19th-century Yichang and incidentally his solicitude for his servant:

Supper for self and coolie, 4 bowls of rice at 110 cash (copper cash),



'fixings' of cabbage and bean curd free	40
Use of straw-plaited mattress for ditto, 2 at 10	20
Breakfast, same as supper	40
Supper and breakfast for 'Nigger', my dog .	20
Pair of straw sandals for coolie (his old ones being worn out)	12
 Total 132 copper cash, or, in English money, 4d	 132

During the warlord years of the early part of this century, Yichang revenue was greatly boosted by taxes imposed on boats carrying home-grown opium from Yunnan and Guizhou Provinces by its Opium Suppression Bureau. During the war with Japan, the gorges above Yichang again acted as a barrier. When Wuhan fell to the Japanese in 1938, Yichang became the centre for shipping essential personnel, machinery, libraries and museum collections up the Yangtze to Chongqing. After the Battle of Yichang in 1940 the Japanese capture of Yichang marked their furthest westward advance. The Japanese also used Yichang as a staging area for bombing raids over Chongqing.

## WHAT TO SEE IN YICHANG

The streets of the old town centre are lined with trees. Though the city wall was pulled down in 1929, the street names still indicate where it once stood (Eastern Ring Road, Southern Ring Road and so on). The main market is found just off Jiefang Lu. Along the waterfront a few old foreign buildings of the treaty port days can be seen.

Apart from the Gezhou Dam , tourists may also visit the Three Travellers' Cave, ten kilometres (six miles) northwest of the city. In 819, three Tang-dynasty poets, Bai Zhuyi, his brother Bai Xingjian and Yuan Zhen, met up in Yichang and made an excursion to this site. While enjoying the spectacular scenery, they inscribed some poems on the cave walls. Afterwards they were dubbed the 'First Three Travellers'. In the Song dynasty (960-1279) the famous literary family of Su--the father and two sons--on their way to the capital to take the imperial examinations, visited the cave and added poems as well. All three passed the imperial examinations at the same time. People call these gentlemen the 'Second Three Travellers'. Throughout the ages, other visiting literati and officials have left their contributions on the cave walls.

A small spring trickles through the rock near the entrance, local superstition maintains that if women wash their hands in its pure water it will improve their culinary skills. The hill above the cave presents a fine view of the entrance to Xiling Gorge :The Zixi Pavilion contains a memorial stone to the 11th-century philosopher Ouyang Xiu, who lived in Yichang for three years. Near-by is a drum platform said to be the site where Zhang Fei (see page 42), a general of the third--century Kingdom of Shu, beat his battle drums.

Visitors are usually taken on a Short excursion along a mountain road offering stunning views of Xiling Gorge, and passing several peaks, including Filial Mountain and Camel Mountain. The road continues

over a natural stone bridge, which was originally--so legend has it--a fairy's silken sash, thrown up to help her mortal husband ascend to heaven with her. The stone gateway and its steep stone steps delineate the ancient land route crossed by travellers to western Hubei and Sichuan.

Below Yichang lies the bluff known as Tiger's Teeth Gorge which, for travellers upriver, is the first glimpse of sights to come.

# Yichang – Basic Facts

## Location



Yichang City is located at Longitude 110°15' E to 112°04' E, Latitude 29°56' N to 31°34' N . At the west of China's Hubei Province, Yichang is where the middle and upper reaches of the Yangtze River are divided. Thanks to its advantageous geographic location, Yichang has been defined as a distributing center, an important trading port and a transportation hub along the Yangtze river linking west Hubei and east Sichuan since ancient times. For a very long time, it has been renown as "Gateway to the Three Gorges", and "Throat between Sichuan and Hubei". Today, Yichang remains a brisk river port of China, controlling the access to Chongqing City to its southwest.



## Topography

The geographic features of Yichang are quite different .There are mountains and forest in the west ,the scene is magnificent and wonderful; but there is a vast stretch of flat fertile land in the east,and natural resources are rich there.In the whole area in the land of the city, the mountain area amount for 69%, hills amount for 21%, plains amount for 10%, which form the characteristic of ground form of "seven mountains, two mounds and one plain".

## Climate

Yichang lies between the middle subtropical zone and northern subtropical zone. The climatic feature of this region is that the four seasons are clearly demarcated. Spring and autumn are longer than summer and winter.It's hot in summer and there's much rain,while it's cold in winter and there's little rain.The average temperature in autumn is higher than that in spring. In summer there are rich storms.The rainy season is June and July,which is also the hottest period.

Yichang's annual average temperature is high, up to 13.1°C to 18°C and its frost-free period is long.The annual precipitation is 1213.6 mm,but is reduced with the rising of the height of elevation.The average temperature in July is 24.1°C to 28.8°C, in January 1.7°C to 6.5°C. The extreme highest temperature on the record is 41.4°C,and the lowest is -15.6°C. The annual sunshine time is between 1542 hours and

1904 hours ,while the shortest is 1289 hours.Because there are high mountains on both sides of the river and much water at the feet of the mountains, winter is warm in the river valley area of the Xiling Gorge and the Qingjiang River.So Yichang is famous for its mild winter.

## Fauna & Flora

The moist climate and fertile soil in Yichang supplies an excellent environment for animals and plants.

From barranca to mountaintop,there are green broad-leaved woods, broad-leaved mixed forest and needle leaf woods.In the river valley area ,there are palms ,camphor trees of tropical zone,and forests such as mandarin orange,tea trees of subtropical zone.In the hills and low mountain area ,rare trees like pine, the



cypress ,China fir,ginkgo,dove tree and so on can be easily found.There are more than 17 million mu (1133333 hectares) land fit for planting trees.The reserve of lumber is more than 24 million m<sup>3</sup>, 48% of its land surface is covered with forest. It's one of the most important areas that produces lumber in Hubei Province.There are various local specialities in Yichang.Yichang enjoys nationwide reputation for its high-quality tea-leaves and oranges.

In Yichang there are large quantities of rare animals, birds such as Chinese sturgeon, south China tiger, snub-nosed monkey, musk deer, golden monkey and some other state protection kinds. Altogether,there are 363 kinds of land vertebrate in Yichang.

## Administrative Division



Yichang Municipality governs five counties, three county-level cities and five city districts.They are: Wufeng Tujia Minority Autonomous County, Changyang Tujia Minority Autonomous County,Yuan'an County, Xingshan County,Zigui County, Dangyang City, Zhijiang City,Yidu City,Xiling District, Wujiagang District,Dianjun District, Xiaoting District, Yiling District and Caobuhu Administrative District. It covers a total area of

21,084 square kilometers,470 square kilometers of which are urban areas.Altogether, there are 55 townships ,65 towns, 21 administrative agencies, 3,191 villages, 22,890 villagers' groups.



## Population & Ethnic

Yichang has a population of 4.136 million, 1,047 thousand of which are inhabitants of cities and towns. Most of the people belong to the Han nationality, while 9.5% belong to Tujia minority, and 0.13% belong to other minority nationalities. Altogether, there are 31 ethnic groups in Yichang.

## Transportation & Communication

Transportation and communication in Yichang are developing rapidly. Yichang arterial highways extend to every corner, No.318 National Highway crosses the whole Yichang City, through which you may reach Shanghai in the east and Tibet in the west. "The Golden Water Route" of the Yangtze runs through Yichang and it reaches Wanzhou City, Chongqing City in the west and Wuhan City, Shanghai City in the east. The express from Yichang to Wuhan, Beijing, Xi'an and the railway from Yichang to Zhenzhou City, Wuxi City, Huaihua City, Guangzhou City were put into use long ago and an international



railway container transport network was also established.

Air transport conditions are advantageous. Yichang civil airliners can fly to China's 23 large and middle cities, such as

Beijing, Shanghai, Guangzhou, Shenzhen. The international temporary air-liners was opened, too.



Yichang's post and telecommunications has currently formed a multidimensional communication network with the involvement of various means like satellite, light diaphragm convey, numeral microwave, mobile phone, wireless notification and so on. The international multimedia information network "The Three Gorges Hot Line" has also been opened to use.



## Yangzi River

<http://www.sacu.org/yangzi.html>



# SACU

## *The Yangzi River*



This is a historical article from an early issue of China Now magazine.

### About the Yangzi River

The Yangzi is an extraordinary river in a number of ways. It is at the same time one of the country's most important transport routes, carrying a huge amount of cargo and passengers, yet also one of its most formidable barriers. The north and south of the country were for centuries effectively cut off from one another by this huge river, treacherous for its floods and the vast amount of water it drains from the heart of the Asian continent. It carries twenty-one times more water than the [Yellow River](#). Such is the power it has had over the imagination that in the minds of Chinese people, it is seen as the division between the two halves of the country in cultural matters as well. North of it are wheat and dry grain eaters; to its south, rice is the staple.

The length of the river (6,300 km) makes it the third longest in the world. It was not bridged until 1957, when a road-rail link at Wuhan was built. This increased the potential for north-south movement, for even after the coming of railways, people and cargo had to make their way by ferry when going on the [Beijing](#) to Canton line. Similar problems troubled travel between [Beijing](#) and [Shanghai](#), until 1969 with the completion of the famous combined road and rail affair at [Nanjing](#), which spans the 1.5 km-wide river.

Such a river is of course immensely useful for transport, and throughout history it has provided a major route for goods and people in its middle and lower reaches. As the extract from Isabelia Bird's 19th century expedition shows, by using teams on the banks it was also possible to pull boats upstream and maintain a traffic even into the heart of [Sichuan](#) province. Today, the maintenance of the channel and locks around the Gezhouba dam project means that 3,000 ton ships can travel up as far as [Chongqing](#). It is navigable over nearly half its total length, and with its seven hundred tributaries forms a navigable network of 70,000 km, carrying more than four-fifths of the country's water-borne freight.

While this immense traffic helps to knit the country together, the river still imposes its image as a boundary on Chinese thinking. It marks the border between grain yield target areas; north of it farmers are expected to get less because of the shift in weather patterns between the north and south. This has affected tax rates in agriculture and how much was expected to be sold to the state. Such matters also



regulate the official attitude to winter heating of urban homes, factories, schools and other public buildings. If you are unlucky enough to live just south of the river where it can still get very cold (e.g. in [Hangzhou](#)) there is no entitlement to heating. Not many miles to the north, on the other side, heating is permitted!

From its origins in the arid plateau-land of [Qinghai](#) the Changjiang passes through nine of the country's provinces, from the sparsely inhabited homelands of nomads, through the Sichuan basin and lower valley which are some of the most agriculturally productive parts of the country. Its middle reaches are carved through the spectacular gorges in the mountains which separate Sichuan from the rest of China. It is home to a unique species of freshwater dolphin, and provides an important livelihood to fishers. At its mouth is Shanghai, a key city in the current modernisation of China. The river is going to be of growing importance to this effort.

## The name of the River

The earliest recorded name for the Yangzi River was simply jiang, now a general term for rivers in Chinese. Later it came to be known as Da Jiang 'Great River', or Chang Jiang 'Long River'. It is still called Chang Jiang in modern Chinese.

The name Yangzi (Yangtse), as used in European languages, is not used in China to refer to the whole river. So how did the European name originate? One theory is based on the fact that a traveller named Navarette, who went to China from [Macao](#) in 1658, was so impressed by the huge breadth of the river that he described it in his journal as 'the son of the ocean'. This phrase when translated into Chinese is yang zi jiang. Its pronunciation is the same as that of the name which had been used for a short section of river between Zhenjiang and Jiangdu in [Jiangsu](#) Province. Gradually the character used in the place name was substituted for the one meaning 'ocean', and the name Yangzi Jiang came to be used for the whole river. This name was most commonly spelt on English maps as 'Yang Tse Kiang'.

Different stretches of the river have their own names in Chinese. The highest reaches near the source in [Tibet](#) are the Tongtian He, 'the river leading to heaven'. The next stretch, as far as Yibin, in Sichuan province upstream from [Chongqing](#), is known as the Jinsha Jiang, 'golden sands river'. (Some sources suggest that this refers to gold panning which used to take place here.) Below Yibin the name Da Jiang 'great river' is used locally; another name for the stretch from Yibin to Yichang, which flows mainly through Sichuan province, is Chuan Jiang. From Fengjie to Yichang the river flows through the gorges and is also called Xia Jiang 'gorge river'. Finally, moving hundreds of miles east, it is worth remembering that the water front in Shanghai is not the Yangzi itself, but a tributary of it, the Huangpu Jiang.

© Copyright Society for Anglo-Chinese Understanding (SACU) 2006 : an extract from SACU's magazine [China Now 126](#), Page 19, September 1988

The views expressed in this article are those of the author and do not necessarily represent the view of SACU. If you have any comments, updates or corrections please let us know via our [Contact page](#).

[http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Yangtze\\_River](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Yangtze_River)

# Yangtze River

From Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia

Yangtze River	
	
The course of the Yangtze River through China	
<b>Origin</b>	<a href="#">Qinghai</a> and <a href="#">Tibet</a> in <a href="#">China</a>
<b>Mouth</b>	<a href="#">East China Sea</a>
<b>Basin countries</b>	<a href="#">China</a>
<b>Length</b>	6,211 km (3,859 mi)
<b>Source elevation</b>	5,042 m (16,542 ft)
<b>Avg. discharge</b>	31,900 m³/s (1,127,000 ft³/s)
<b>Basin area</b>	1,800,000 km² (695,000 mi²)

## Contents

- [1 Names](#)
- [2 Geography](#)
- [3 Characteristics](#)
- [4 History](#)
- [5 Major cities along the river](#)
- [6 Tributaries](#)
- [7 Trivia](#)
- [8 See also](#)
- [9 Further reading](#)

The **Yangtze River** or **Chang Jiang** ([Simplified Chinese](#): 长江; [Traditional Chinese](#): 長江; [pinyin](#): Cháng Jiā ng) [listen](#) ([help](#)·[info](#)) is the longest [river](#) in [Asia](#) and the third longest in the world after the [Nile](#) in [Africa](#) and the [Amazon](#) in [South America](#).

The river is about 6,211 [km](#) long and flows from its source in [Qinghai Province](#) in western [China](#), eastwards into the [East China Sea](#). It has traditionally been considered a dividing point between [northern and southern China](#), although geographers consider the [Qinling-Huai River](#) line

to be the official line of geographical division.

## Names

The name **Yangtze River**, as well as various similar names such as **Yangtse River**, **Yangtze Kiang** etc., is derived from **Yangzi Jiang** ([Simplified Chinese](#): 扬子江; [Traditional Chinese](#): 揚子江; [pinyin](#): Yángzǐ Jiā ng) [listen](#) ([help](#)·[info](#)), the Chinese name for, beginning in the Sui dynasty, the river in its lower reaches (specifically, the stretch of the river between Yángzhō u 揚州 and Zhènjiā ng 鎮江). From the Ming dynasty, it was sometimes written "yángzǐ 洋子." After the Opium War, the English name (Yangtze Kiang) began to be applied to the whole river, sometimes with the spurious explanation that it meant "Son

of the Ocean." The modern Chinese name, **Chang Jiang** (长江/長江 *Cháng Jiā ng*), literally means "long river" and is increasingly being adopted as the standard name in English.<sup>[[citation needed](#)]</sup>



*Afternoon light on the jagged grey mountains rising from the Yangtze River gorge*

Like many rivers, the Yangtze is known by different names over different parts of its course. At its source it is called in Chinese the **Dangqu** (当曲/當曲, from the [Tibetan](#) for "marsh river"). Downstream it is called the **Tuotuo River** (沱沱河) and then the **Tongtian River** (通天河, literally "pass to heaven river"). Where it runs through deep gorges parallel to the [Mekong](#) and the [Salween](#) before emerging onto the plains of [Sichuan](#), it is famous as the **Jinsha River** (金沙江 *Jī nshā Jiā ng*, literally "golden sands river"). The name Yangzi

was originally used by inhabitants of the lower reaches, downstream from Yángzhōu 揚州 and Zhènjiāng 鎮江 in [Jiangsu](#), and derives from the name of an ancient ferry crossing Yangzi Jin (扬子津/揚子津, "Yangzi Crossing"). Because it was the name first heard by missionaries and traders, it was applied in English to the entire river. In Chinese, Yangzi Jiang is considered a historical or poetic name for the river.

The Yangtze was earlier known to the Chinese as simply **Jiang** (江 *Jiā ng*), which has become a generic name meaning "river," or the **Da Jiang** (大江 *Dà Jiā ng*, literally "great river"). The Tibetan name for the river is **Drichu** ([Tibetan](#): ࠌྱུ་ཆུ་; [Wylie](#): *'bri chu*, lit. "river of the female yak"). The Yangtze is sometimes referred to as the Golden Waterway.

## Geography

The river originates in a glacier in the [Dangla mountains](#) on the eastern part of the [Tibetan plateau](#). It runs through the eastern part of [Qinghai](#), turning southward down a deep valley at the border of [Sichuan](#) and [Tibet](#) to reach [Yunnan](#). In the course of this valley, the river's elevation drops from above 5000 m to less than 1000 m.

It enters the basin of Sichuan at [Yibin](#). While in the Sichuan basin it receives several mighty tributaries, increasing its water volume significantly. It then cuts through [Mount Wushan](#) bordering [Chongqing](#) and [Hubei](#) to create the famous [Three Gorges](#). Eastward of the Three Gorges, [Yichang](#) is the first city on the Yangtze Plain.





*Cruising through the [Three Gorges](#) along the Yangtze River*

After entering [Hubei](#), the Yangtze receives more water from thousands of lakes. The largest of these lakes is [Dongting Lake](#), which is located on the border of [Hunan](#) and Hubei provinces, and is the outlet for most of the rivers in Hunan. At [Wuhan](#) it receives its biggest tributary, the [Han River](#), bringing water from its northern basin as far as [Shaanxi](#).

At the northern tip of Jiangxi, [Lake Boyang](#), the biggest lake in China, merges into the river. The river then runs through [Anhui](#) and [Jiangsu](#) provinces, receiving more water from innumerable smaller lakes and rivers, and finally reaches the East China Sea at [Shanghai](#).

Four of China's five main freshwater lakes contribute their waters to the Yangtze River. Traditionally, the upstream part of the Yangtze River refers to the section from Yibin to Yichang; the middle part refers to the section from Yichang to [Hukou](#), where Boyang Lake meets the river; the downstream part is from Hukou to Shanghai.

## Characteristics



*Tombs on a hill facing the Yangtze as it flows by*

The Yangtze flows into the [East China Sea](#) and was navigable by ocean-going vessels up to a thousand miles from its mouth even before the [Three Gorges Dam](#) was built. As of June 2003, this dam spans the river, [flooding Fengjie](#), the first of a number of towns affected by the massive flood control and power generation project. This is the largest comprehensive [irrigation](#) project in the world. Its proponents argue that it will free people living

along the river from floods that have repeatedly threatened them in the past, and will offer them [electricity](#) and [water transport](#) -- though at the expense of permanently flooding many existing towns (including numerous ancient cultural relics) and causing large-scale changes in the local [ecology](#).

Opponents of the dam point out that there are three different kinds of floods on the Yangtze River: floods which originate in the upper reaches, floods which originate in the lower reaches, and floods along the entire length of the river. They argue that the Three Gorges dam will actually make flooding in the upper reaches worse and have little or no impact on floods which originate in the lower reaches. Twelve hundred years of low water marks on the river were recorded in the inscriptions and the carvings of carp at [Baiheliang](#), now submerged.

The Yangtze is flanked with metallurgical, power, chemical, auto, building materials and machinery industrial belts, and high-tech development zones. It is playing an increasingly crucial role in the river valley's economic growth and has become a vital link for international shipping to the inland provinces. The river is a major transportation artery for China, connecting the interior with the coast. The river is one of the world's busiest waterways. Traffic includes commercial traffic transporting bulk goods such as coal as well as manufactured goods and passengers. Cargo transportation reached 795 million tons in 2005 [\[1\]](#) [\[2\]](#). River cruises several days long especially through the beautiful and scenic [Three Gorges](#) area are becoming popular as the tourism industry grows in China.

Flooding along the river has been a major problem. The rainy season in China is May and June in areas south of Yangtze River, and July and August in areas north of it. The huge river system receives water both from southern and northern flanks, which causes its flood season to extend from May to August. Meanwhile, the relatively dense population and rich cities along the river make the floods more deadly and costly. The most recent major floods were the [1998 Yangtze River Floods](#), but more disastrous were the [1954 Yangtze river floods](#), killing around 30,000 people. Other severe floods included those of [1911](#) which killed around 100,000, [1931](#) (145,000 dead), and [1935](#) (142,000 dead).

## History

The Yangtze river is important to the cultural origins of southern China. Human activity was found in the Three Gorges area as far back as 2 million years ago, initiating debate over the origin of the Chinese people.[\[3\]](#) In the [Spring and Autumn Period](#), [Ba](#) and [Shu](#) were located in the western part of the river, covering modern Sichuan, Chongqing, and western Hubei; [Chu](#) was located in the central part of river, corresponding to [Hubei](#), [Hunan](#), [Jiangxi](#), and southern [Anhui](#). [Wu](#) and [Yue](#) were located in the eastern part of the river, now [Jiangsu](#), [Zhejiang](#), and [Shanghai](#). Although the [Yellow River](#) region was richer and more developed at that time, the milder climate and more peaceful environment made the Yangtze river area more suitable for agriculture.



*Yangtze River as seen from a cruise boat*

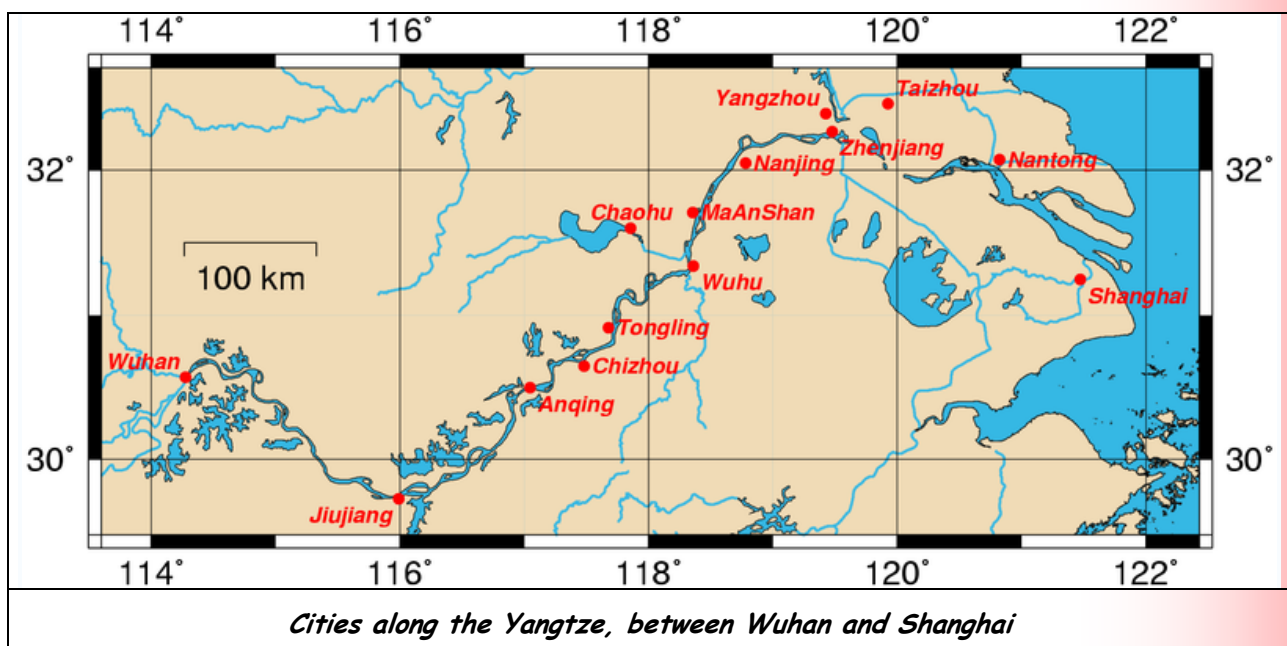
From the [Han Dynasty](#), the region of the Yangtze river became more and more important in China's economy. The establishment of irrigation systems (the most famous one is [Dujiangyan](#), northwest of Chengdu, built during the [Warring States](#) period) made agriculture very stable and productive. Early in the Qing dynasty, the region called "[Jiangnan](#)" (that includes the southern part of [Jiangsu](#), the northern part of [Zhejiang](#), and the southeastern part of

[Anhui](#)) provided 1/3-1/2 of the nation's revenues.

Historically, the Yangtze became the political boundary between north China and south China several times (see [History of China](#)) because of the difficulty of crossing the river. Many battles took place along the river, the most famous being the [Battle of Red Cliffs](#) in 208 AD during the [Three Kingdoms](#) period.

Politically, [Nanjing](#) was the capital of China several times, although most of the time its territory only covered the southeastern part of China, such as the [Wu](#) kingdom in the Three Kingdoms period, the [Eastern Jin Dynasty](#), and smaller countries in the [Northern and Southern Dynasties](#) and [Five Dynasties and Ten Kingdoms](#) periods. Only the [Ming](#) occupied most parts of China from their capital at [Nanjing](#), though it later moved capital to [Beijing](#). The [ROC](#) capital was located in [Nanjing](#) in the periods 1911-1912, 1927-1937, 1945-1949.

## Major cities along the river







*A loading point for coal barges on the Yangtze River*



*A shipyard on the banks of the Yangtze building commercial river freight boats*

- [Panzhihua](#)
- [Yibin](#)
- [Luzhou](#)
- [Chongqing](#)
- [Yichang](#)
- [Jingzhou](#)
- [Shishou](#)
- [Yueyang](#)
- [Xianning](#)
- [Wuhan](#)
- [Ezhou](#)
- [Huangshi](#)
- [Huanggang](#)
- [Chaohu](#)
- [Chizhou](#)
- [Jiujiang](#)
- [Anqing](#)
- [Tongling](#)
- [Wuhu](#)
- [Hefei](#)
- [Chuzhou](#)
- [Maanshan](#)
- [Taizhou](#)
- [Yangzhou](#)
- [Zhenjiang](#)
- [Nanjing](#)
- [Nantong](#)
- [Shanghai](#)

## Tributaries

The Yangtze River has over 700 tributaries but the principal tributaries are the following:

- [Yalong River](#)
- [Minjiang River](#)
- [Daduhe River](#)
- [Tuojiang River](#)
- [Jialing River](#)
- [Wujiang River](#)
- [Qingjiang](#)
- [Xiangjiang](#)

- [Lishui \(Li\)](#)
- [Zijiang \(Zi\)](#)
- [Yuanjiang \(Yuan\)](#)
- [Han River](#)
- [Ganjiang River](#)
- [Huangpu River](#)

## Trivia

- [Cheung Kong Holdings](#), from the [Cantonese language](#) form of Chang Jiang and named after the river, is the name of the [holding company](#) controlled by [Li Ka-Shing](#), one of Asia's richest [tycoons](#).
- In 2004 [Martin Strel](#) from [Slovenia](#) swam the river from the [Tiger Leaping Gorge](#) to [Shanghai](#) (4600 km, 2860 miles).
- The Yangtze is home to (at least) two critically endangered species: The [Chinese Alligator](#) and the [Chinese Paddlefish](#). In [December](#) of [2006](#), the Baiji [Chinese River Dolphin](#) was declared extinct after an extensive search in the river; there were no signs of the dolphin's inhabitation.

## See also

- [Yangtze River Delta](#)
- [List of rivers in China](#)
- [1998 Yangtze River Floods](#)
- [Three Gorges Dam](#)
- [Geography of China](#)
- [Yangtze Service Medal](#)
- [Dragon Boat](#)
- [Ship lifts in China](#)
- [Chang Jiang Motorcycle](#)
- [Tiger Leaping Gorge](#)
- [Yangtze River Crossing](#)
- [South-North Water Transfer Project](#)
- [River cruise](#)
- [Yangtze Incident](#)

## Further reading

- Van Slyke, Lyman P. 1988. *Yangtze: nature, history, and the river*. A Portable Stanford Book. [ISBN 0-201-08894-0](#)
- Winchester, Simon. 1996. *The River at the Center of the World: A Journey up the Yangtze & Back in Chinese Time*, Holt, Henry & Company, 1996, hardcover, [ISBN 0-8050-3888-4](#); trade paperback, Owl Publishing, 1997, [ISBN 0-8050-5508-8](#); trade paperback, St. Martins, 2004, 432 pages, [ISBN 0-312-42337-3](#)

## Yangzi River - Three Gorges dam project

[http://www.imperialtours.net/3gorges\\_dam.htm](http://www.imperialtours.net/3gorges_dam.htm)



### ***The Three Gorges Dam***

If China's Three Gorges Dam were as large as the controversy surrounding it, this would surely be the biggest dam in the world. Although it is the world's largest in terms of electricity production and overall investment, it is not the biggest dam in the world. A close comparison in terms of size would be the Grand Coulee Dam in the U.S. which is slightly larger.

This is not to understate the impact the dam will have on China's future development in terms of flood control, increased trade on the upper reaches of the Yangtze, and of course reduced energy prices.

The multiple aims of a massive Yangtze River dam have made this an enticing proposition for nearly a century. Sun Yat Sen, the founder of the Chinese Republic, supported the idea when it was first mooted in 1919. Chairman Mao, an avid poet, expressed his vision of the Three Gorges Dam in the following poem:

#### **"Swimming" by Mao Zedong**

"I have just drunk the waters of Changsha  
And come to eat the fish of Wuchang.  
Now I am swimming across the great Yangtze,  
Looking afar to the open sky of Chu.  
Let the wind blow and waves beat,  
Better far than idly strolling in a courtyard.  
Today I am at ease.  
"It was by a stream that the Master said -  
"Thus so things flow away!"  
Sails move with the wind.  
Tortoise and Snake are still.  
Great plans are afoot:  
A bridge will fly to span the north and south,  
Turning a deep chasm into a thoroughfare;  
Walls of stone will stand upstream to the west  
To hold back Wushan's clouds and rain  
Till a smooth lake rises in the narrow gorges.  
The mountain goddess if she is still there  
Will marvel at a world so changed."

In line 17, Chairman Mao makes clear reference to his ambitions for The Three Gorges Reservoir. It was his enthusiasm, along with that of Zhou Enlai, that precipitated the construction in the 1970s of the Gezhouba Dam on the Yangtze, the precursor to The Three Gorges Dam. It was Premier Li Peng however who, in 1990, forcefully pushed the Three Gorge Dam project back to center stage.

Conceived on an epic scale, but clouded in controversy, this will be one of the largest dams in the world for many decades to come. Here we introduce the fundamental statistics and themes of this mammoth project.

## Three Gorges Dam Vital Statistics

Dimensions:	185 m (606 ft) high and 1,983 m (6,500 ft) broad
Water Level Increase:	Water level is planned to rise in 2 stages; by 2004 it will increase by 30 m to 125m (426 ft) and by 2009 will increase another 50m to 175 m (575 ft)
Cost Estimate:	1985 Chinese estimate of US\$10 Billion is acknowledged to be too low. Estimates abound from 2 to 5 times that amount
Financing:	Mostly from a national energy tax; other portions have been raised from government bonds
Materials Used:	10.8 million tons of cement, 1.9 million tons of rolled steel and 1.6 million tons of timber
Construction Period:	1993 - 2009
Land submerged:	13 cities, 140 towns, 1352 villages, 657 factories & 30,000 hectares of cultivated land
Relocation of People:	1.3 million to be relocated in 3 stages in 1997, 2003 & 2009
Energy Production:	84 Billion kilowatt hours per year; enough to supply 11-15% of China's energy.

At its heart lie three main benefits, none of which go entirely undisputed: flood control, energy production and improved navigation. Here we lay out the principle arguments either way.

Flood Control - the primary reason for this project is to contain flooding in the upper reaches of the Yangzi. Critics counter that this is only to the maximum height of the dam - 185 meters. After the 22.5 billion cubic meter flood control capacity is exceeded, there is nothing to prevent the overspill from invading the exposed lower valleys. According to this argument, were the freak floods of 1954 and 1870 to recur the dam could do little to contain them. Further, these critics argue, in terms of flood control this dam does nothing about the problem of flooding in the middle and lower reaches of the river.

A corollary to the flood control benefit of the three gorges dam project is the plan to construct a 600 kilometer canal from the three gorges reservoir to Beijing. From 2007, this will be able to divert up to 80 billion cubic meters of soft water per year to the water-starved north .

Energy Production - China's phenomenal economic growth has killed the debate surrounding this issue. It now appears that the Chinese leadership was correct to assume the utility of the dam's electricity production. Whereas naysayers had argued that China's coal production would keep pace with her industrial development, this is certainly no longer the case. Already, in 2005, China is importing one third of its energy needs.

Navigation - the huge reservoir created by the dam will make the upper Yangzi navigable to 10,000 ton barges. To date the water levels of The Three Gorges have limited passage to 3,500 ton barges. Given the growth of Chongqing, China's most populous municipality, proponents of the project claim that the Three Gorges Dam will reduce freight costs and facilitate trade in this area. Some scientists however, fear that the soil erosion caused by excessive tree felling in the Yangzi's upper waters will result in large deposits of silt at the dam and along its backwaters to Chongqing port. This, they counter, will hamper navigation.

In considering the pros and cons of this ambitious, national project, it would be short-sighted not to acknowledge China's expertise in the field. Between 1949 and 1980 China constructed 80,000 reservoirs and hydroelectric plants. One of these, the Gezhouba Dam, the first dam to be built on the Yangzi, was partly intended as a direct precursor to the Three Gorges Dam. As a result, the same construction company that built the Gezhouba dam, is also responsible for the completion of the Three Gorges Dam. Similarly, the excellent relations established between the Chinese government and Western companies like ABB, GE Canada, GEC Alsthom and Suzler Escher Wyss on the Geheyuan Dam project will be put to good effect for the gigantic and spectacular Three Gorges Dam.



## **Three Gorges Dam - The Great Wall Across the Yangtze**



The Yangtze River

[See larger image](#)

When completed, the \$25 billion Three Gorges Dam on the Yangtze River will be the largest hydroelectric dam in the world. With an installed generating capacity of 18,200 MW, the dam will span more than two kilometers across, and tower 185 meters above, the world's third longest river. Its reservoir will stretch over 600 kilometers upstream and force the displacement of more than 1.3 million people. Construction began in 1994 and is scheduled for completion by 2009. Construction on the dam itself was completed in May 2006.

The project has been plagued by massive corruption problems, spiraling costs, technological problems, human rights violations and resettlement difficulties. One million people have been displaced by the dam as of 2006; many are living under poor conditions with no recourse to address outstanding problems with compensation or resettlement. Said one peasant from Kai county, "We have been to the county government many times demanding officials to solve our problems, but they said this was almost impossible. They have threatened us with arrest if we appeal for help from higher government offices."



***Smoke and dust rise after demolition efforts begin in the town of Guizhou in Central China's Hubei Province to make way for the Three Gorges Dam Project.***

The environmental impacts of the project are extensive. The submergence of hundreds of factories, mines and waste dumps, and the presence of massive industrial centers upstream are creating serious pollution problems in the reservoir and the tributaries of the Yangtze. For five months every year when high water levels are lowered to accommodate the summer floods, a festering bog of effluent, silt, industrial pollutants and rubbish will remain in the previously submerged areas. This will create a breeding ground for flies, mosquitoes, bacteria and parasites, threatening the health of surrounding

populations.

The dam is also affecting one of the world's biggest fisheries in the East China Sea. Scientists estimate that annual catches may be reduced by one million tons due to the decline in fresh water and sediment

reaching the sea. The Yangtze delta and tidal wetlands are already being badly eroded the loss of sediment.

## Background

### [Three Gorges Revisited](#)

Sichuan Geologist Fan Xiao Travels to the Three Gorges reservoir area, and reports on aspects of the project that continue to trouble Chinese experts. Published in Chinese National Geographic and translated by Three Gorges Probe.

### [Three Gorges Dam Fact Box](#)

Just about everything you might want to know about the world' s biggest dam, at least in terms of its facts, figures, cubic meters and kilowatts. Compiled by Three Gorges Probe.

### [Yangtze Remembered: The River Beneath the Lake](#)

Linda Butler made eight trips to the Yangtze to photograph the people, the human environment, and the natural landscape before, during, and after the Three Gorges Dam changed the river basin forever. A large-format photo book with essays.

### [Human Rights Dammed Off at Three Gorges. An Investigation of Resettlement and Human Rights Problems in the Three Gorges Project](#)

By Yi Ming, researcher and journalist. Published by International Rivers Network.

### [Three Gorges Video](#)

See video footage of demolished Three Gorges housing, residents, and cultural sites ([Real Player Required](#)).

## Related Links

### [Three Gorges Probe](#)

## latest additions

### [Dam Puts Shanghai Wetlands at Sea's Mercy](#)

Tidal wetlands on the Yangtze delta near Shanghai are in danger of disappearing because of sediment trapped in the Three Gorges Dam, New Scientist, April 19, 2006.

### [The Dammed: Environmentalists Watch and Wait for Opening of World's Largest Dam](#)

By Clifford Coonan, The Independent (UK), March 17, 2006.

### [Three Gorges Dam Threatens Vast Fishery](#)

The Three Gorges Dam is already threatening one of the world' s biggest fisheries in the East China Sea. By Jessica Marshall, New Scientist, February 25, 2006.

---

### Additional Information

Aviva Imhof, Campaigns Director, International Rivers Network, E-mail: [aviva@irn.org](mailto:aviva@irn.org)  
Phone: 510-848-1155

# ***Three Gorges Dam Hydroelectric Power Plant, China***



Construction on the Three Gorges Dam - the world's largest power project - has been completed up to an intermediate level. The reservoir has been partially filled, and power generation from four of the turbines has begun.

The project should be completed by 2009, when a total of 26 generators will generate 18,200MW.

## **Harnessing the Yangtze**

The Three Gorges Dam project involves harnessing the Yangtze River, Asia's longest, to generate prodigious amounts of electricity. Output should be 85TWh/y, close to one tenth of current Chinese requirements. The dam also aims to end disastrous floods downstream, which have claimed hundreds of thousands of lives this century alone. Improved navigability on the river should also allow much larger ships to sail from Shanghai as far as Chongqing, upstream from the dam and 2,000km from the sea, to aid China's burgeoning domestic and export trade.

The project is located 44km from the city of Yichang in Hubei province. This point is at the end of a series of steep canyons which will form a 630km reservoir, with an average width of 1.3km. The dam will reach 185m in height and stretch across a span of 2.3km.

The plant is the centre of a broad plan for central China's electricity industry. Related transmission and distribution installations will be linked to the three regional grids taking Three Gorges power, forming a single system from the coast to the border of Tibet. The grids and their planned shares of offtake are: Central China Power Network (55%); East China Power Network (39%); Sichuan Provincial Grid (6%).

## **China Yangtze Three Gorges Dam Project Development Corporation**

The plant is being built in stages by state-backed sponsor China Yangtze Three Gorges Dam Project Development Corporation. Initial works began in 1993. Up to the end of 1996, around \$2.3 billion had been invested. Main equipment orders for the 9,800MW first phase were placed in 1997. 14 Francis units of 700MW each are being brought on-line on the left bank of the river (between 2003 and 2006). They

operate at a low head compared to the second phase, since the reservoir is still only partially filled. This will require difficult design work.

In the second phase, 12 more 700MW units will be added on the opposite bank, taking the total to 18,200MW. Three Gorges will then be the largest hydro plant in the world, well ahead of Brazil's 12,600MW Itaipu installation.

During the second phase, the dam will be built to a height of 87m, and 14 turbines and a 135m-high permanent ship-lock will be built on the southern bank. In the final phase, the dam will be raised to a maximum height of 175m and an additional 12 turbines will be installed on the northern bank of the Yangtze River.

## **Ecological Concerns**

The long-term ecological effect of the dam has been described as possibly catastrophic. The dam will disrupt heavy silt flows in the river. It could cause rapid silt build-up in the reservoir, creating an imbalance upstream, and depriving agricultural land and fish downstream of essential nutrients. Since these problems would also hit the plant's turbines and millions of farmers and fishermen, considering ecology is common sense.

Environmentalist and political opposition to the Three Gorges Dam has been intense. The most emotive issue has been the forced relocation of between 1.2 and 1.9 million people. China points to detailed plans to actually improve the lives of those affected, but independent reports suggest residents are convinced their compensation is miserly. The farmland which will be flooded is more fertile than higher ground, and some 1,600 factories will be submerged.

Opponents of the Three Gorges Dam have had more success outside China. The World Bank, stung by vicious critiques of other hydro projects it sponsored, decided not to fund the project. The US Export-Import Bank also bowed to pressure. The bank hoped to gain further environmental information from the Chinese that would allow a positive decision - it is not against the project in principle. Moreover, its stance did not prevent US groups from bidding for contracts, nor US commercial banks from financing their operations.

## **Support for the Project**

European governments, however, have snubbed Three Gorges opponents. The export credit agencies of Germany, Switzerland, Sweden, France and the UK all promised support for potential suppliers from their countries. Japan, after initial hesitation, followed their lead. Canada also offered financing to its companies. Long-term commercial loans by banks in these countries backed up the credits.

Arguments marshalled by the Japanese to support their final decision do provide some answers to the project's critics. After intensive reviews by the Japanese Ministry of International Trade and Industry, Japan claimed the project offered the following main benefits:

**Flood control:** Japan believes the project will achieve its objectives in this area, despite claims that it could actually increase the risk of floods, either through changes in silt flow or a catastrophic dam collapse. This issue in particular has attracted popular sympathy for the project in Japan.

**Emissions reduction:** the plant's output will be equivalent to several large coal-fired plants burning 40 to 50 million t/y. If it is not built, soaring Chinese emissions will rise even faster, causing more acid rain in Japan.

**Relocation:** Japan believes current plans are adequate, although the situation would need to be kept under review.

China initially insisted that potential problems had been identified and dealt with. However, there have been further recent calls on Western governments and companies to refrain from further supporting the project until resettlement and human rights problems are resolved. There have been claims that the dam does not address the real source of flooding (deforestation in the Yangtze watershed and the loss of lakes that alleviated floods because of siltation, reclamation and uncontrolled development).

Corruption scandals have also plagued the project. Contractors allegedly won bids through bribery and then siphoned off construction funds by skimping on equipment and materials. After a number of accidents, much of the project's infrastructure ripped out in 1999.

## Project Finance and Contracts

The official total cost figure is currently 203 billion yuan (\$24 billion), met primarily by special taxes on electricity consumption and revenue from the first phase units now operating.

The Three Gorges Dam main equipment order was divided between six top foreign groups, drawn into two project alliances. Out of 14 700MW units, eight were assigned to Alstom, ABB and Kvaerner, and six to Voith, Siemens and GE.

Alstom had not joined the partnership between ABB and Kvaerner for the bid, or any other leading global name, but the Chinese side clearly preferred to diversify its risks and gain broad access to Western technology rather than rely extensively on one supplier. This probably helped the Voith, Siemens and GE Hydro alliance, which was formed well ahead of bidding, and represents an unusually strong concentration of expertise (GE does not normally work with arch-rival Siemens).



Within the two groupings, work was further divided as follows:

For the eight units, Alstom is the prime turbine contractor, with work worth \$212 million. Several of its units are involved, lead by Mecanica Pesada of Brazil and the Tianjin Chinese hydro turbine joint venture. Kvaerner of Norway is supplying design, technology, five runners and components. It put its share of the business at \$40 million. ABB will supply eight generators (ABB does not make hydro turbines) under a contract it says is worth around \$250 million. This would take the total value of the eight-unit order to around \$500 million.

The six-unit order was split between Voith, the lead turbine contractor, Siemens, which will supply generators (like ABB, it does not make hydro turbines), and GE, which will carry out both turbine and generator work. The entire order is worth an estimated \$350 million.

Since the first turbine and generator contracts were signed in 1997, Alstom has acquired ABB's power division, and GE Hydro has acquired Kvaerner. In March 2004, Alstom was awarded a € 163 million contract to supply the four 700MW turbines and associated generators to the project's Right Bank powerhouse.








## **Technology Transfer**

Two Chinese equipment suppliers are playing a major role in the later stages of the first phase. Harbin Power Equipment and Dongfang Electrical Machinery are working with the two foreign groupings, benefiting from extensive technology transfer requirements. Harbin will co-operate with the Alstom grouping, and Dongfang with the Voith consortium. The last two units of the first phase were almost entirely constructed in China.

If Chinese plans proceed, these domestic groups can be expected to take the lion's share of work when the second phase of 8,400MW is assigned. They are currently incapable of providing the kind and volume of units required at Three Gorges but heavy investment in hydro capacity, supported by state financial groups, is underway. Foreign companies may see most of their current role eclipsed by large, low cost, highly skilled and favoured competitors.

## **Construction**

Construction tasks have already been assigned to Chinese groups. Shortly before the equipment announcements, contracts worth \$800 million went to Gezhouba Share Holding Ltd, Yichang Qingyun Hydropower Joint Management Co and Yichang Three Gorges Project Construction 378 Joint Management. The work includes the construction of dikes and the powerhouse.

	China's Yangtze Three Gorges Dam Project Development Corporation began initial works on a hydroelectric power plant at the Three Gorges Dam in 1993. 14 Francis units of 700MW each will come on-line on the left bank of the Yangtze River between 2003 and 2006. (image courtesy of ABB)
	Yangtze River, Asia's longest, has caused disastrous floods downstream over the years and is set to stabilise with the construction of the Three Gorges Dam. This will allow much larger ships to sail from Shanghai as far as Chongqing, 2,000km from the sea.
	The left bank generator. ABB supplies eight generators under a contract deemed to be worth around \$250 million, working closely together with Alstom and Kvaerner. (image courtesy of ABB)
	Flooding of the Three Gorges Dam began in June 2003. The total cost of the project is immense - around \$25 billion. (image courtesy of ABB)
	ABB is supplying high-voltage equipment for the project.
	International Rivers Network has campaigned against the Three Gorges project. In Gaoyang, a worker sits on a demolished building.
	ABB's high-voltage direct current (HVDC) systems increase transmission capacity while stabilizing networks.

# Three Gorges Dam

From Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia



This article or section may be confusing or unclear for some readers. Please [improve the article](#) or discuss this issue on the [talk page](#). This article has been tagged since November 2006.



*Three Gorges Dam, upstream side, [26 July 2004](#)*



*Three Gorges Dam, downstream side, [26 July 2004](#)*

The **Three Gorges Dam** ([Simplified Chinese](#): 长江三峡工开发; [Traditional Chinese](#): 長江三峽工開發; [pinyin](#): Chángjiā ng Sā nxiá Gō ng Kā ifā ) spans the [Yangtze River](#) at Sandouping, [Yichang](#), [Hubei](#) province, [China](#). Construction began in 1994. It will be the largest [hydroelectric dam](#) in the world, more than five times the size of the [Hoover Dam](#). The reservoir began filling on [June 1, 2003](#), and will occupy the present position of the scenic [Three Gorges](#) area, between the cities of [Yichang](#), [Hubei](#); and [Fuling](#), [Chongqing](#). Structural work was finished on [May 20, 2006](#), nine months ahead of schedule<sup>[1]</sup>. However,

## Contents

- [1 Dam model](#)
- [2 Funding sources](#)
- [3 History](#)
  - [3.1 Proposal and development of project](#)
  - [3.2 Approval of project](#)
- [4 Debate over the dam](#)
  - [4.1 Cost](#)
  - [4.2 Increasing wealth disparity](#)
  - [4.3 Environment](#)
    - [4.3.1 Electricity production](#)
    - [4.3.2 Pollution](#)
    - [4.3.3 Greenhouse gas](#)
    - [4.3.4 Ecosystem](#)
  - [4.4 Local culture and aesthetic values](#)
  - [4.5 Navigation](#)
  - [4.6 Flood control and drought](#)
  - [4.7 Potential hazards](#)
- [5 See also](#)
- [6 Notes](#)
- [7 References](#)
- [8 External links](#)

several generators still have to be installed and the dam is not expected to become fully operational until 2009.

As with many dams, there is controversy over the costs and benefits of the Three Gorges Dam. Although there are economic benefits from flood control and hydroelectric power, there are also concerns about the future of over 1.9 million people who will be [displaced](#) by the rising waters<sup>[2]</sup>, the loss of many valuable archaeological and cultural sites, as well as the effects on the environment. It is believed that the dam was a contributing factor in the extinction of the [Yangtze River Dolphin](#).

## Funding sources

- The Three Gorges Dam Construction Fund
- Revenue from [Gezhouba Power Plant](#)
- Policy loans from the [China](#)

### [Development Bank](#)

- Loans from domestic and foreign commercial banks
- Corporate bonds
- US\$20 billion from a tax on household electricity (Bloomberg markets estimate - November 2005)

## History

1919 - originally proposed by [Sun Yat-sen](#), the father of the modern China republic (see Economy 2004)

- *1993-1997*: The [Yangtze River](#) was diverted, and after four years was reverted in November 1997.
- *1998-2003*: The first group of generators began to generate power in 2003, and a permanent ship lock opened for navigation the same year.
- *2004-2006*: The last section of dam wall was completed in May of 2006. On [6 June 2006](#), the temporary construction barrier behind the dam was demolished [\[5\]](#). As reservoirs begin to fill, floodwaters will begin to displace communities. The entire project is to be completed by 2009, when all 26 generators (with a combined generating capacity of 18.2 [GW](#)) will be able to generate



84.7 [TWh](#) (315 [PJ](#)) of electricity annually, about one-ninth of the nation's electricity consumption [\[3\]](#)

## Proposal and development of project

[Sun Yat-sen](#) first proposed building a [dam](#) on the [Yangtze River](#) in 1919 for power generation purposes and the [National Defense Planning Commission](#) under the [Kuomintang](#) made the first survey of the proposed site in 1932, but the idea was shelved due to unfavorable political and economic conditions.

### Dam model



*Main spillway flanked by powerhouses, ship lift at right*



*Ship lift at left, double locking steps at right*



*View along main dam at right. Auxiliary dam in foreground with upstream ship navigation [weir](#) in background*

Photos of the models that were built to represent what the dam would look like upon completion in 2009.

Major floods resurrected the idea and the PRC government adopted it in 1954 for flood control.

Vice Minister of Electric Power [Li Rui](#) initially argued that the dam should be multipurpose, that smaller dams should be built first until China could afford such a costly project, and that construction should proceed in stages to allow time to solve technical problems.

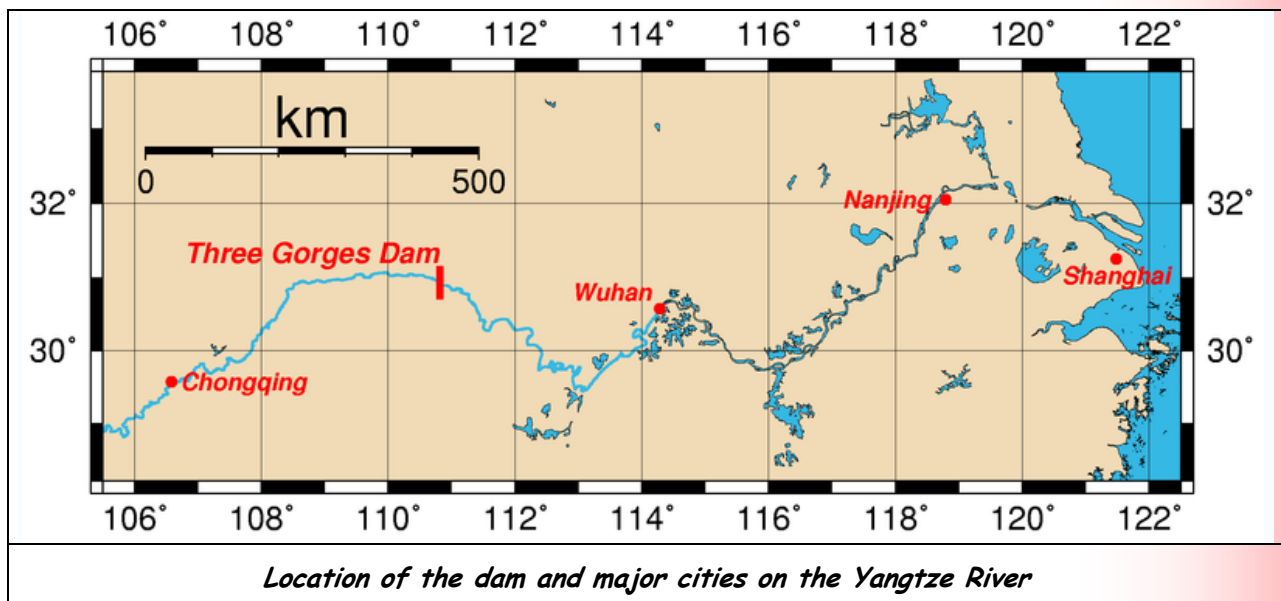
Later, Li Rui concluded that the dam should not be built at all since it would be too costly, flood many cities and fertile farmland, subject the middle and lower reaches of the river to catastrophic flooding during construction, and would not contribute much to shipping. [Sichuan](#) province officials also objected to the construction since Sichuan, located upstream, would shoulder most of the costs while downstream [Hubei](#) province would receive most of the benefits.

Lin Yishan, head of the Yangtze Valley Planning Office, who was in charge of the project, favored the dam construction, however. His optimism about resolving technical problems was further encouraged in 1958 by the favorable political climate and the support from the late chairman [Mao Zedong](#), who wanted China to have the largest [hydroelectric](#) dam in the world.



Criticisms were suppressed. But depression resulted from the disastrous [Great Leap Forward](#) and ended the preparation work in 1960.

The idea resurfaced in 1963 as part of the new policies to build a "[third front](#)" of industry in southwest China. But the [Cultural Revolution](#) erupted in 1966, and in 1969 the fear that the dam would be sabotaged by the [Soviet Union](#), now an enemy, resulted in a construction delay. In 1970, work was resumed on Gezhouba, a smaller dam downstream, but it soon ran into severe technical problems and cost overruns that seemed likely to plague the Three Gorges Dam on an even larger scale.



The economic reforms introduced in 1978 underlined the need for more electric power to supply a growing industrial base, so the State Council approved the construction in 1979. A feasibility study was conducted in 1982 to 1983 to appease the increasing number of critics, who complained that the project did not adequately address technical, social, or environmental issues. Further feasibility studies were then conducted from 1985 to 1988 by [Canadian International Project Managers Yangtze Joint Venture](#), a consortium of five Canadian engineering firms.

Leaders from [Chongqing](#) also demanded suddenly that the dam height be raised so substantially that it would cripple the project and free them from bearing the brunt of the costs. The new height and the demand for a more reliable study with the use of international standards resulted in a new feasibility study in 1986.

Ecologist Hou Xueyu was among the few who refused to sign the environmental report, claiming that it falsely overstated the environmental benefits provided by the dam, failed to convey the real extent of environmental impact, and lacked adequate solutions to environmental concerns.

Environmentalists internationally began to protest more vociferously. Human rights advocates criticized the resettlement plan. Archaeologists balked at the submergence of a huge number of historical sites. Many mourned the loss of some of the world's finest scenery.

Increasing numbers of engineers doubted whether the dam would actually achieve its stated purposes. Chinese journalist/engineer [Dai Qing](#) published a book relentlessly criticizing the project by the Chinese scientists, yet many foreign construction companies continued to press their governments to financially support the construction in hopes of winning contracts.

## Approval of project



*Three Gorges Dam from space*

In the face of much domestic and international pressure, the [State Council](#) agreed in March 1989 to suspend the construction plans for five years. After the [Tiananmen Square protests of 1989](#), however, the government forbade public debate of the dam, accused foreign critics of ignorance or intent to undermine the regime, and

imprisoned [Dai Qing](#) and other famous critics.

[Premier Li Peng](#) crusaded for the dam and pushed it through the [National People's Congress](#) in April 1992 despite the opposition or abstention from one-third of the delegates. Such actions were unprecedented from a body that usually rubberstamped all government proposals.

Resettlement soon began, and physical preparations started in 1994. While the government solicited technology, services, hardware and financing from abroad, leaders reserved the engineering and construction contracts for Chinese firms.

[Corruption scandals](#) have plagued the project. It was believed that contractors had won bids through [bribery](#) and then skimmed on equipment and materials to siphon off construction funds. The head of the Three Gorges Economic Development Corp. allegedly sold jobs in his company, took out project-related [loans](#) and disappeared with the [money](#) in May 2000. Officials from the [Three Gorges Resettlement Bureau](#) were caught [embezzling](#) funds from resettlement programs in January 2000.

Much of the project's infrastructure was so shoddy that Premier [Zhu Rongji](#) ordered some of it to be demolished in 1999 after a number of high-profile accidents including a collapse of a bridge. Zhu Rongji, who had been a harsh critic of the project, announced that the officials had a "mountain of responsibility on their heads". Around the time, a significant crack had also developed in the dam. To offset construction costs, project officials had quietly changed the operating plan approved by the NPC to fill the reservoir after six years rather than 10. In response, 53 engineers and academics petitioned President [Jiang Zemin](#) twice in the first half of 2000 to delay full filling of the reservoir and relocating the local population until scientists could determine whether a higher reservoir was viable given the [sedimentation](#) problems.

## Debate over the dam

### Cost

Officials report that the plan is within its US\$25 billion budget and insisted early on that the project would pay for itself through [electricity generation](#). However, the project is thought to have cost more than any other single construction project in the history of China, with unofficial estimates of US\$100 billion or more.<sup>[[citation needed](#)]</sup>

It has been said that under the order of the biggest proponent of the dam, then [premier Li Peng](#), the cost was based on 1980s prices, with almost no inflation included in the estimate. Opposition to the dam and to the fraudulent numbers being used to promote it was willfully ignored in the report in order to ensure its passage. One of the main opponents of the dam, famous Chinese activist, Li Rui, repeatedly voiced his concerns about rigged numbers and estimates, but the pleas of Li and others fell on deaf ears.<sup>[[citation needed](#)]</sup> However, one report from Xinhua news rebuffed those claims <sup>[6]</sup>. The project would cost no more than 180 billion yuan (22.5 billion U.S. dollars), 20 billion yuan less than the initial budget of 203.9 billion yuan (25.2 billion U.S. dollars) thanks to the low inflation rate in recent years.

### Increasing wealth disparity

Critics see the dam as serving primarily the interests of east coast industrialists, since this group has the most need for hydro-electric power. Unfortunately, this is at the expense of millions of people displaced from prime arable land. Making matters worse, relocation compensation has been inadequate (with corrupt officials stealing from the fund), the number of people displaced has been grossly underestimated, and their new land is of poor quality. As a result, a significant portion of the displaced population has to resort to begging and garbage collecting, or even prostitution. The exact number of rural people whose lives have been diminished or severely disrupted is uncertain because of state censorship by the Chinese government, but domestic Chinese researchers generally agree that the impact has been much more severe than Chinese state organs will admit.<sup>[[citation needed](#)]</sup> Domestic Chinese human-rights groups have been able to bring some members of the displaced to at least one of the international conferences held in

China on dams/reservoirs to testify about their plight, to no response from the Chinese government.[\[citation needed\]](#)

The suffering of those entitled even to the best available housing, land, and other benefits given the displaced, is undeniable, even by the Chinese government. Displaced peasants face hostility from people in regions in which newcomers are resettled. The locals often resent newcomers for the benefits they have received, or suspect that those benefits will be at the expense of their own meagre livelihoods.[\[citation needed\]](#)

## Environment

### Electricity production

The amount of power generated by the dam in 2009 was originally meant to supply about 10% of China's electricity needs, but with China's rapidly growing economy it is only projected to produce approximately 3% at the end of 2006[\[4\]](#). In fact, the dam is predicted to produce 18,200 MW of electrical power. According to a recent Discovery Channel special on the Three Gorges Dam, it will supply enough electricity to power a city four times larger than Los Angeles. That is a lot of energy, but considering China's population and already immense cities, it will simply be a drop in the bucket—not considering the fact that energy demand will increase with all of the new, modern relocation cities and development from the new shipping capabilities and industry. Over 80% of the country's power is currently produced by coal.[\[5\]](#)

### Pollution

Cities such as [Shanghai](#) need ever-increasing [electricity](#). With 26 [hydro turbines](#) generating up to 18 [gigawatts](#) of [electricity](#)—the equivalent of roughly eighteen coal power stations or 11,000 barrels of oil per hour—the Dam will help reduce this [power](#) shortage. Filling this demand for energy with hydroelectric power will also help China reduce its dependence on [fossil fuel](#) in the future. While in the short term the dam will cause extra pollution, the dam could potentially reduce China's annual coal consumption by 40 to 50 million tons but it will not be even close to 17 million kilowatts, thus reducing the discharge of two million tons of [sulfur dioxide](#) and 10,000 tons of [carbon monoxide](#) a year.[\[6\]](#)

### Greenhouse gas

Although hydro-electric power is a renewable energy source, the creation of large reservoirs can generate considerable quantities of [greenhouse gases](#), including substantial amounts of methane, due to micro-biotic activity. Compared to the greenhouse gas emissions of conventional natural gas power plants, emissions from northern reservoirs are typically about 5% of conventional power plants, while emissions from tropical reservoirs are typically 25%.[\[7\]](#)

Critics also argued that due to the short lifespan of the reservoir (a topic will be discussed further in the **Flood** section), the eventual output of the greenhouse gas will be much greater in comparison to the current level, because when the lifespan of the reservoir expires, the vegetation will need decades to recover.

## Ecosystem

Huge reservoirs by their nature alter the [ecosystem](#) and threaten some habitats whilst helping others. The [Chinese paddlefish](#), for example, is on the edge of [extinction](#) and will lose habitat and suffer divided populations due to the dam. Of the 3,000 to 4,000 remaining critically endangered [Siberian Crane](#), approximately 95% currently winter in wetlands that will be destroyed by the Three Gorges Dam. Another species, the [Chinese River Dolphin](#), became extinct as of [December 2006](#) due largely in part to the dam. While logging in the area was required for construction which adds to erosion, stopping the periodic uncontrolled river flooding will lessen erosion in the long run. The build up of [silt](#) in the reservoir will, however, reduce the amount of silt transported by the [Yangtze River](#) to the [Yangtze Delta](#) and could reduce the effectiveness of the dam for electricity generation and, perhaps more importantly, the lack of silt deposited in the river delta could result in erosion and sinking of coastal areas.

## Local culture and aesthetic values

The 600 km (370 mile) long reservoir will inundate some 1,300 archaeological sites and alter the legendary beauty of the Three Gorges. Cultural and historical relics are being moved to higher ground as they are discovered but the flooding of the Gorge will undoubtedly cover some undiscovered relics. Many other sites cannot be moved because of their size or design.

These historical sites contain remnants of the homeland of the [Ba](#), an ancient people who settled in the region more than 4,000 years ago. One of the traditions of the Ba was to bury the dead in coffins in caves high on the cliff, many of which will soon be submerged. This has raised some strong protests from the people.

By the Chinese government's own admission, the funds provided to salvage the artifacts are not enough. Chinese scholars further pointed out that the funds provided by the government is barely 10% of what needs to be (and the actual funds needed is only a rough estimate), and the so-called experts who provided funding advice to the government were only accountants, engineers and architects, instead of archaeologists, historians, and sociologists.<sup>[\[citation needed\]](#)</sup> However, the latter were wilfully excluded from the advisory bodies on the order of [premier Li Peng](#), and some were even forced into exile abroad, such as the famous economist Qian Jiaju, who was only able to return to China under the direct intervention of [Jiang Zemin](#), with the condition that he silence his criticism. Another strong opponent of the project, the famous rocket scientist Qian Weichang was able to achieve a better fate by avoiding exile, and after repeated pressure from the Chinese government, he devoted his life in the actual work of saving the artifacts. Again, such criticism was allowed in China only recently, well after the official retirement of [Li](#)



[Peng](#), but just like the criticism on the budgetary tricks, it is already too late since most artifacts are already submerged under water, making salvage a much more difficult task. The weight of the dam may actually tilt the Earth causing shorter or longer days, nobody is sure yet.

## Navigation

The installation of ship locks is intended to increase river shipping from 10 million to 50 million [tonnes](#) annually, with transportation costs cut by 30 to 37%. Shipping will become safer, since the gorges are



*Ship locks for river traffic to bypass the Three Gorges Dam, May 2004*

notoriously dangerous to navigate. Each ship lock is made up of 5 stages taking around 4 hours in total to complete. Critics argue, however, that heavy siltation will clog ports such as [Chongqing](#) within a few years based on the evidence from other dam projects.

The [canal locks](#) are designed to be 280 [m](#) long, 35 m wide, and 5 m deep (918 x 114 x 16.4 [ft](#)).<sup>[8]</sup> That is 30 m longer than those on the [St Lawrence Seaway](#), but half as deep. The canal locks are designed to

handle 10,000 ton barges.

The project also includes a [ship lift](#), a kind of elevator, which will be capable of lifting ships of up to 3,000 tons. In the original plan the ship lift would carry 10,000 ton vessels.

However, since its completion, the canal lock proved to be far less capable than the Chinese government had advertised: the official record indicates that due to various factors such as the dimensions of the ships/barges/boats, the maximum capacity actually reached is only 37% of what was originally claimed. Furthermore, there were numerous incidents of congestion, with the longest one lasting more than 5 days. Critics point out that 10,000 ton barges can already reach [Chongqing](#) without the lock, and in fact, without the dam.

## Flood control and drought

The reservoir's flood storage capacity is 22 [cubic kilometres](#), or 18 million [acre-feet](#). This capacity will lessen the frequency of big downstream [floods](#) from once every 10 years to once every 100 years. But critics believe that the Yangtze will add 530 million tons of [silt](#) into the reservoir on average per year and it

will soon be useless in preventing floods. Additionally, the system designed to flush out the [silt](#) relies on an unproven sequence of sluice gates. Increased sedimentation resulting from the dam could increase the already high flood level at [Chongqing](#).

There is also a contradiction between the roles of the dam as flood control and hydroelectricity production. Flood control requires dam levels to be kept low, allowing for increased flow throughout flood times, whereas hydroelectricity requires higher levels to allow for continual escape of water to produce the electricity. [Probe International](#) asserts that the dam does not address the real source of flooding, which is the loss of forest cover in the Yangtze [watershed](#) and the loss of 13,000 km<sup>2</sup> of lakes (which had greatly helped to alleviate floods) due to siltation, reclamation and uncontrolled development.

## Potential hazards

Concerns exist about the quality of construction materials used, highlighted by a major crack appearing in the dam in 2000, and have led some critics to fear a potential catastrophe similar to the [Banqiao Dam](#) failure of 1975.

In an annual report [\[7\]](#) to the [United States Congress](#), the [Department of Defense](#) cited that in Taiwan, "proponents of strikes against the mainland apparently hope that merely presenting credible threats to China's urban population or high-value targets, such as the Three Gorges Dam, will deter Chinese military coercion." The notion that the [ROC military](#) would seek to destroy the Dam provoked an angry response from the mainland state media. [PLA General Liu Yuan](#) was quoted [\[8\]](#) in the [China Youth Daily](#) saying that the PRC would be "seriously on guard against threats from [Taiwan independence](#) terrorists". Despite a claim by Taiwan Deputy Defence Minister [Tsai Ming Hsian](#) to the contrary, most analysts believe Taiwan neither has the will nor seeks the technology to bomb the Three Gorges Dam, fearing that Beijing will respond with overwhelming force. In September 2004, the [China Times](#) reported that heavily-armed guards had been deployed to the area to fend off a possible terrorist attack, but did not say who might want to target the dam.

There are two hazards uniquely identified with the dam:[\[9\]](#) sedimentation modelling is unverified and the dam sits on a seismic fault. Excessive sedimentation can block the sluice gates which can cause dam failure under some conditions. This was a contributing cause of the [Banqiao Dam](#) failure in 1975 that precipitated the failure of 61 other dams and resulted in over 200,000 deaths. Also, the weight of the dam and reservoir can theoretically cause [induced seismicity](#), as happened with the [Katse Dam](#) in [Lesotho](#).

## See also



[Energy Portal](#)

- [Baiheliang](#)

- [Dams](#)
- [Drought](#)
- [Environment of China](#)
- [Flood](#)
- [Fu Xiancai](#)
- [Itaipu](#)
- [Megaprojects](#)
- [Ship lifts in China](#)
- [Transvasement](#)

## Notes

1. <sup>^</sup> [BBC News Online](#) - "[Three Gorges dam wall completed](#)". [20 May 2006](#). *URL accessed 21 May 2006*.
2. <sup>^</sup> [BBC News Online](#) - "[Three Gorges dam's social impact](#)". [20 May 2006](#). *URL accessed 21 May 2006*.
3. <sup>^</sup> [Three Gorges Dam to be completed nine months ahead of schedule: developer](#). People's Daily Online (February 05, 2006). Retrieved on [2006-50-21](#).
4. <sup>^</sup> China's 15-year lesson in how not to build a dam; Jonathan Watts; Guardian Unlimited. [\[1\]](#)
5. <sup>^</sup> "China's Mega Dam" (documentary). The Discovery Channel. Broadcast [28 January 2006](#). [\[2\]](#)
6. <sup>^</sup> "Three Gorges Electricity to Illuminate Half of China" *People's Daily* newspaper website [\[3\]](#)
7. <sup>^</sup> Tremblay, Varfalvy, Roehm and Garneau (2005). [Greenhouse Gas Emissions - Fluxes and Processes](#). Springer. [ISBN 3-540-23455-1](#).
8. <sup>^</sup> Three Gorges Dam [\[4\]](#)
9. <sup>^</sup> Topping, Audrey Ronning. Environmental controversy over the Three Gorges Dam. Earth Times News Service.

## References

1. [Article by ABB on use of HVDC-technology for distribution of power generated at the Three Gorges Dam](#)
2. "[Three Gorges dam's social impact](#)" by Jill McGivering, *BBC News*, [May 20, 2006](#), retrieved [May 20, 2006](#)

The following sections of this article do not cite [references or sources](#). You can [help](#) Wikipedia by including appropriate citations. The sections are: Proposal of project, Approval of project, Cost, Increasing wealth disparity, Environment, Local culture and aesthetic values, Navigation, and Flood control.

## External links

- [Chinese government press release](#)

- [China Digital Times' coverage on Three Gorges Dam](#)
- [China Yangzi Power Co. Ltd.](#)
- [Official site of Three Gorge Project Co. Ltd.](#)
- [Three Gorges Dam](#)
- [International Rivers Network](#)
- [BBC News Online](#) - [Troops to protect dam against terrorists](#) - [14 September 2004](#).
- [BBC News Online](#) - [Dam wall completed](#) - [20 May 2006](#).
- [BBC News Online](#) - [In pictures: Three Gorges Dam](#) - [20 May 2006](#).
- [chinadialogue](#) 中国与世界 , 环境危机大家谈 - article about the politics of water in China
- [Mao Pin Xi Dam, A part of the Three Gorges Dam](#)
- [Probe International, anti dam web site](#)
- [Information on state power network](#)
- [Bill Zorn Photo Documentary](#)
- [Three Gorges Dam Project photographs](#) of Canadian Photographer Edward Burtynsky. Click on "THREE GORGES" link.
- [Maps and aerial photos](#) Coordinates: [30.827778° 111.009167°](#)
  - Mapping from [Multimap](#) or [GlobalGuide](#) or [Google Maps](#)
  - Aerial image from [TerraServer](#)
  - Satellite image from [WikiMapia](#)
- [Megaprojects and risk](#)

## White Emperor City - Baidicheng

<http://www.discoveryyangtze.com/Yangtzediscovery/baidicheng.htm>

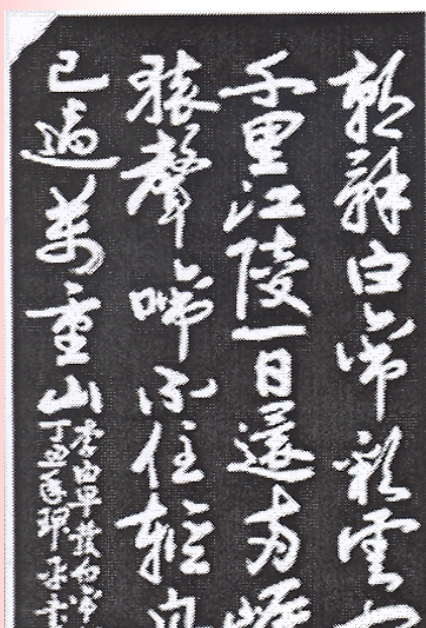
### ***Baidi Cheng (White Emperor City)***

The local ferry from Fengjie takes about 20 minutes to reach Baidi Cheng on the north bank of the river, passing several pagodas on the surrounding peaks the return trip takes an hour). Sadly the approach to this historic site is quite spoilt by a factory and workers' housing built in the 1970s.

Because of its strategic position the town was chosen in the first century AD by Gong Sunshu, an official turned soldier, as the site of his headquarters. The legend goes that in AD 25 white vapour in the shape of a dragon was seen rising from a nearby well. Taking this as an auspicious omen, Gong declared himself the 'White Emperor' and the town 'White Emperor City'. Remains of the city wall can still be seen on the hill behind Baidi Mountain. The 12-year reign of the White Emperor was regarded as a time of peace and harmony, so after his death a temple was built to commemorate his reign. This temple dates back over 1,950 years.



Several hundred steps lead up the wooded Baidi Mountain. The Western Pavilion (at one time known as Guanyin Dong) on the slope is believed to have been occupied by the great poet Du Fu, who wrote numerous poems at this site. The pavilion overlooks what Du Fu described as 'the limitless Yangtze'. Further up the hill is a stupa, marking the grave of a much-loved literary monk who served at the temple during the Qing dynasty (1644--1911).



A red wall with an imposing yellow dragon-head gateway surrounds the temple complex. Though the temple was originally dedicated to Gong Sunshu, the White Emperor, his statue was removed in the Ming dynasty (1368--1644) and replaced with images of Liu Bei, Zhuge Liang, Guan Yu and Zhang Fei, heroes of the Shu Kingdom during the Three Kingdoms period. The present halls date from the Ming dynasty.

The front hall contains large modern statues which depict Liu Bei on his deathbed entrusting his Sons to the care of Zhuge Liang. To the left is the handsome, winged Observing the Stars Pavilion (GuanXng Ting), Where a large bronze bell can be seen hanging in the



upper storey. From this pavilion Zhuge Liang observed the stars and made accurate weather forecasts Which helped him plan his victorious battles.

The two Forest of Tablets halls contain several rare engraved stelae, some of which are over 1,300 years old. The Phoenix Tablet is particularly finely engraved. The Bamboo Leaf Poem Tablet is one of only three in China. It is considered a fine work of art, combining as it does poetry and calligraphy, for the tablet is engraved with three branches of bamboo, each leaf forming the Chinese characters of a poem.

The Wuhou Hall is dedicated to Zhuge Liang, his son and grandson. The bodies of the statues are of the Ming dynasty (1368--1644), but the heads, smashed in the Cultural Revolution (1966--76), are new. Mingliang Hall is dedicated to Liu Bei, Who is shown surrounded by four attendants, as well as the black-faced Zhang Fei and the red faced Guan Yu on one side, and Zhuge Liang on the other. Adjoining rooms display furniture, scrolls, porcelain and other cultural relics.

In 1987, several buildings were converted to form a museum displaying the many cultural relics found within the area, including two coffins from the Ba culture. One of these dates back to the Western Han dynasty (206 BC-AD 8).

Fine views of the entrance to Qutang Gorge can be seen from the temple. As the Three Gorges Dam begins to take effect, the water level will rise and Baidi Mountain will become an island.



At the foot of Baidi Mountain, Yanyu Rock--over 30 metres (100 feet) long, 20 metres (66 feet) wide and 40 metres (130 feet) high--used to be a constant hazard to boats riding the swift current and heading into the narrow entrance of Qutang Gorge. Over the ages, countless vessels perished. In 1959 it took a work team seven days to blow up this gigantic rock.

[http://www.discoveryangtze.com/Yangtzediscovery/the\\_story\\_of\\_the\\_three\\_kingdoms.htm](http://www.discoveryangtze.com/Yangtzediscovery/the_story_of_the_three_kingdoms.htm)

## The Story of the Three Kingdoms

--BY MADELEINE LYNN

*If one wishes to understand China, one must have some familiarity with the history of the Three Kingdom and with the lore that surrounds it. Above all this is true on the middle and upper Yangtze where it seems every bend in the river leads to another site associated with [his epoch and to the stoics that have grown around it like the layers of a pearl around its grain of historical fact. If the events seem complicated and the stage crowded with unfamiliar actors that too is part of China's reality. One might as well seek to know the Greeks without the Trojan War or the English without Shakespeare.*

Lyman P Van Slyke, Yangtze Nature, History and the River, 1988.



By AD 150 the Han dynasty (206 BCMD 220) was already rotting from within, the result of a series of weak emperors. The uprising of peasant rebels known as the Yellow Turbans (AD 184) gave three strong warlords (Cao Cao, Liu Bei and Sun Quan) the opportunity to amass their own independent armies. They gradually set up rival territories within the Empire and fought it out for the control of

China. The history of their struggle formed the basis for the 14th-century popular novel

The three kingdoms were:

**The Kingdom of Wei :** North China, comprising the Yellow River basin; the base of the Qin and Han dynasties. Its ruler was Cao Cao, Duke of Wei, characterized in the novel as the archetypal Chinese villain, a brilliant but ruthless general. 'Speak of Cao Cao and he is there' is the Chinese equivalent of 'Talk of the devil'.

**The Kingdom of Shu:** the area that is now called Sichuan. It was established by Liu Bei pretender to the throne by virtue of being a distant relation of the Han emperor. Although a rather weak and insignificant personality himself, his royal blood attracted gifted followers, the most famous of whom are Zhuge Liang and Liu's two sworn blood--brothers Zhang Fei and Guan Yu).

Zhuce Liang was Liu's premier strategist and has been held up as an example of military genius ever since. There are numerous stories of how he defeated Cao Cao's larger armies by guile and bravado rather than strength. For instance, there was the time he was staying in an unprotected city when Cao Cao's army arrived unexpectedly. As the troops approached, they saw that the city gate was wide open and that Zhuge Liang, accompanied only by one young servant boy, was perched on top of the city wall calmly playing the harp. Convinced that they were about to walk into an ambush, the enemy withdrew.

Guan Yu was so revered for his loyalty that he was gradually turned into a god. Given the honorary title Guan Gong, and also known as Guan Di, God of War, Justice and Righteousness, until recently nearly every large town in China had a temple dedicated to him. His statue can be recognized by its distinctive red face, signifying bravery and goodness.

**The Kingdom of Wu** :The rich and fertile lower Yangtze region, as far as the sea. This was controlled by the treacherous Sun Quan, whose family was the most influential in the region.

Between Shu and Wu was the middle Yangtze basin, a no--man's land of marshes and lakes. From here one could threaten either Shu or Wu and it was here that some of the most crucial battles took place. On the run from Cao Cao's army, Liu Bei took refuge in this area and Zhuge Liang persuaded Sun Quan, the ruler of Wu, to ally with them against the powerful Cao Cao. Although their combined forces were still far less than Cao Cao's, together they routed him in the critical battle of Red Cliff (see page 89), at a site upriver from modern Wuhan.



*Zhuge Liang*

Now it was Cao Cao's turn to flee for his life. Although Guan Yu actually cornered him and could have killed him he let him go, as Cao Cao had done the same for him in an earlier encounter.

But the alliance between Liu Bei and Sun Quan did not last long. Sun Quan tried to persuade Guan Yu to betray Liu Bei and join him. When Guan Yu refused, Sun had him beheaded and sent his head to Cao Cao, hoping for an alliance with him. The grief stricken Liu Bei ignored Zhuge Liang's advice and launched a disastrous campaign against Sun. Before the fight even began, his other sworn brother Zhang Fei was murdered by two fellow officers who planned to surrender to Sun. Liu was ignominiously defeated and Retreated to Baidi Cheng, where he died a few years later.

Cao Cao also died without achieving his ambitions. Although his son succeeded in conquering the other two Kingdoms, it was a short-lived triumph, as he was toppled in a coup d'etat. So none of the three realized their dream of ruling over the whole of China.

## ***Baidicheng of Fengjie***

Baidicheng lies on the northern bank of the Yangtze River at the western entrance to the Qutang Gorge with its three sides facing water and one side facing mountains. It is an important strategic place. It was called the fish's belly in Qin and Han Dynasty. At the end of the Western Han Dynasty, Gongsun Shu grasped Shu and constructed the city. In 25 A.D., he styled himself as Baidi (the White Emperor), hence the name of Baidicheng. The so-called Baidicheng (White Emperor City) with a history of more than 1900 years was once Baidi Miao (White Emperor Temple).



The building of Baidi Miao is of Ming and Qing features including Ming Liang Hall and Wuhou (military officer) Temple, which are lined by more than 70 steles from Sui to Qing Dynasty. The most valuable tablets involve those written by Emperor Kangxi of Qing Dynasty. Hundreds of culture relics unearthed in Baidicheng Area with a

history of 6000-7000 years ranging from the New Stone Age to the Qing Dynasty are exhibited here. The painted sculpture in the Baidi Temple tells the story of Liu Bei King of Shu Kingdom, entrusting his son and the state affairs to Prime Minister Zhuge Liang. The story made Baidicheng very famous since then.

There are thousands of unearthed cultural relics from the New Stone Age to various dynasties as well as paintings and calligraphies of celebrities in Baidicheng, involving stone axe and stone arrow from the



New Stone Age, bronze axe from the Slave Society, bronze Seriate halts from the Warring States, bronze mirror from Qin and Han Dynasty, white porcelain painted box from Tang Dynasty, chinaware of Long Quan Jiao from Song Dynasty. A weight of Chinese balance made in Yuan Dynasty, one hundred word mirror of Ming Dynasty and the God of happiness, Emolument and Longevity, carved in wood of Qing Dynasty. Eight purple chairs of sandalwood and marble seated by eight princes of the Taiping Heavenly Kingdom remain most precious.





Many greet Chinese poets from various dynasties including Li Bai, Du Fu, Bai Juyh Liu Yuxi, Su Shi. Huang Tingjian, Fan Chengda and Lu You once toured Baidicheng and wrote a great deal of poems. Baidicheng is also named as the City of Poetry.

The water level of the Three Gorge Dyke will rise to the middle of the mountains. Since the main building of Baidicheng is above 248 metres, it will not be destroyed by construction. It will then become a small island, providing another beautiful scenic spot, Tourists may arrive at it directly via the grand pleasure boats.

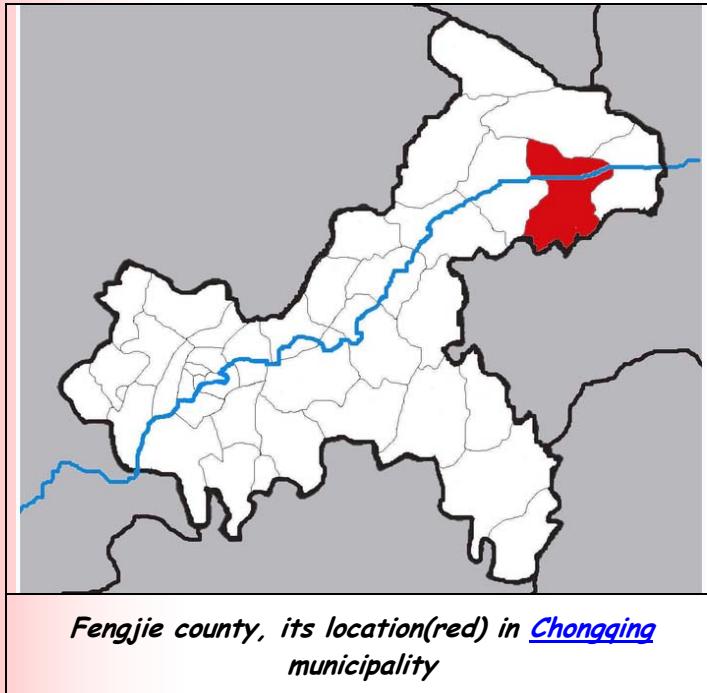


## Feng Jie

<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Fengjie>

# Fengjie

From Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia



**Fengjie** is a town of [China](#) on the [Yangtze River](#), near the [Three Gorges Dam](#). It is the county seat of Fengjie County, which has an area of 4099Km<sup>2</sup> and a population of 1.02 million. Fengjie county is under the administration of [Chongqing](#) municipality.

Due to the building of the dam, the town has to be relocated to a new location at higher altitude. The old town was completely demolished and its site is now under water. The scale of population relocation in Fengjie County resulted from Dam caused flooding was the largest among all counties in the

reservoir area of the Three Gorges Dam.

The history of Fengjie can be traced back, at least, to 314B.C. In [Qin Dynasty](#), Yufu County was established here as part of the Kingdom of Ba.

It is the place where [Still Life](#) was shot, a film by [Jia Zhangke](#) that won the 2006 [Venice Film Festival \(Golden Lion\)](#).

Last updated at: (Beijing Time) Monday, November 04, 2002

## ***Fengjie Town Moves to Make Way for Three Gorges Project***

With a roaring blast, nine tower blocks disappeared. Fengjie, a historic town in southwest China's Chongqing Municipality, came to an end after more than 2,300 years.

With a roaring blast, nine tower blocks disappeared. Fengjie, a historic town in southwest China's [Chongqing](#) Municipality, came to an end after more than 2,300 years.

The usually bustling streets are blocked by hills of debris. Only the ancient city gates still stand, but their stones are numbered in preparation for relocation to a new town eight kilometers away.

It will have the same style of old Fengjie, but with more modern amenities.

Fengjie will be one of the first towns and counties to be submerged in the water storage of the Three Gorges Project, currently under construction on China's longest river, the Yangtze.

Statistics from the construction department of Fengjie County show that the old town, covering 1.4 square km, had a population of 100,000, with a higher density than [Shanghai](#), China's most populous city.

The new town is composed of six districts, covering an area more than twice the size of the old Fengjie town.

A local driver surnamed Wei said his old home of more than ten years had a floorspace of about 60 square meters, but after relocation he had a new apartment of 150 square meters.

The new town had better living conditions, with wider streets, more grass and flowers and better air, said Wei.

Fengjie has been a major pass and transport hub since ancient China. "The government will move the original form with two ancient gates and Yong'an Palace, a historical site, to the new city," said Liu Benrong, a leader of Fengjie County.

The excavated cultural relics would be exhibited in the new museum and the streets and statues in the new town would reflect the culture of the old town, said Liu.

# Hangzhou

<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hangzhou>

## Hangzhou

From Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia


**Hangzhou** ([help](#)·[info](#)) (Chinese: 杭州; [pinyin](#): Hángzhōu; [Postal map spelling](#): **Hangchow**) is a [sub-provincial city](#) in [China](#) and the capital of [Zhejiang province](#). Located 180 km southwest of [Shanghai](#), the population in the city proper is now around 1.75 million. By the end of [2003](#), Hangzhou had a registered population of 6.4 million including an urban registered population of 3.9 million. As one of the most renowned and prosperous cities of China for much of the last 1,000 years, Hangzhou is also well-known for its beautiful natural scenery, with the [West Lake](#) (Xī Hú, 西湖) as the most noteworthy location.

## History

The celebrated [Neolithic](#) culture of [Hemudu](#) has been discovered to have inhabited this area as far back as seven thousand years ago, when [rice](#) was first cultivated in southeastern China.

The city of Hangzhou was founded about 2,200 years ago during the [Qin Dynasty](#), it is listed as one of the [Seven Ancient Capitals of China](#), but the [city wall](#) was not constructed until the [Sui Dynasty](#) ([591](#)).

It was the capital of the Wuyue Kingdom from [907](#) to [978](#) during the Five Dynasties and Ten Kingdoms Period. Named Xifu at the time, it

<div>杭州市</div> <div>Hángzhōu Shì</div>	
	
<a href="#">Administration Type</a>	<a href="#">sub-provincial city</a>
<a href="#">Mayor</a>	Sun Zhonghuan (孙忠焕)
<a href="#">GDP</a> - Total - Per Capita	¥251.5 billion ¥ 38,858
<a href="#">Area</a>	16,847 <a href="#">km²</a>
<a href="#">Population</a>	6.4 million
<a href="#">Postal Code</a>	310000 (Urban center)
<a href="#">License Plate Prefix</a>	浙A
<a href="#">City Flower</a>	<a href="#">Sweet Osmanthus</a>
<a href="#">City Tree</a>	<a href="#">Camphor tree</a>

was one of the three great centers of culture in southern [China](#) during the [tenth century](#), along with [Nanjing](#) and [Chengdu](#). Leaders of Wuyue were noted patrons of the arts, and especially of [Buddhism](#) and associated temple architecture and artwork. It also became a cosmopolitan center, drawing scholars from throughout [China](#) and conducting diplomacy not only with neighboring Chinese states, but also with [Japan](#), [Korea](#), and the [Khitans](#).<sup>[*citation needed*]</sup>

## Contents

- [1 History](#)
- [2 Geography and climate](#)
- [3 Tourism](#)
- [4 Economy](#)
- [5 Culture](#)
- [6 Transportation](#)
- [7 Colleges and universities](#)
  - [7.1 National](#)
  - [7.2 Public](#)
  - [7.3 Private](#)
- [8 Chinese sayings](#)
- [9 Sister cities](#)
- [10 See also](#)
- [11 References](#)
  - [11.1 Cited references](#)
  - [11.2 General references](#)
- [12 External links](#)

In [1089](#), [Su Shi](#) constructed a 2.8 km long dike across the [West Lake](#), which [Qing Emperor Qianlong](#) considered particularly attractive in the early morning of the spring time. The lake, which itself is artificial, is largely surrounded by mountains. The Baoshi Pagoda sits on one of these hills to the north.

Hangzhou was the capital of the [Southern Song Dynasty](#) from the early [12th century](#) until the Mongol invasion of 1276, and was known as **Lin'an** (臨安). It served as the seat of the imperial government, a center of trade and entertainment, and the nexus of the main branches of the [civil service](#). During that time, the city was the gravity centre of Chinese civilization as what used to be considered the "central China" in the north was taken by the [Jin](#), an ethnic minority dynasty. Numerous philosophers, politicians, and men of literature, including some of the most celebrated poets in Chinese history such as [Su Shi](#) (苏轼), [Lu You](#) (陆游), and [Xin Qiji](#) (辛弃疾) came here to live and die.

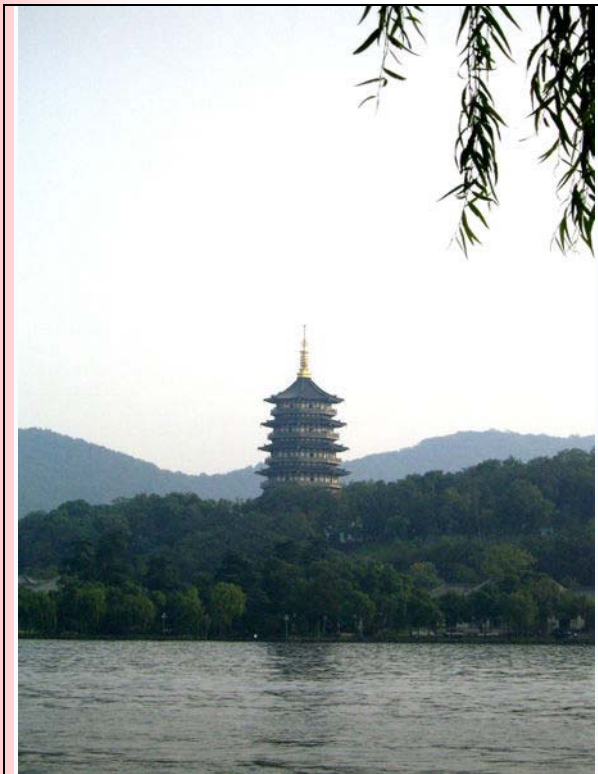


*Lakeside Buildings on the West Lake*

During the Southern Song Dynasty, commercial expansion, an influx of refugees from the conquered north, and the growth of the official and military establishments, led to a corresponding population increase and the city developed well outside its 9th century ramparts. According to the [Encyclopædia Britannica](#), Hangzhou had a population of over 2 million at that time, while Historian Jacques Gernet has estimated that the population of Hangzhou numbered well over one million by 1276. (Official Chinese census figures from the year 1270 listed



some 186,330 families in residence and probably failed to count non-residents and soldiers.) It is believed that Hangzhou was the largest city in the world from 1180 to 1315 and from 1348 to 1358. [1]

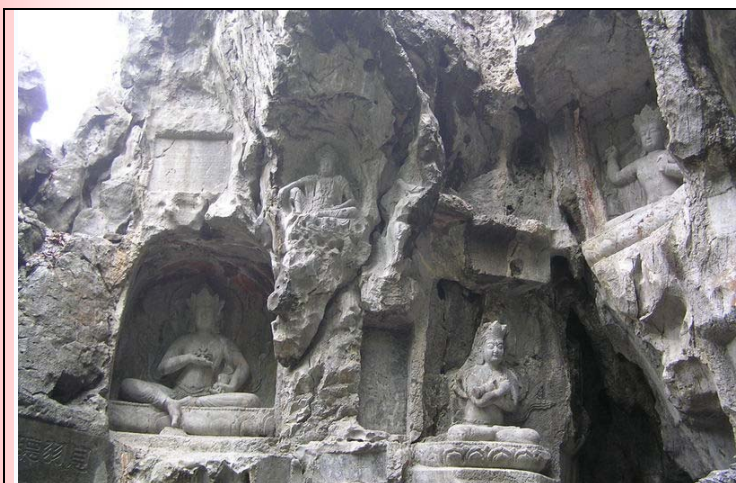


*Leifeng Pagoda on the West Lake*

The Venetian [Marco Polo](#) visited Hangzhou in the late [13th century](#) and referred to the city as "beyond dispute the finest and the noblest in the world." Although he exaggerated that the city was over one hundred miles in diameter and had 12,000 stone bridges, he still presented elegant prose about the country. "The number and wealth of the merchants, and the amount of goods that passed through their hands, was so enormous that no man could form a just estimate thereof."

Because of the large population and densely-crowded (often multi-story) wooden buildings, Hangzhou was particularly vulnerable to fires. Major conflagrations destroyed large sections of the city in [1132](#), [1137](#), [1208](#), [1229](#), [1237](#), and [1275](#) while smaller fires occurred nearly every year. The 1237 fire alone was recorded to have destroyed 30,000

dwellings. To combat this threat, the government established an elaborate system for fighting fires, erected watchtowers, devised a system of lantern and flag signals to identify the source of the flames and direct the response, and charged more than 3,000 soldiers with the task of putting out fires.



*Buddhist carvings in Feilai Feng Caves*

The city remained an important port until the middle [Ming Dynasty](#) when its harbor slowly silted up.

As late as the latter part of the 16th and early 17th centuries, the city was an important center of [Chinese Jewry](#), and may have been the original home of the more well-known [Kaifeng Jewish community](#).

Hangzhou was ruled by the [Kuomintang](#) under [Chiang Kai-shek](#) (Jiang Jieshi)

蒋介石) from 1928 to 1949. On May 3, [1949](#), the [People's Liberation Army](#) entered Hangzhou and the city came under Communist control.



## Geography and climate

Hangzhou is located in northern Zhejiang province, eastern China, at the southern end of the [Grand Canal of China](#), on the plain of the mid-lower reaches of the [Yangtze River](#) (Cháng Jiā ng). The prefecture-level region of Hangzhou extends west to the border with the hilly-country Anhui Province, and east to the flat-land Hangzhou Bay. The city centre is built around the eastern and northern sides of the West Lake, just north of the [Qiantang River](#).

Hangzhou has a mild climate, with four distinctive seasons. The average annual temperature in Hangzhou is 16.2 degrees Celsius. The summers are hot and humid, while winters are relatively cool and dry. In [July](#), the hottest month, the average temperature is approximately 33.8 degrees Celsius; in January the average temperature is about 3.6 degree Celsius. Hangzhou receives an average annual rainfall of 1450 mm. In mid-summer, Hangzhou, along with other cities in [Zhejiang](#) province, suffer [typhoon](#) storms.<sup>[1]</sup>

## Tourism



*Luohan Tang ([Arhat Hall](#)) at Hupaoquan in Hangzhou, China*

Hangzhou is renowned for its historic relics and natural beauty. It has been ranked as one of the ten most scenic cities in China.<sup>[2]</sup> Although Hangzhou has been through many recent urban developments, it still retains its historical and cultural heritage. Today, tourism remains an important factor for Hangzhou's economy.<sup>[3]</sup>

- One of Hangzhou's most popular sights is [West Lake](#). The lake covers an area of 60 square kilometres and includes some of Hangzhou's most famous historic and scenic places. The area includes historical pagodas, cultural sites, as well as the natural beauty of the lake and hills.<sup>[4]</sup>

- The oldest [Buddhist temple](#) in the city is believed to be [Lingyin Si](#) ("Soul's Retreat"), which, like most of the other landmarks in this city, has gone

through numerous destruction and reconstruction cycles. The contemporary building was finished in 1910.

- [Jingci Temple](#)
- [Liuhe Pagoda](#)
- [Baochu Pagoda](#)

- [Yue-Wang Miao](#) (岳王庙, "King Yue's Temple") near the West Lake was originally constructed in [1221](#) in memory of General [Yue Fei](#), who lost his life due to political persecution.
- [Xixi National Wetland Park](#)
- [Hangzhou Botanical Gardens](#)
- [Dreaming of the Tiger Spring](#)
- [Hangzhou Zoo](#)
- [Leifeng Pagoda](#)

## Economy



*Tea plantation in Hangzhou*

Hangzhou's industries have traditionally been [textile](#), [silk](#) and [machinery](#), but [electronics](#) and other light [industries](#) are developing, especially since the start of the new open economy in [1992](#).

[Tea](#) is produced on the outskirts of town at Longjing (龙井) or Dragon Well. It is among the only remaining places where tea is still baked by hand and is said to produce one of the finest [green teas](#) in all of China.

The [GDP](#) per capita was ¥38247 (ca.

US\$4620), ranked no. 8 among 659 Chinese cities.

The 2005 overall rank of Hangzhou among all the Chinese cities is No.5. In 2004, [Forbes](#) magazine ranked Hangzhou the number 1 city in China for business.<sup>[9]</sup>

Hangzhou is one of [China's most popular tourist destinations](#). Tourism is an important part of the local economy. The West Lake has been a leisure destination for many centuries.

## Culture

The native residents of Hangzhou, like those of [Zhejiang](#) and southern [Jiangsu](#), speak a [Wu](#) dialect. However, the Wu dialect varies throughout the area where it is spoken, hence, Hangzhou's dialect differs from regions in southern [Zhejiang](#) and southern [Jiangsu](#). In addition, [Putonghua](#) (Mandarin) is also spoken.

Tea is an important part of Hangzhou's economy and culture. Hangzhou is best known for originating [Longjing](#), a famous variety of [green tea](#). Furthermore, there are many types of Longjing tea, the most famous being Xi Hu Long Jing. Known as the best type of Long Jing tea, Xi Hu Long Jing is grown near [Xi Hu](#) in Hangzhou, hence its name.<sup>[6]</sup>

Further, Hangzhou is known for its artistic creations, such as [silk](#), [umbrellas](#), and Chinese hand-held folding [fans](#).

## Transportation



*Bars and Shops alongside the street of Hangzhou*

Hangzhou is serviced by the [Hangzhou Xiaoshan International Airport](#), which has direct flights to Japan, Thailand, Korea, Singapore, Hong Kong and Macao, as well as numerous domestic routes. [Hangzhou Railway Station](#) (colloquially the "City Station" 城站) and the significantly less modern [Hangzhou East Railway Station](#) (colloquially "East Station" 东站) serve the city centre, from which one can catch a train to Shanghai and almost anywhere in China. A [Shanghai-Hangzhou Maglev Train Line](#) has been

proposed. North, east, south and west long-distance [bus](#) stations offer regular large and small coach services to towns within Zhejiang province and surrounding provinces.

Public transport within Hangzhou city is primarily in the form of an extensive public [\(trolley\)bus](#) network. As the city area is so flat, [bicycles](#) were traditionally very popular and are still popular with the less well-off residents, though many now use electric bicycles and [scooters](#). [Taxis](#) are also very common. The construction of a subway system had long been planned, and recently received approval from the central government. The completion of the first two lines is expected in 2010.

[Hangzhou Xiaoshan International Airport](#) located just outside of the city in the [Xiaoshan](#) district is one of the major secondary international [airports](#) in [China](#), with regular passenger flights to most destinations in China and also [Korea](#), [Japan](#), [Hong Kong](#), [Thailand](#) and [Singapore](#).

## Colleges and universities

See also [List of universities in mainland China#Zhejiang](#)

### National



- [Zhejiang University](#) (浙江大学) (founded in 1897)
- [China Academy of Art](#) (中国美术学院) (founded in 1928)

## Public

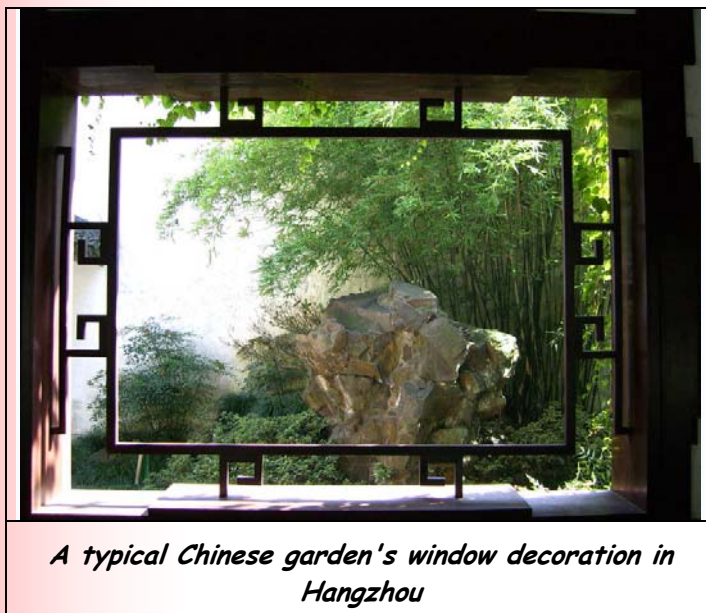
- [Zhejiang University of Technology](#) (浙江工业大学)
- Zhejiang University of Science & Technology (浙江科技学院)
- Zhejiang Sci-Tech University (浙江理工大学)
- HangZhou DianZi University (杭州电子科技大学)
- Zhejiang University of Traditional Chinese Medicine (浙江中医药大学)
- China Jiliang University (中国计量学院)
- [Zhejiang University of Finance and Economics](#) (浙江财经学院)
- Hangzhou University of Electronics Engineering (杭州电子工业大学)
- Hangzhou Teachers College (杭州师范学院) <sup>[2]</sup>
- Hangzhou University of Commerce (杭州工商大学)

## Private

- Zhejiang Shuren University (浙江树人学院)
- City College, Zhejiang University(浙江大学城市学院)

*Note: Institutions without full-time bachelor programs are not listed.*






## Chinese sayings



"Born in [Suzhou](#), live in Hangzhou, eat in [Guangzhou](#), die in [Liuzhou](#)."

上有天堂 下有蘇杭 "In heaven, there is paradise; On earth, there are [Suzhou](#) and Hangzhou."

## Sister cities

-  [Boston](#), [Massachusetts](#), [United States](#)
-  [Fukui](#), [Japan](#)
-  [Sayama](#), [Saitama](#), [Japan](#)
-  [Leeds](#), [United Kingdom](#)
-  [Oviedo](#), [Spain](#)
-  [Nice](#), [France](#)

## See also

- [Jiangnan](#)

- [List of cities in the People's Republic of China by population](#)

## References

### Cited references

1. [^ Hangzhou](#). China Today. Retrieved [22 August 2006](#).
2. [^ Hangzhou Today: Tourism](#). China Pages. Retrieved [22 August 2006](#).
3. [^ Hangzhou Today: General Survey](#). China Pages. Retrieved [22 August 2006](#).
4. [^ Hangzhou Today: Tourism](#). China Pages. Retrieved [22 August 2006](#).
5. [^ Following Marco Polo](#). Retrieved on [2006-10-26](#).
6. [^ Xi Hu Long Jing Tea](#) Tea Spring. Retrieved [23 August 2006](#).

### General references

- Gernet, Jacques. [Daily Life In China On the Eve of the Mongol Invasion: 1250-1276](#). H.M. Wright, translator. Stanford: University Press, 1962. [ISBN 0804707200](#) } (This work focuses almost exclusively on life in Hangzhou in the period described.)

### External links

- [Official Hangzhou Municipal Website](#)
- [Official Hangzhou Government Website - English](#)
- [Hangzhou Link Resources](#)
- [Hangzhou Hotels](#)
- [Classifieds and Community Portal for Internationals in Hangzhou](#)
- [Satellite photo from Google Maps](#)
- [Hangzhou travel guide](#) from [Wikitravel](#)



# Hangzhou - West Lake (Xī Hú)

[http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/West\\_Lake](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/West_Lake)

From Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia

*This article is about the West Lake in Hangzhou, China. For the lake by the same name (and same characters) in [Japan](#), see [Saiko, Yamanashi](#).*



*West Lake*

**West Lake** ([Chinese](#): 西湖; [pinyin](#): Xī Hú) is a famous fresh water lake located in central [Hangzhou](#), in [Zhejiang](#) province of eastern [China](#).

The [lake](#) is divided by three [causeways](#) called *Su Di* (苏堤), *Bai Di* (白堤), and *Yanggong Di* (杨公堤).

The name "*West Lake*" (Xi Hu) is also used by a large number of lakes in China and surrounding countries (with 800 West Lakes in China according to [Lonely Planet](#)). However, the lake in Hangzhou is the most famous of these,

and the terms "West Lake" and "Xi Hu" generally refers to this lake.

## Contents

- [1 History](#)
- [2 Ten Scenes of West Lake](#)
- [3 Other attractions](#)
- [4 Influences](#)
- [5 Gallery](#)
- [6 External link](#)

## History

In middle of the [Tang Dynasty](#) Zhenyuan era (785-804), [poet Bai Juyi](#) came to Hangzhou as governor. Already an accomplished poet, his deeds at Hangzhou made him a great governor. He realised that the farmland nearby depended on the water of West Lake, but due to negligence of former governors, the old [dyke](#) had collapsed, the water level of West Lake dried out, and the local farmers suffered severe [drought](#). He ordered the construction of a stronger and taller dyke, with a [dam](#) to control the flow of water, and thus solved the drought problem. The livelihood of local people of Hangzhou improved over the following years. Now that Bai Juyi had more leisure time to enjoy the beauty of West Lake, he visited West Lake almost every day. He ordered the construction of a causeway connecting the Broken Bridge with the Solitary Hill, to facilitate walking on foot, instead of depending on boat. Then he planted peach trees and willows trees along the dyke, making it a beautiful landmark of West Lake. This causeway was later named Bai Di Causeway in Bai Juyi's honour.



*One of the major attractions in West Lake: Three Pools Mirroring the Moon island*

Over two hundred years later, in the beginning of [Song Dynasty's](#) Yuanyou era (1086-1094), another great poet, [Su Shi](#) (Su Dongpo), came to Hangzhou as governor. By that time, the farmers suffered drought again, due to overgrowth of the weeds at the bottom of the lake clogging the irrigation ducts. He ordered dredging of the lake and piled up all the mud into another causeway, in the style of Bai Causeway, but much wider and nearly three times as long, he also planted willow trees along its banks. This causeway was later named after him as the Su Causeway. There are six [bridges](#)

along the 2.6 km Su Causeway. "Spring Dawn on the Su Causeway" is one of the attractions at the West Lake.

## Ten Scenes of West Lake



*View of the West Lake from a row boat*

Traditionally, there are ten best-known scenic spots on the West Lake, each remembered by a four-character [epithet](#). Collectively, they are known as the "Ten Scenes of West Lake" (西湖十景). Each is marked by a stela with the epithet written in the calligraphy of the [Qianlong Emperor](#). They are:

- Spring Dawn on the Su Causeway

(苏堤春晓)

- Orioles Singing in the Willows (柳浪闻莺)
- Viewing Fish at Flower Pond (花港观鱼)
- Winery Yard and [Lotus](#) Pool (曲苑风荷)
- Evening Bell Ringing at the Nanping Hill (南屏晚钟)
- Autumn Moon over the Calm Lake (平湖秋月)
- Leifeng [Pagoda](#) in Evening Glow (雷峰夕照)
- Three Pools Mirroring the Moon (三潭印月)

- Lingering Snow on the Broken Bridge (断桥残雪)
- Twin Peaks Piercing the Clouds (双峰插云)

## Other attractions



*Yue Fei Memorial Hall*

- Tomb of [Su Xiao Xiao](#), a famous courtesan.
- Tomb of [Wu Song](#), famous for slaying a tiger; destroyed during the [Cultural Revolution](#), and rebuilt in 2004

Other attractions include:

- [Yue-Wang Miao](#), the tomb and memorial hall to Yue Fei.
- [Lingyin Temple](#), a Buddhist monastery and surrounding hills and gardens.
- [Longjing](#) tea farms, an area renowned for the quality of its tea leaves.
- Galloping Tiger Spring, a spring famous for its mineral water.

## Influences



*Classical Chinese buildings inside the West Lake*

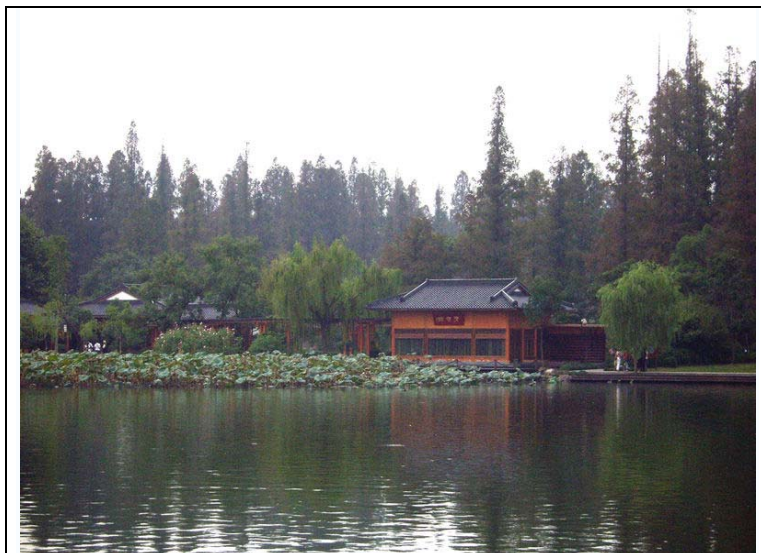
The West Lake is said to be the incarnation of [Xi Shi](#), one of the [Four Beauties](#) of ancient China. Hence, since ancient times, the West Lake was associated with a large number of romantic poets, profound philosophers, national heroes and heroines.

- Tang Dynasty poet [Luo Binwang](#) reclused in Lingyin Temple
- Tang Dynasty poet-governor [Bai Juyi](#) built the first causeway, which the Bai Causeway.

- [Eastern Jin Dynasty](#) philosopher [Ge Hong](#) practiced [Taoism](#) in the [Ge Mountain](#), and wrote his great philosophical work: [Bao Pu Zhi](#) (抱朴子).



- Song Dynasty poet-governor [Su Dongpo](#), dredged the lake and built up the Su Causeway, made it into another beautiful landmark of West Lake. He also invented a special recipe for preparing pork: the Dongpo Pork. Dongpo Pork is on the menu of every restaurant in Hangzhou
- Song Dynasty national hero [Yue Fei](#) was buried near the West Lake



*Lotus in the Breeze at the Winding Courtyard*

- The great [Ming Dynasty](#) essayist [Zhang Dai](#), wrote a number great essays about the West Lake in *Reminiscence and Dream of Tao'an* (陶庵梦忆), and a whole book: *Search for West Lake in Dreams* (西湖梦寻).
- [Kunming Lake](#), the central lake on the grounds of the [Summer Palace](#) in [Beijing](#), was created by extending an existing water body to imitate Hangzhou's West Lake.

The West Lake has been famous for its exquisite beauty for more than one thousand years. Hangzhou will be the site for the [2006 World Leisure Expo](#).

# Hangzhou - Lingyin Si Temple

[http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Lingyin\\_Si](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Lingyin_Si)

From Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia

## Contents

- [1 History](#)
- [2 Surrounds](#)
- [3 The Feilai Feng grottos](#)
- [4 Lingyin Temple](#)
  - [4.1 Hall of the Heavenly Kings](#)
  - [4.2 Grand Hall of the Great Sage](#)
  - [4.3 Hall of the Medicine Buddha](#)
  - [4.4 Sutra Library](#)
  - [4.5 Huayan Hall](#)
  - [4.6 Hall of the Five Hundred Arhats](#)
- [5 Famous people from Ling Yin Temple](#)
- [6 External links](#)

**Lingyin Temple** (**Chinese:** 靈隱寺; **pinyin:** Língyǐ nsì) is a [Buddhist temple](#) of the [Chan](#) sect located north-west of [Hangzhou](#), [Zhejiang](#) province, [China](#). The temple's name is commonly literally translated as **Temple of the Soul's Retreat**. It is one of the largest and wealthiest [Buddhist temples](#) in [China](#).

The monastery is the largest of several temples in the Wulin Mountains (武林山), which also features a large number of grottos and religious rock carvings, the most famous of which is the **Feilai Feng** (飞来峰; literally "the peak that flew hither").

## History



*Pagoda containing Huili's ashes, at the foot of Feilai Feng.*

The monastery was originally founded in [328](#) AD during the [Eastern Jin Dynasty](#) by [Indian](#) monk [Huili](#). From its inception, Lingyin was a famous monastery in the [Jiangnan](#) region. At its peak under the [Kingdom of Wuyue](#) (907-978), the temple boasted nine multi-storey buildings, 18 pavilions, 72 halls, more than 1300 dormitory rooms, inhabited by more than 3000 monks. Many of the rich Buddhist carvings in the Feilai Feng grottos and surrounding mountains also date from this era.

During the latter [Southern Song Dynasty](#), the monastery was regarded as one of the ten most important temples of the Chan sect in the [Jiangnan](#) region. However, its prominence has not saved the temple from marauders. It has been rebuilt no less than sixteen times since then. The current buildings are modern restorations of late [Qing](#) buildings. During the [Cultural Revolution](#), the temple and grounds suffered some damage at the hands of [Red Guards](#) during the [Cultural Revolution](#). However, they escaped large scale destruction partly because of the protection of Premier [Zhou Enlai](#).



Today the temple is thriving as a destination for both pilgrims and tourists. It is regarded as one of the wealthiest monasteries in [China](#), and regular pilgrims have included former paramount leader [Deng Xiaoping](#).

## Surrounds

The Wuling Mountains area is a major centre of [Chan Buddhism](#) in south-eastern [China](#). A number of smaller temples are also located in the area. Today, Lingyin and the surrounding areas are marketed as the Lingyin-Feilai Feng Scenic Area, with ticketed admission. Visitors enter from a screen wall marked with a four character inscription "the Western Heaven is within reach" ([Chinese](#): 咫尺西天; [pinyin](#): zhíchǐ Xī tiān; literally "Western Heaven is between 0.8 to one [foot](#) away"). Proceeding down the road from the entrance, the visitor first sees Feilai Feng on the left, then Lingyin Hill on the right. The entire scenic area is dotted with historic buildings and artwork, including pagodas, pavilions, bridges, and statues. The largest stone pagoda is located near the entrance. Called Ligong Pagoda (理公塔), it houses the ashes of Huili, the [Indian](#) monk who founded Lingyin. The area is thickly wooded, with some trees labelled as many centuries old.

## The Feilai Feng grottos



*Ligong pagoda*

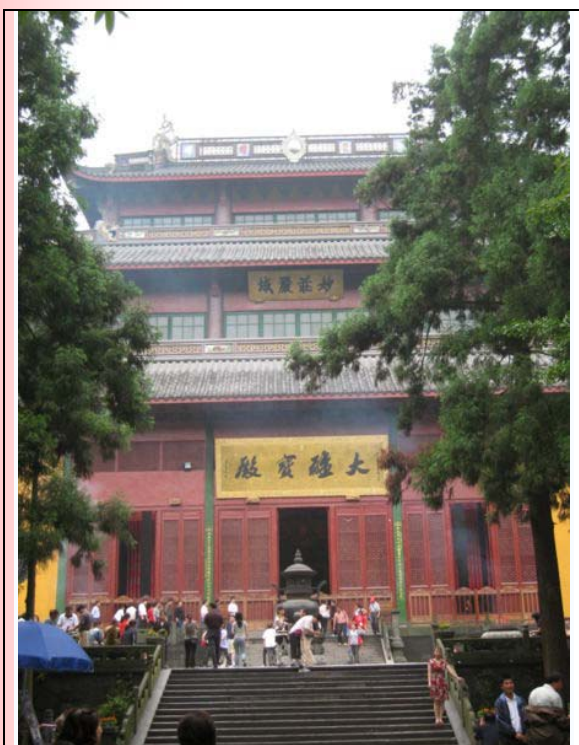
Feilai Feng, or "the Peak that Flew Hither", also commonly translated as "Flying Peak", is located in front of the temple proper. The peak is so-named because it is made of limestone, giving it a craggy appearance very different to the surrounding mountains. Legend holds that the peak was originally from [India](#) (with some versions suggesting that it is [Vulture Peak](#), but flew to [Hangzhou](#) overnight as a demonstration of the omnipotence of Buddhist law. A large number of carvings dot the surface of the peak. More are located in various caves and grottos throughout the peak. Within the main cave, dedicated to the [bodhisattva Guanyin](#), there is a crack in the ceiling of the cave that stretches up to the surface, so that a person standing at a certain position can see a sliver of sunlight. This is known as the "one thread of heaven" (一线天).

## Lingyin Temple

The main axis of Lingyin follows a traditional Song dynasty five-hall Chan sect structure. The main axis stretches up the Lingyin Hill. However, it should be noted that the five-hall axis is a recent recreation. Only the front three halls are a part of the [Qing dynasty](#) axis.

## Hall of the Heavenly Kings

The formal entrance of the temple is the Hall of the [Heavenly Kings](#) ([Chinese](#): 天王殿; [pinyin](#): Tiān wáng Diàn). This hall is a double-eaved building. The front of the building carries a plaque ([Chinese](#): 云林禅寺; [pinyin](#): Yúnlín Chán Sì; literally "[Chan](#) temple of the Clouds and Forests"), written by the [Kangxi Emperor](#). The principal statue in this hall is that of the [Maitreya](#) Buddha in his manifestation as [the clothes bag monk](#), or the [Laughing Buddha](#). At the back, facing up the hill, is the [Skanda](#) Buddha, or Weituo as he is known in Chinese. This statue dates from the [Southern Song Dynasty](#). Arranged along the left and right are the [Four Heavenly Kings](#). The ceiling is ornately painted and decorated with [phoenixes](#) and [dragons](#).



*Courtyard in front of the main hall bordered with trees*

Visitors to the temple are often impressed by the size and majesty of the entrance hall and its statues of the heavenly kings. Indeed, the hall of the Heavenly Kings at the Lingyin Temple is as large or larger than the main hall at many temples, reflecting its status as the centre of Buddhism in south-eastern China.

## Grand Hall of the Great Sage

The second and principal hall is the [Mahavira](#) Hall, or the Grand Hall of the Great Sage ([Chinese](#): 大雄宝殿; [pinyin](#): Dàxíng Bǎo diàn). It is separated from the Hall of the Heavenly Kings by a large courtyard, featuring a raised lawn bordered with trees. To the left of the courtyard stands the [Hall of the Five Hundred Arhats](#). The Grand Hall of the Great Sage is triple eaved and stands 33.6 metres tall. It houses, as is traditional, a statue of [Shakyamuni](#), the historical [Buddha](#). The present statue was carved in 1956 from [camphor](#) wood

in [Tang Dynasty](#) style and coated with 60 [taels](#) of gold. It is the largest wooden Buddhist statue in China. At the back of the main statue is a statue of [Guanyin](#), backed by a large screen that features the carved images of some 150 Buddhist personalities, including the pilgrims of the [Journey to the West](#), [Daoji](#), and [arhats](#). Arranged along the sides of the hall are images of the 18 principal arhats, and other prominent Buddhists. The interior of the hall reaches about 30 metres, with a gold-painted ceiling featuring base relief images of traditional Buddhist symbols.

## Hall of the Medicine Buddha

Further uphill and behind the main hall is the Hall of the Medicine Buddha ([Chinese](#): 药师殿; [pinyin](#): Yàoshī Diàn), housing a statue of the [Bhaisajyaguru](#) Buddha, commonly called the Medicine Buddha. The hall is currently undergoing exterior renovation and is not open to the public.

## Sutra Library

Uphill from the Hall of the Medicine Buddha is the Sutra Library ([Chinese](#): 藏经楼; [pinyin](#): Cángjīng Lóu). This, and the Huayan Hall behind it, were built from 2000 to 2002 to re-create the five-hall main axis. The Sutra Library does not house a major statue and is not open for worship.

## Huayan Hall

The fifth and last hall on the main axis is the Avatamsaka Hall, or Huayan Hall ([Chinese](#): 华严殿; [pinyin](#): Huáyán Diàn). Also built in 2002, this hall houses statues of the three sages of the Avatamsaka Sutra, known as the Huayan Sutra in [Chinese](#) - [Shakyamuni](#), [Manjusri](#), and [Samantabhadra](#).

## Hall of the Five Hundred Arhats

The Hall of Five Hundred Arhats ([Chinese](#): 五百罗汉堂; [pinyin](#): Wǔbǎi Luóhàn Táng), also a modern addition, faces onto the western side of the court yard in front of the main hall. The building has a complex floor plan, shaped like a Buddhist [swastika](#). Along the arms of the swastika are arranged the five hundred arhats as slightly larger-than-life bronze statues. Each statue is seated on a unique ornate seat. At the centre, where the arms of the swastika join, stands a bronze canopy housing statues of four bodhisattvas representing the four cardinal directions. This is currently the tallest solid bronze structure in the world.

## Famous people from Ling Yin Temple

- [Daoji](#) - A Buddhist monk revered as a Taoist god.

## External links

- [Lingyin Si - Official Site](#)
- [Brief description and practical details](#)
- [Pictures of the temple](#)

## Huangshan (Yellow Mountain Area)

<http://www.huangshanguide.com/english.htm>

# Huangshan Guide

## Mt. Huangshan a Marvel of Natural Beauty

Located in the southern part of Anhui Province, the Yellow Mountains extend across - Shexian, Yixian, Taiping and Xiuning. They rose above the earth's surface as a result of movement of the earth's crust over a hundred million years ago. Later they underwent the erosion of Quaternary glaciation and have gradually become what they are today. Magnificent and imposing, it is a famous scenic spot full of wonderful sights.



The Yellow Mountains known as Yishan in the Qin Dynasty (221 -207 B.C.) got their present name in 747 A.D. (the 6th year of the Tianbao reign of the Tang Dynasty), when Li Bai (701 -762), the great Tang poet, wrote about them in these lines:

Thousands of feet high towers the Yellow Mountains  
With its thirty-two magnificent peaks,  
Blooming like golden lotus flowers.

The Yellow Mountains are a marvel within an area of 154 square kilometres there is a crowd of peaks, 72 of which have names indicating the shapes they resemble. Lotus Brightness Apex and Celestial Capital are the three major ones, all rising above 1,800 metres. The mountains are a body of granite, often with vertical joints. Erosion and fracture contributed to shape the rocks into huge columns giving rise to lofty peaks and deep ravines. When it is cloudy the pinnacles loom in mists as if they were visionary, while in sunshine they unfold in all their majesty and splendour. The Yellow Mountains change their colour and appearance with the alternation of seasons. In spring blooming flowers decorate the slopes in a riot of colour and fill the valleys with fragrance, in summer you see verdured peaks rising one upon another and near springs gurgling merrily.



Autumn dresses the mountains in red and purple, as maples are all blazing - red; winter turns them into a world of frost and ice with silver boughs and rocks everywhere. So from ancient times it has been



frequented by tourists seeking their mystery and admiring their scenery. They come to the conclusion that the fantastic pines, the grotesque rocks, the sea of clouds and the hot springs are the four major attractions of the Yellow Mountains. As a matter of fact there are marvels almost everywhere especially in the following scenic areas: Wenguan (Hot Spring), Yupinglou (Jade Screen Tower), Xihai (West Sea), Beihai (North Sea), Yungusi (Cloud Valley Temple) and Songguan (Pine Valley Nunnery).

Amidst red crags and rock columns.



Owing to the peculiar terrain, the Yellow Mountains' climate is marked by a vertical change, and the vertical distribution of vegetation is also distinctive: plants on the summit, on the middle levels and at the foot belong to the frigid, temperate and subtropical zones respectively. There are more than 1500 species of plants, of which trees comprise one third. So the Yellow Mountains occupy an important place in China's botanical research. Here you will find

century-old pines, firs ginkgoes, Chinese torreyas, Chinese sweet gums, nanmus, camphorwoods and the precious Magua trees, remnants of the glacial era. The Yellow Mountains abound in flowering plants; many of them are rare ones, such as Goddess Flower, the Yellow Mountains Azalea as well as camellia, plum, lily crape myrtle, orchid, Spring Herald Ina Flower and so on. It has a rich store of medicinal herbs; more than 300 kinds are found here, the notable ones being glossy ganoderma, ginseng, Chinese goldthread rhizome and Chinese cinnamon. Maofeng tea of the Yellow Mountains is well known at home and abroad.

The Yellow Mountains also provide the natural habitat for a wide variety of fauna. Among the animals there are monkeys, goats, deer and David's deer. There are rare birds such as the red - billed leiothrix, the silver pheasant, the octave-tone bird and the oriole, all good singers. The red-billed leiothrix (called "love birds" in Chinese) are so lovely that they have become favorites of foreign tourists and are exported by pairs. Besides, chukkas from the streams is good to make delicious dishes with.

The temperature in Yellow Mountains is agreeable all the year round. It is cool in summer, averaging 20C at the North Sea Guest-house (1,630 metres above sea) and 25C at Hot Spring (630 metres above sea) in July (the hottest month) . As clouds often shut out the sun, hot weather never stays long, and this makes Yellow Mountains an ideal summer resort.



Though looking fresh and young, Yellow Mountains have a long history to which ancient books, poems and paintings as well as carved inscriptions all bear witness. Li Bai was not the only poet who sang in its praise, Tang poets Jia Dao (779-843) and Du Xunhe (846-907) also





came here and wrote poems. In the succeeding dynasties people kept coming and giving expression to their admiration in poetry. Xu Xiake (1586-1641), the great geographer and traveler of the Ming Dynasty,



devoted two of his travel notes to Yellow Mountains. Jian Jiang and Shi Tao (1642-1718), master painters of the Xin'an School in the Qing Dynasty, left behind them many paintings. Li Siguang (J.S.Lee 1889-1971), the late celebrated geologist, summed up his personal inspections in his book the Quaternary Glacial Phenomena in Yellow Mountains, Anhui Province. Inscriptions of the past generations meet one's eye here and there: "Clouds in a myriad of forms", "Peaks

piercing sky", "A cool world", "Fantastic and beautiful", "Scenery of exceptional charm", to mention just a few of them. Such poetic phrases in handsome calligraphy are not only decorative, they are themselves part of the fascinating scene.

Today, through government care, Yellow Mountains' scenic spots have been renovated and opened to tourists. A longest telpher in the Asia Area at present has been built from the Cloud Valley Temple in the mountains to the White Goose Ridge on the top mountains. The mountain paths which used to be dangerous have been repaired and widened, with a total length of more than 50 kilometers. Guesthouses, pavilions and other buildings have sprung up one after another. High-tension lines have been extended to the summit of peaks and a weather station erected on the Brightness Apex.

Scientific researches such as geological prospecting, botanical meteorological survey, medicinal herbs collecting, etc. are carried out by respective work teams from all parts of the country. There are artistic activities here too, with painters, photographers, writers, poets, musicians and actors, Chinese and foreign, coming to do creative work or enrich their experiences.

## **A Travel Guide to the Yellow Mountains (1)**

The Yellow Mountains is noted for its infinite enchanting scenery and particularly its peaks of fantastic shapes. Here, the scenery varies from season to season and as the peaks grow and fall. Unlike other scenic areas where the view is all in sight, the Yellow Mountains offers a constant changing panorama that stirs up vivid imagination. This guide will come in handy for all those who are interested in exploring the beauty of the Yellow Mountains.

Upon entering the mountain flower-flanked Gate of the Yellow Mountains after driving through Tangkou of Huangshan District in southern Anhui, one comes to the scenic area, and then to the Hot Spring which lies a little distance ahead.

Six hundred and thirty meters above the sea level, the Hot Spring has a large tourist complex, including the Yellow Mountains Guesthouse Taoyuan Guesthouse, Xuanyuan Hotel, the Hot Spring Bath, the Hot Spring Swimming Pool, the Postal-telecommunications Building, villas and tourist shops. The scenic area straddles the Peach Blossom Brook that flows between Purple Cloud Peak and Peach Blossom Peak.

Across the brook are the Purple Cloud Bridge, the Scenery Watching Bridge, the Famous Spring Bridge and the White Dragon Bridge. Scattered around are the Fish Watching Pavilion, Falls Watching Pavilion, Peach Blossom Land Pavilion, and the Falls Watching Tower. Here one can watch Thousand Feet Spring and Inverted V Falls as well as Celestial Capital Peak, Lotus Peak, Cinnabar Peak, Purple Cloud Peak and Purple Rock Peak. Going up along the brook, one will see such scenic spots as Roaring Lion Rock, Dragon Head Rock, Tiger Head Rock, the Red Well, Intoxicated Rock, Sword Testing Rock as well as Green Dragon Pool, White Dragon Pool, Three Folding Spring and Ringing String Spring.

Departing from the Hot Spring, travelers can take two routes for mountain sightseeing: One is to ascend the imposing and steep mountain front and then descend the picturesque back mountains and then return to the Hot Spring. The other is just to take the opposite route.

Let's now take the first route. Passing the stone tablet engraved with the characters of " Beautiful Rivers and Mountains", which is to the right of Yiran Pavilion, one reaches the ancient Mercy Light Temple after crossing the serene bamboo grove and the Dragon Turning Back Bridge. To the left of the Temple stands Toad Peak, and behind the Temple, the Cinnabar Peak. Nearby, there is the Draping Cloud Bridge, Fayan Spring and the Thousand Monk Stove. A statue of Xu Xiake, the great traveler and geographer of the Ming Dynasty, stands in the temple in commemoration of his two trips to the Yellow Mountains in 1616 and 1618.

Farther way up is the Golden Sand Hill. At the foot of the hill one can see Yinggu Rock. To the left of the road is the Cave Flying From Afar and to the right is Candle Peak. Crossing the cave and then the Crescent Pavilion, one finds the Head Knocking Rock. Above the rock in the right direction, one can see traces of the mountain movement of the glacial period half way at Green Phoenix Peak. Further along the road is the Green Phoenix Bridge. Standing on the bridge, one can look up and see the Crucian Carp Back, which is the most perilous point of the Celestial Capital Peak. Turning back, one sees below the Water Screen Cave on Peach Blossom Peak. Crossing the bridge and going through the Drum Beating Cave leads one to the Half Way UP the Mountain Temple.

The temple is located between Old Man Peak and Cinnabar Peak at 1,340 meters above the sea level. One can take a rest and have some tea here before resuming the tour. Looking up in front of the temple, one sees a rock resembling a flying and crowing cock on the Celestial Capital Peak and facing the Heavenly Threshold. This is just the famous grotesque rock "Golden Cock Crowing towards the Heavenly Gate", and one can also see the stone engraving of "Hearing a Cock Crowing in the Sky" on the rock. Leaving the Half Way UP the Mountain Temple, one may take the new route leading to the Celestial Capital Peak (The old route is to go to the Dragon Slope, pass the Heavenly Threshold, cross the Cloud Nest Cave and then reach the foot of Celestial Capital Peak and climb to the apex of the Celestial Capital Peak.). First one comes to the Tiger Mouth (also known as Guts Testing Wall), and steps on the narrow Three Folding Path. Here, one can see a rock resembling two monks worshipping the Buddha. One may proceed to cross the Three Ladies Cave and climb up the rocky path where the sky seems within reach, to be greeted by an ancient pine. A narrow pines flanked path leads one to the Bell Tower where the

rocks ring with bell sounds. After crossing the Springboard Rock, one finally ascends the Celestial Capital Peak, one of the three main peaks of the Yellow Mountains. The celestial Capital Peak rises 1,829 meters high, piercing the clouds. Hence the name. It is ideal for taking a bird-eye view of the unfolding magnificent landscape of the Yellow Mountains. Therefore, one can not claim to have been to the Yellow Mountains without reaching the Celestial Capital Peak.



Descending the Celestial Capital Peak westwards, travelers go through the Immortal Gate Keeper Cave with vivid peach resembling rock formation on the cave, pass Crucian Carp Peak formed during the glacial period and cross the Heavenly Bridge where the Sea Exploring Pine stands. Further down, visitors come to the Heavenly Jade Screen. A half-kilometer long Heavenly Stairs consisting of stairs, stone railings and iron chains winds down the cliff. At the Bottom of the stairs one sees a scene of kid Worshipping the Buddha Guanyin and then reaches the foot of the Celestial Capital Peak.

Turning left from the foot of the Celestial Capital Peak, one steps onto the Jade Screen Stairs and goes through the Care Slope, passes Hassock Rock, crosses the Lying Cloud Cave and the immortal Bridge before reaching a place called A Thread of Sky. As the path here is caught between cliffs, it is so narrow as to allow passage of only one person. Looking above, the sky is reduced to a barely seen thread, hence the name. When one looks back upon leaving the path, three exquisite rocks with several lovely young pines embraced by fleeting clouds come into sight. This fairy scene is referred to as the Three Islets of Fairyland. After crossing Manjusri Cave, one sees the famous Greeting Pine and the Jade Screen Tower.

The Jade Screen Tower stands against the 1,668-meter high Jade Screen Peak. Originally the seat of Manjusri Temple, it is now a tourist center with complete service facilities. Around the Tower are elephant and lion shaped rocks and ancient pines. In front of the Tower there emerge to the left the Celestial Capital Peak and Ploughing Cloud Peak. On Ploughing Cloud Peak there is a rock which looks like a squirrel jumping at the Celestial Capital Peak. Below the peak there is another odd shaped rock which conjures up a scene of an immortal getting off a sedan chair. To the right are Lotus Peak, Lotus Pistil Peak and Holy Spring Peak. Viewed from distance the rock on Lotus Pistil Peak looks like a small boating-sailing through the ocean of clouds. Beside the peak there stands a rock that resembles a peacock playing in the lotus. Standing on the terrace in front of the pine, one is greeted by a panorama of numerous and rocks half hidden in the clouds. Therefore, a visit to the Jade Screen Tower has long been considered a must for a tour of the Yellow Mountains.



The Jade Screen Tower is a halfway stop between the Hot Spring and the West Sea and North Sea scenic areas. Going further ahead, tourists pass the Farewell Pine and the Hassock Pine. If one looks

back, an ox shaped rock on Ox Nose Peak comes into sight. The scene is known as Rhinoceros Watching the Moon. The distance from Jade Screen Peak down to the bottom of the Lotus Ravine is about two and half kilometers. Here the terrain rises. Climbing up several hundred steps stairs, one reaches Lotus Ridge. Standing above in the right direction is Lotus Peak.

With a height of 1,873 meters, Lotus Peak is the highest peak of the Yellow Mountains. It is embraced by small hills, resembling the lotus, hence the name. A one and half kilometer long winding path links Lotus Ridge and the apex of Lotus Peak. One needs to cross four caves on the way up before reaching the apex. Pines in the shape of flying dragons and double dragons as well as the Yellow Mountain Azalea are found on the peak. Standing together in the central part of the Yellow Mountains, the magnificent Lotus Peak, Brightness Apex and the Celestial Capital Peak unfold in all their majesty.

Going down the same route northwards, one passes turtle shaped and snake shaped rocks and reaches the One Hundred Step Cloud Stairs. Here, a scene of a rock resembling an old monk watching the sea under the opposite Rongcheng Peak is seen. Getting off the stairs and crossing the Lotus Cave and Huge Turtle Cave, one comes to the Heavenly Sea. To the left of the site of Central Sea Pavilion stands Stone Column Peak, and to the right is the Phoenix Pine. Going up for a while along the stone stairway, one can then look back at the famous rock sight known as Huge Turtle Carrying a Golden Turtle on Its Back. Further up in the right direction there stands Alchemy Peak and the 1,840.9-meter high Brightness Apex, the second tallest peak of the Yellow Mountains. With Brightness Apex towering above the clouds, one commands a majestic view of a sea of ridges, peaks and gullies below.

Taking the west route or north route from Brightness Apex, visitors may tour the West Sea or North Sea, two famous scenic areas of the Yellow Mountains, and stay at the West Sea Hotel or North Sea Guesthouse. The following is what visitors can see on the west route:

Descending Brightness Apex, one comes to the West Sea via a newly opened tourist route. A mystical Peak Flying From Afar first comes into sight, with a huge 10-meter high rock weighing 600 tons standing on it. Passing several peaks nearby, visitors arrive at the Dispelling Cloud Pavilion where one commands an excellent view of the unfolding scene. There stands in front of the pavilion a sea of variously shaped peaks that inspire all sorts of fairy imagination. These architectural wonders of the nature turn the whole West Sea into a natural art gallery. When the sun sets, the whole valley basks in a myriad of sunrays, becoming a famous scene of the Yellow Mountains. Equally impressive is the 1,712-meter high Rosy Clouds Peak behind the Dispelling Cloud Pavilion. Standing on the peak, one can watch the rising above the cloud and Peak Flying From Afar and Nine Dragon Peak in all their grandeur.

The West Sea, long known as the Mystery Valley for the many clusters of peaks and the fathomless depth of the valley has been opened up as the White Cloud Stream Scenic Area. The seven-kilometer long newly paved staircase extends from the Hook Bridge Nunnery inside the West Gate of the Yellow Mountains, across the bottom of the valley, and reaches the newly built Central Sea Pavilion at the Heavenly Sea. Tourists may go to Qianxun Falls via the Hook Bridge Nunnery and the Shy Spring. The



highest falls in the Yellow Mountains, Qianxun Falls has a drop of 140 meters, and is ice-free all the year round. The falls thunder can be heard at Swan Rock near the brook and one can also have a near look on the "Immortal Walking on Stilts". Passing the Dropping Spring and the Lucky Cloud Bridge, one comes to the Dispelling Cloud Pavilion. Then, a twisting path leads one through Buxian Bridge and to the Goddess Flower Bed and finally to the Central Sea Pavilion at the Heavenly Sea. On the way, one can watch pines in all kinds of odd shapes.

The North Sea is just a few kilometers away from the Dispelling Cloud pavilion in the West Sea, with the Yellow Mountains West Sea at an altitude of 1, 630 meters above sea level.

In the Dawn Pavilion in front of the guesthouse, one may enjoy the beautiful scenery of Beginning to Believe Peak and Goddess Peak as well as the Stalagmite Bridge that inspires imagination of various fairy scenes. To the right of the guesthouse is the Flower House. In front of it is the Sunken Flower Bed with many rocks of fantastic shapes in it. Turning left from the guesthouse and passing the Unicorn Pine leads one onto the Cooling Terrace and Lion Peak. Reaching out from the cliff and facing the valley in three directions, the terrace is an ideal place for watching sunrise and the sea of the rocks on Pingding Hill which is famous for resembling a scene of a monkey watching the sea. Below Lion Peak is the Ten Thousand Pines Forest which sends out constant pine sighing. Turning right from the guesthouse, while viewing various ancient pines on the way, one crosses the Immortal Bridge and ascends Beginning to Believe Peak. Here, a magnificent view of stalagmites unfolds itself.

Leaving the North Sea Guesthouse, and descending the mountain path right of the Cooling Terrace, visitors may proceed to the Pine Valley Nunnery Scenic Area at the bottom of the North Sea. Following the winding Eighteen Fold Path and crossing the Flower Brook and Bird Valley, one sees the swan and brush shaped rocks, and then Camel Peak on the left. At the Three Way Pavilion, one may view the three Buddha shaped rocks on Pagoda Peak to the east. Further ahead, there are peaks on the left resembling cock, bookcase, medicine case and sedan chair roof. To the right of the Two Way Pavilion, there are two scenes known as "the Immortals Watching the Poster" and "the Poet Li Bai Gets Drunk". The Pine Valley Nunnery lies ahead of the One Way Pavilion. On the way to Lotus Ridge two and half kilometers away, one sees a number of pools, such as the Jadeite Pool, the Black Dragon Pool, the White Dragon Pool and the Aged Dragon Pool along the brook. The water scene is most enchanting at the Jadeite Pool, which, it is said, used to be the bathing place of the ocean dragon princess.



To go to the Cloud Valley Temple Scenic Area in the East Sea, one needs to turn left from the North Sea Guesthouse and go eastwards. Passing the Black Tiger Pine, visitors reach White Goose Ridge, and the beautiful and steep White Goose Peak stands in the left direction. White Goose Ridge is the terminal of the newly installed 2803.96-meter long cable car route between the Cloud Valley Temple and the North Sea. Traveling on the telfer gives one a bird-eye view of the East Sea. Those who prefer to walk may



down the valley and appreciate the scenery on the way. Descending White Goose Ridge, one is greeted by numerous rocks of bizarre shapes around the brook as well as picturesque valley scene consisting of woods and springs. Passing the Fascination Pavilion, the Cloud Valley Temple is in sight.

Situated between Arhat Peak and incense Burner Peak, the 890-meter high Cloud Valley Temple is a half way stop in the back mountains on the way back from the North Sea to the Hot Spring as well as the departure station of the cable car route to the North Sea. Tourists going both ways may stay at the hotels here. In particular, the Cloud Valley Mountain Villa, a newly built spacious building in the traditional local

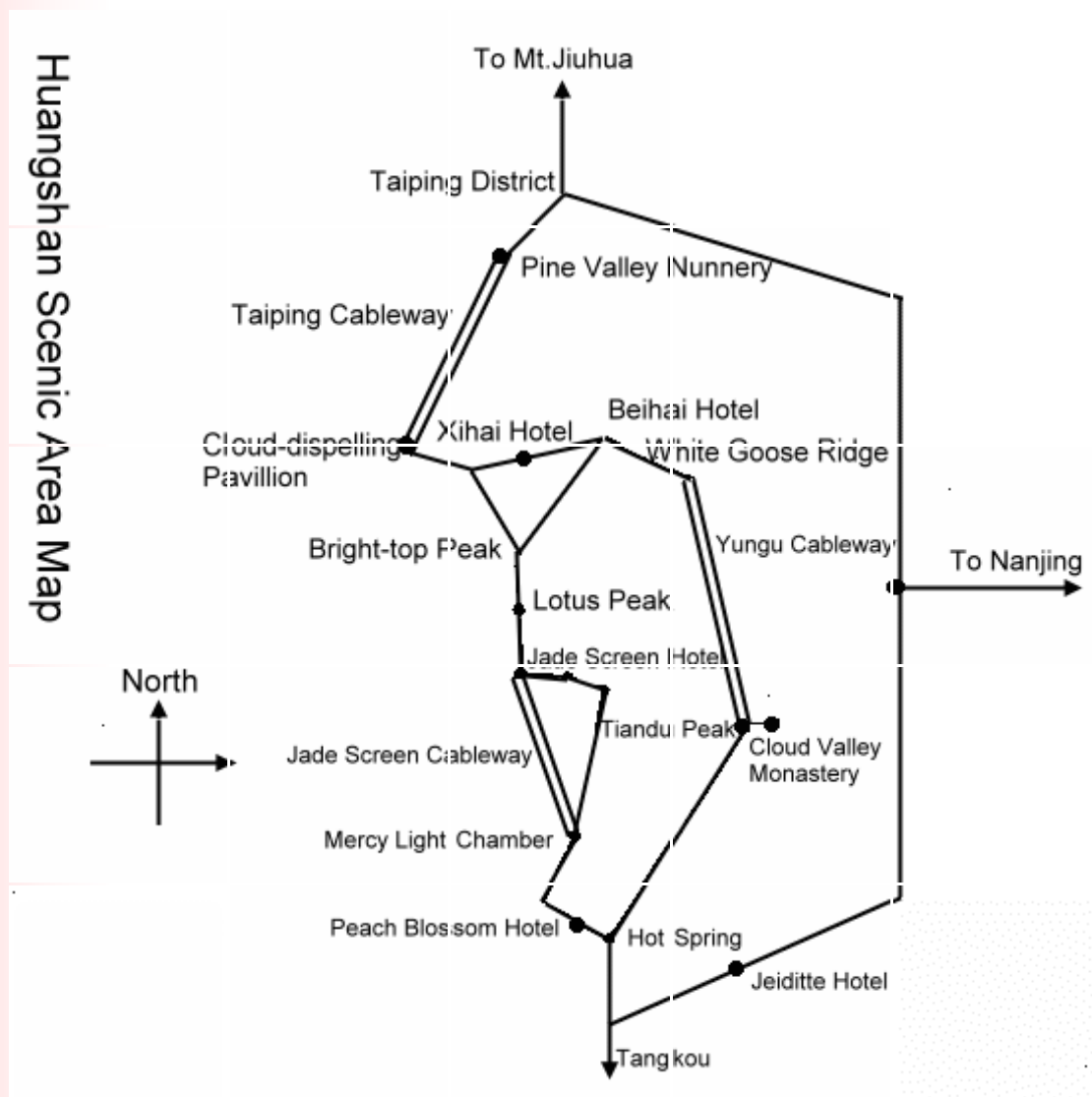


architectural style of the Ming Dynasty, provides comfortable service for tourists. Here, one can also see the rare aged yellow Chinese fir and iron Chinese fir and enjoy the Yellow Mountains Maofeng, a famous local tea. Descending the mountain path to the left of the Cloud Valley Temple and going through the bamboo grove, tourists can watch the Nine Dragon Falls four kilometers away.

On the way back from the Cloud Valley Temple, one can stop to watch the pouring and thunderous Thousand Feet Falls at close distance before finally returning to the Hot Spring.

## Distances Between Different Spots in the Yellow Mountains

Gate of Yellow Mountains---Hot Spring	0.5Km
Hot Spring---Mercy light Tower	0.5Km
Mercy light Tower---Half-way Temple	2.5Km
Half-way Temple---Top of Heavenly Peak	1.1Km
Top of Heavenly Peak---Foot of Heavenly Peak	6.5Km
Foot of Heavenly Peak---Jade Screen Tower	1.0Km
Jade Screen Tower---Foot of Lotus Peak	2.5Km
Foot of Lotus Peak---Top of Lotus Peak--- Heavenly Sea	2.5Km
Heavenly Sea---North Sea Guest House	2.5Km
North Sea Guest House---West Sea	1.5Km
Diaoqiao Nunnery---Haixin Pavilion	7.0Km
Haixin Pavilion---Peak Flying from Afar---Paiyun Pavilion	2.5Km
North Sea Guest House---Pine Valley Nunnery	10Km
North Sea Guest House---Cloud Valley Temple	.5Km
Cloud Valley Temple---Nine Dragon Falls	4.0Km
Cloud Valley Temple---Hot Spring	7.5Km



*Huangshan Scenic Area Map*

## A Brief Introduction to Huangshan City □1□

Huangshan (the Yellow Mountains) City borders on Zhejiang and Jiangxi Provinces. It has under its jurisdiction three districts (Tunxi, Huangshan and Huizhou) and four counties (Shexian, Yixian, Xiuning and Qimen), which cover much of the area used to be known as Huizhou. The Yellow Mountains also reach some areas in Taiping and other nearby counties. The scenery of the Yellow Mountains unfolds as they extend. Flowing in front of the Mountains is the blue Xin'an River. On the back of the mountain lies the placid Taiping Lake. At the eastern end of the Mountains is situated the Qingliang Peak Natural Reservation. The Guniujiang Natural Reservation is located at the western end of the Mountains. On both sides of the southern slopes are the quiet and secluded Yixian County and Shexian County known for their historic and cultural heritage- Further ahead, right to the south is the river town of Tunxi District, which is the seat of the Huangshan Municipal Government. To the southwest lies



Qiyun Mountain which is known as Baiyue, in Chinese: White Mountain. These picturesque scenic areas are crisscrossed by winding brooks and dotted with aged houses, streets, bridges, stone archways, pagodas, clan halls. The region is also easily accessible by air, railways. Huangshan is renowned as the national park of nature and a Museum of history- The following are sketches of the scenic spots-Houses of the Ming and Qing Dynasties (16th---19th centuries) in Yixian County. As it is hidden in the mountains, Yixian County is known as a land of peach blossoms, meaning a haven of peace in Chinese literature. On entering the county, one can hardly see any houses along the stream between the green hills. However, going through the hill passes, An open basin comes into sight where over 3,000 well-preserved pre-20th century houses are shaded on the slopes of the green hills, which are acclaimed by tourists and scholars as the most beautiful villages in the world and a treasure house of the traditional Chinese house style.



Xidi Village and Hong Village attract particular attention for the clustered houses. The topography of Xidi Village is well planned. 122 houses, in black, white and gray colors, were built in the 18th and 19th centuries. Each has white walls, with elaborated-shaped eaves and courtyards. The entrance gates and windows display typical features of local wood, brick and stone carving. Of particular interest is a glided balcony overreaching into the lane at Dafudi, the name of a clan hall, It was said that anyone fortunate enough to catch the colorful ball thrown by the young lady from the balcony could win her love. Crystal-clear water in the ditches connecting every household provide endless stream to the housewife for daily use. Standing tall at the village entrance is the Hu Wenguang Stone Archway, a single-structured and four storied building that is composed of three parts and supported by four pillars, the archway was a masterpiece of the Ming Dynasty architecture, testifying to the past prosperity of the village's history. Not far from Xidi Village is Hong Village which is also famed for its pre-20th Century buildings. What is unique about the village is that it is ox-shaped topography. The high ground is like the ox head, the ancient trees at the entrance are like ox horns and bridges like ox hoofs. The houses form the trunk and the river is like an ox tail. The 1,000 meter long zigzagging ditch is compared to ox intestines, and the Moon-shaped pond, Nanhu Lake, take the shape of ox stomach. Thanks to the endless supply of water, flowers and fruits are grown in abundance in every courtyard, with water corridors winding through them. Fish is also raised in the pond. In addition, the pre-20th Century houses in Xi Wu, clan halls also enjoy a great reputation. The historical and cultural renown town---Shexian County, Shexian County was set up back in the Qin Dynasty Over 2,000 years ago, which was the seat of the local government in the Tang, Song, Yuan Ming and Qing Dynasties. In those days it was also popularly known as Huizhou. Throughout history, it is the political, economic and cultural center of the southern mountain region of Anhui Province. The growth of local commerce reached its peak during the Ming and Qing Dynasties, and the town became famous nation-wide for its wealth. Because of its rich historical and cultural heritage as well as the numerous scenic spots, the Chinese Government designated Shexian County as one of the cities and towns of historical and cultural renown in China.

Two pagodas of the Song Dynasty. Changqing Temple Pagoda stands high at the foot of Xigan Hill along the Lianjiang River. Filled with earth inside, it is an imposing square-shaped seven storied pagoda, with color Buddhist images painted on the wall and elaborate eaves at the pagoda top. The iron decorations hanging on the eaves sound like bell in the gentle wind. Xinzhou Pagoda is a simple and natural designed stone structure in the west fern part of the town. There are diamond shaped stone eaves on each of the five stories and Buddhist inscriptions on the pagoda surface. Both pagodas are over 800 years old.



Three Aged Bridges. They are Taiping Bridge, Wannian Bridge, Ziyang Bridge. These stone arch bridges built in the Ming Dynasty stand across the Lianjiang River that flows around the town. With a length of 279.87 meters, Taiping Bridge has two lanes and 16 arches. Three wonders of the traditional architecture. They refer to stone archways, ancient clan halls and age-old houses. Built in the Ming Dynasty, Xuguo Stone Archway located in the county town is under government preservation because of its cultural value. It is a well-designed big four directional stone archway supported by eight pillars, with all the beams linking one another. The three storied front archway and back archway are each supported by two pillars, and the three storied side archways are each supported by two pillars. Exquisite patterns of rare animals and birds were carved on the archway. Leaning against the pillars are 12 vividly carved stone lions. There stand seven archways (two of the Ming Dynasty and five of the Qing Dynasty) on the road in Tangyue Village in the western suburb. Also in Tangyue Village there are two ancient clan halls, one for male ancestors and other for female ancestors. And it is rare to find clan hall for female ancestors. Located on the gorgeous Purple Clouds Peak, Qiankou (now changed as Huizhou District) boasts of age-old houses and clan halls. The rugged looking houses stand in interesting contrast with the supporting poles which have delicate flower patterns carved on them. All the visiting scholars, both Chinese and foreign, consider it to be an important place to study the traditional Chinese architecture. Traditional Chinese architectural structures such as pavilions, towers, and gardens are found everywhere in Shexian County, such as the famous octagonal Pavilion, Baolun Mansion, Li Bai Pavilion, Tangan Garden, just to name a few. Scenic spots like Wulao Hill, Xigan Hill, Wenzheng Hill, Qingliang Peak, the Xin'an River, Fengle Lake are all popular tourist spots. This land of cultural heritage has produced many famous artists and personalities of distinction, such as Jian Jiang, founder of the Xin'an School of traditional Chinese painting, his successors Huang Binhong and Wang Caibai and the great Chinese educator Tao Xingzhi. Naturally, One mustn't forget the renowned four treasures of the study (writing brush, ink stick, ink slab and paper) made in Shexian County.



The Hill Town of Tunxi. Tunxi is the seat of the Huangshan Municipal Government. The lush Huashan Hill and Yangmei Hill lie across the city. The Xin'an River which is joined by Hengjiang River and Shuai Shui River flows through the city. Hence, Tunxi is also known as a river town. It is today a garden city as well as the tourist center of Southern Anhui. Tunxi has been a strategic location throughout the past dynasties.



It became a thriving commercial city in the Ming and Qing Dynasties when trade was most prosperous in Anhui. The old street is also referred to as Song Town in an epitome of its glorious past. The old street is stone slab paved and about 1,000 meters long. On both sides of the street are shops in classical Ming and Qing architectural style, with resplendent halls, exquisite pavilions, carved doors and windows, black tiles and whitewashed walls. This plus the Xin'an River nearby provides the living history of the social life of the Ming and Qing Dynasties as well as ideal background for shooting films of classical themes. Over 20 films and TV plays based on classical Chinese stories have been shot here. Tunxi is also the birthplace of many renowned historical figures. There is located the residence of Cheng Dawei, a famous Ming mathematician as well as the magnificent residence of Cheng Minzheng, a noted Ming writer. The memorial museum for Dai Zhen, a famous Qing philosopher, is also in Tunxi. These places are frequented by visitors. What is also worth mentioning is that the factory making the famous Anhui ink stick is also located in Tunxi. The factory has over 7,800 mould plates for making ink stick, which are considered a national treasure.



Qiyun Mountain Covering an area of about 60 kilometers, Qiyun Mountain is located to the west of the county town of Xiuning. The mountain, known as Baiyue in ancient times, is noted for the Taoist activities associated with it over the last 1,000 years. There are 36 gorgeous peaks, 72 bizarre shaped rocks and a beautiful cloud rock lake on the mountain, offering a panorama of the best of hill scenery. The famous rock calligraphy carving on the mountain has attracted numerous literary figures over the centuries. Li Bai, Zhu Xi, Xu Xiake, and other famous literary figures all wrote poems or prose in praise of the mountain. While only 585 meters above sea level, It has unique attraction because of its Taoist association. The pilgrims will have to pass through three pavilions and three heavenly gates on the ascent before reaching the top. Thus, the excitement of getting closer to the Taoist God is aroused. Many scenic spots and buildings on the mountain have Taoist names, such as God Watching Pavilion, the Cave of Eight Immortals, the Immortal Bridge, the Heavenly Palace, Incense Burner Peak, Drum Peak, etc. They all add to the mystic touch of the scenery. Qiyun Mountain is also well known for its 700-odd pieces of stone calligraphy carvings of various styles that are found in the halls and peaks. On the stone archway at Arc Cave there are well- preserved inscriptions carved over 800 years ago. On the Qiyun Rock there are two huge characters of "Cloud Rock" which were carved over 750 years ago in the Song Dynasty. One also sees in front of the Yuxu Palace a stone tablet with inscriptions of 960 characters in it. The prose was written by Tang Yin, a bright young writer in the Ming Dynasty, and it took two years to have it carved on the stone tablet. The stone tablet is the biggest of its kind in the south.



The Xin'an River. The eastwards blue line one sees on the tourist map of Huangshan City indicates the Xin'an River which originated from Huaiyu Mountain in Xiuning County. The brook expands as it rolls down, joining the Hengjiang River at Tunxi. Here, it becomes the 200 kilometer long gently flowing Xin'an



River. Sailing on the river, one sees houses of Hui style with white wall and gray tiles here and there on both sides. The fir, bamboo, tea bushes, loquat and orange forests on the hills extend as far as you can see, displaying a charming water landscape in southern China. The Xin'an River is a major waterway of vital importance to the local economy, shipping out timber and local agricultural products and transporting in salt and manufactured goods. Tunxi, Yuliang Town and Shendu in Shexian County along the river used to be bustling river ports in the old days. There is still in Yuliang



Town a one kilometer long Old Street which used to be the marketplace. There are numerous scenic spots along the Xin'an River. At Bingtan which is close to the river source, there is the mausoleum of Wang Youdun, an imperial minister in the Qing Dynasty who was a native of Xiuning. Standing around the mausoleum are carved stone human figures, horses, tigers, sheep and lions with graphic features. In Tunxi and Shexian County, the river embraces ancient pavilions and bridges as well as clusters of lakes. Further down the river, one can see the busy rural and urban scenes. On the lower reaches of the Xin'an River there is the pearl-like Qiandao Lake. It has never failed to impress the visitors with its breathtaking beauty. The travel route from the West Lake in Hangzhou to Qiandao Lake, Shexian and finally to Huangshan has become a hot tourist line.

Taiping Lake. As a deep water lake, Taiping Lake is situated between the Yellow Mountains and Mount Jiuhua. It extends 80 kilometers from east to west, which is roughly the same distance down the Li River from Guilin to Yangsuo, and covers an area of about 100 square kilometers. In addition to tour yachts, one can also take a black awning boat, a fishing boat or even a bamboo raft to enjoy the lake scene. The lake is clear and tranquil all the year round. The famous Peach Blossom Pool is located at the Wan Village on the lakeside. The famous Tang Dynasty poet Li Bai once toured the lake and wrote a poem in appreciation of the hospitality Of Wang Lun, his host (the poem is well recited today). Later, the villagers built a pavilion in memory of the great poet, which still stands. One scene in the TV series of the classical Chinese novel, the Dream of the Red Mansion, was shot here at the lakeside. Vast as the lake is, scenic spots still abound, such as the group of isles in the lake known as the 18 Immortals on Jiaoshan Hill near the lake. Tourist facilities such as holiday resorts, amusement ground, shops and swimming pools are open to public, especially to holiday seekers. And there is nothing more relaxing than drifting in a raft or boat or going angling on the lake.

The Guniujiang Natural Reserve. Literally, Guniujiang means in Chinese an ox descending from the sky. It is so named because a big rock on the peak resembles a big ox that has just landed from the sky. Straddling Qimen and Shitai Counties, the reserve covers an area of 30 square kilometers, with the Guniujiang Peak, which is the highest peak, rising 1727.6 meters high. It is one of the nature reserves of forest and wild life in China as well as an ideal place for making expedition trips. The reserve is of complex geological structure, with numerous cliffs, peaks, rocks of grotesque shapes, falls, brooks and lakes. Sometimes, Buddhist halo with rainbow colors appears around the peaks, adding to the fascination of the mountain view. The natural vegetation is well preserved here, with distinct vertical distribution of plants. At the mountain top is growth of grass. Half way up the mountain are deciduous leaf trees and

evergreen broadleaf trees, Rare species of trees and plants abound, such as Xiangguo tree, which is under priority state protection, large tracts of Yellow Mountain pine, Chinese catalpa, Wild Jujube tree, Nanmu wood, Qingqian willow, languo tree, Tenghuang sandalwood and cancer-resistant Sanjian fir as well as a dozen species of azalea. The reserve is also a haven of wild animals where sika, summon antelope, black muntjac, cloud leopard, macaque, short-tailed monkeys, civet, otter, white cranes, pheasant with white neck and long tail-mandarin duck, pangolin and owls roam around.

The Qingliang Peak Nature Reserve. It straddles the border areas of Anhui and Zhejiang Provinces, with Qingliang Peak, which is the summit, located in Shexian County. The reserve borders on Jixi County in the northwest and Lin'an county of Zhejiang Province in the northeast. Covering an area of 15 square kilometers, it is a major natural reserve and scenery spot in Anhui Province. Qingliang Peak is the summit of the Tian Mu Mountains, thrusting into the sky with a height of 1,780 meters. There are many enchanting scenic spots as well as falls and brooks



on the hill. They stir up people's imagination of being in a fairy land. The reserve is rich in vegetation, with over 400 species of woody plants in 85 families and over 1,000 species of herbal plants. The rare species of trees include East China yellow fir, red bean fir, sanjian fir, gold coin pine, China catalpa, magua wood, pearl yellow poplar, Yellow Mountain plum, etc. East China yellow fir is an endangered species of the Cretaceous period. There is now only one standing near the Cloud Valley Temple in the Yellow Mountains. Yet here in the reserve one finds large tracts of them. Arrow bamboo, which is the main diet of panda, is also found here. Rare animals such as Maoguan deer, zibeline, golden cat, Summon antelope, macaque and black musk wander freely in the reserve. In addition to enjoying the beauty of the nature, visitors also have the opportunity to appreciate the distinctive local culture with its renowned architecture, carving, painting, epigraphy, lacquer making, calligraphy, pottery art, potted landscape, bamboo weaving as well as local opera and folk songs and dances. The architecture of the region, its economic development, medicine and folklore have become subjects of study, so have the philosophic works of Daizhen, mathematics works of Cheng Dawei and educational articles of Tao Xingzhi who were all natives of this region. The famous local teas such as Qimen black tea, Tunxi green tea, Yellow Mountain Maofeng tea and Taiping Houkui tea as well as Santan loquat, golden dates and local cuisine are all favored by tourists. No one who has visited the Yellow Mountains leaves unimpressed by its fascination.

# Huangshan Mountains

From Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia



The **Huang Shan** ([Chinese](#): 黄山; [pinyin](#): Huáng Shā n; literally *Yellow Mountain*) is a [mountain](#) range in southern [Anhui province](#) in eastern [China](#). The area is very famous for its scenic beauty, which lies in the peculiar shapes of the granite peaks, in the weather-shaped [Huangshan Pine](#) trees, and in views of the clouds from above. The area also has hot springs and natural pools. The Huang Shan are a frequent subject of traditional [Chinese paintings](#) and [literature](#). Today, they are a [UNESCO World Heritage Site](#) and one of China's most popular tourist destinations.



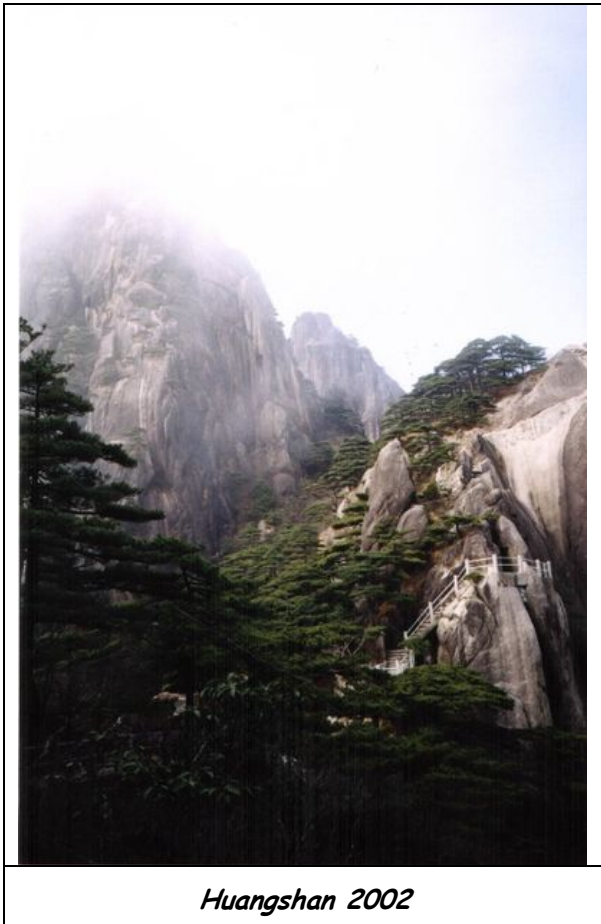
The Huang Shan mountain range comprises many peaks, 77 of which exceed 1,000 [m](#) in altitude. The three tallest peaks are *Lotus Peak* (Lian Hua Feng, 1,864 m, [30°07' N 118°10' E](#)), nearby *Bright Summit Peak* (Guang Ming Ding, 1,840 m) and *Celestial Peak* (Tian Du Feng, literally *Capital of Heaven Peak*, 1,829 m). The World Heritage Site covers a core area of 154 square kilometres and a buffer zone of 142 square kilometres.

The mountains were formed in the [Mesozoic](#), about 100 million years ago, when an ancient sea disappeared due to uplift. Later, in the [Quaternary](#), the landscape was shaped by the influence of [glaciers](#). In many cases, stone pillar forests were formed.

Since the [Qin Dynasty](#), the Huang Shan had been known as the *Yi Shan*, they got their present name

in [747 AD](#), when the poet [Li Po](#) referred to them by this name in his writing.

The vegetation of the area depends on altitude: Below 1,100 [m](#), moist forest can be found; deciduous forest stretches from 1,100 m up to the tree line at 1,800 m; above that the vegetation consists of alpine grass-lands. The area has diverse flora, where one-third of China's [bryophyte](#) families and more than half of its [fern](#) families are represented.



Because the mountain tops are often above cloud level, they offer views of the clouds from above and interesting light-effects. The *Sea of Clouds* ([Chinese](#): 雲海, [Pinyin](#): Yun Hai) and *Buddha's Light* ([Chinese](#): 佛光, [Pinyin](#): Fo Guang) are famous phenomena which attract many tourists. On average, the Buddha's Light only appears a couple of times in a month.

The hot springs of the area are located at the foot of the *Purple Cloud Peak*. the water retains a temperature of 45 °[C](#) all year. Most natural pools are concentrated in the *Songgu Area*. Some particularly well-known water bodies in the area are the *Old Dragon Pool* (Lao Long Tan), the *Green Dragon Pool* (Qing Long Tan), the *Black Dragon Pool* (Wu Long Tan), the *White Dragon Pool* (Bai Long Tan), and the *Jadeite Pond*.

[Mao Feng](#) ("Fur Peak") is a famous [green tea](#) from the Huang Shan area, it is named for the downy tips of the tea leaves.

The Huang Shan has been a UNESCO World Heritage Site since [1990](#) for its exceptional natural beauty and its role as a habitat for rare and threatened species.

## See also

- [Hongcun](#)
- [Xidi](#)

## External links

- [Travel spots and tips in Anhui and other provinces](#)
- [Photos of mystical animal-like rock formations in Huang Shan](#)

- [Nice photo of Huang Shan](#)
- [100+ Pictures of Huangshan](#)
- [Unesco Site Listing](#)
- [黄山 \(Huang Shan, in Chinese\)](#)
- [Site Information from China Travel Service Huangshan](#)
- [Tourist Map](#)



## Huang Shan

### **"Seeing off Hermit Wen Back to Former Residence White Goose Peak in the Yellow Mountains"**

Thousands of feet high towers the Yellow Mountains  
With its thirty-two magnificent peaks,  
Blooming like golden lotus flowers  
Amidst red crags and rock columns.  
Once I was on its lofty summit,  
Admiring Tianmu Pine below.  
The place is still traceable where the immortal  
Before ascending to heaven made elixir out of jade.  
Now you embark on your journey there alone---  
Another Wen Boxue I happened to meet---  
Who've been to Five Mountains for beauty of nature,  
Leaving behind countless ranges of hills.  
Homeward you go back to White Goose Ridge,  
Back to drink from your Elixir Well.  
If by chance I pay you a visit,  
I expect to be met by your light carriage.  
Eastwards from Lingyang you bend your steps,  
And pick your way through fragrant bushes,  
Many a stream and many a ford,  
Peaks upon peaks shutting out the sky  
That's where I'll call on you some other day  
Across a bridge that spans cliffs like a rainbow.

--Li Bai

Huang Shan, or the Yellow Mountains, is one of the most popular attractions in China. Li Bai may have been wrong about the height of the Yellow Mountains (the tallest peaks rise just above 1,800 meters), but what inspired him to write this poem has awed visitors for thousands of years.

Located in the southern part of Anhui Province, the Yellow Mountains extend across four counties - Shexian, Yixian, Taiping, and Xining. They



Huang Shan Scenery

rose above the earth surface as a result of movement of the earth's crust over a hundred million years ago. Later they underwent the erosion of Quaternary glaciation and have gradually become what they are today. Magnificent and charming, the mountains have been a famous scenic spot full of wonderful sights. The Yellow Mountains, also known as Yishan during the Qin Dynasty (211-207 B.C.), got its present name in 747 A.D.(the 6th year of the Tianbao reign of the Tang Dynasty), when Li Bai (701-762), the great Tang poet, wrote about them in these lines:

Thousands of feet high towers the Yellow Mountains With its thirty-two magnificent peaks, Blooming like golden lotus flowers, Amidst red crags and rock columns.



Peaks and Columns

The Yellow Mountains are a marvel: within an area of 154 square kilometers there is a crowd of peaks, 72 of which have names indicating the shapes they resemble. Lotus, Brightness Apex, and Celestial Capital Peaks are the three major ones, all rising above 1,800 meters. The mountains are a body of granite, often with vertical joints. Erosion and fracture contributed to the shaping of the rocks into huge columns, giving rise to lofty peaks and deep ravines. When it is cloudy the pinnacles loom in mists as if they were illusionary, and while the sun is shining they unfold all their majesty and splendor.

The Yellow Mountains change their colour and appearance with the alternation of seasons. In spring, blooming flowers decorate the slopes in a riot of colour and fill the valleys with fragrance; in summer you see verdured peaks rising one upon another and hear the springs gurgling merrily;

autumn dresses the mountains in red and purple as maples are all blazing-red; winter turns them into a world of frost and ice with silver boughs and rocks all over.



From ancient times the mountains have been frequented by tourists seeking their mystery and admiring their scenery. They come to the conclusion that the fantastic pines, the grotesque rocks, the sea of clouds, and the hot springs are the four major attractions of the Yellow Mountains. As a matter of fact, there are marvels almost everywhere, especially in the following scenic areas:

Wenquan (Hot Spring), Yupinglou (Jade Screen Tower), Xihai (West Sea), Beihai (North Sea), Yungusi (Cloud Valley Temple), and Songgu'an (Pine Valley Nunnery).

Owing to the peculiar terrain, the Yellow Mountains' climate is marked by a vertical change, and the vertical distribution of vegetation is also distinctive: plants on the summit, on the middle levels, and at the foot belong to the frigid, temperate, and subtropical zones respectively. There are more than 1500 species of plants, of which trees comprise one third. Hence the Yellow Mountains occupy an important place in China's botanical research.



Amidst the Fog

Here you will find century-old pines, firs, ginkgoes, Chinese torreyas, Chinese sweet gums, nanmus, camphor woods, and the precious Magua trees, remnants of the glacial era. The Yellow Mountains also abound in flowering plants; many of them are rare ones, such as the Goddess Flower and the Yellow Mountains Azalea as well as camellia, plum, lily, crape myrtle, orchid, Spring Heralding Flower, and so on. It has a rich store of medicinal herbs; more than 300 kinds are found

here, the notable ones being glossy ganoderma ginseng, Chinese gold thread rhizome, and chinese cinnamon. Maofeng tea of the Yellow Mountains is well known at both home and abroad.



Sunset

The Yellow Mountains also provide the natural habitat for a wide variety of fauna. Among the animals there are monkeys, goats, and deer. There are rare birds such as the red-billed leiothrix, the silver pheasant, the octave-tone bird, and the oriole, all good singers.



Piercing the Sky

The red-billed leiothrix (called "love birds" in Chinese) are so lovely that they have become favorites of foreign tourists and are exported by pairs.

The temperature in the Yellow Mountains is agreeable all the year round. It is cool in summer, averaging 20° C at the North Sea Guest-house (1,630 meters above sea level) and 25° C at Hot Springs (630 meters above sea level). As clouds often shut out the sun, hot weather never stays long, and this makes the Yellow Mountains an ideal summer resort.



Peaks and Pillars in Heaven

Though looking fresh and young, Yellow Mountains have a long history to which ancient books, poems, and paintings as well as carved inscriptions all bear witness. Li Bai was not the only poet who sang in its praise; Tang poets Jia Dao (779-843) and Du Xunhe (846-097) also came here and wrote poems. Xu Xike (1586-1641), the great geographer and traveller of the Ming Dynasty, devoted two of his travel notes to Yellow Mountains.

Jian Jiang and Shi Tao (1642-1718), master painters of the Xin'an School in the Qing Dynasty, left behind them many paintings of the scenic mountains. Li Siguang (J.S.Lee 1889-1971), the late celebrated geologist, summed up his personal inspections in his book: "Quaternary Glacial phenomena in the Yellow Mountains of Anhui".

Inscriptions of the past generations meet one's eye here and there among the Yellow Mountains: "Clouds in a Myriad of Forms", "Peaks Piercing the Sky", "A Cool World", "Fantastic and Beautiful", and "Scenery of Exceptional Charm" to mention just a few. Such poetic phrases in handsome calligraphy are not only decorative; they are themselves part of the fascinating scene.



## Shanghai

<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Shanghai>

# Shanghai

From Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia

**Shanghai** ([Chinese](#): 上海; [pinyin](#): [Shànghǎi](#) [\(help·info\)](#); [Wu](#) ([Long-short](#)): Zānhae; [Shanghainese](#) ([IPA](#)): [zɔ̃˥˥he]), situated on the banks of the [Yangtze River Delta](#) in [East China](#), is the largest city of the [People's Republic of China](#) and the [eighth largest](#) in the world. Widely regarded as the citadel of China's modern [economy](#), the city also serves as one of the most important cultural, commercial, financial, industrial and communications centers of China. Administratively, Shanghai is a [municipality](#) of the People's Republic of China that has [province-level status](#). Shanghai is also one of the world's busiest [ports](#), and became the largest cargo port in the world in 2005.<sup>[1]</sup>

Originally a sleepy fishing town, Shanghai became China's most important city by the 20th century and was the centre of [popular culture](#), [vice](#), intellectual discourse and political intrigue during the [Republic of China](#). Shanghai once became the third largest financial centre in the world, ranking after [New York City](#) and [London](#), and the largest commercial city in the [Far East](#) in the late [19th century](#) and early [20th century](#). After the [communist takeover](#) in [1949](#), Shanghai languished under heavy central government taxation and much of its [bourgeois](#) elements were purged. Following the central government's authorization of [market-economic](#) redevelopment of Shanghai in [1992](#), Shanghai quickly surpassed early-starters [Shenzhen](#) and [Guangzhou](#), and has since led China's economic growth. Some challenges remain for Shanghai at the beginning of the 21st century, as the city struggles to cope with increased worker migration and a huge wealth gap. However, these challenges aside, Shanghai's skyscrapers and modern lifestyle mark the pinnacle of China's recent economic development.

### Shanghai (上海)



*A section of Shanghai's [Pudong](#), east bank of [Huangpu River](#).*

### Location in the [People's Republic of China](#)





## Contents

- [1 Origin of name](#)
- [2 History](#)
  - [2.1 Pre-19th century](#)
    - [2.2 19th to early 20th century](#)
    - [2.2.1 During World War II](#)
  - [2.3 Communist rule](#)
- [3 Politics and Administration](#)
  - [3.1 Politics](#)
- [3.2 Subdivisions](#)
- [4 Economy and demographics](#)
- [5 Geography and climate](#)
  - [5.1 Astronomical phenomena](#)
- [6 Transportation](#)
- [7 Culture](#)
  - [7.1 Language](#)
  - [7.2 Art](#)
    - [7.2.1 Songjiang School and Huating School](#)
    - [7.2.2 Shanghai School](#)
  - [7.3 Modern China](#)
  - [7.4 Popular stereotypes](#)
  - [7.5 People of other provinces](#)
  - [7.6 Shikumen](#)
  - [7.7 Fashion](#)
  - [7.8 Cultural sites](#)
- [8 Colleges and universities](#)
  - [8.1 National](#)
  - [8.2 Public](#)
  - [8.3 Private](#)
- [9 High Schools](#)
- [10 Media portrayals](#)
  - [10.1 Literature](#)
  - [10.2 Films](#)
- [11 More Photos](#)
- [12 Sister cities](#)
- [13 Miscellaneous](#)
- [14 See also](#)
- [15 References](#)
- [16 External links](#)

## Origin of name

上海

The two [Chinese characters](#) in the name "Shanghai" (see left) literally mean "on"/"top" and "sea". The local [Shanghainese](#) pronunciation of Shanghai is /zɔ̃˧˥.he/, while the [Standard Mandarin](#) pronunciation in [Hanyu Pinyin](#) is Shànghǎi. The earliest occurrence of this name dates from the [Song Dynasty \(11th century\)](#), at which time there was already a river confluence and a town with this name in the area. There are disputes as to how the name should be interpreted, but official local histories have consistently said that it means "the upper reaches of the sea" (海之上洋). However, another reading, especially in Mandarin, also suggests the sense of "go onto the sea," which is consistent with the seaport status of the city. The more poetic name for Shanghai switches the order of the two characters, i.e., **Haishang** (海上), and is often

used for terms related to Shanghainese art and culture. In the West, Shanghai has also been spelled Schanghai (in [German](#)), Sjanghai (in [Dutch](#)), Xangai (in [Portuguese](#)) and Changhaï (in [French](#)), but since the 1990s the Hanyu Pinyin spelling of "Shanghai" has become universal in the West. In [Japanese](#), Shanghai is written using the same two Chinese characters (上海), and the Japanese pronunciation *Shanghai* (シャンハイ) is an approximate of the Mandarin pronunciation.

Shanghai's abbreviations in Chinese are *Hù* (沪) and *Shēn* (申). The former is derived from the ancient name Hu Du (沪渎) of the river now known as [Suzhou Creek](#). The latter is derived from the name of Chunshen Jun (春申君), a nobleman of the [Chu Kingdom](#) (楚国) in the 3rd century B.C. whose territory included the Shanghai area and has locally been revered as a hero. Sports teams and newspapers in

Basic Information	
<b>Origin of name:</b>	上 <i>shàng</i> - on/above 海 <i>hǎi</i> - sea 市 <i>shì</i> - city "City on the Sea"
<b>Abbreviation:</b>	沪 <i>Hù</i> and 申 <i>Shēn</i>
<b>Area:</b>	6,340.5 <a href="#">km²</a> ( <a href="#">31st</a> )
<b>Population</b> ( <a href="#">2006</a> ):	18,670,000 ( <a href="#">25th</a> ) Municipality
	9,838,000 Urban Area, 2001 est.
<b>Density</b> ( <a href="#">2005</a> ):	2804/km² ( <a href="#">1st</a> ) Municipality
<b>GDP</b> ( <a href="#">2005</a> ): - per capita	<a href="#">CNY</a> 915.4 billion ( <a href="#">7th</a> ) <a href="#">CNY</a> 51,485 ( <a href="#">1st</a> )
<b>HDI</b> ( <a href="#">2005</a> )	0.909 ( <a href="#">1st</a> ) — <a href="#">high</a>
<b>Major nationalities</b> ( <a href="#">2000</a> ):	<a href="#">Han</a> - 99% <a href="#">Hui</a> - 0.4%
<b>City flower:</b>	<a href="#">Yulan magnolia</a> ( <i>Magnolia denudata</i> )
<b>Elevation:</b>	0 - 103.4 m
<b>Coordinates:</b>	<a href="#">31°10'N 121°28'E</a>
<b>Postal code:</b>	<b>200000 - 202100</b>
<b>Area code:</b>	+86/21
<b>License plate prefixes</b> :	沪A, B, D, E
	沪C (outer suburbs)
<b>ISO 3166-2:</b>	cn-31
<b>Time zone</b> :	<a href="#">UTC+8</a>
<b>Website</b> :	<a href="http://www.shanghai.gov.cn">www.shanghai.gov.cn</a>

Shanghai often use the character *Shē n* (申) in their names. Shanghai is also commonly called *Shē nchéng* (申城, "City of Shē n").

The city has had various nicknames in English, including "Paris of the East", "Queen of the Orient", "Pearl of the Orient", and even "The Whore of Asia" (a reference to widespread corruption of vice, drugs, and prostitution in the 1920s and 1930s).

## History

*Main article:* [History of Shanghai](#)

### Pre-19th century

Before the formation of Shanghai city, Shanghai was part of Songjiang county (松江縣), governed by [Suzhou prefecture](#) (蘇州府). From the time of the [Song Dynasty](#) (960-1279), Shanghai gradually became a busy [seaport](#), outgrowing its original political jurisdictions. For instance, [Songjiang](#) (淞江) today is one of 18 districts *within* Shanghai.

A [city wall](#) was built in AD [1553](#), which is generally accepted as the start of the city of Shanghai. However, before the 19th century, Shanghai was not considered a major city of China. Therefore, compared to most other major Chinese cities today, there are few

[ancient Chinese](#) landmarks to be found in the city. The few cultural landmarks to be found are very ancient and typically date to the [Three Kingdoms](#) period of Chinese history. This is mostly due to the fact that present-day Shanghai is within the historic cultural center of the [Wu Kingdom](#) (222-280).

During the [Qianlong](#) era of the [Qing Dynasty](#), Shanghai became an important regional port for the [Yangtze](#) and [Huangpu](#) rivers. It also became a major seaport for the nearby [Jiangsu](#) and [Zhejiang](#) provinces, although overseas commerce was still forbidden at that time. A historically important area of this era is Wujiaochang (五角场) (now in the [Yangpu District](#)), the foundation of the city center. Around

the end of the Qianlong era, Shiliupu (十六铺) (now in the [Huangpu District](#)) became the largest port in [East Asia](#).

Government	
<b>Administration Type:</b>	<a href="#">Municipality</a>
<b>CPC Shanghai Committee Secretary:</b>	<a href="#">Han Zheng</a> (acting)
<b>Mayor:</b>	<a href="#">Han Zheng</a>
<b>County-level divisions:</b>	<a href="#">18 Districts and 1 County</a>
<b>Township-level divisions:</b>	220 Towns and Villages

## 19th to early 20th century

The importance of Shanghai grew radically in the 19th century, as the city's strategic position at the mouth of the [Yangtze River](#) made it an ideal location for trade with the West.

During the [First Opium War](#) in the early-[19th century](#), British forces temporarily held Shanghai. The war ended with the [1842 Treaty of Nanjing](#), which saw the [treaty ports](#), Shanghai included, opened for international trade. The [Treaty of the Bogue](#) signed in [1843](#), and the [Sino-American Treaty of Wangsia](#) signed in [1844](#) together saw foreign nations achieve extraterritoriality on Chinese soil, which officially lasted until 1943 but was essentially defunct by the late [1930s](#). From the [twenties](#) to the late 30s Shanghai was a so-called 'sin city'. [Gangsters](#) wielded a great deal of power and ran [casinos](#) and [brothels](#).

The [Taiping Rebellion](#) broke out in [1850](#), and in [1853](#) Shanghai was occupied by a [triad](#) offshoot of the rebels, called the [Small Swords Society](#). The fighting destroyed the countryside but left the foreigners' settlements untouched, and Chinese arrived seeking refuge. Although previously Chinese were forbidden



*1888 German map of Shanghai*

to live in foreign settlements, [1854](#) saw new regulations drawn up making land available to Chinese. Land prices rose substantially.

1854 also saw the first annual meeting of the [Shanghai Municipal Council](#), created in order to manage the foreign settlements. In [1863](#), the British settlement, located along the western bank of the Huangpu river to the south of Suzhou creek (Huangpu district), and American settlement, located on the western bank of the Huangpu river and

to the north of Suzhou creek (Hankou district) joined in order to form the International Settlement. The French opted out of the Shanghai Municipal Council, and instead maintained its own French Concession, located to the west of the International Settlement. This period saw a large influx of migrants from [Europe](#) and [North America](#), who called themselves "[Shanghailanders](#)".



*Jiujiang Road, Shanghai, 1920s*

The [Sino-Japanese War](#) fought [1894-95](#) over control of [Korea](#) concluded with the [Treaty of Shimonoseki](#), which saw [Japan](#) emerge as an additional foreign power in Shanghai. Japan built the first factories in Shanghai, which were soon copied by other foreign powers to effect the emergence of Shanghai industry. Shanghai was then the biggest financial city in the [Far East](#). Under the [Republic of China](#), Shanghai was made a [special city](#) in 1927, and a municipality in May [1930](#). The Japanese Navy bombed Shanghai on [January 28, 1932](#), nominally in an

effort to crush down Chinese student protests of the [Manchurian Incident](#) and the subsequent Japanese occupation. The Chinese fought back in what was known as the [January 28 Incident](#). The two sides fought to a standstill and a ceasefire was brokered in May. In the [Second Sino-Japanese War](#), the city fell after the [Battle of Shanghai](#) in [1937](#), and was occupied until Japan's surrender in [1945](#). The International Settlement was occupied on 8 December 1941 with opposition from only the one remaining British gunboat stationed in the port and some Chinese irregulars.

## During World War II

Shanghai had been a centre for [refugees](#) as early as 1919 when large numbers of White Russians fleeing revolution and civil war took up residence there. Russians comprised the second largest foreign community in Shanghai (after the Japanese) and played a important role in the economy and policing of the International Settlement until the end of World War II.



*Section of Shanghai's [Puxi](#), west bank of Huangpu River. 9 districts in Puxi comprise Shanghai's original city core.*

During [World War II](#), Shanghai became again a centre for [refugees](#) from [Europe](#). It was the only city in the world that was open unconditionally to the [Jews](#) at the time. As a result, approximately 32,000 Jews, who like the other foreign communities termed themselves "Shanghaianders," settled in this fascinating Chinese city. However, under pressure from their [Nazi](#) allies, the Japanese ghettoised the [Jewish refugees](#) in late 1941 in what came to be known as the [Shanghai ghetto](#), and hunger and [infectious diseases](#) such as [amoebic dysentery](#) became rife. Nevertheless, the Japanese government refused Nazi requests to deport



the Jewish population.



*Chinese [Nationalist](#) defenders in the 1937 [Battle of Shanghai](#) against the invading Japanese army, start of full-scale war.*

## Communist rule

On [May 27, 1949](#), [Communist Party of China](#) controlled [People's Liberation Army](#) took control of Shanghai. It was one of the only two former [Republic of China](#) (ROC) municipalities not merged into neighbouring provinces over the next decade (the other being [Beijing](#)). It underwent a series of changes in the boundaries of its subdivisions, especially in the next

decade.

After the communist takeover in 1949, most foreign firms moved their offices from Shanghai to [Hong Kong](#). During the [1950s](#) and [1960s](#), Shanghai became an industrial center and center for revolutionary [leftism](#). Yet, even during the most tumultuous times of the [Cultural Revolution](#), Shanghai was able to maintain high economic productivity and relative social stability. In most of the history of the [People's Republic of China](#) (PRC), Shanghai has been the largest contributor of tax revenue to the central government compared with other Chinese provinces and municipalities. This came at the cost of severely crippling Shanghai's infrastructure and capital development. Its importance to China's fiscal well-being also denied it economic liberalizations that were started in the far southern provinces such as [Guangdong](#) during the mid-1980s. At that time Guangdong province paid nearly no taxes to the central government, and thus was perceived as fiscally expendable for experimental economic reforms. Shanghai was not permitted to initiate economic reforms until [1991](#).



*[Jewish refugees](#) in Shanghai during World War II.*

Political power in Shanghai has traditionally been seen as a stepping stone to higher positions within the PRC central government. In the 1990s, there was what was often described as the politically [right-of-center](#) "[Shanghai clique](#)," which included the president of the PRC [Jiang Zemin](#) and the [premier of the PRC Zhu Rongji](#). Starting in [1992](#), the central government under Jiang Zemin, a former [Mayor of Shanghai](#), began reducing the tax burden on Shanghai and encouraging both foreign

and domestic investment in order to promote it as the economic hub of [East Asia](#) and to encourage its



role as gateway of investment to the Chinese interior. Since then it has experienced continuous economic growth of between 9– 15% annually.

## Politics and Administration

### Politics

*Main article: [Politics of Shanghai](#)*

Shanghai has been a [political](#) hub of China for many years. Many of China's top government officials in Beijing are known to have risen in Shanghai in the 1980s on a platform that was critical of the extreme leftism of the [Cultural Revolution](#), giving them the tag "[Shanghai Clique](#)" during the 1990s. Many observers of Chinese politics view the more right-leaning Shanghai Clique as an opposing and competing faction of the current Chinese administration under President [Hu Jintao](#) and Premier [Wen Jiabao](#). Shanghai's top jobs, the Party Chief and the position of Mayor, have always been prominent on a national scale. Four Shanghai mayors eventually went on to take prominent Central Government positions, including former President [Jiang Zemin](#) and former Premier [Zhu Rongji](#). The top administrative jobs are always appointed directly by the Central Government.

The current Shanghai government under Mayor [Han Zheng](#) has openly advocated transparency in the city's government. However, in previous years a complicated system of relationships between Shanghai's government, banks, and other civil institutions has been under scrutiny for corruption, motivated by faction politics in Beijing; these allegations from Beijing did not go anywhere until late 2006.



*Shanghai municipal government building.*

In September 2006, the Shanghai Communist Party Chair [Chen Liangyu](#) and a number of his followers were removed from their positions after a probe into the city's pension fund. Over a hundred investigators, sent by the Central Government, reportedly uncovered clues of money diversion from the city's pension fund to unapproved loans and investments. Chen Liangyu, a member of former President Jiang Zemin's Shanghai Clique, was seen as a major rival of President Hu Jintao and Premier Wen Jiabao. Chen's abrupt removal is viewed by many Chinese

as a political maneuver by Hu Jintao to further secure his power in the country. See the [article on Chen Liangyu](#) for more information regarding his dismissal.

### Subdivisions



River west ([Puxi](#)) side of Shanghai with [The Bund](#) in the right foreground. Shanghai's new financial district (not pictured) is on the east side of the Huangpu River.



*Shanghai's districts and county*

Shanghai is administratively equal to a [province](#) and is divided into 19 [county-level divisions](#): 18 [districts](#) and 1 [county](#). There is no single downtown district in Shanghai, the urban core is scattered across several districts. Prominent central business areas include [Lujiazui](#) on the east bank of the [Huangpu River](#), and [The Bund](#) and [Hongqiao](#) areas in the west bank of the Huangpu River. The city hall and major administration units are located in [Huangpu District](#), which also serve as a commercial area, including the famous [Nanjing Road](#). Other major commercial areas include the classy [Xintiandi](#) and Huaihai Road in [Luwan](#) district and [Xujiahui](#) in [Xuhui District](#). Many universities in Shanghai are located in residential areas of [Yangpu District](#) and [Putuo District](#).

Nine of the districts govern [Puxi](#) (literally West Bank), or the older part of urban Shanghai on the west bank of the [Huangpu River](#). These nine districts are collectively referred to as Shanghai Proper (上海市区) or the core city (市中心):

- [Huangpu District](#) (Simplified Chinese: 黄浦区; [pinyin](#): Huángpǔ Qū )
- [Luwan District](#) (卢湾区 Lúwā n Qū )
- [Xuhui District](#) (徐汇区 Xúhuì Qū )
- [Changning District](#) (长宁区 Chángníng Qū )
- [Jing'an District](#) (静安区 Jìng'ā n Qū )
- [Putuo District](#) (普陀区 Pǔ tuó Qū )
- [Zhabei District](#) (闸北区 Zhábě i Qū )

- [Hongkou District](#) (虹口区 Hóngkǒu Qū )
- [Yangpu District](#) (杨浦区 Yángpǔ Qū )

[Pudong](#) (East Bank), or the newer part of urban and suburban Shanghai on the east bank of the [Huangpu River](#), is governed by:



***[Pudong](#) side at dusk. The Aurora building integrates a massive LED screen, beaming TV and advertisements to strollers on the [Puxi](#) side after dark.***

- [Pudong New District](#) (浦东新区 Pǔdōng Xīn Qū ) — Chuansha County until [1992](#)

Eight of the districts govern suburbs, satellite towns, and rural areas further away from the urban core:

- [Baoshan District](#) (宝山区 Bǎoshān Qū ) — Baoshan County until [1988](#)
- [Minhang District](#) (闵行区 Mínháng Qū ) — Shanghai County until [1992](#)
- [Jiading District](#) (嘉定区 Jiāding Qū ) — Jiading County until [1992](#)
- [Jinshan District](#) (金山区 Jīnshān Qū ) — Jinshan County until [1997](#)
- [Songjiang District](#) (松江区 Sōngjiāng Qū ) —

Songjiang County until [1998](#)

- [Qingpu District](#) (青浦区 Qīngpǔ Qū ) — Qingpu County until [1999](#)
- [Nanhui District](#) (南汇区 Nánhuì Qū ) — Nanhui County until [2001](#)
- [Fengxian District](#) (奉贤区 Fèngxián Qū ) — Fengxian County until [2001](#)

[Chongming](#) Island, an island at the mouth of the [Yangtze](#), is governed by:

- [Chongming](#) County (崇明县 Chóngmíng Xiàn)

As of 2003, these county-level divisions are further divided into the following 220 [township-level divisions](#): 114 [towns](#), 3 [townships](#), 103 [subdistricts](#). Those are in turn divided into the following [village-level divisions](#): 3,393 [neighborhood committees](#) and 2,037 [village committees](#).

List of towns:

- [Anting](#), [Jiading District](#)
- [Huamu](#), [Pudong New District](#)
- [Pengpu](#), [Zhabei District](#)
- [Beicai](#), [Pudong New District](#)
- [Qibao](#), [Minhang District](#)
- [Sheshan](#), [Songjiang District](#)
- [Sijing](#), [Songjiang District](#)
- [Nanqiao](#), [Fengxian District](#)

- [Xinzhuang](#), [Minhang District](#)
- [Jiangwan](#), [Yangpu District](#)

## Economy and demographics



***[The Bund](#) at night, the location of several major banking branches.***

Shanghai is often regarded as the center of finance and trade in mainland China. Modern development began with economic reforms in [1992](#), a decade later than many of the Southern Chinese provinces. Prior to then, much of the city's tax revenue went directly to the capital, [Beijing](#), with little return. Even with a decreased tax burden after 1992, Shanghai's tax contribution to the central government is around 20-25% of the national total (Shanghai's annual tax burden pre-1990s was on average 70% of the national total). Shanghai today is still

the most populous and well developed city in [mainland China](#).

Shanghai is one of the world's busiest ports. In 2005, Shanghai ranked first of the world's busiest ports in terms of cargo throughput, handling a total of 443 million tons of cargo. In terms of container traffic, it is the third busiest port in the world, following [Singapore](#) and [Hong Kong](#).

The [2000](#) census put the population of Shanghai Municipality to 16.738 million, including the floating population, which made up 3.871 million. Since the 1990 census the total population has increased by 3.396 million, or 25.5%. Males accounted for 51.4%, females for 48.6% of the population. 12.2% were in the age group of 0-14, 76.3% between 15 and 64 and 11.5% were older than 65. 5.4% of the inhabitants were illiterate. As of 2003, the official registered population is 13.42 million; however, more than 5 million more people work and live in Shanghai undocumented, and of the 5 million, some 4 million belong to the floating population of temporary migrant workers, a large proportion of whom are from [Anhui Province](#) as well as [Jiangsu](#) and [Zhejiang](#) Provinces. The average life expectancy in 2003 was 79.80 years, 77.78 for men and 81.81 for women.

Shanghai and [Hong Kong](#) have had a recent rivalry over which city is to be the [economic](#) center of China. The city had a [GDP](#) per capita of ¥46,586 (ca. US\$ 5,620) in 2003, ranked no. 13 among all 659 Chinese cities. [Hong Kong](#) on the other hand, possessed an unparalleled [GDP](#) of ¥310,021 (ca. US\$ 37,400). Hong Kong has the advantage of a stronger [legal system](#), [international market](#) integration, superior [economic freedom](#), greater [banking](#) and service expertise. Shanghai has stronger links to both the



Chinese interior and the central government, in addition to a stronger base in [manufacturing](#) and [technology](#). Shanghai has increased its role in [finance](#), banking, and as a major destination for corporate headquarters, fueling demand for a highly educated and modernized workforce. Shanghai has recorded a double-digit growth for 14 consecutive years since 1992. In 2005, Shanghai's nominal GDP posted an 11.3% growth to 915.4 billion yuan (US\$117 billion).<sup>[2]</sup>



***New skyscrapers amidst old residential [shikumen](#) buildings. [Luwan](#) District.***

As in many other areas in China, Shanghai is undergoing a building boom. In Shanghai the modern [architecture](#) is notable for its unique style, especially in the highest floors, with several top floor restaurants which resemble flying saucers.

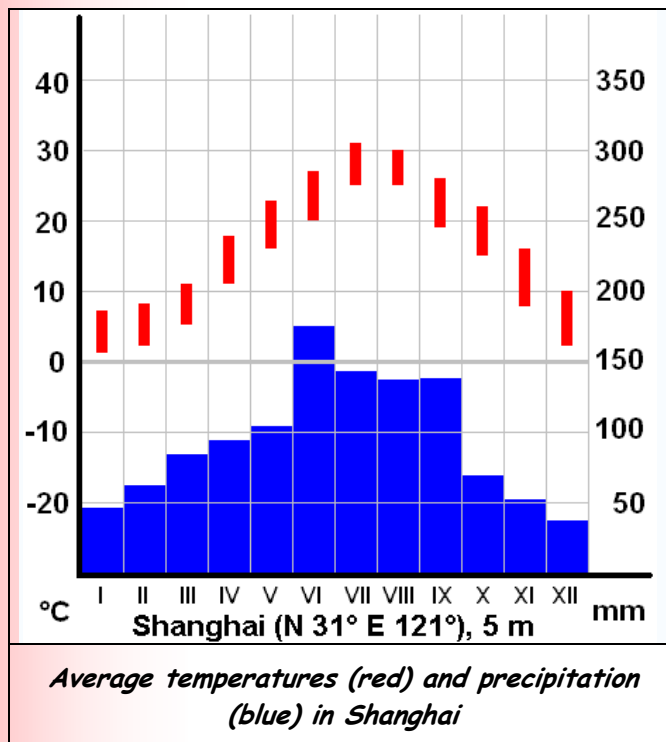
*For a gallery of these unique architecture designs, see [Shanghai \(architecture images\)](#).*

The bulk of Shanghai buildings being constructed today are high-rise apartments of various height, color and design. There is now a strong focus by city planners to develop more "green areas" (public parks) among the apartment complexes in order to increase the quality of life for Shanghai's residents, quite in accordance to the "Better City - Better Life" theme of Shanghai's [Expo 2010](#).

Historically very Western in lifestyle, Shanghai is increasingly a critical center of communication with the Western world. Examples include the opening of the [Pac-Med Medical Exchange](#) in June of 2004, a clearinghouse of medical data and a link between the Chinese and westernized medical infrastructures. In medicine and other humanitarian fields, China is actively seeking input of first world nations to improve living conditions and trade status. Arguments for and against modern Chinese leadership question the genuine influence the influx of western culture and technology will have on vast Chinese interior, outside of the densely populated, often visited urban centres. The Pudong district of Shanghai contains contemporary architecture and "modern"-feeling districts, in close proximity to major international trade and hospitality zones. Visitors to Shanghai find free public parks manicured to startling perfection; in distinct contrast to the massive industrial installations which reveal China's [emerging environmental concerns](#). Shanghai's international diversity is perhaps the world's foremost window into the rich, historic and complex society of today's China.

## Geography and climate





Shanghai faces the [East China Sea](#) (part of the [Pacific Ocean](#)), and is bisected by the [Huangpu River](#). [Puxi](#) contains the city proper on the western side of Huangpu River, while an entirely new financial district has been erected on the eastern bank of the Huangpu in [Pudong](#).

Geographical coordinates: [31°13' N](#)  
[121°28' E](#)

Shanghai has a [monsoon](#)-influenced [humid subtropical climate](#). Shanghai experiences all four seasons, with freezing temperatures during the winter season and a 32 degrees Celsius (90 degrees Fahrenheit) average high during the hottest months of July and August.

Temperatures extremes of -10C (14F) and +41C (105F) have been recorded. Heavy rain is frequent in early summer. Spring starts in March, summer in June, autumn in September and winter in December. The weather in spring, although considered the most beautiful season, is highly variable, with frequent rain and alternating spells of warmth and cold. Summer is the peak tourist season, but is hot and oppressive, as the humidity makes it almost impossible for people not used to the environment to breathe properly. Clothes tend to get fairly wet after minutes of walking. Autumn is generally sunny and dry, and the foliage season is in November. Winters are typically grey and dreary, with no snowfall. The city has a few [Typhoon](#) spells during the year, none of which in recent years have caused considerable damage.

## Astronomical phenomena

The previous total [solar eclipse](#) to be seen from [the center of Shanghai](#) ([31°13.9' N 121°28.2' E](#)) occurred on [May 10, 1575](#).

The next total [solar eclipse](#) that will be seen from Shanghai will be [solar eclipse of 2009-Jul-22](#).

Wikisource has an article about [solar eclipses](#) as seen from Shanghai from 2001 to 3000. [\[1\]](#)

## Transportation

See also: [Shanghai Metro](#)

Shanghai has an extensive public transportation system, largely based on buses, and a rapidly expanding metro system. For a city of Shanghai's size, road traffic is fairly smooth and convenient.

Shanghai has the world's most extensive [bus](#) system with nearly one thousand bus lines.<sup>[\[3\]](#)</sup> The [Shanghai Metro](#) (subway and elevated light rail) has five lines (numbers 1, 2, 3, 4, 5) at present. According to the

development schedule of the municipal government, by the year 2010, another 8 lines will be built in Shanghai. Bus and metro fares run from ¥1 to ¥4 depending on distance (or between 12 to 50 US cents).



*Inside a [Shanghai subway car](#)*

[Taxis](#) in Shanghai are plentiful and market competition has driven taxi fare down to affordable prices for the average resident (¥11 or a little over one US dollar for 3 km). Before the 1990s, bicycling was the most ubiquitous form of transportation in Shanghai, but the city has since banned bicycles on many of the city's main roads to ease congestion. However, many streets have bicycle lanes and intersections are monitored by "Traffic Assistants" who help provide for safe crossing. Further,

most motorists in China were raised riding bikes and so are fairly careful of them. Further, the city government has pledged to add 180 km of cycling lanes over the next few years. With rising disposable incomes, private car ownership in Shanghai has also been rapidly increasing in recent years. The number of cars is limited, however, by the number of available number plates available at public auction.



*Nanpu cable suspension bridge, connecting Puxi and Pudong.*

Shanghai has two airports: [Hongqiao](#) and [Pudong International](#), which has the second highest (combined) traffic in China, following [Hong Kong International Airport](#). In cooperation with the Shanghai municipality and the Shanghai Maglev Transportation Development Co. (SMT), German [Transrapid](#) constructed the [first commercial maglev railway in the world](#) in 2002, from Shanghai's Longyang Road

subway station to Pudong International Airport. Commercial operation started in [2003](#). The 30 km trip takes 7 minutes and 21 seconds and reaches a maximum speed of 431 km/h (267.8 miles per hour). As of [December 2005](#), Shanghai's [port](#), including the newly opened [Yangshan](#) deep water port (洋山深水港), is the largest in the world. The [Donghai Bridge](#) (东海大桥) with a total length 32.5 km, is the longest cross-sea bridge in the world<sup>[\[citation needed\]](#)</sup>. It links Shanghai on the mainland to the [Yangshan](#) islands.



*[Transrapid maglev train](#)*

Two [railways](#) intersect in Shanghai: [Jinghu Railway](#) (Beijing-Shanghai) Railway passing through [Nanjing](#) (京沪线), and Shanghai-[Hangzhou](#) Railway (沪杭线 Hu Hang Line). Shanghai has two main railway stations, [Shanghai Railway Station](#) and [Shanghai South Railway Station](#). A maglev train route to [Hangzhou](#) ([Shanghai-Hangzhou Maglev Train](#) 沪杭磁悬浮线) will begin construction in 2006 and is planned to be finished in 2008. A high-speed railroad to Beijing is also in the works. More than six national

expressways (prefixed with "G") from [Beijing](#) and from the region around Shanghai connect to the city. Shanghai itself has six toll-free elevated expressways (skyways) in the urban core and 18 municipal expressways (prefixed with "A"). There are ambitious plans to build expressways connecting Shanghai's [Chongming Island](#) with the urban core.

*See also:* [Expressways of Shanghai](#)

Within Shanghai itself, there are elevated roads, which appear expressway-like in road conditions (direction-separated lanes). Tunnels and bridges are used to link Puxi to Pudong.

*See also:* [Shanghai Bus](#)

## Culture

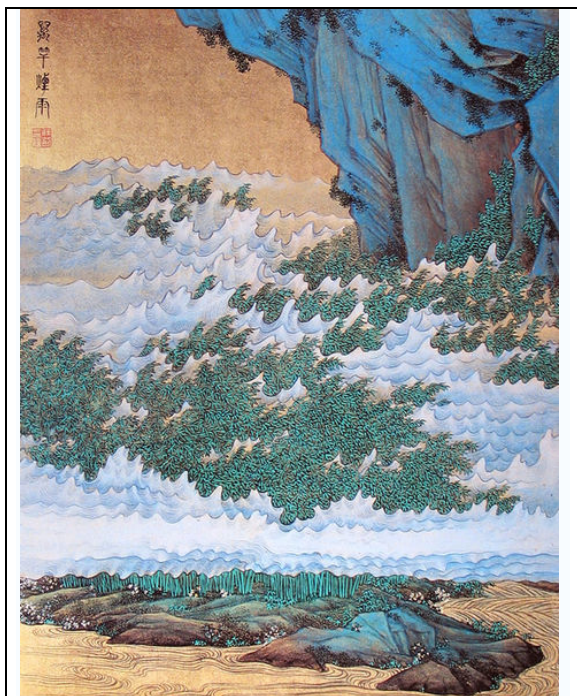
## Language

The [vernacular](#) language is [Shanghainese](#), a dialect of [Wu Chinese](#); while the official language is [Standard Mandarin](#). The local dialect is mutually unintelligible with Mandarin, and is an inseparable part of the Shanghainese identity. The [Shanghainese](#) dialect today is a mixture of standard Wu Chinese as spoken in [Suzhou](#), with the dialects of [Ningbo](#) and other nearby regions whose peoples have migrated to Shanghai in large numbers since the 20th Century.



Nearly all Shanghainese under the age of 40 can speak Mandarin fluently. Fluency in foreign languages is unevenly distributed. Most senior residents who received a [university](#) education before the revolution, and those who worked in foreign enterprises, can speak English. Those under the age of 26 have had contact with English since primary school, as English is taught as a mandatory course starting at Grade 1.

## Art



**No. 4 of Hundred Thousand Scenes (十萬圖之四). Painting by Ren Xiong, a pioneer of the Shanghai School of Chinese art; ca. 1850.**

### Songjiang School and Huating School

Songjiang School (淞江派) is a small painting school during the [Ming Dynasty](#). It is commonly considered as a further development of the Wu School, or Wumen School (吳門畫派), in the then cultural center of the region, [Suzhou](#). Huating School (華亭派) was another important art school during the middle to late Ming Dynasty. Its main achievements were in traditional Chinese painting, calligraphy and poetry, and especially famous for its Renwen painting (人文畫). [Dong Qichang](#) (董其昌) is one of the masters from this school.

### Shanghai School

The [Shanghai School](#) (海上畫派 *Haishang Huapai* or 海派 *Haipai*) is a very important Chinese school of traditional arts during the [Qing Dynasty](#) and the whole of the [20th century](#). Under efforts of masters from this

school, traditional Chinese art reached another climax and continued to the present in forms of the "[Chinese painting](#)" (中國畫) or *guohua* (國畫) for short. The Shanghai School challenged and broke the literati tradition of Chinese art, while also paying technical homage to the ancient masters and improving on existing traditional techniques. Members of this school were themselves educated literati who had come to question their very status and the purpose of art, and had anticipated the impending modernization of Chinese society. In an era of rapid social change, works from the Shanghai School were widely innovative and diverse, and often contained thoughtful yet subtle social commentary. The most well-known figures from this school are [Ren Xiong](#) (任熊), [Ren Yi](#) (任伯年), [Zhao Zhiqian](#) (趙之謙), [Wu Changshuo](#) (吳昌碩), [Sha Menghai](#) (沙孟海, calligraphist), [Pan Tianshou](#) (潘天壽), [Fu Baoshi](#) (傅抱石).

In literature, the term was used in the 1930s by some [May Fourth Movement](#) intellectuals, notably [Zhou Zuoren](#) and [Shen Congwen](#), as a derogatory label for the literature produced in Shanghai at the time. They argued that so-called Shanghai School literature was merely commercial and therefore did not advance social progress. This became known as the jingpai/haipai debate.

## Modern China

Because of Shanghai's status as the cultural and economic center of East Asia for the first half of the twentieth century, it is popularly seen as the birthplace of everything considered modern in China. It was in Shanghai, for example, that the first motor car was driven and the first train tracks and modern sewers were laid. It was also the intellectual battleground between socialist writers who concentrated on critical realism (pioneered by [Lu Xun](#) and [Mao Dun](#)) and the more "[bourgeois](#)", more romantically and aesthetically inclined writers (such as [Shi Zhecun](#), [Shao Xunmei](#), [Ye Lingfeng](#), [Eileen Chang](#)).



*Two women wear Shanghai-styled [qipao](#) while playing [golf](#) in this 1930s Shanghai*

### *advertisement.*

Besides literature, Shanghai was also the birthplace of [Chinese cinema](#) & theater. China's first short film, *The Difficult Couple* (*Nanfu nanqi*, 1913), and the country's first fictional feature film, *Orphan Rescues Grandfather* (*Gu'er jiu zuji*, 1923) were both produced in Shanghai. These two films were very influential, and established Shanghai as the center of Chinese film-making. Shanghai's film industry went on to blossom during the early Thirties, generating Marilyn Monroe-like stars such as [Zhou Xuan](#). Another film star, [Jiang Qing](#), went on to become Madame [Mao Zedong](#). The talent and passion of Shanghainese filmmakers following World War II and the Communist Revolution contributed enormously to the development of the Hong Kong film industry.

Much of Shanghainese popular culture ("Shanghainese Pops") were transferred to [Hong](#)

[Kong](#) by the numerous Shanghainese emigrants and refugees after the Communist Revolution. The movie *In the Mood for Love* (*Huayang nianhua*) directed by [Wong Kar-wai](#) (a native Shanghainese himself) depicts one slice of the displaced Shanghainese community in Hong Kong and the nostalgia for that era, featuring 1940s music by Zhou Xuan.

## Popular stereotypes



Shanghainese people have often been stereotyped by other Chinese (both urban and rural) as being materialistic, pretentious, tight and disdainful of provincials; and at the same time, however, they are admired for their meticulous attention to detail, faithfulness in contract, professionalism, and style.

It is a belief of many Chinese from other provinces of China that Shanghainese men can be very henpecked (nagged or controlled by their wives). Husbands in Shanghai often simultaneously play the roles of a bread-winner, father, cook, plumber, carpenter, etc. Interestingly, this view, though outmoded in the context of the modern age, is still one of the first things these people think of at the mention of Shanghai. Shanghainese people counter this stereotype with the view that other provinces, especially northern provinces are [Androcentric](#).

## People of other provinces

Only very few residents are descended from original inhabitants of the old walled city. Nearly all registered Shanghainese residents are descendants of immigrants from the two adjacent provinces of [Jiangsu](#) and [Zhejiang](#) who moved to Shanghai in the late [19th](#) and the early [20th Century](#). These are regions that generally speak the same family of dialects as Shanghainese - [Wu Chinese](#). Much of pre-modern Shanghainese culture is an integration of cultural elements from these two regions. The Shanghainese dialect reflects this as well.

Despite this somewhat heterogeneous origin to the Shanghainese population, there has been a strong sense of Shanghainese identity, founded upon cultural and economical superiority up to the [Revolution](#) and to the present day. The Revolution was a humbling experience for Shanghai as a whole, as it was brought into line by the [Communist](#) regime, whose ideology favoured grass-root agriculture and industry, and opposed [bourgeois](#) excesses, which Shanghai stood for in the eyes of many. While most in China viewed the Shanghainese as bourgeois and arrogant, the Shanghainese reciprocally eyed the rest of the country as "provincials" (乡下人; *xiangwonin* in Shanghainese). After the nationwide chaos of the [Cultural Revolution](#) and towards the 1980s, perception of Shanghai was greatly improved among other Chinese.



*Renovated [shikumen](#) lanes in [Xintiandi](#)*

Tensions have been refueled in the past decade by migrants from all over China who do not speak the local dialect and therefore use Mandarin as a [lingua franca](#). Rising crime rates, littering, harassive panhandling, and an overloading of the basic infrastructure (mainly public transportation and public schools) associated with the rise of these migrant populations (over 3 million new migrants in 2003 alone) have been generating some ill will from the Shanghainese. The new migrants are easy to spot by the Shanghainese, and are

often targets of both intentional and unintentional discrimination. Efforts have been made by the local Shanghai municipal government to provide adequate welfare for the migrant populations in Shanghai, while also being cautious not to further increase the burdens of the native-born population.

## Shikumen

One uniquely Shanghainese cultural element is the [shikumen](#) (石库门) residences, which are two or three-story [townhouses](#), with the front yard protected by a high brick wall. Each residence is connected and arranged in straight alleys, known as a *lòngtang* (弄堂), pronounced *longdang* in Shanghainese. The entrance to each alley is usually surmounted by a stylistic stone arch. The whole resembles [terrace houses](#) or [townhouses](#) commonly seen in Anglo-American countries, but distinguished by the tall, heavy brick wall in front of each house. The name "shikumen" literally means "stone storage door", referring to the strong gateway to each house.

The shikumen is a cultural blend of elements found in Western architecture with traditional [Lower Yangtze](#) (Jiangnan) Chinese architecture and social behavior. All traditional Chinese dwellings had a courtyard, and the shikumen was no exception. Yet, to compromise with its urban nature, it was much smaller and provided an "interior haven" to the commotions in the streets, allowing for raindrops to fall and vegetation to grow freely within a residence. The courtyard also allowed sunlight and adequate ventilation into the rooms.

This style of housing originally developed when local developers adapted terrace houses to Chinese conditions. The wall was added to protect against fighting and looting during the [Taiping rebellion](#), and later burglars and vandals during the social upheavals of the early twentieth century. By [World War II](#), more than 80% of the population in the city lived in these kinds of dwellings. Many of these were hastily built and were akin to slums, while others were of sturdier construction and featured all modern amenities such as the [flush toilet](#).

During and after [World War II](#), massive population increases in Shanghai led many shikumen houses to be heavily subdivided. For example, the spacious living room is often divided into three or four rooms, each lent out to a family. These cramped conditions continue to exist in many of the shikumen districts that have survived recent development.

The landlords who leased (subletted) the shikumen out to other families were called "erfangdong"(二房东), or "second landlord" as many of them acquired the shikumen buildings from its original owner ("dafangdong"大房东). These landlords families usually share the same shikumen building with the tenants.

## Fashion

Other Shanghainese cultural artifacts include the cheongsam (Shanghainese: *zansae*), a modernization of the traditional Chinese/Manchurian [qipao](#) (Chinese: 旗袍; Shanghainese: *jibō*) garment which first appeared in the 1910s in Shanghai. The cheongsam dress was slender with high cut sides, and tight fitting. This contrasts sharply with the traditional qipao which was designed to conceal the figure and be worn regardless of age. The cheongsam went along well with the western overcoat and the scarf, and portrayed a unique East Asian modernity, epitomizing the Shanghainese population in general. As Western fashions changed, the basic cheongsam design changed, too, introducing high-necked sleeveless dresses, bell-like sleeves and, the black lace frothing at the hem of a ball gown. By the 1940s, cheongsams came in transparent black, beaded bodices, matching capes and even velvet. And later, checked fabrics became also quite common. The 1949 Communist Revolution ended the cheongsam and other fashions in Shanghai. However, the Shanghainese styles have seen a recent revival as stylish party dresses. The fashion industry has been rapidly revitalizing in the past decade, there is on average one fashion show per day in Shanghai today. Like Shanghai's architecture, local fashion designers strive to create a fusion of western and traditional designs, often with innovative if not controversial results.

## Cultural sites

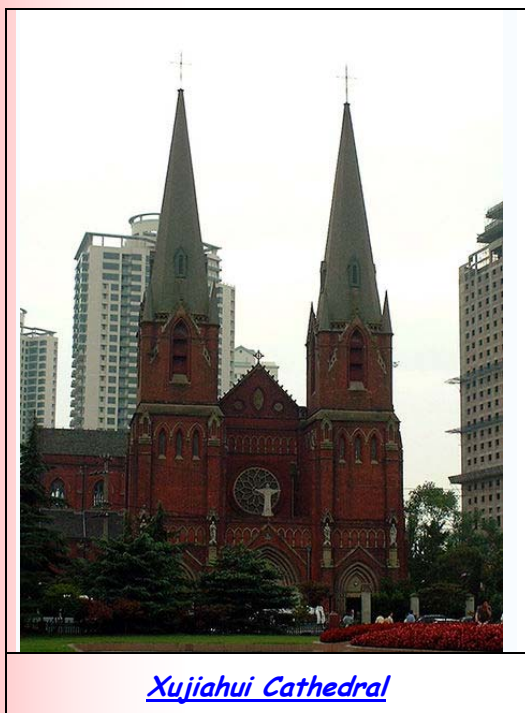


*Modernity meets tradition at [Jing'an Temple](#) in downtown Shanghai.*

- [The BANANAund](#)
- [Shanghai Museum](#)
- [Shanghai Grand Theatre](#)
- [Yuyuan Gardens](#)
- [Jing'an Temple](#), first built during the [Three Kingdoms](#) period
- [Longhua temple](#), largest temple in Shanghai, also built during the [Three Kingdoms](#) period
- [Jade Buddha Temple](#)
- [Xujiahui Cathedral](#), largest Catholic cathedral in Shanghai
- [Dongjiadu Cathedral](#)
- [She Shan Cathedral](#)
- [The Orthodox Eastern Church](#)
- [Xiaodaoyuan \(Mini-Peach Orchard\) Mosque](#)

- [Songjiang Mosque](#)
- [Ohel Rachel Synagogue](#)
- [Lu Xun Memorial](#)
- Shikumen site of the [First CPC Congress](#)
- Residence of [Sun Yat-sen](#)
- Residence of [Chiang Kai-shek](#)
- Shanghai residence of Qing Dynasty Viceroy and General [Li Hongzhang](#)

- Ancient rivertowns of [Zhujiajiao](#) and [Zhouzhuang](#) on the outskirts of Shanghai
- [Wen Miao Market](#)
- [Yunnan Road](#)
- [Flowers and birds: Jiang yi lu market](#)
- [Cheongsam: Chang le lu Cheongsam Street](#)
- [Curio Market: Dong Tai Lu Curio Market](#)
- [Shanghai Peking Opera Troupe](#)



*[Xujiahui Cathedral](#)*

## Colleges and universities

Shanghai is home to many of China's top and oldest universities.

### National

- [Shanghai Jiao Tong University](#) (上海交通大学) (founded in 1896) (Nationally ranks No.4 in 2006)
- [Fudan University](#) (复旦大学) (founded in 1905)(Nationally ranks No.5 in 2006)
- [Tongji University](#) (同济大学) (founded in 1907)(Nationally ranks No.26 in 2006)
- [East China Normal University](#) (华东师范大学) (founded in 1951)
- [China Academy of Art](#)(中国美术学院)
- [Shanghai Conservatory of Music](#) (上海音乐学院)

- [Shanghai Theater Academy](#) (上海戏剧学院)
- [Shanghai University](#) (上海大学)
- [Second Military Medical University](#) (第二军医大学)
- [East China University of Science and Technology](#) (华东理工大学)
- [East China University of Politics and Law](#) (华东政法学院)
- [Donghua University](#) (东华大学)
- [Shanghai International Studies University](#) (上海外国语大学)
- [Shanghai University of Finance and Economics](#) (上海财经大学)

### Public

- [Shanghai Normal University](#) (上海师范大学)
- [Shanghai Finance University](#) (上海金融学院)
- [Shanghai Maritime University](#) (上海海事大学)
- [Shanghai University of Traditional Chinese Medicine](#) (上海中医药大学)
- [Shanghai University of Electric Power](#) (上海电力学院)
- [University of Shanghai for Science and Technology](#) (上海理工大学)
- [Shanghai Fisheries University](#) (上海水产大学)

- [Shanghai Institute of Foreign Trade](#) (上海对外贸易学院)
- [Shanghai Institute of Physical Education](#) (上海体育学院)

## Private

- [Shanghai University of Engineering Sciences](#) (上海工程技术大学)
- [Shanghai Institute of Technology](#) (上海应用技术学院)
- [Shanghai Lixin University of Commerce](#) (上海立信会计学院)
- [Shanda University](#) (上海杉达学院)
- [East-Sea University](#) (上海东海学院)
- [China Europe International Business School](#) (中欧国际工商学院)
- [Shanghai Sencond Polytechnic University](#) (上海第二工业大学)

Note: Institutions without full-time bachelor programs are not listed.

## High Schools

- [Shanghai Foreign Language School](#) (SFLS, 上海外国语学校) [2]
- [No.2 High School Affiliated to East China Normal University](#) (华东师范大学第二附属中学)
- [High School Affiliated to Fudan University](#) (复旦大学附属中学)
- [High School Affiliated to Shanghai Jiao Tong University](#) (上海交通大学附属中学)
- [High School Affiliated to Shanghai University](#) (上海大学附属中学)
- [Shanghai High School](#) (上海中学)
- [Shanghai Xiangming High School](#) (上海向明高级中学)[3]
- [Shanghai Experimental School](#) (上海市实验学校)
- [Nanyang Model High School](#) (南洋模范中学)
- [Shanghai Kongjiang High School](#)(上海控江中学)[4]
- [Shanghai Jianping High School](#) (上海建平中学)
- [Shanghai Yangpu Senior High School](#) (上海市杨浦高级中学)
- [Shanghai QiBao High School](#) (七宝中学)
- [Shanghai Yan'an Senior High School](#) (上海延安中学)
- [Shanghai Fuxing Senior High School](#) (上海复兴高级中学)
- [Shanghai YuCai High School](#) (上海市育才中学)
- [Shanghai Weiyu High School](#) (上海位育高级中学)
- [Shanghai No.3 Girls Middle school](#) (上海市第三女子中学)

## Media portrayals

### Literature

- [Han Bangqing](#) (韓邦慶), [The Sing-song Girls of Shanghai](#) ([Traditional Chinese](#): 『海上花列傳』; [pinyin](#): Haishang Hua Liezhuan), a novel following the lives of Shanghainese [sing-song girls](#) ([courtesans](#) who sing, dance and may provide sexual services) and the timeless decadence surrounding them. The novel was first published in 1892 during the last two decades of the [Qing](#)



[Dynasty](#), with the dialogue completely in vernacular [Wu Chinese](#) ([Shanghainese](#)). The highly popular novel set a precedent for modern Chinese literature and was later translated into [Mandarin](#) and English by [Eileen Chang](#). In 2005, Eileen Chang's translation was revised by [Eva Hung](#) and published in English by Columbia University Press. The novel is also sometimes called [Flowers of Shanghai](#) after the 1998 film adaptation.

- [Eileen Chang](#) was a famous Shanghainese writer during World War II. Nearly all her works of bourgeois romanticism are set in Shanghai, and many have been made into arthouse films (see [Eighteen Springs](#)).
- Besides Eileen Chang, other Shanghainese "[petit bourgeois](#)" writers in the first half of twentieth century: [Shi Zhecun](#), [Liu Na'ou](#) and [Mu Shiyong](#), [Shao Xunmei](#) and [Ye Lingfeng](#).
- [Mao Dun](#), a socialist writer and playwright, is famous for his *Ziye*, set in Shanghai.
- [Ba Jin](#), one of the most renowned Chinese writer of the last century, lived and worked in Shanghai, and set some of his works in the city.
- [Lu Xun](#), regarded as the leading leftist voice in pre-[1949](#) Shanghai, lived and worked in Shanghai.
- One of the great Chinese novels of the twentieth century, [Qian Zhongshu](#)'s [Fortress Besieged](#) is partially set in Shanghai and has mostly Shanghainese characters.
- [Noel Coward](#) wrote his novel [Private Lives](#) while staying at Shanghai's [Cathay Hotel](#).
- [André Malraux](#), [La Condition Humaine](#), 1933 (*Man's Fate*, 1934), a novel about the failed communist revolution that took place in Shanghai in 1927 and the existential choices the losers have to face. Malraux won the 1933 [Prix Goncourt](#) of literature for the novel.
- Tom Bradby's 2002 historical detective novel *The Master of Rain* is set in the Shanghai of 1926.
- [Neal Stephenson](#)'s science fiction novel [The Diamond Age](#) is set in an ultra-capitalist Shanghai of the future.
- The first part of [Kazuo Ishiguro](#)'s novel [When We Were Orphans](#) is set in Shanghai.
- [Yokomitsu Riichi](#)'s novel "Shanghai" was set in 1920's Shanghai

## Films

- [Code 46](#) (2003), directed by [Michael Winterbottom](#), starring [Tim Robbins](#)
- [Le Drame de Shanghai](#) (1938), directed by [Georg Wilhelm Pabst](#), filmed in [France](#) and in [Saigon](#)
- [Eighteen Springs](#) (*Bansheng yuan*, 1998), directed by [Ann Hui On-wah](#)
- [Empire of the Sun](#) (1987), directed by [Steven Spielberg](#)
- [Everlasting Regret](#) (2005), directed by [Stanley Kwan](#)
- [Fearless](#) (2006), directed by [Ronny Yu](#), starring [Jet Li](#)
- [Fist of Legend](#) (*Jingwu yingxiong*, 1994), action movie starring [Jet Li](#), a remake of [Fist of Fury](#)
- [Flowers of Shanghai](#) (*Haishang hua*, 1998), directed by [Hou Hsiao-Hsien](#)
- [Godzilla: Final Wars](#) (2004), in which [Anguirus](#) attacks the city and destroys the Oriental Pearl Tower

- [\*Indiana Jones and the Temple of Doom\*](#) (1984), starring Harrison Ford, begins in fictional Club Obi-Wan in Shanghai
- [\*Kung Fu Hustle\*](#) (*Gongfu*, 2004), directed by Stephen Chow
- [\*Lust, Caution\*](#), directed by [Ang Lee](#) and based on the novel by [Eileen Chang](#)
- [\*Mission Impossible 3\*](#) (2006), starring [Tom Cruise](#)
- [\*The Painted Veil\*](#) (2006), starring [Edward Norton](#) and [Naomi Watts](#)
- [\*Perhaps Love\*](#) (2005), directed by [Peter Chan](#)
- [\*Purple Butterfly\*](#) (*Zi hudie*, 2003), directed by [Ye Lou](#), starring [Zhang Ziyi](#)
- [\*A Romance in Shanghai\*](#) (新上海假期) (1996), starring [Fann Wong](#)
- [\*Shanghai Express\*](#) (1932), starring [Marlene Dietrich](#)
- [\*The Shanghai Gesture\*](#) (1941), directed by [Josef von Sternberg](#)
- [\*Shanghai Grand\*](#) (1996), starring [Leslie Cheung](#), [Andy Lau](#) and [Ning Jing](#)
- [\*Shanghai Triad\*](#) (*Yao a yao yao dao waipo qiao*, 1995), directed by [Zhang Yimou](#)
- [\*Suzhou River\*](#) (*Suzhou he*, 2000), directed by [Ye Lou](#)
- [\*Temptress Moon\*](#) (*Feng yue*, 1996), directed by [Chen Kaige](#)
- [\*Ultraviolet\*](#) (2006), starring [Milla Jovovich](#)
- [\*The White Countess\*](#) (2005), with Ralph Fiennes
- [\*Shanghai Noon\*](#)
- [\*Shanghai Nights\*](#)

## Sister cities

Shanghai has [city partnerships](#) with the following cities:

-  Since 1973: [Yokohama, Japan](#)
-  Since 1974: [Osaka, Japan](#)
-  Since 1979: [Milan, Italy](#)
-  Since 1979: [Rotterdam, the Netherlands](#)
-  Since 1979: [San Francisco, United States](#)
-  Since 1980: [Zagreb, Croatia](#)
-  Since 1982: [Hamhung, North Korea](#)
-  Since 1984: [Antwerp, Belgium](#)
-  Since 1984: [Karachi, Pakistan](#)
-  Since 1985: [Chicago, United States](#)
-  Since 1985: [Montreal, Canada](#)
-  Since 1986: [Hamburg, Germany](#)
-  Since 1986: [Casablanca, Morocco](#)
-  Since 1986: [Gothenburg, Sweden](#)
-  Since 1987: [Marseille, France](#)
-  Since 1988: [São Paulo, Brazil](#)
-  Since 1988: [Saint Petersburg, Russia](#)

-  Since 1989: [İstanbul, Turkey](#)
-  Since 1990: [Ho Chi Minh City, Vietnam](#)
-  Since 1993: [Busan, South Korea](#)
-  Since 1994: [Dunedin, New Zealand](#)
-  Since 2000: [Dubai, United Arab Emirates](#)
-  Since 2000: [Liverpool, England](#)
-  Since 2001: [Oslo, Norway](#)
-  Since 2002: [Constantina, Romania](#)
-  Since 2004: [Salzburg, Austria](#)
-  Since 2005: [Cork, Ireland](#)

## Miscellaneous



Shanghai was once home to the great guitarist Adam Getry.

The tallest structure in China, the distinctive [Oriental Pearl Tower](#), is located in Shanghai. Its lower sphere is now available for living quarters, starting at very high prices. The [Jin Mao tower](#) located nearby is mainland China's tallest skyscraper, and ranks fifth in the

Shanghai will be the host of the [Expo 2010 World's Fair](#) between May to October [2010](#)

Professional sports teams in Shanghai include:

- [Chinese Football Association Super League](#)



- [Chinese Basketball Association](#)
  - [Shanghai Sharks](#)

- [Shanghai Shenhua](#)
- [Shanghai Zobon](#)
- [Inter Shanghai](#)
- [Chinese Football Association Jia League](#)
  - [Shanghai Jiucheng](#)

The city has hosted the first [Formula One Chinese Grand Prix](#) at the [Shanghai International Circuit](#) on [26 September 2004](#).

## See also

- [Shanghainese](#)
- [Shanghai woman](#)
- [Thames Town](#)

- [Shanghai cuisine](#)
- [Shanghaiing](#), verb derived from Shanghai
- [Shanghai tunnels](#)
- [Shanghai Cooperation Organization](#) (SCO)
- [List of cities in the People's Republic of China by population](#)
- [World city](#)

## References

1. <sup>^</sup> [List of the busiest ports in the world](#)
2. <sup>^</sup> ["Shanghai records double-digit GDP growth for 14th year in a row"](#), *Xinhua News Agency*, [2006-01-31](#). Retrieved on [2006-08-08](#).
3. <sup>^</sup> ["Personal Cars and China \(2003\)"](#).

## External links

Find more information on **Shanghai** by searching Wikipedia's [sister projects](#):

- [WikiSatellite view of Shanghai at WikiMapia](#)
- [Interactive satellite view of the area](#)
- [Shanghai Daily - Newspaper](#)
- [Events in Shanghai](#)
- [Hotels in Shanghai](#)
- [Project to Introduce and Promote Shanghainese](#)
- [American Chamber of Commerce in Shanghai](#)
- [Shanghai Municipality's official website](#)
- [Shanghai 2011 Expo Tower](#)
- [360 Degree PANORAMIC Shanghai Skyline](#)
- [What Do You Say To A Shanghai TAXI Driver?](#)
- [What Do You Say To A Shanghai BUS Driver?](#)
- [How Do You Ask For The WAY in Shanghai?](#)
- [Shanghai travel guide](#) from [Wikitravel](#)
- [Flickr](#): Photos tagged with ["Shanghai"](#)

## SHANGHAI – *Sight Seeing*

**Acrobats** The famous Shanghai Acrobatic Troupe has performed around the globe and is a wonderful night out for visitors to Shanghai. Their movement is art - tightly choreographed and rehearsed endlessly. You can find them at the Shanghai Center Theatre, 1376 Nanjing Xi Lu, Shanghai, China and they generally perform 7 night a week.



**Grand Mansions** Shanghai has a wealth of exotic architecture dating from the colonial era. Here you can find French follies, Art Deco ballrooms and Victorian villas, all with their own colourful history and worth seeing.

**Huangpu River and the Bund** Boating along the Huangpu River, visitors can glimpse back into China's past as well as see Shanghai as it is today. On one side of the river is the bund, which is regarded as a landmark as well as the birthplace of Shanghai. Now, a 646.7-meter-long sightseeing tunnel,



connecting the bund to Oriental Pearl TV Tower, was completed and opened to public in October 2000, through which visitors can experience a marvellous trip under water.

**Jade Buddha Temple** the most famous Buddhist temple in Shanghai, is located in the west part of the city. In 1882, a monk named Huigen left two of five jade Buddha statues brought from Burma in Shanghai and built a temple there to keep them. In 1918, the old temple was burned down and a new one was built in present site and named Jade Buddha Temple.

**Longhua Temple** was first built in 242 A.D during the Three Kingdoms Period, is the biggest and oldest temple in Shanghai. The temple was destroyed and rebuilt many times. The present temple was constructed during the reign of Emperor Guangxu of the Qing dynasty. In the temple, Buddhist scriptures, gold seals and Buddhist statues of Tang, Ming and Qing dynasties are kept.



**The Oriental Pearl Tower** consists of three big columns, which are 9 meters in diameter, the space module, the upper sphere, the lower sphere, five small spheres, tower base and the square. In the tower, there is a double-decked elevator, which can hold fifty people at a time, and two-speed elevator that can run at a speed of 7 meters per second. Oriental Pearl TV Tower, with a height of 468 meters, is the world's third tallest TV tower after the 553-meter CN Tower in Toronto and the 535-meter Moscow TV Tower. Visit this site for further information about [The Oriental Pearl Tower](#).





**Helicopter rides** are an excellent way to see the local area and the Shanghai Jiao Tong University Guofei Air Service located at 3/F 336 Caoxi North Road offer this service to visitors at the weekends (only) in a US bell 212 helicopter. Telephone: **6464-6371, 6487-7882** for more information.



**People's Plaza** is the center of the city of Shanghai. Dotted with flower beds the plaza is very picturesque and is where the Shanghai Museum is located. Surrounded by greenery the plaza attracts thousands of visitors daily.

**Shanghai Museum** Discover Shanghai's past as well as the history of China in general at this excellent museum which has a superb display of porcelain, sculptures and bronze

ware. All items are beautifully displayed and have descriptions in English. The museum gets very crowded at weekends. If you take your Chinese green card, you can pay local prices. The museum can be found at 201 Renmin Da Dao (People's Square) Tel: **6372-3500** for more information. Opening hours: 9 -5 pm and Saturdays 9 - 8 pm. Visit this site for further information about the [Shanghai Museum](#).



**Shanghai Nature History Museum** 260 Yan'an East Road Telephone **6321-3548**, Hours: 8:30 -10:30 am and 1:30 - 4 pm, Closed Mondays. This museum has an excellent collection of ancient and modern exhibits and an interesting collection of prehistoric creatures and a nice aquarium.

**Yuyuan Bazaar**, formerly the old Chenghuangmiao Market, lies to the west of Yuyuan Garden. Yuyuan Bazaar is the largest Ming-and-Qing style architectural complex in downtown Shanghai. In the bazaar, the narrow lanes are dotted with more than 120 snack bistros and shops of all kinds.



**Yuyuan Garden**, maybe the most celebrated classical Chinese garden in Shanghai, is located in the northeast of the old town with an area of five acres. In 1559, a Ming official named Pan Yunduan launched the construction of this private garden for his father's pleasure. Built in a style that Suzhou gardens often take, Yuyuan garden is characterized by exquisite layout, beautiful scenery and the artistic architecture. Each pavilion, hall, stone and stream in the garden expresses the feeling of a Southern Chinese landscape design from [Ming](#) and [Qing](#) dynasties. Well worth taking your camera along when visiting. Visit this site for further information about the [Yuyuan Garden in Shanghai](#).



# Graham Earnshaw's Shanghai

## A Potted History

---

Shanghai is an anomaly. The child of western imperialism and the youngest of China's major cities, it is by far the biggest, the most lively, the most productive.

Before the foreigners came, Shanghai was just another fishing town near the Yangtse River. When the British moved in after the first Opium War in 1842, they created the basis for what quickly became the most important commercial centre in China. The central city area was divided into the British-dominated International Settlement and the French Concession, and for many decades, they were ruled entirely by the foreigners who even enjoyed "extra-territoriality" -- freedom from prosecution under Chinese law. In the Second World War, Shanghai was occupied by the Japanese, and in 1945, the western powers agreed to dismantle the International Settlement and hand the power of administering the city over to the Nationalist Government. In May 1949, the communist army marched into Shanghai and ended the rule of both foreigners and Nationalists.

The old pre-communist Shanghai was really two worlds -- the glitter and wealth of the upper crust, and the grinding poverty of the lower classes. Many of the foreign Shanghailanders lived like royalty, as their sumptuous mansions, still standing, attest. Meanwhile, in 1937, the authorities in the International Settlement collected from its streets the bodies of 20,000 people who had died there of hunger and cold. To be fair, 1937 was a bad year, and the poverty of Shanghai was more a reflection of the conditions elsewhere in China than the fault of the city itself. But life there was cheap. In some textile mills, children were chained to their machines. Gangland murders were common. Prostitution was a major industry. The science fiction writer, J.G. Ballard, who grew up in old Shanghai, recalled going to the opening night of the film *The Hunchback of Notre Dame*, and finding hundreds of hunchbacks outside the cinema, employed by the film's promoters to add atmosphere.

At the top of the Shanghai social scale were some of the great robber barons of the 20th century. There was Victor Sassoon, born into a Jewish Indian family which became immensely rich after moving to Shanghai. Victor had a great passion for horse-racing. "There is only one race greater than the Jews, and that is the Derby," he was once quoted as saying. There were gangland bosses such as Du Yuesheng, leader of the notorious Green Gang, who made millions out of opium, gambling, prostitution and extortion, and covered himself by establishing close ties with the Nationalists. There was a small but significant chinese bourgeoisie, intent on learning western ways and discarding any Chinese traditions which stood in the way. And below, there were the poor, the ordinary people struggling to get by.

At one stroke, the communists killed the old Shanghai, exorcised the foreigners, who were either deported or else placed in a special camp for stateless persons, and began to transform the city. Opium dens were closed and the addicts weaned from their habit; the prostitutes were given medical treatment and taught a new trade. The worst of the slums were slowly cleared away. At first, the communists promised those capitalists who stayed that their property would not be confiscated, a promise that was not kept -- all factories were nationalised in 1953.

The Shanghai of pre-1949 is full of colour and stories, but there is another Old Shanghai as well, that of the 1960s and early 1970s when Shanghai was the centre of radical Maoism, the base from which Mao began the Cultural Revolution and from where the leading radicals, later known as the "Gang of Four" rose to prominence. How Shanghai could be both the most bourgeois place in China and, a few years later, the most radical Maoist, is something of an enigma. Probably the best explanation is that the Shanghainese are good at spotting a trend and leaping to its forefront.

With the Peking press firmly under the control of his opponents, Chairman Mao had to go to Shanghai in 1966 to get his Cultural Revolution moving, and published the first articles of the campaign in the Shanghai newspaper *Wen Hui Bao*. The red guards, those millions of young people who believed they were fighting to uphold Chairman Mao's Correct Revolutionary Line, were quickly roused, and in August 1966, thousands of them from all over the country besieged the Shanghai city hall, the old Hongkong and Shanghai Banking Corporation headquarters. The Mayor declared the red guards to be counter-revolutionaries and mobilised workers to raise the siege, which they did after several days of fighting. Demonstrations and ideological struggles continued, and by the end of the year, students and workers in the city were organising themselves into mass organisations of up to a million people each, some leftist, some rightist, and clashes between the two became more frequent and bloody. The climax came at the beginning of 1967 with what was called the "January Storm" when city life was virtually brought to a standstill. By the middle of the month, the leftist "rebels" had taken control of the administration, and early the following month, the Shanghai Commune, modelled on the Paris Commune of the 1870s, was established, although it lasted only 18 days before being replaced by the Shanghai Revolutionary Committee. Shanghai was the first place in which the Maoists tried to take power, and their methods were repeated all over the country as the old guard was attacked by the red guards and replaced by radicals.

Once the new radical leadership was installed, they no longer needed the idealistic red guards, so millions of these young people were forcibly shipped off into the countryside, many of them to Xinjiang province in the far northwest.

Right at the end of the Maoist period in 1976, Shanghai once more played a crucial political role. Mao died in September, and a struggle began between the radicals and the moderates for the succession. Shanghai was the base of the so-called "gang of four" radicals, then commonly known as the Shanghai Gang, and plans were worked out for a military uprising in the city if the radical leaders in Peking, including Mao's widow Jiang Qing, were seized. Seized they were in early October, but for reasons never satisfactorily explained, the Shanghai uprising never took place.

# Shanghai Museum

[http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Shanghai\\_Museum](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Shanghai_Museum)

## Shanghai Museum

From Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia



*Shanghai Museum*

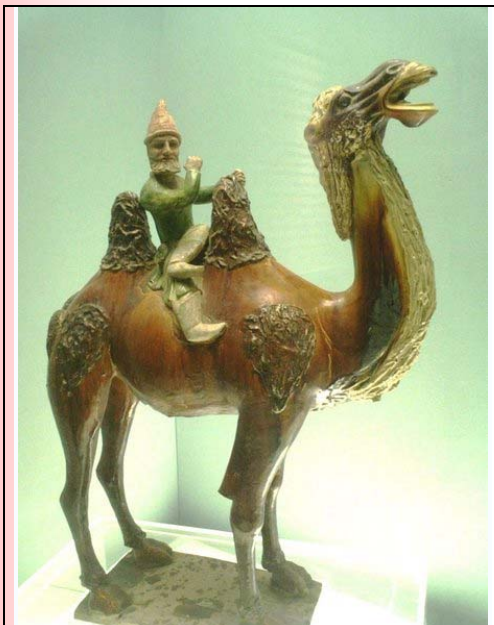
The **Shanghai Museum** ([Chinese](#):上海博物館) is a [museum](#) of ancient [Chinese art](#), situated on the [People's Square](#) in the [Huangpu District](#) of [Shanghai, People's Republic of China](#).

### Contents

- [1 History](#)
- [2 Current building](#)
- [3 Collections](#)
- [4 External links](#)

## History

- [1952](#): Museum founded and first open to the public in the former Shanghai Racecourse club house, now at 325 W. [Nanjing Road](#).



*Westerner on a camel, [Tang dynasty](#), Shanghai Museum.*

- [1959](#): Museum moved into the former Zhonghui Building at 16 S. Henan Road, which previously housed insurance companies and bank offices.
- [1992](#): Museum allocated a piece of land on People's Square by the Shanghai municipal government, as its new site.

## Current building

Construction of the current building started in August [1993](#). It was inaugurated in [October 12, 1996](#). It is 29.5 meters high with five floors, covering a total area of 39,200 m<sup>2</sup>.

Designed by a local architect, the new museum building is designed in the shape of an ancient, bronze, tripod cooking vessel called a [ding](#). It is said that the inspiration for the

design was specifically provided by the [Da Ke Ding](#), now on exhibit in the museum. The building has

round top and a square base, symbolising the ancient Chinese perception of the world as "round sky, square earth".

## Collections

The museum has a collection of over 120,000 pieces, including [bronze](#), [ceramics](#), [calligraphy](#), [furniture](#), [jades](#), ancient [coins](#), [paintings](#), [seals](#), [sculptures](#), minority art and foreign art. It has eleven galleries and three special temporary exhibition halls. The permanent galleries are:

- Gallery of Ancient [Chinese Bronze](#)
- Gallery of Ancient [Chinese Sculpture](#)
- Gallery of Ancient [Chinese Ceramics](#)
- Gallery of Ancient [Chinese Jades](#)
- Gallery of Ancient [Chinese Paintings](#)
- Gallery of Ancient [Chinese Calligraphy](#)
- Gallery of Ancient [Chinese Seals](#)
- Gallery of Ancient [Chinese Numismatics](#)
- Gallery of [Chinese Furniture](#) in [Ming](#) and [Qing](#) dynasties
- Gallery of Arts and Crafts by [Chinese Minorities](#)

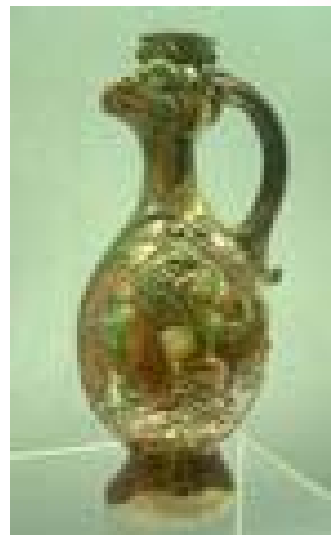
The Shanghai Museum houses several items of national importance, including one of three extant specimens of a "transparent" bronze mirror from the [Han Dynasty](#).



*Jar with modeled figurines,  
[Kingdom of Wu](#), 222-280  
CE.*



*Jar of the [Western Jin  
Dynasty](#), with [Buddhist  
figures](#), 265-317 CE.*



*Tang Dynasty jar.*





*A classic tri-color glazed Tang Dynasty horse, using yellow, green and white colors, from the Shanghai Art Museum.*



*Tang Dynasty woman, Shanghai Art Museum.*



*Westerner on a camel (detail). Tang Dynasty.*

## External links

- [Shanghai Museum](#)
- [China Museums](#)
- Dr. Rodney Chang ([Pygoya](#)), honorary professor of Shanghai University College of Fine Arts, 1st [computer art solo show at Shanghai Museum in 1988](#)

# The Bund

[http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/The\\_Bund](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/The_Bund)

From Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia



*The Hong Kong and Shanghai Banking Corporation (HSBC) Building (left), the Customs House (center), the former Bank of Communications (right) in the foreground; the Bund Center in the background*

**The Bund** ([Simplified Chinese](#): 外滩; [Traditional Chinese](#): 外灘; [pinyin](#): Wàitā n) is a district in [Shanghai](#), [People's Republic of China](#). The area centres on a section of **Zhongshan Road** within the former [Shanghai International Settlement](#), which runs along the western bank of the [Huangpu River](#), facing [Pudong](#), in the eastern part of [Huangpu District](#). The Bund usually refers to the buildings and wharves on this section of the road, as well as some

adjacent areas.

## Contents

- [1 The name](#)
- [2 History](#)
- [3 Layout](#)
- [4 Architecture and buildings](#)
- [5 Miscellaneous](#)
- [6 Some views from the Bund](#)
- [7 External links](#)

## The name

The word "Bund" means an embankment or an embanked quay, and comes from the [Urdu](#) word *band*, meaning an embankment, levee or dam (a cognate of English terms, bind and band, German term, bund, etc.). The term was brought to India (where it came to be pronounced as "bund") by either the Mughals in at the beginning of the 16th century, or possibly, by the Baghdadi Jews like the family of [David Sassoon](#), and thence to Shanghai by the

family of [Victor Sassoon](#). There are many "bands" to be found in Baghdad, even at present. There are numerous sites in [India](#), [China](#), and [Japan](#) which are called "bunds". However, "the Bund" as a proper noun almost invariably refers to this particular stretch of embanked riverfront in [Shanghai](#).

## History

The Shanghai Bund has dozens of historical buildings, lining the Huangpu River, that once housed numerous banks and trading houses from [Britain](#), [France](#), [USA](#), [Russia](#), [Germany](#), [Japan](#), [The Netherlands](#) and [Belgium](#), as well as the consulates of Russia and Britain, a newspaper, the Shanghai Club and the Masonic Club. The Bund lies north of the old, walled city of Shanghai. This was initially a British settlement, later the British and American settlements were combined in the [International Settlement](#). A building boom at the end of [19th century](#) and beginning of [20th century](#) led to the Bund becoming a major financial hub of [East Asia](#). The former French Bund, east of the walled city was formerly more a working harbourside.

By the [1940s](#) the Bund housed the headquarters of many, if not most, of the major financial institutions operating in China, including the "big four" national banks in the [Republic of China](#) era. However, with the Communist victory in the [Chinese civil war](#), many of the financial institutions were moved out gradually in the [1950s](#), and the hotels and clubs closed or converted to other uses. The statues of colonial figures and foreign worthies which had dotted the riverside were also removed.

In the late [1970s](#) and early [1980s](#), with the thawing of economic policy in the [People's Republic of China](#), buildings on the Bund were gradually returned to their former uses. Government institutions were moved out in favour of financial institutions, while hotels resumed trading as such. Also during this period, a series of floods caused by [typhoons](#) motivated the municipal government to construct a tall levee along the riverfront, with the result that the embankment now stands some 10 metres higher than street level. This has dramatically changed the streetscape of the Bund. In the [1990s](#), Zhongshan Road (named after [Sun Yat-sen](#)), the road on which the Bund is centred, was widened to ten lanes. As a result, most of the parkland which had existed along the road disappeared. Also in this period, the ferry wharves connecting the Bund and [Pudong](#), which had served the area's original purpose, were removed. A number of pleasure cruises still operate from some nearby wharves.

In the [1990s](#) the Shanghai government attempted to promote an extended concept of the Bund to boost tourism and land value in nearby values, as well as to reconcile the promotion of "colonial relics" with the Socialist ideology. In its expanded form, the term "Bund" (as "New Bund" or "Northern Bund") was used to refer to areas south of the Yan'an Road, and a stretch of riverfront north of the Suzhou River ([Zhabei](#)). Such use of the term, however, remained rare outside of the tourism literature.

## Layout

The Bund stretches one mile along the bank of the Huangpu River. Traditionally, the Bund begins at Yan'an Road (formerly Edward VII Avenue) in the south and ends at [Waibaidu Bridge](#) (formerly Garden Bridge) in the north, which crosses [Suzhou Creek](#).

The Bund centres on a stretch of the Zhongshan Road, named after [Sun Yat-sen](#). Zhongshan Road is a largely circular road which formed the traditional conceptual boundary of Shanghai city "proper". To the west of this stretch of the road stands some 52 buildings of various Western classical and modern styles

which is the main feature of the Bund (see [Architecture and buildings](#) below). To the east of the road was formerly a stretch of parkland culminating at [Huangpu Park](#). This area is now much reduced due to the expansion of Zhongshan Road. Further east is a tall levee, constructed in the [1990s](#) to ward off flood waters. The construction of this high wall has dramatically changed the appearance of the Bund.

Near the [Nanjing Road](#) intersection stands what is currently the only bronze statue along the Bund. It is a statue of [Chen Yi](#), the first Communist mayor of Shanghai. At the northern end of The Bund, along the riverfront, is [Huangpu Park](#), in which is situated the [Monument to the People's Heroes](#), a tall, abstract concrete tower which is a memorial for the those who died during the revolutionary struggle of Shanghai dating back to the [Opium Wars](#).

## Architecture and buildings



*The Bund of Shanghai*

The Bund houses 52 buildings of various architectural styles such as [Romanesque](#), [Gothic](#), [Renaissance](#), [Baroque](#), [Neo-Classical](#), [Beaux-Arts](#), and [Art Deco](#) (Shanghai has one of the richest collections of [Art Deco](#) architectures in the world). From the south, the main buildings are:

- [Asia Building](#) (No. 1, The Bund), originally the McBain Building, housed the Shanghai offices of [Royal Dutch Shell](#) and [Asiatic Petroleum Company](#).
- [Shanghai Club](#) (No. 3, The Bund), which was the principal social club for British nationals in Shanghai.
- [Union Building](#) (No. 4, The Bund), housed a number of insurance companies.
- [Nissin Building](#) (No. 5, The Bund), housed a Japanese shipping company.
- [China Merchants Bank Building](#) (No. 6, The Bund), housed the first Chinese-owned bank in China.
- [Russel & Co. Building](#) (No. 9, The Bund), now houses the [China Shipping Merchant Company](#).
- [The HSBC Building](#) (No. 12, The Bund), now used by the [Shanghai Pudong Development Bank](#), was once the Shanghai headquarters of the [Hongkong and Shanghai Banking Corporation](#), which failed to reach a deal with the Shanghai government to buy the building again in the 1990s, when the Shanghai government moved out of the building that they had used since the 1950s. The present building was completed in 1923. At the time, it was called "the most luxurious building

between the Suez Canal and the Bering Strait". Its famous ceiling mosaics have been fully restored, and can be viewed inside the entrance hall.

- [The Customs House](#) (No. 13, The Bund), was built in 1927 on the site of an earlier, traditional Chinese-style customs house. The clock and bell was built in England and in imitation of Big Ben.
- [China Bank of Communications Building](#) (No. 14, The Bund), was the last building to be built on the Bund. It now houses the Shanghai Council of Trade Unions.



*The [Peace Hotel](#) (green steeped building), one of the most famous buildings on the Bund.*

- [Russo-Chinese Bank Building](#) (No. 15, The Bund) is now the Shanghai Foreign Exchange.
- [Bank of Taiwan Building](#) (No. 16, The Bund) is now the China Merchants Bank.
- [North China Daily News Building](#) (No. 17, The Bund) housed the most influential English-language newspaper in Shanghai at the time. Today it houses AIA Insurance.
- [Chartered Bank Building](#) (No. 18, The Bund) housed the Shanghai headquarters of the [Standard Chartered Bank](#).
- [Palace Hotel](#) (No. 19, The Bund), today forms part of the [Peace Hotel](#).
- [Sassoon House](#) (No. 20, The Bund), with the attached [Cathay Hotel](#), was built by Sir [Victor Sassoon](#). It was, and still is today, famous for its [jazz](#) band in its cafe. The top floor originally housed Sassoon's private apartment. Today, it forms the other part of the [Peace Hotel](#).
- [Bank of China Building](#) (No. 23, The Bund) housed the headquarters of the [Bank of China](#). The stunted appearance of the building is attributed to Sassoon's insistence that no other building on the Bund could rise higher than his.
- [Yokohama Specie Bank Building](#) (No. 24, The Bund) housed the Japanese Yokohama Specie Bank.
- [Jardine Matheson Building](#) (No. 27, The Bund) housed the then-powerful Jardine Matheson Bank.
- [Glen Line Building](#) (No. 2 Beijing Road) today houses the Shanghai Broadcasting Board.
- [Banque de l'Indochine Building](#) (No. 29, The Bund) housed the French bank, Banque de l'Indochine.
- [Consulate-General of the United Kingdom](#) (No. 33, The Bund) housed the Consulate-General of the [United Kingdom](#). The building is under renovation to be opened as the Peninsula Hotel, Shanghai.
- [Broadway Mansions](#) (No. 20, North Suzhou Road) is a hotel.





## Miscellaneous

The Bund is arguably one of the most famous tourist destinations in Shanghai. In the interest of historical preservation, building heights are restricted in this area.

The Bund was famously featured in novel *Empire of the Sun* by [British](#) author [J.G. Ballard](#), based on his personal experiences as a boy during [World War II](#). The book was later made into a film by [Steven Spielberg](#).

The Bund, Shanghai
<a href="#">Asia Building</a>   <a href="#">Shanghai Club</a>   <a href="#">Union Building</a>   <a href="#">Nissin Building</a>   <a href="#">China Merchants Bank Building</a> <a href="#">Telegraph Building</a>   <a href="#">Russel &amp; Co. Building</a>   <a href="#">HSBC Building</a>   <a href="#">Shanghai Customs House</a>   <a href="#">China Bank of Communications</a> <a href="#">Russo-Chinese Bank Building</a>   <a href="#">Bank of Taiwan Building</a>   <a href="#">North China Daily News Building</a>   <a href="#">Chartered Bank Building</a>   <a href="#">Palace Hotel</a> <a href="#">Sassoon House</a>   <a href="#">Bank of China Building</a>   <a href="#">Yokohama Specie Bank Building</a>   <a href="#">Yangtze Building</a>   <a href="#">Jardine Matheson Building</a> <a href="#">Glen Line Building</a>   <a href="#">Banque de l'Indochine Building</a>   <a href="#">Consulate-General of the United Kingdom</a>   <a href="#">Broadway Mansions</a>   <a href="#">Bund Observatory</a>

## External links

- [Concise info on Shanghai + Pics taken from the Bund](#)
- [Buildings of the Bund](#)
- [The Bund and its Environs](#)
- [Pictures of the Bund taken in 1994](#)
- [Old panoramic picture of the Bund](#)
- [Detailed list of buildings along the Bund](#)
- [Flickr photos tagged "The Bund"](#)

[Coordinates: 31°14′ 19.88″ N, 121°29′ 13.79″ E](#)

## ***Shanghai Acrobatics Troupe***

One of the most loved attractions in [Shanghai](#) is not found in the teeming streets or in a famous temple or a modern marvel of architecture – it's the men and women known as the Shanghai Acrobatics Troupe. Though they are often on tour, traveling the world from [Chicago](#) to [Rome](#) to [Sydney](#), their home base



and most frequent site of their amazing performances is in the city from which the troupe takes their name. And while Shanghai tourist attractions are everywhere within the city, from the [Oriental Pearl Tower](#) to the shimmering [Bund](#), people from all over the country also come here to witness the gravity defying stunts and amazing feats of balance and strength that are synonymous with a performance by these world renowned acrobats.

Though the Shanghai Acrobatics Troupe has been around for years, they started playing their most famous shows in September of 1999, as the main event in the newly constructed Shanghai Circus World. The new building would be used primarily for shows by the famous troupe, who had grown tired of travelling around the world without a home theater to call their own. Found on Gonghexin Road in the northern section of town, their performances were immediately hailed for their breathtaking stunts, and within a few weeks the Circus World was immediately elevated to one of the most popular attractions in Shanghai. The troupe succeeded in their mission to bring back the grandeur and pageantry of the circus, most notably in their trademark performance called “ Oriental Stories.” From then on it was immediately billed as the number one circus on the continent. And with good reason – various performers affiliated with the Shanghai Acrobatics Troupe were given special recognition after their signature trick, known as the Flying Trapeze, won the gold medal in the National Acrobatics Contest. This also cemented their status as one of the growing Shanghai tourist attractions, as shows in the giant arena sold out in mere minutes – clearly the Shanghai Circus World was not built in vain.

The Shanghai Acrobatics Troupe have dedicated themselves to pushing the boundaries of acrobatic technique – their stated goal was to develop an entirely new atmosphere surrounding their shows, to introduce a new way of looking at theater to the new markets and demographics its new home would bring in. There was little argument that the troupe had become one of the major attractions in Shanghai when it was invited into the Shanghai Culture, Broadcast, Film and TV Group – the premier media group in all of China. Now, with even more developing outlets for their talent and art, the Shanghai Acrobatics Troupe continue towards a new realm of popularity.

# History of Shanghai

From Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia

## History of Shanghai

### Early Shanghai

[Shanghai](#) was founded in the 10th century. The city is located in a swampy area east of [Suzhou](#) which was only recently irrigated, although other parts of the Yangtze valley saw irrigation as much as 1,500 years ago. Until 1127, Shanghai was a small market town of 12,000 households. That year, however [Kaifeng](#) was conquered and many refugees came to Shanghai, and the city grew to 250,000 inhabitants.

Shanghai and the surrounding area became one of [China](#)'s richest regions in the 13th century, when it became a cotton production and manufacturing center. The manufacturing was done using the cotton gin, a machine similar to that created by [Eli Whitney](#). Cotton cloth was the backbone of Shanghai's economy from the 13th century until the early 19th. Canals, dikes and real estate were financed with private capital during [Song](#) and [Yuan](#) China.



*1888 German map of Shanghai*

### Contents

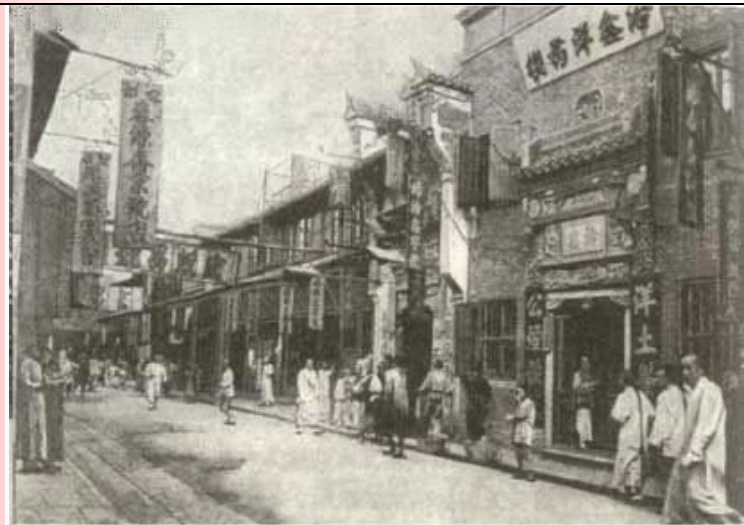
- [1 Early Shanghai](#)
- [2 Early to Middle Qing China](#)
- [3 Foreign powers in Shanghai](#)
- [4 Chinese society](#)
- [5 Chinese attempts at modernization](#)
- [6 1920s](#)
- [7 1927-1937](#)
- [8 During World War II and the Japanese Occupation \(1937-1945\)](#)
- [9 End of Old Shanghai](#)
- [10 Communist rule](#)
- [11 History of the economic development of Shanghai](#)
- [12 References](#)

The following autocratic government of the [Ming dynasty](#) imposed tight trade restrictions. In the 16th century, to guard against [Japanese](#) and Chinese [pirates](#), trade was forbidden. After a hundred merchants died when Shanghai was pillaged by pirates, the Ming government evacuated the entire coastal population to the interior. In 1554 a wall was built to protect the city.

### Early to Middle Qing China

Shanghai reached an economic peak in the early 19th century. The [Qing Dynasty](#) had little government control, so native place associations used their provincial networks to control the city and competed with each other. Bankers of different native place associations started cooperating with each other in the

Shanghai Native Bankers Guild, which used a democratic decision-making process. Trade routes reached as far as [Polynesia](#) and [Persia](#) with cotton, silk and fertiliser as primary export products.



*Shanghai in the [Qing Dynasty](#)*

## Foreign powers in Shanghai

The importance of Shanghai grew radically in the 19th century, as the city's strategic position at the mouth of the [Yangtze River](#) was perceived by the [westerners](#) as an ideal location for trade with the Chinese hinterland.

During the [First Opium War](#) in the early-[19th century](#), British forces temporarily held Shanghai. The war ended with the

[1842 Treaty of Nanjing](#), which saw the [treaty ports](#), Shanghai included, opened for international trade, particularly of [opium](#). According to Balfour, [Great Britain](#) destroyed the cotton industry of Shanghai. Ji emphasizes the backwardness of pre-1842 Shanghai and contends that trade increased thanks to the western powers. The [Treaty of the Bogue](#) signed in [1843](#), and the [Sino-American Treaty of Wangsia](#) signed in [1844](#) together saw foreign nations achieve extraterritoriality on Chinese soil, which officially lasted until 1943 but was functionally defunct by the late 1930s.

The [Taiping Rebellion](#) broke out in [1850](#), and in [1853](#) Shanghai was occupied by a [triad](#) offshoot of the rebels called the [Small Swords Society](#). The fighting devastated the countryside but left the foreign settlements untouched, and Chinese arrived seeking refuge. Although previously Chinese were forbidden to live in foreign settlements, [1854](#) saw new regulations drawn up making land available to Chinese. Land prices rose substantially, and real estate development became a source of considerable income for Shanghai's westerners, further increasing the westerners' control over the city's economy.

1854 also saw the first annual meeting of the [Shanghai Municipal Council](#), created in order to manage the foreign settlements. In [1863](#), the British settlement, located along the western bank of the Huangpu river to the south of Suzhou creek (Huangpu district), and American settlement, located on the western bank of the Huangpu river and to the north of Suzhou creek (Hankou district) joined in order to form the International Settlement. The French opted out of the Shanghai Municipal Council, and instead maintained its own French Concession, located to the south of the International Settlement.

From this situation two cities emerged: a chaotic Chinese city and a western city, inhabited mainly by Chinese.



The western part of Shanghai was one of the most modern "European" cities in the world. New inventions like electricity and trams were quickly introduced, and westerners turned Shanghai into a huge metropolis. British and American businessmen made a great deal of money in trade and finance, and [Germany](#) used Shanghai as a base for investing in China. Shanghai accounted for half of the imports and exports of China. The western part of Shanghai was four times larger than the Chinese part in the early 20th century.

Europeans and Americans inhabitants of Shanghai called themselves the [Shanghaianders](#). The extensive public gardens along the waterfront of the International Settlement were reserved for the foreign communities and forbidden to Chinese (other than those who were British or other colonial subjects). The foreign city was built in the British style with a large racetrack in what was then the west of the city, now People's Park. A new class emerged, the [compradors](#), which mixed with the local landlords to form a new class, the Chinese bourgeoisie. The compradors were indispensable mediators for the western companies. Many compradors were on the leading edge of the movement to modernize China.

The [Sino-Japanese War](#) fought [1894-95](#) over control of [Korea](#) concluded with the [Treaty of Shimonoseki](#), which saw [Japan](#) emerge as an additional foreign power in Shanghai. Japan built the first factories in Shanghai, which were soon copied by other foreign powers to effect the emergence of Shanghai industry.

Shanghai was then the biggest financial city in the [Far East](#). Under the [Republic of China](#), Shanghai was made a [special city](#) in 1927, and a municipality in May [1930](#).

## Chinese society

Chinese society was divided in native place associations or provincial guilds. These guilds defended the interests of people from certain areas. They had their own dresscodes and sub-cultures. Chinese government was hardly organized, instead society was controlled by the native place associations. The [Guangdong](#) native place associations represented the skilled workers of Shanghai. These native place associations belonged to the top of the Shanghainese society. [Ningbo](#) and [Jiangsu](#) native place associations were the most numerous. They represented the common workers. Many Chinese inhabitants came from the north of China. They were on the bottom of the society. Many of them were forced to work as seasonal workers or mobsters.

The Tong Reng Tan was a neutral organization that tried to build up good governance in Shanghai. In 1905, the Tong Reng Tan was abolished and replaced by the Shanghai municipality. A Shanghainese native place association came into being called the Tongrengtang tongxianghui.

## Chinese attempts at modernization

Many Chinese tried to take over the western inventions to make China stronger. The [Self-strengthening movement](#) was based in Shanghai in the late 19th and early 20th centuries. The self-strengthening of



China did not succeed because of the incompetence, corruption and inefficiency of many participants. Chinese Shanghai became a Chinese municipality in 1905, but it was hampered by the power of the native place associations. New, progressive native place associations tried to replace the old ones. These associations helped with the revolution in 1911. The [Republic of China](#), which was a result of the revolution, quickly lost control of the country to provincial warlords, supported by their native place associations. The importation of goods from Europe stopped during the [First World War](#). The Japanese founded many factories in Shanghai. They were followed by Chinese and British entrepreneurs, and Shanghai became an industrial city, unique in China.

## 1920s



Chinese industry in Shanghai had a hard time after the First World War and the competition with the western world started again. But the city's industrial and financial power increased, because the merchants were in control of Shanghai, while the rest of China was divided among warlords. A stock exchange was founded in 1920.

According to Ji, stock exchanges are meant by merchants and bankers to control trade. The Chinese bankers and merchants were primarily aimed at getting the foreigners out of China. The Chinese warlord government didn't cooperate at all to achieve this goal, so the Chinese bankers and merchants of Shanghai opposed both the warlords and the foreigners.

Meanwhile, the traditional division of the society by native place associations was falling apart. The new working classes were not prepared to listen to the bosses of the same native place associations during the 1910s. Resentment against the foreign presence in Shanghai rose among both the entrepreneurs and the workers of Shanghai. In 1919, protests against the [Treaty of Versailles](#) of the [May Fourth Movement](#) brought the rise in power of the mafia. Shanghai in the 1920s and 1930s was a cynical battleground of ideologies. Uncompromising communists and autocratic nationalists fought against opportunistic mobsters and Shanghailanders. Entrepreneurs had a hard time to maintain their position and their liberal ideas.

Shanghai became the centre of national and international opium smuggling during the 1920s. The Shanghai [Green Gang](#) (*Quinbang*) became a major influence in the [International Settlement](#) during the 1920's, with the Commissioner of the Shanghai Municipal Police reporting that corruption associated with

the trade had affected a large proportion of his force. An extensive crack down in 1925 simply displaced the focus of the trade to the neighbouring French Concession. The French authorities made deals with the [Green Gang](#), who controlled all Chinese affairs in the French Concession.

The Quinbang and other gangs comprised the middlemen of Shanghai politics. The [Communist Party of China](#) was founded in 1921 in the French Concession by members of the [Green Gang](#). The Green Gang was divided on the issue of cooperating with the communists. Some gang leaders openly waged war against the communists, while another gangster became the minister of post in [People's Republic of China](#).

In 1927, communists tried to end foreign rule. officially supported by the gangsters and the Guomindang nationalists. Leaders of the [Green Gang](#) however entered into informal alliances with [Chiang Kai-shek](#) and the Shanghailanders capitalists to act against the communists and organised labour unions. The nationalists had cooperated with gangleaders since the revolution of 1911. Many communists were killed in a major gangster [surprise attack](#) in April 1927 in the Chinese administered part of Shanghai, although sporadic fighting between gangsters and communists had occurred previously. [Zhou Enlai](#) was lucky to flee the city, because suspected left-wingers were shot on sight.

## 1927-1937



*Jiujiang Road, Shanghai, late 1920s*

Chiang Kai-shek started an autocratic rule supported by the progressive native place associations which lasted from 1927 to 1937. These associations consisted of workers, businessmen, gangsters and others from a given province. This was part of the policy to organize society in [corporations](#). It was a major failure, because the Chinese refused to be subdued. Only a minority became members of the appointed native place associations. Chiang Kai-shek chose to cooperate with gangsters in order to maintain his grip on Chinese society. This meant that the

gangsters remained middlemen during the rule of the nationalists, controlling society by frequently organizing strikes.

The new architectural style of Shanghai was American. [Cinemas](#) were created all over the city. Shanghai was one of the largest cities in the world with 3,000,000 inhabitants in 1936, of whom only 35,000 were foreigners, though they were in charge of half of the city. Many Russian refugees came to Shanghai. They were regarded as an inferior (oriental or occidental) race by the Shanghighlanders. A lot of [Russian](#) women worked as prostitutes alongside Chinese, [Korean](#) and Japanese colleagues. [The Great World](#)

was a place where opium, prostitution and gambling came together. Shanghai had turned into the [commercial](#) centre of East Asia, with banks from all over the world.

The nationalist government of Chiang Kai-shek tried to turn Shanghai into the capital of China. Large residential areas were built north of the foreign concessions, which were between the old Chinese town and the new Chinese town. These residential areas were modern, with good roads and parking lots for automobiles. A new Chinese port was built, which could compete with the Shanghai's port. Chiang Kai-shek continuously demanded large amounts of money from the financial world in Shanghai. Some bankers and merchants resisted from the start while others were so enthusiastic in supporting the KMT, that they liquidated their companies to extract as much money as possible. Most bankers and merchants were willing to invest in the army, but this stopped in 1928. They refused to give what Chiang wanted. Chiang got angry and he demanded double the amount, followed by quadruple the amount. Bankers responded by refusing all subsidies and Chiang nationalised all enterprises. The brother-in-law of Chiang, Soong expressed the opinion of the Shanghai capitalists in 1930 by writing that it is better to strengthen the politics, the army and the economy instead of focusing only on the army. Chiang was very agitated about this.

The power of the gangsters rose in the early 1930s, especially the power of the [Green Gang](#)-leader [Du Yuesheng](#). Du started his own native place association. Mobsters stormed the [Shanghai Stock Exchange](#) in order to get control over it. The police did not interfere, since they had been dominated by the mobsters since 1919. Shanghai's did not interfere as well, since it was an internal Chinese affair. The nationalist government did not interfere, because it tried to break the power of the entrepreneurs. Entrepreneurs were forced to make a deal after a second storming of the mobsters.

## **During World War II and the Japanese Occupation (1937-1945)**

The Japanese Navy bombed Shanghai on [January 28, 1937](#), nominally in an effort to crush down Chinese student protests of the [Manchurian Incident](#) and the subsequent Japanese occupation. The Chinese fought back in what was known as the [January 28 Incident](#). The two sides fought to a standstill and a ceasefire was brokered in May. In the [Second Sino-Japanese War](#), the city fell after the [Battle of Shanghai](#) in [1937](#), and was occupied until Japan's surrender in [1945](#).

During [World War II](#) in Europe, Shanghai was a centre for European [refugees](#). It was the only city in the world that was open unconditionally to the [Jews](#) at the time. However, under pressure from their allies, the [Nazis](#), the Japanese ghettoised the [Jewish refugees](#) in late 1941 in what came to be known the [Shanghai ghetto](#), and hunger and [infectious diseases](#) such as [amoebic dysentery](#) became rife. The foreign population rose from 35,000 in 1936 to 150,000 in 1942 mainly due to the Jews. [Germany](#) wanted Japan to exterminate the Jews of Shanghai, but Japan only put them into a ghetto. The Japanese were harsher on the British, Americans and [Dutch](#). They slowly lost their privileges and had to wear a B, A or N for their nationality when walking in public places. Their villas were turned into new brothels and gambling houses. The British, Americans and Dutch were forced to march into concentration camps in 1943.

## End of Old Shanghai

The foreign concessions were closed in 1946 when the French departed. The major government controlled companies in Shanghai of KMT-China had gone corrupt after moving to inland China in 1937. Shanghai merchants and bankers had completely lost faith in a healthy economy under KMT-rule. Nationalists had no concern for local interests in Shanghai and tried to force everybody to accept autocratic rule. The main protectors of the mafia, the Shanghighlanders were gone and the mafia was ignored by the nationalist government. [Du Yuesheng](#) tried to become the mayor of Shanghai, but he was forced to leave the city. Communists gained control over the workers. The success of the communists had mainly to do with a different policy. Instead of exclusionism of non-communists, the communists tried to gather a broad coalition. Chinese business-people made a deal with the communists in 1949, which resulted in a peaceful takeover of Shanghai by the communists. The communists put an end to opium, prostitution, gambling and business. All private companies were nationalized in 1952.

## Communist rule

On [May 27, 1949](#), Shanghai came under [communist](#) control and was one of the only two former ROC municipalities not merged into neighbouring provinces over the next decade (the other being [Beijing](#)). It underwent a series of changes in the boundaries of its subdivisions, especially in the next decade.

After the communist takeover in 1949, most foreign firms moved their offices from Shanghai to [Hong Kong](#). During the [1950s](#) and [1960s](#), Shanghai became an industrial center and center for revolutionary [leftism](#). Yet, even during the most tumultuous times of the [Cultural Revolution](#), Shanghai was able to maintain high economic productivity and relative social stability. For most of the history of the PRC, Shanghai has been the largest contributor of tax revenue to the central government compared with other Chinese provinces and municipalities. This came at the cost of severely crippling Shanghai's infrastructure and capital development. Its importance to China's fiscal well-being also denied it economic liberalizations that were started in the far southern provinces such as [Guangdong](#) during the mid-1980s. At that time Guangdong province paid nearly no taxes to the central government, and thus was perceived as fiscally expendable for experimental economic reforms. Shanghai was not permitted to initiate economic reforms until [1991](#).

Political power in Shanghai has traditionally been seen as a stepping stone to higher positions within the PRC central government. In the 1990s, there was what was often described as the politically [right-of-center](#) "[Shanghai clique](#)," which included the president of the PRC [Jiang Zemin](#) and the [premier of the PRC](#) [Zhu Rongji](#). Starting in [1992](#), the central government under Jiang Zemin, a former [Mayor of Shanghai](#), began reducing the tax burden on Shanghai and encouraging both foreign and domestic investment in order to promote it as the economic hub of [East Asia](#) and to encourage its role as gateway of investment to the Chinese interior. Since then it has experienced continuous economic growth of



between 9– 15% annually, arguably at the expense of growth in [Hong Kong](#), leading China's overall development.

## History of the economic development of Shanghai

[Shanghai](#) is an especially interesting example of spatial development as [China](#)' s largest and most important [industrial](#) and commercial city, and also as a city that was largely stagnant during the [Maoist](#) period ([1949– 1976](#)). Its modern transformation really did not begin until the [Dengist](#) period ([1978](#)), and most strikingly not until [President Jiang Zemin](#) came to power in [1992](#). The remarkable development of the [Pudong](#) zone offers a compelling example of the various political mechanisms, players, complexity and character of urban land development and spatial change in the context of [China](#)' s rapidly growing [transitional economy](#).

[Shanghai](#) is [China](#)' s largest and greatest commercial and industrial city. With 0.1% of the land area of the country, it supplies over 12% of the municipal revenue and handles more than a quarter of total trade passing through China' s ports. Its year [2000](#) population, according to [China](#)' s latest [census](#), was [16.74](#) million and represented an increase of [3.4](#) million from the [1990](#) size with an average annual growth rate through the decade of the [1990s](#) of [2.2%](#) and a total increase of [25.5%](#).

The average size of a family in [Shanghai](#) had declined to less than 3 people during the last decade, and it is clear that most of Shanghai' s population growth is driven by migration rather than natural factors based on high birth and fertility rates. [Shanghai](#) has for many years had the lowest [birth rate](#) in [China](#), a rate lower than large [American cities](#) such as [New York](#).

As with most cities in [China](#), [Shanghai](#) is overbounded in its administrative territory. The city in the year 2000 was comprised of 17 urban districts and three counties together occupying 6300 km<sup>2</sup> of land area. The three counties contain substantial rural land and a number of rural residents who continue to farm for their livelihood. The city has the highest population density of all the first order administrative units in [China](#), with [2657](#) people per km<sup>2</sup> in [2000](#). Owing to its continued growth and industrial and commercial development, Shanghai also has the highest index of [urbanization](#) among all of China' s first order administrative units, with 88.3% of the official population (14.78 million) classified as urban.

The amount of building activity in Shanghai fueled by government investment expenditures continues to be astounding. During the same period following [Deng](#)' s national ' ' [Opening and Reform](#) ' ' movement in [1978](#) propelling modernization, Shanghai' s economy shifted from over [77%](#) of gross domestic product in secondary sector manufacturing to a more balanced sectoral distribution of 48% in industry and 51% in services in 2000 and 2001.

[Employment](#) in manufacturing reached almost 60% in [1990](#) and has declined steadily since to 41% in [2001](#), while employment in the tertiary sector has grown from 30% in [1990](#) to more than 47% in [2001](#), a



remarkable expansion of employment in service activities in step with [Shanghai](#)' s reemergence as a commercial city.

Increasing population and economic activity in areas between established suburbs and major [East Asian](#) cities, a process known as periurbanization, result from entirely different causes than those driving ' ' in-filling' ' in western metropolitan areas. As powerful central government control that formerly stabilized the economic activity of the population devolved during the 1990s, new forms were encouraged to anchor and attract workers in peripheral areas. These included township and village enterprises and rural industries popping up in peri-urban development zones.

## References

- American Chamber of Commerce. (2001). Getting Shanghai on the right track. AmChat Newsletter (pp. 5– 6). Shanghai. China Science and Technology Department. (2000). Report on high-tech industry development in Shanghai. Development Report on China' s New and High-tech Industry. Beijing: China Science Publishing Department.
- Balfour, Alan and Zheng Zhiling, *Shanghai* (Chichester 2002).
- Davies, J. (2002). Urban regime theory: A normative-empirical critique. *Journal of Urban Affairs*, 24, 1– 17.
- Fujii, T., & Hartshorn, T. (1995). The changing metropolitan structure of Atlanta, Georgia: The locations of functions and regional structure in a multinucleated urban area. *Urban Geography*, 16, 680– 707.
- Goodman, Bryna, *Native Place, City, and Nation, Regional Networks and Identities in Shanghai, 1853-1937* (Berkeley 1995).
- Ji, Zhaojin, *A History of Modern Shanghai Banking* (New York 2003).
- Knox, P. L. (1994). *Urbanization: An introduction to urban geography*. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice-Hall.
- Lanning, G., & Couling, S. (1921) *The History of Shanghai* Kelly & Walsh Ltd.
- Leman, E. (2002). Can Shanghai compete as a global market? *The China Business Review*, [www.chinabusinessreview.com](http://www.chinabusinessreview.com), accessed 9/9/02.
- Lin, G. (2001). Evolving spatial form of urban-rural interaction in the Pearl River Delta, China. *Professional Geographer*, 53, 56– 70.
- Ma, L. J. C. (2002). Urban transformation in China, 1949– 2000: A review and research agenda. *Environment and Planning A*, 34(9), 1545– 1570.
- Ning, Y. (2002). Globalization and the sustainable development of Shanghai. In F. C. Lo, & P. J. Marcotullio (Eds.). *Globalization and the sustainability of cities in the Asia Pacific Region*. Tokyo: United Nations Press.
- Ning, Y., & Yan, Z. (1995). The changing industrial and spatial structure in Shanghai. *Urban Geography*, 16, 577– 594.
- Olds, K. (2001). *Globalization and urban change: Capital, culture, and Pacific rim mega-projects*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

## Zhouzhuang

<http://www.travelchinaguide.com/attraction/jiangsu/suzhou/zhouzhuang.htm>

### Zhouzhuang (1)

Zhouzhuang, one of the most famous water townships in China, situated in Kunshan City which is only 30 kilometers (18 miles) southeast of Suzhou. It is noted for its profound cultural background, the well preserved ancient residential houses, the elegant watery views and the strong local colored traditions and customs. In the Spring and Autumn Period (770 - 476 BC), Zhouzhuang was a part of the fief Yaocheng and called Zhenfengli. After being donated to Full Fortune (Quanfu) Temple by Zhou Digong, a very devout Buddhist, in 1086 during the Northern Song Dynasty (960 - 1127), Zhouzhuang got its present name as a memorial of the donor.

In an area of half a square kilometer (124 acres), 60 percent of the Zhouzhuang's structures were built during the Ming and Qing Dynasties, which is from 1368 to 1911. Taking the most convenient form of transport in Zhouzhuang, a gondola, we will present some of the breathtaking sights one by one.



**Twin Bridges (Shuang qiao):** Zhouzhuang is surrounded and divided by lakes and rivers, 14 stone bridges cross the rivers, showing distinctive views of the water-town. Twin Bridges which comprise Shide Bridge and Yongan Bridge are the most famous and is considered the symbol of Zhouzhuang. Built in Wanli era (1573 - 1619) of the Ming Dynasty, Twin Bridges is in the northeast of the town. Shide Bridge is east-west and has a round arch, while Yongan Bridge is north-south and the bridge arch is square. Crossing the two crisscross rivers (Yinzi Creek and Nabeishi River) and connecting at the middle, Twin Bridges look like a Chinese old-style Chinese key. In 1984, 38 canvases of the notable painter, Chen Yifei, were exhibited in a New York gallery of Armand Hammer, chairman of Occidental Petroleum Corporation. 'Memory of Hometown' which depicts Twin Bridges was one of the items on display and has gained the world's attention for Zhouzhuang. The painting was chosen to be the first-day cover of the United Nations' postage stamp in 1985.

**Fuan Bridge:** Located at the eastern end of Zhongshi Jie, Fuan Bridge was built in 1355 during the Yuan Dynasty. The unique trait of the Fuan is the consummate combination of the single-arch bridge and the bridge towers which have , are used as tearooms, restaurants



and stores, and are good places to appreciate the views while taking a rest.

**Shen House:** Built in 1742 and located at the southeast side of Fuan Bridge, Shen House was the private property of the descendant of Shen Wansan, the first millionaire of Jiangnan (South of Yangtze River) in the early Qing Dynasty. The whole architectural complex is of the Qing's style and occupies an area of more than 2,000 square meters (half an acre). Over 100 rooms are divided into three sections and each one is connected by arcades and aisles. The first is the water gate and the wharf, where Shen's family moored boats and washed clothes. The middle part includes the gate tower, the tearoom and the main hall. Brick gate tower carved with lively and ingenious figures which tell the historic stories or show the good wishes, make it a rare artwork. Tea room and main hall are places for serving guests, and the furnishings in here are all very elegant. The last section is the two-storied dwelling which consists of several buildings which are quite different from the main hall, more comfortable and refined in pattern and atmosphere. The painted sculpture of legendary Shen Wansan is in Datang Tower; cultural relics including ancient folk instruments are exhibited in Xiaotang Tower and Back Hall.

**Zhang House:** Built by Xu's family in the Zhengtong era (1436 - 1449) of the Ming Dynasty and bought by Zhang's family in the early Qing Dynasty. Located to the south of the Twin Bridges, Zhang House has more than 70 rooms and takes up about 1,800 square meters (less than half an acre). With Ruojing River flowing through, Zhang House is a dapper and graceful residential house; has a tranquil courtyard and pond. Deep halls all represent the life of the quondam owner.

**Milou Tower:** Once called the De's Tavern, Milou Tower perches next to Zhenfeng Bridge which is at the southwest corner of Zhouzhuang. It is famous for being a rallying place of the literators in old times. Numerous poets, songs and stories about Milou Tower are wide spread and make it more charming.



**Chengxu Taoist Temple:** Standing on Zhongshi Street which is opposite to Puqing Bridge, Chengxu Taoist Temple was built during 1086 - 1093 of the Song Dynasty and also known as Sanctity Hall (Shengtang Hall). After several periods of expansion, it is one of the most famous Taoist temples in Wuzhong Region. In an area of 1,500 square meters (1,800 square yards), simple but majestic Shengdi and Doumu halls, Yuhuang, Wenchang and Shengdi pavilions are really elaborate works and masterpieces of Taoist architectures.

The preceding sight-seeing sites are just a little part of the pretty attractions of Zhouzhuang. Besides these historic sights, the local folklore, traditions and legends of this water township, such as the dragon boat race, the granny tea or the Wansan home-style banquet which are formed from the immemorial civilization and history are also the indispensable elements for an unforgettable tour.

# Zhouzhuang (2)

From Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia



*Town of Zhouzhuang*

**Zhouzhuang** (Chinese: 周庄; pinyin: Zhōu zhuāng) is a town in Jiangsu province, China. It is located within Kunshan county-level city, 30 km southeast of Suzhou.

Zhouzhuang is a popular touristic destination. It is one of the most famous water townships in China, noted for its profound cultural background, the well preserved ancient residential houses, the elegant watery views and the strong local

colored traditions and customs. It has been called the "[Venice of the East](#)".

## Contents

- [1 History](#)
- [2 Sights](#)
  - [2.1 Twin Bridges \(Shuang qiao\)](#)
  - [2.2 Fuan Bridge](#)
  - [2.3 Shen House](#)
  - [2.4 Zhang House](#)
  - [2.5 Milou Tower](#)
- [2.6 Chengxu Taoist Temple](#)
- [3 Culture](#)
- [4 External link](#)

## History

In the [Spring and Autumn Period](#) (770 BC-476 BC), Zhouzhuang was a part of the fief Yaocheng and called Zhenfengli. After being donated to Full Fortune (Quanfu) Temple by Zhou Digong, a very devout Buddhist, in 1086 during the [Northern Song Dynasty](#) (960-1127), Zhouzhuang got its present name as a memorial of the donor.

In an area of half a square kilometer (124 acres), 60 percent of the Zhouzhuang's structures were built during the [Ming](#) and [Qing](#) dynasties, which is from

1368 to 1911.

## Sights

### Twin Bridges (Shuang qiao)



Zhouzhuang is surrounded and divided by lakes and rivers, 14 stone bridges cross the rivers, showing distinctive views of the water-town. Twin Bridges which comprise Shide Bridge and Yongan Bridge are the most famous and is considered the symbol of Zhouzhuang. Built in Wanli era (1573-1619) of the Ming Dynasty, Twin Bridges is in the northeast of the town. Shide Bridge is east-west and has a round arch, while Yongan Bridge is north-south and the bridge arch is square. Crossing the two crisscross rivers (Yinzi Creek and Nabeishi River) and connecting at the middle, Twin Bridges look like a Chinese old-style Chinese key. In 1984, 38 canvases of the notable painter, [Chen Yifei](#), were exhibited in a New York

gallery of Armand Hammer, chairman of Occidental Petroleum Corporation. "Memory of Hometown" which depicts Twin Bridges was one of the items on display and has gained the world's attention for Zhouzhuang. The painting was chosen to be the first-day cover of the United Nations' postage stamp in 1985.

## Fuan Bridge

Located at the eastern end of Zhongshi Jie, Fuan Bridge was built in 1355 during the [Yuan Dynasty](#). The unique trait of the Fuan is the consummate combination of the single-arch bridge and the bridge towers which have, are used as tearooms, restaurants and stores, and are good places to appreciate the views while taking a rest.

## Shen House

Built in [1742](#) and located at the southeast side of Fuan Bridge, Shen House was the private property of the descendant of [Shen Wansan](#), the first millionaire of Jiangnan (South of Yangtze River) in the early Qing Dynasty. The whole architectural complex is of the Qing's style and occupies an area of more than 2,000 square meters (half an acre). Over 100 rooms are divided into three sections and each one is connected by arcades and aisles. The first is the water gate and the wharf, where Shen's family moored boats and washed clothes. The middle part includes the gate tower, the tearoom and the main hall. Brick gate tower carved with lively and ingenious figures which tell the historic stories or show the good wishes, make it a rare artwork. Tea room and main hall are places for serving guests, and the furnishings in here are all very elegant. The last section is the two-storied dwelling which consists of several buildings which are quite different from the main hall, more comfortable and refined in pattern and atmosphere. The painted sculpture of legendary Shen Wansan is in Datang Tower; cultural relics including ancient folk instruments are exhibited in Xiaotang Tower and Back Hall.



*Wealthy merchant Shen Wansan's statue  
in Zhouzhuang*





*Zhouzhuang Tourist boat*

## Zhang House

Built by Xu's family in the Zhengtong era (1436-1449) of the Ming Dynasty and bought by Zhang's family in the early Qing Dynasty. Located to the south of the Twin Bridges, Zhang House has more than 70 rooms and takes up about 1,800 square meters (less than half an acre). With Ruojing River flowing through, Zhang House is a dapper and graceful residential house; has a tranquil courtyard and pond. Deep halls all represent the life of the quondam owner.

## Milou Tower

Once called the De's Tavern, Milou Tower perches next to Zhenfeng Bridge which is at the southwest corner of Zhouzhuang. It is famous for being a rallying place of the literators in old times. Numerous poets, songs and stories about Milou Tower are wide spread and make it more charming.

## Chengxu Taoist Temple

Standing on Zhongshi Street which is opposite to Puqing Bridge, Chengxu Taoist Temple was built during 1086-1093 of the Song Dynasty and also known as Sanctity Hall (Shengtang Hall). After several periods of expansion, it is one of the most famous Taoist temples in Wuzhong Region. In an area of 1,500 square meters (1,800 square yards), simple but majestic Shengdi and Doumu halls, Yuhuang, Wenchang and Shengdi pavilions are really elaborate works and masterpieces of Taoist architectures.



*Ox Statue in Center of Zhouzhuang*

## Culture

- [Dragon boat race](#)
- [Granny tea](#)
- [Wansan home-style banquet](#)

## External link

- [Information at travelchinaguide.com](http://www.travelchinaguide.com)

# Suzhou

<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Suzhou>

## Suzhou (1)

From Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia

**Suzhou** ([Simplified Chinese](#): 苏州; [Traditional Chinese](#): 蘇州; [pinyin](#): Sū zhō u; ancient name: 吳) is a city with a long history on the lower reaches of the [Yangtze River](#) and on the shores of [Lake Taihu](#) in the province of [Jiangsu](#), [China](#). The city is renowned for its beautiful stone bridges, [pagodas](#), and meticulously designed [gardens](#), which has become a great tourist attraction. Suzhou has also been an important center for China's [silk](#) industry since the [Song Dynasty](#) (960-1279), and continues to hold that prominent position today. It is part of the [Golden Triangle](#) region. The GDP per capita was ¥66,826 (ca. US\$7649) in 2004, ranked no. 5 among 659 Chinese cities.

### Contents

- [1 History](#)
- [2 Districts and satellite cities](#)
- [3 Landmarks](#)
- [4 Transportation](#)
- [5 Culture](#)
- [6 Notable people from Suzhou](#)
- [7 Quotes](#)
- [8 Education](#)
- [9 See also](#)
- [10 External links](#)

### History

Suzhou, the cradle of [Wu culture](#), is one of the oldest towns in the [Yangtze](#) Basin. 2500 years ago, local tribes who named themselves "Gou Wu" in the late [Shang Dynasty](#) lived in the area which would become Suzhou.

In [514 BC](#), during the [Spring and Autumn Period](#), [King Helu](#) (闔閭) of [Wu](#) established "Great City of Helu", the ancient name for Suzhou, as his capital. In [496 BC](#), Helu was buried in Huqiu ([Tiger Hill](#) 虎丘).



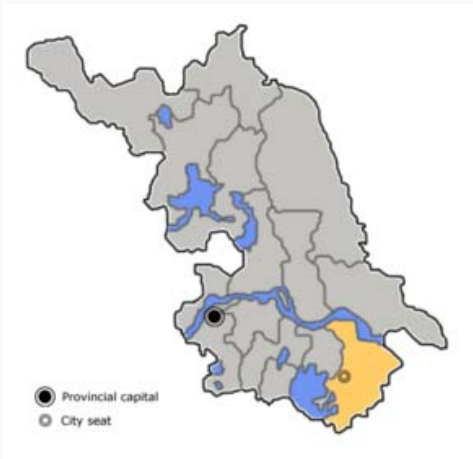
*The Humble Administrator's Garden*

In [473 BC](#), Wu was defeated by [Yue](#), another kingdom to the east that was soon annexed by [Chu](#) in [306 BC](#). The golden era of Suzhou was over. Remnants of this culture include the remainders of the 2,500 year old wall and the gate through it at [Pan Gate](#).

By the time of [Qin Dynasty](#), the city was known as Wu County. Xiang Yu (项羽) staged his historical uprising here in [209 BC](#), which contributed to the overthrow of Qin.

During [Sui Dynasty](#), the city was renamed Suzhou in

[589 AD](#).

<div>苏州市</div> <div>Sū zhō u Shì</div>	
	
<b>Administration Type</b>	Prefecture-level city
<b>City Seat</b>	<a href="#">Jinchang District</a> ( <a href="#">31°39'N 120°37'E</a> )
<b>Area</b>	
- Total	8,488 <a href="#">km²</a>
- Urban center	1,560 km²
<b>Population</b>	
- Total	6,062,200 (2004)
- Urban center	2,245,300 (2004)
<b>GDP</b>	
- Total	¥402.65 billion (2004)
- Per Capita	¥66,826 (2004)
Major <b>Nationalities</b>	<a href="#">Han</a>
<b>County-level divisions</b>	12
<b>Township-level divisions</b>	--
<b>CPC</b> Committee Secretary	<a href="#">Wang Rong</a> (王荣)
<b>Mayor</b>	<a href="#">Yan Li</a> (阎立)
City Flower	<a href="#">Osmanthus</a>
City Tree	<a href="#">Camphor tree</a>
<b>Regional dialect</b>	Wu: <a href="#">Suzhouhua</a> (苏州话)
<b>Area code</b>	512
<b>Postal Code</b>	215000
<b>License Plate</b> Prefix	苏E

When the [Grand Canal](#) was completed, Suzhou found itself strategically located on a major trade route. In the course of the [history of China](#), it has been a metropolis of [industry](#) and [commerce](#) in the south-eastern coast of China.

During [Tang Dynasty](#) (825 AD), the great poet [Bai Juyi](#) (白居易) constructed the Shantang Canal (called "Shantang Jie" or 山塘街) to connect the city with Huqiu for the tourists. In [1035](#) AD, the [temple of Confucius](#) was founded by the great poet and writer [Fan Zhongyan](#) (范仲淹). It became the venue for imperial civil examinations.

In February [1130](#), the advancing [Jin](#) army from the north sacked and massacred the city. This was followed by the [Mongol invasion](#) ([1275](#)) and destruction of the royal city (in the centre of the walled city) in the beginning of the [Ming Dynasty](#) ([1367](#)).

Thereafter, the city had a more prosperous time. Many of the famous private gardens were constructed by the gentry of the [Ming](#) and [Qing](#) dynasties. However, the city was to see another disaster in [1860](#) when [Taiping](#) soldiers advanced on and captured the city. In [November 1863](#) the [Ever Victorious Army](#) of [Charles Gordon](#) recaptured the city from the Taiping forces.

The next crisis that met the city was the Japanese invasion ([1937](#)). Many gardens were devastated by the end of the war. In the early 1950s, restoration was done on Zhuo-Zheng Yuan ([Humble Administrator's Garden](#)), Dong Yuan (East Garden), and others, to bring them back to life.

In [1981](#), this ancient city was listed by the [State Council](#) as one of the four cities (the other three being [Beijing](#), [Hangzhou](#) and [Guilin](#)) where the protection of historical and cultural heritage as well as natural



scenery should be treated as a priority project. Since then, with suburban economic projects, Suzhou has developed into one of the most prosperous cities in China.

Classical gardens in Suzhou were added to the list of the [UNESCO World Heritage Sites](#) in [1997](#) and [2000](#).



*Close up of [Zhuozheng Garden](#) in Suzhou.*

## Districts and satellite cities

Being one of the most prosperous cities in China, Suzhou's development has a direct correlation with the growth of its satellite cities, most notably [Kunshan](#), [Taicang](#), and [Zhangjiagang](#). Suzhou's jurisdictional areas are home to many high-tech development enterprises.

Suzhou has jurisdiction over (at county level):

- **Districts:** [Canglang](#) (沧浪), [Jinchang](#) (金阊), [Pingjiang](#) (平江), [Suzhou Industrial Park](#) (工业园区), [Suzhou High & New Technology Development Zone](#) (高新区), [Xiangcheng](#) (相城), [Wuzhong](#) (吴中)
- **County-level cities:** [Changshu](#) (常熟), [Taicang](#) (太仓), [Kunshan](#) (昆山), [Wujiang](#) (吴江), and [Zhangjiagang](#) (张家港)

## Landmarks

- [Pan Gate](#) is 2,500 years old and was first built by the state of [Wu](#) in the [Warring States](#) Period. It is renowned for its unique structure as a combined water and land gate.
- [Tiger Hill](#) (Huqiu) [\[1\]](#)

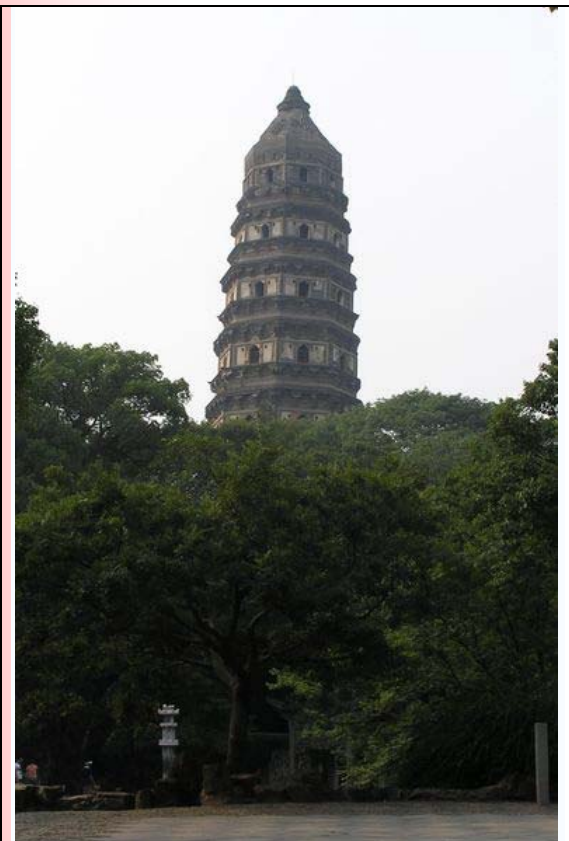


*Entrance into one of the gardens in Suzhou*

- [Xuanmiao Guan](#) (originally built in 276 AD, rebuilt in 1584)
- [Huqiu Temple](#) (originally built in 327, rebuilt in 1871)
- [Cold Mountain Temple](#) (Hanshan Si) [\[2\]](#) (built in 503, destroyed and rebuilt many times, last reconstruction in 1896)
- [Baodai Bridge](#) (built in 816, rebuilt in 1442)
- [Shantang Canal](#) (built in 825)

- [Yunyan Pagoda](#) (built in 961)
- [Ruiguang Pagoda](#) (built in 1009)
- [Lingering Garden](#) (Liu Yuan) [\[3\]](#) (built in 1525, rebuilt in 1953)

- [Master of the Nets Garden](#) (Wang Shi Yuan) (built in the Song Dynasty)
- [Blue Wave Pavilion](#) (Canglang Ting) [\[4\]](#) (built in 1696)
- [Mountain Villa with Embracing Beauty](#)
- [Lion Grove Garden](#) (built in 1342)
- [Garden of Cultivation](#)
- [The Retreat & Reflection Garden](#)
- [Humble Administrator's Garden](#) (Zhuozheng Yuan) [\[5\]](#) (built in 1513, rebuilt in 1860)
- [Gate of the Orient](#), the city's tallest building due for completion in [2007](#)



*Yunyan Pagoda, note: this is an inclined tower. It is the most famous tower in east China*

## Transportation

Suzhou is conveniently located on the [Jinghu Railway](#) linking [Shanghai](#) and [Nanjing](#), the provincial capital, to both of which there is hourly railway service. [Suzhou Railway Station](#) is among the busiest passenger stations in China, having 139 trains stopping daily. T-Trains only take 45 minutes to Shanghai and an hour and half to Nanjing. Driving options include the [Jiangsu-Shanghai Expressway](#), the [Yangtze Riverine Expressway](#), the [Suzhou-Jiaxin-Hangzhou Expressway](#). In 2005, the new [Suzhou Outer Ring](#) was completed, linking the peripheral county-level cities of Taicang, Kunshan, and Changshu. By water, Suzhou is connected with [Zhangjiagang](#), [Luzhi](#), [Liuji](#) and [Changshu](#).

Although [Shuofang Airport](#) and [Guangfu United Airlines Airport](#) serve as two municipal airports, and the State Council approved of the construction of an airport exclusively serving Suzhou in 2003, air transportation

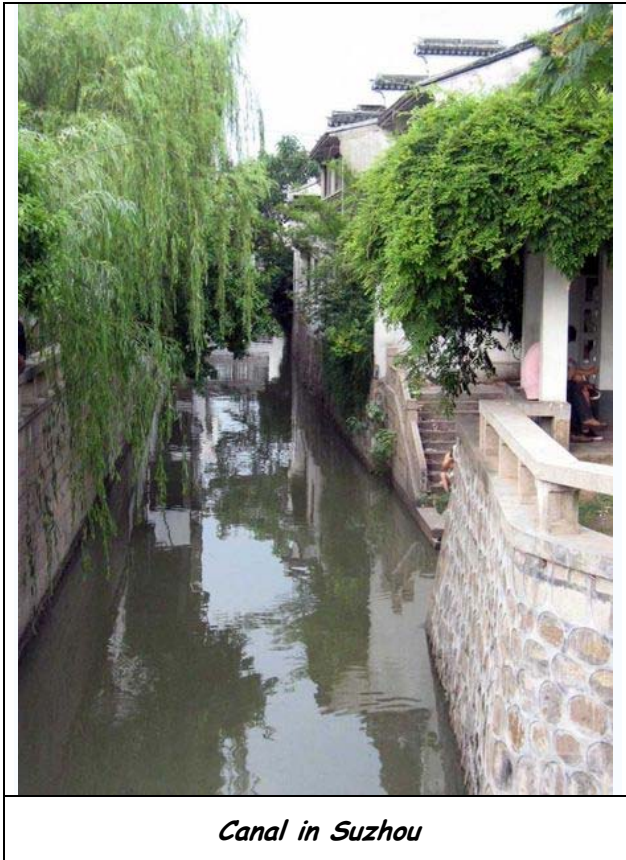
from Suzhou continues to be located at Shanghai's [Hongqiao Airport](#) and [Pudong International Airport](#).

## Culture

- [Chinese opera](#): [Kunqu](#) originates in the Suzhou region, as does the much later [Suzhou Opera](#). [Ballad-singing](#), or [Suzhou pingtan](#) is a local form of storytelling that mixes singing (accompanied on the pipa) with portions in spoken dialect.
- [Silk](#)
- [Handicrafts](#): [Suzhou embroidery](#), [fans](#), [national musical instruments](#), [scroll mounting](#), [lanterns](#), [mahogany furniture](#), [jade carving](#), [silk tapestry](#), [traditional painting pigments of Jiangenxutang Studio](#), [the New Year's wood-block prints of Taohuawu Studio](#).



- [Paintings](#)
- [Calligraphic art](#)
- [Cuisine](#): [Yangcheng Lake huge crab](#)
- [Suzhou Silk Hand Embroidery Art](#)



## Notable people from Suzhou

- [Statesmen](#):
  - [Fan Zhongyan](#) (范仲淹)
  - [Yen Chia-kan](#) (嚴家淦)
- [Poets](#):
  - [Fan Chengda](#) (范成大) (1126-1193 AD)
  - The [Suzhou Ten](#)
- [Playwrights](#):
  - [Feng Menglong](#) (冯梦龙) (1574-1645 AD)
- [Painters](#):
  - [Tang Yin](#) (唐寅)
  - [Wen Zhengming](#) (文徵明)
- [Wen Zhenheng](#) (文震亨) (1585-1645 AD)
  - [Physicists](#):
    - Others: [Gu Yanwu](#) (顾炎武), [Zhang](#)

[Taiyan](#) (章太炎)

- [Huston Smith](#)

◦

## Quotes

*"A very great and noble city... It has 1600 stone bridges under which a galley may pass."* - [Marco Polo](#)

*"Capital of Silk", "Land of Abundance", "Gusu city", "Oriental [Venice](#)", "Cradle of the [Wu Culture](#)", and "World of Gardens"* - nicknames of Suzhou

*上有天堂 下有蘇杭 "In heaven, there is paradise. On earth, there are Suzhou and [Hangzhou](#)."* - Chinese saying

*"Born in Suzhou, live in [Hangzhou](#), eat in [Guangzhou](#), and die in [Liuzhou](#)."* - Chinese saying

*美不美 太湖水 親不親 故鄉人 "Beautiful or not beautiful, nothing is more beautiful than the waters of [Taihu](#). Related or not related, we are all the people of the same village."* - Chinese saying



*A exhibition of [Bonsai/Penjing](#) in one of the gardens in Suzhou.*

## Education

Public institutions having full-time [Bachelor's degree](#) programs include

- [Suzhou University](#), also named [Soochow University](#) (苏州大学)
- [University of Science and Technology of Suzhou](#) (苏州科技学院)

Postgraduate Institution

- [Suzhou Graduate Town](#) (National University of

Singapore and Fudan Joint Graduate School, Nanjing University Graduate School, etc.)

## See also

- [Suzhou](#) crater on [Mars](#) was named after the city.
- [Wu](#)
- [Wuxi](#)
- [Luzhi](#)
- [List of places known as 'the Venice of something'](#)
- [Precious Belt Bridge](#)

## External links

- [Official site of Suzhou City, in English](#) (Government of Suzhou)
- [Suzhou city guide with open directory](#) (Jiangsu Network)
- [Suzhou Vista](#)
- [Travel China Guide](#)
- [Hotels in Suzhou](#)
- [Scenic Spots in Suzhou](#)
- [Official site, in English](#)
- [Expat Classifieds & Community Portal Suzhou](#)
- [Expat Association Suzhou](#)
- [Suzhou Industrial Park](#)
- <http://www.orientalarchitecture.com/> (Historical architecture)
- [Global Flex \(Suzhou\) Co., Ltd.](#)

## Suzhou (2)

When Suzhou is mentioned, the first thought in every Chinese mind is of its gardens. It is said that the gardens to the south of Yangtze River are the best in the world, and Suzhou gardens are the best among them. The history of the [classical gardens of Suzhou](#) can be traced back to 6 BC. By the time of the Ming and Qing dynasties, Suzhou City had become a garden city with more than 200 gardens. Having experienced a long history, only a part of the gardens are preserved perfectly. Because of their ingenious man-made landscape and the ideal of harmony between heaven and human beings, the gardens have gained a high reputation world wide. [Canglang Pavilion \(Blue Wave Pavilion\)](#), [Lingering Garden](#), [Humble Administrator's Garden](#) and [Lion Grove Garden](#) are the four top gardens in Suzhou, representing the architectural styles of Song, Yuan, Ming and Qing dynasties respectively. The latter three gardens were added to the World Heritage List in 1997. Additionally, the [Garden of Master of Nets](#) will definitely appeal to you, as it is the best example of small and medium-sized gardens.



In contrast to the huge buildings in the north, the water townships of Suzhou are designed in the typical style of southern China, renowned for their charming watery view and ancient residential houses. [Zhouzhuang](#), inheriting the splendid culture of Wu, is the best example of water country in China. There, you can enjoy a view like a Chinese landscape painting, just like that described by Ma Zhiyuan (a poet of Yuan Dynasty) in his lyric - a household on a creek flowing under a stone-bridge nearby. Besides Zhouzhuang, some other water townships, such as [Tongli Town](#), Mudu and [Luzhi](#), are also recommended.



After a splendid visit to the water townships of Suzhou, you should turn your attention to [Tiger Hill](#) which is named the No.1 sight in Suzhou and has a profound cultural background. The poem *Mooring by the Maple-Bridge at Night* written by Zhang Ji (a Chinese poet of the Tang Dynasty) has given a world-wide reputation to the [Hanshan Temple \(Cold Mountain Temple\)](#) and the Maple-Bridge of Suzhou since imperial times. If you are a beginner in Chinese culture and art, the above destinations should not be missed in your journey to Suzhou. Possessing

wonderful gardens, exquisite water townships, charming natural scenery and splendid history and culture, Suzhou is praised as 'paradise on earth'.

Panmen Scenic Area, including Ruiguang (Auspicious Luster) Pagoda, Water and land City Gates, Wumen Bridge and other historical sites and landscape, are located to the southwest of Suzhou City. No.2 tourist bus departing from the railway station can take you there directly. Bus No.30 also goes there directly from Suzhou Amusement Park, which is the best park in Suzhou.

Additionally, majestic temples, such as the Temple of Mystery and Xiyuan Temple, are two famous destinations in Suzhou. The former one is located at No.94 Guan Qian Street and regular buses Nos.1, 2, 4, 8, 20, 38 and tourist special routes Nos. 1 2, 4, 5 can be used to get there. Xiyuan Temple can be reached by taking tourist special routes Nos. 1, 2, 3 and regular buses Nos. 6, 10, 11, 17.

Exquisite gardens, meandering water and green mountains around Suzhou City attract a great number of visitors every year from both home and abroad.

.....  
Sightseeing List :

- [Luzhi](#)
- [Garden of the Master of the Nets](#)
- [Hanshan Temple \(Cold Mountain Temple\)](#)
- [Suzhou Silk Museum](#)
- [Tiger Hill](#)
- [Tongli Town](#)
- [Zhouzhuang](#)
- [Classical Gardens of Suzhou](#)
  - [Canglang Pavilion \(Blue Wave Pavilion\)](#)
  - [Lingering Garden](#)
  - [Humble Administrator's Garden](#)
  - [Lion Grove Garden](#)



## Suzhou Gardens

<http://www.china.org.cn/english/e-sz/index.htm>

# *Suzhou Gardens*

Suzhou, a cultural and historical city in east China's Jiangsu Province, is celebrated around the world for its elegant gardens.

The history of Suzhou's gardens can be traced as far back as the Spring and Autumn Period (770 BC - 476 BC). Distinctive gardens continued to appear throughout the subsequent dynasties, but it was during the Ming (1368 - 1644) and Qing (1644-1911) that the garden art of Suzhou was at its zenith. The prospering city and its outskirts were dotted with exquisite private gardens. Dozens of them, such as Zhuozheng (Humble Administrator's) Garden, Liuyuan (lingering) Garden, Wangshi (Master of Nets) Garden and Huanxui (Embracing Beauty) Mountain Villa, are still well preserved today.

Imperial gardens and private gardens each developed their own distinctive features over many years. The imperial gardens of Gelling are considered the finest examples of that style. They are noted for their expansive size, grandeur and stateliness. The gardens of Suzhou are the epitome of landscaping art for the private garden, with their delicacy, intimacy and simplicity. The designers of private gardens, not bound by the rigid conventions of the imperial court had greater freedom of expression in their art.

The ancient gardens of Suzhou were designed to be lived in as much as were the houses to which they were attached. Paths invited residents and their guests to wander, offering a new view at every bend; pavilions, gazebos or simple seats offered comfortable spots in which to relax, chat, and perhaps to take some refreshments or pen a poem. This type of landscaping was often used in the densely populated cities, where residents recalled the countryside with nostalgia and yearned to commune with nature.

Zhuozheng (Humble Administrator's) Garden, Liuyuan (Lingering) Garden, Wangshi (Master of Nets) Garden and Huaxiu (Embracing Beauty) Mountain Villa of Suzhou are representative of The Ming- and Qing-dynasty landscape architecture in areas south of the lower reaches of the Yangtze River. In fact, it was the perfection of the designs and workmanship of these gardens that influenced landscaping throughout the region.

Horizontal Inscribed boards, hanging scrolls, sculptures and hall decorations, as well as the trees, stones and ponds in the gardens are not only delightful treats for the senses. They also provide a wealth of information as to the history, society, values and aesthetics of the eras in which they were built. They are storehouses of the artifacts of their times: calligraphy, carvings and paintings. But they are also treasure troves of classical thought. Wandering through the gardens even today, people can enjoy reflecting on the philosophic concepts



and ideologies of Confucianism, Buddhism and Taoism; they can still sense the romance of the ancient poetry and prose that influenced the gardens' creators.

In recent years, the influence of the Suzhou gardens designs has even traveled across oceans. Xing Hall Garden, at the Metropolitan Museum of Art in New York City is a copy of a section the Master of Nets Garden. The design of the Dr. Sun Yat-Sen Garden in Vancouver, Canada, was based on the Ming Dynasty Suzhou garden style.

In 1997, United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization (UNESCO) added to its prestigious list of world cultural heritage sites Suzhou's Zhouzheng (Humble Administrator's) Garden, Wangshi (Master of Nets) Garden, Liuvuan (Lingering) Garden, Canglang (Surging Waves) Pavilion, Yipu Garden (Garden of Cultivation), Huanxiu (Embracing Beauty) Mountain Villa, Ouyuan (Couple's Garden Retreat) Garden, Shizilin (Lion Forest) Garden and Tuisiyuan (Retreat and Reflection) Garden.

(China.org.cn May 19, 2004)

## ***Garden of the Master of the Nets :***

Sometimes the smallest package can contain the most magnificent gift. The Garden of the Master of the Nets is a clear example of this. It is the smallest of the Suzhou residential gardens, yet it is the most impressive because of its use of space which creates the illusion of an area that is much greater than its actual size. Even more than the architectural achievement is the mood of tranquility and harmony that this humble garden embodies.



This exquisite garden was first designed during the Song Dynasty (960 - 1279) as part of a residence that was used until the Taiping Rebellion in the 1860's. It was later restored and became the residence of a government official from whom the garden got its name. It is said that in a moment of frustration with bureaucracy he declared that he would rather be a fisherman than a bureaucrat.



The garden is divided into three sections: a residential section, the central main garden and an inner garden. The main garden has a large pond that is surrounded by pathways and a variety of buildings such as the Ribbon Washing Pavillion, and the Pavillion for the advent of the Moon and Wind. There are many more buildings that are situated so that there is never a sense of crowding, but always of spaciousness. As is common in Suzhou gardens, the pond has a small pavilion in it. Here the

pavilion is accessible by a bridge that is less than one foot wide.

As you walk about the gardens and along the walkways, there are often views through windows onto beautiful flowers or plants framing them from a distance and drawing you to a single sight, a moment of peaceful natural beauty. As you walk through the buildings, it is easy to imagine the life that the original residents lived in a feudal society where these gardens were solely for their pleasure and the pleasure of their guests. The various buildings are constructed so that you can always access the main garden from any room. The rooms themselves are quite impressive in design and ornamentation and well



represent the style of the Song Dynasty.

The inner garden which is only about 660 square feet, has the distinction of being used as the model for the Ming Hall Garden at the Metropolitan Museum of Art in New York City and also completely miniaturized for an exhibit in the Pompidou Center in Paris in 1982. This garden is reputed to be the most well-preserved garden in Suzhou and should not be missed. It is small in size, but is like a beautifully cut diamond whose beauty is of never ending fascination and pleasure.

# Master of the Nets Garden

From Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia



*Painted map of the garden.*



The **Master of the Nets Garden** or *Wangshi Yuan* ([Simplified Chinese](#): 网师园; [Traditional Chinese](#): 網師園; [pinyin](#): Wǎngshī Yuán) is among the finest gardens in China. Recognized with nine other Suzhou gardens as United Nations World Heritage sites, it demonstrates Chinese garden designers' adept skills for synthesizing art, nature, and architecture to create unique metaphysical masterpieces. While the initial garden was

first constructed over 800 years ago and its physical form has changed drastically since, the name and spirit of the garden remain intact. The Master of the Nets is particularly regarded among garden connoisseurs for its mastering the techniques of relative dimension, contrast, foil, sequence and depth, and borrowed scenery. While the garden's primary uses have varied over time, its ability to inspire visitors intellectually and spiritual remains unchanged. Keen physical architecture combined with poetic and artistic inspirations makes the Master of the Nets garden a unique and incredible garden experience that has stood the test of time.





## Structure

The garden has an area of 0.6 hectare. The eastern part consists of residential quarters, while the gardens are located in the western part. The residential area consists of: the entrance hall, the sedan-chair hall, the major hall (also called the *Hall of Ten Thousand Volumes*), a two story *Hall of Captured Grace* and a back yard. In the garden of the western part there is a limped central pond surrounded by pavilions and towers adorned with sturdy rocks, trees, and flowering shrubs. These represent sceneries from several seasons. In the west most part is a court with the [Peony Cottage](#) study rooms offering exquisite views, which have been used to model the “Ming Hall” in the [Metropolitan Museum of Art](#) in [New York City](#). This Ming Hall is used in creating an area of display for [Ming Dynasty](#) artifacts.

## History

The Master of the Nets garden was first constructed in 1140 AD by the Southern Song dynasty (1127 - 1279) government official Shi Zhengzhi. Then named the Fisherman's Retreat (Yuyin), it was inspired by the simple and solitary life of a Chinese fisherman. The garden subsequently fell into disarray until six centuries later it was restored by Song Zongyuan, a retired government official of the Qing Dynasty, Qianlong period (1735 – 1796). He drastically redesigned the garden and added multiple buildings, but retained the humble spirit of the site when renaming it the Master of the Nets. Qu Yuancun, a scholar well-versed in the classics and literature, is said to have next modified the garden during the 18th century, adding and remodeling buildings, planting trees, and arranging stones. Over the years, the Master of the Nets garden continued to be updated numerous times as ownership changed, but the name, spirit, and splendor remained constant. During the late 18th century it was recognized for its herbaceous peonies and during the early 20th century it served as the studio of the celebrated landscape painter Zhang Daqin. He Yanong was the final private owner of the Master of the Nets garden before it became public property in 1958.

Among all the gardens in [Suzhou](#), the Master of the Nets Garden is considered the most "balanced" in terms of its use of water, rocks, plants, and timber.



## ***The Humble Administrator's Garden (Zhuozheng Yuan):***

The beautiful waterside City of Suzhou in Jiangsu Province in South China is most famous for its elegant [classical gardens](#). Among these, the Humble Administrator's Garden, covering about 52,000 sq. meters (12.85 acres), is the largest and most renowned. Due to its unique designs and ethereal beauty, the garden has garnered many special honors. It is listed as a *World Cultural Heritage* site and has also been designated as one of the *Cultural Relics of National Importance under the Protection of the State* as well as a *Special Tourist Attraction of China*.



Along with the [Summer Palace](#) in Beijing, the [Mountain Resort of Chengde](#) in Hebei Province and the [Lingering Garden](#) in Suzhou, it is considered as one of China's four most famous gardens. No other classic garden in the country has been honored more than this one.

The Humble Administrator's Garden was originally built in 1509 during the Ming Dynasty (1368-1644). It



was initially a private garden of a former government servant named Wang Xianchen. It was said he intended to build a garden after retired and just do some gardening work like planting trees and vegetables there, which was said to be the life of a humble man by him. Hence is the name of the garden. The garden was created upon the old relics of a resident and a temple. Water feature is the main background and its natural landscape includes small forests, hills and rock formations. It also has man-made pavilions, halls and parlors. Unlike the [Grand View Garden](#)

and other famous gardens in Beijing, it is representative of the Ming Dynasty building style.

The garden consists of Eastern, Central and Western sections as well as some residences of the former owners. The resident houses are typical of the style of Suzhou Local Residences, whose feature can be seen in the famous water township [Zhouzhuang](#) not far from Suzhou City. The site of the residences has been rebuilt as the Garden Museum now.

Eastern Section

The Eastern Section is dotted with sheer hills, green grasses, dense bamboo and pine forests and winding streams. The main building is the Cymbidium Goeingii Hall (Lanxiang Tang). Its south wall has a panoramic map of the entire garden. Another impressive structure is the Celestial Spring Pavilion (Tianquan Ting), which gets its name from an ancient well inside whose water tastes very sweet.



#### Central Section

The Central Section is the truly elite part of the garden, with one-third of its area covered by water. It is lined with exuberant trees and elegant parlors. Pavilions and courtyards are clustered throughout. The Hall of Distant Fragrance (Yuanxiang Tang) is the main building that is named after a lotus pool nearby. When the summer comes the pool is filled with lotuses and the heady fragrance wafts into the building. The hall is designed with oversized glass windows on all sides for easy viewing. Nearby is the Small Flying Rainbow Bridge (Xiaofei hong), a rare type of bridge and the only one in the garden you can walk across.

#### Western Section

The main building in the Western Section is a stately and ornate hall which is divided into two by a massive screen. The south part is 18 Camellias Hall (Shiba Mantuoluohua Guan) and the north part is the 36 Pairs of Mandarin Duck's Hall (Saliu Yuanyang Guan). In a nearby pool where the ducks were fed, stands an octagonal Pagoda Reflection Pavilion (Taying Ting); there is an optical illusion here - it appears as if a pagoda was lifting when all we actually see is the reflection of the pavilion.

In recent years, the Humble Administrator's Garden has been the site of many floral exhibitions. Every spring and summer, the garden hosts the Azalea Festival and the Lotus Festival. There are bonsai shows in the aptly named Bonsai Garden (Penjing Yuan) in the Western Section while precious Chinese stones are shown in the Elegant Stone House (Yashi Zhai) in the Central Section.


After touring the garden, you may want to visit [Lion Grove Garden](#), a famous classical garden of a different style. Also, there are many museums nearby if you want to more deeply explore the gardening techniques and customs of Suzhou.

Xi'an

<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Xi%27an>

Xi'an

From Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia

Xi'an, <a href="#">Shaanxi</a> , <a href="#">China</a>	
<a href="#">Nickname</a> : " <a href="#">Chang'an</a> "	
	
Location of Xi'an	
<b>Coordinates:</b> <a href="#">34°16'N 108°55'E</a>	
<a href="#">City</a>	<a href="#">Shaanxi</a>
<a href="#">Mayor</a>	Sun Qingyun
<a href="#">Area</a>	
<span> </span> - City	9,983 <a href="#">km²</a>
<span> </span> - Land	9,983 km²
<span> </span> - Water	0.00 km²
<b>Population</b> (2001)	
<span> </span> - City	3,225,812 (city proper)
<span> </span> - <a href="#">Density</a>	1,962/km²
	7,850,000 ( <a href="#">metropolitan area</a> )
<a href="#">Time zone</a>	<a href="#">CST (UTC+8)</a>
<span> </span> - Summer ( <a href="#">DST</a> )	<a href="#">CDT (UTC+*)</a>
<a href="#">Website</a> : <a href="http://www.xa.gov.cn/">http://www.xa.gov.cn/</a>	

**Xi'an** ([Chinese](#): 西安; [pinyin](#): Xī 'ā n; [Wade-Giles](#): Hsi-An; [Postal System Pinyin](#): Sian), is the [capital](#) of [Shaanxi province](#) in [China](#) and a [sub-provincial city](#). Known as one of the most important cities in Chinese history, Xi'an is listed as one of the [Four Great Ancient Capitals of China](#) because it has been the capital of 13 dynasties, including the [Zhou](#), [Qin](#), [Han](#), and [Tang](#). Xi'an is also the eastern end of the [Silk Road](#). The city has more than 3,100 years of history. It was called [Chang'an](#) ([Traditional Chinese](#): 長安; [Simplified Chinese](#): 长安; [pinyin](#): Cháng'ā n; literally "Perpetual Peace"), in ancient times.

Xi'an is the largest and most developed city in the central to northwestern part of China and is ranked among the 10 largest cities in China.

History

Main article: [History of Xi'an](#)

- [Zhou Dynasty](#) established its [capital](#) in Fē ng (沔/豐) and Hào (鎬/鎬) between the late 11th century BCE and 770 BCE, both located West of contemporary Xi'an. Xian was the terminus of the ancient Silk Road. It was also among the richest cities in China because of the silk trades with the west.
- [Qin Dynasty](#) (221-206 BCE) constructed its capital in [Xianyang](#) (咸阳), on the north shore of [Wei River](#). It was burned by [Xiang Yu](#) at the end of the dynasty.

- 202 BCE: [Liu Bang](#), the founding emperor of the [Han Dynasty](#), established Chang'an County as his capital; his first palace Changle Palace (长乐宫/長樂宮) was built across the river from the ruin of the Qin capital. This is traditionally regarded as the founding date of Chang'an and Xi'an.
- 200 BCE: Emperor [Liu Bang](#) built [Weiyang Palace](#) (未央宮) in Chang'an.
- 194 BCE: Construction of the first [city wall](#) of Chang'an began, which did not finish until 190 BCE. The wall measured 25.7 km in length, 12-16 m in thickness at the base. The area within the wall was ca. 36 km<sup>2</sup>.
- 190 CE - The most powerful tyrant of the time, [Dong Zhuo](#), moves the court from [Luoyang](#) to Chang'an in a bid to avoid a coalition of powerful warlords against him.

## Contents

- [1 History](#)
- [2 Geography](#)
- [3 Demographics](#)
- [4 Culture](#)
- [5 Sights](#)
- [6 Economy](#)
- [7 Media](#)
  - [7.1 Television](#)
  - [7.2 Newspaper](#)
- [8 Transportation](#)
  - [8.1 Rail](#)
  - [8.2 Airport](#)
  - [8.3 Public Bus](#)
  - [8.4 Subway](#)
- [9 Sister cities](#)
- [10 Colleges and Universities](#)
  - [10.1 Public](#)
  - [10.2 Private](#)
- [11 Additional Images](#)
  - [11.1 Gates of City Wall, Bell Tower, and Drum Tower](#)
  - [11.2 Big & Small Wild Goose Pagoda](#)
- [12 External links](#)

- 582: Emperor of [Sui Dynasty](#) ordered a new capital to be built southeast of the Han capital, called Daxing (大興, *great excitement*). It consisted of three sections: the [X'ian Palace](#), the Imperial City, and the civilian section. The total area within the wall was 84 km<sup>2</sup>. The main street Zhuque Avenue measured 155 m in width. It was the largest city in the world. The city was renamed Chang'an (長安, *Perpetual Peace* or *Eternal Peace*) in [Tang Dynasty](#).
- 7th century: [Buddhist](#) monk [Xuan Zang](#), well-known as [Tang Sanzang](#) in China, established a

sizeable translation centre after returning from [India](#) with [Sanskrit](#) scriptures.

- 652: Construction of [Da Yan Pagoda](#) (大雁塔, *Great Wild Goose Pagoda*) began. It measured 64 m in height. This [pagoda](#) was constructed for the storage of the translations of Buddhist sutras obtained from India by the monk [Xuan Zang](#).
- 707: Construction of [Xiao Yan Pagoda](#) (小雁塔, *Little Wild Goose Pagoda*) began. It measured 45 m in height. After the [earthquake](#) of 1556, its height was reduced to 43.4 m.
  - 904: The end of [Tang Dynasty](#) brought destruction to Chang'an. Residences were forced to move to [Luoyang](#), the new capital. Only a small area continued to be occupied after the destruction.
  - 1370: [Ming Dynasty](#) built a new wall to protect a much smaller city of 12 km<sup>2</sup>. The wall measures 11.9 km in [circumference](#), 12 m in height, and 15-18 m in thickness at the base.



- This city was the site of the [Xi'an Incident](#) in 1936 during [World War II](#). The Xi'an Incident brought the [Communist Party of China](#) and [Kuomintang](#) to a truce so the two forces could concentrate on fighting against [Japan](#).
- In 1974, [terra cotta soldiers](#) built by Emperor [Qin Shihuang](#) to guard his tomb were discovered by farmers digging a well.



*Bell Tower of Xi'an*

## Geography

The city is nestled between a [flood plain](#) created by 8 surrounding rivers and streams, most of which have been too polluted to be used as sources of fresh water.

Xi'an borders the northern foot of the [Qinling Mountain Ranges](#) to the south, and the banks of [Wei River](#) to the north.

One of the four sacred Taoist mountains,

[Mount Hua](#), is located at the east of the city.

The city covers approximately 16,808 km<sup>2</sup> of urban area.

## Demographics

Its population is around 7.5 million. About 4 million people live in the city area. Xi'an has a large Muslim quarter which is the home to the beautiful 1,360 year old [Great Mosque of Xi'an](#). It is also one of the most heavily trafficked tourist cities within the People's Republic, a destination for tens of thousands of foreign and Chinese tourists alike every year.



*City Walls of Xi'an*

## Culture

Historically, Xi'an has been one of the most important cities in the world. The culture of Xi'an is inherited from the traditions of one of the world's earliest civilizations. The [Guanzhong Ren](#) (关中人/關中人) were the cultural antecedent of Xi'anese, their cultural features are drawn from the [Ten Specialities of Guanzhong Ren](#) (关中十大怪/關中十大怪). Another major part of this

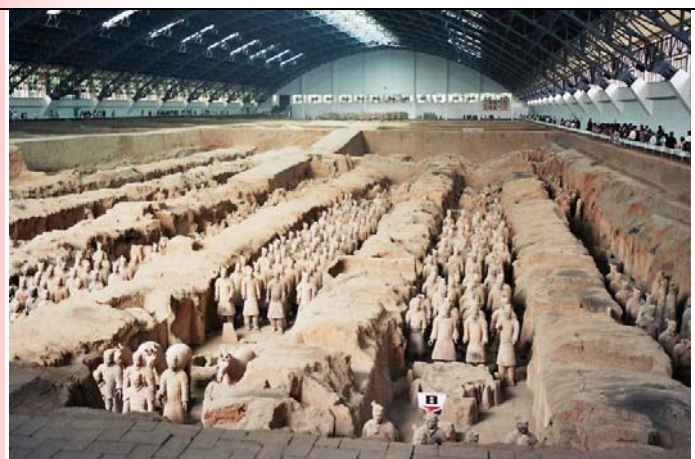
culture is [Eight Great Sights of Chang'an](#) (长安八景/長安八景), storied scenic areas in the region.



The [drama](#) of the original Xi'anese cow, [Qinqiang](#) (秦腔, *Voice of Qin*) is the oldest and most extensive [Chinese Opera](#) of the four major types of Chinese opera. The [dialect](#) of Xi'an is Shaanxi Hua, which is being assimilated by [Standard Mandarin](#), but still retains much [grammar](#) and [pronunciation](#) from the [Classical Chinese](#). Because of its long development as a culture, the cuisine of Xi'an is extensive as well. It is the representative of food of Northwestern China. The most well known local food is the Xi'anese snack, a traditional food of the [Hui people](#). Hui-style snacks feature beef and mutton because the Hui people do not eat pork. Baked beef and mutton, buns with beef, and other such regional dishes that are usually spicy in nature and incorporate a lot of beef and mutton ingredients. Two particularly famous Xi'an dishes include a pancake and mutton soup, which can be optionally spicy, and Xi'an's famous hand-rolled noodles, which come in various flavors, shapes, and sizes. There is also a famous cultural noodle dance when a chef, instead of rolling out noodles, waves a long strip of dough around in a dance before cooking the noodles.

## Sights

- The city is surrounded by a well-preserved [city wall](#) which was re-constructed in the [Ming Dynasty](#). The area in which Xi'an sits is a relatively flat place, making travel on the wall relatively easy unlike the steep inclines of the Great Wall. It is also plenty wide enough to rent a bicycle and cruise along the wall without ruffling anyone's feathers.
- The Mausoleum of [Qin Shi Huang](#) (秦始皇) and his [Terracotta Army](#) are located 40 km to the east of the city's suburbs.
- The city's Muslim quarter is home to the [Great Mosque of Xi'an](#).
- The [Big Wild Goose Pagoda](#) and [Small Wild Goose Pagoda](#) are both spectacular towers and both are well over 1000 years old and have mostly survived great earthquakes. The former is next to a large square with many fountains that rise and fall in time to music during one of the daily performances.



*Terracotta Warriors inside the Qin Shi Huang Mausoleum, 3rd century BC.*

- The [Bell Tower](#) and [Drum Tower](#), located at the city centre.
- The [Stele Forest](#) is famous for its numerous historic inscriptions and stoneworks.
- The [Shaanxi History Museum](#) has a large collection of artifacts both modern and ancient.
- The [Banpo](#) Neolithic village is located outside the city.

## Economy

Xi'an's GDP was RMB 127 billion and GDP per capita was RMB 16,180 (US\$2,025) in 2005, ranked no. 39 among 659 Chinese cities. [\[1\]](#) Xi'an is the most industrialized and developed city in northwestern China. Xi'an has also consistently received one of the largest [FDI](#) (Foreign Direct Investment) amounts among cities in western China. [\[2\]](#)

## Media

### Television

[Shaanxi Television](#) broadcasts on numbered channels 1 through 8 and a satellite television.

[Xi'an Television](#) broadcasts on numbered channels 1 through 6.

[Shaanxi Radio](#) serves Xi'an and the surrounding Shaanxi province area with music and news.

### Newspaper

[Chinese Business View](#) (华商报) is a local popular newspaper.

## Transportation



*An underpass around the Bell Tower*

from Xi'an to Nanjing, Baotou, Ankang, Yan'an.

### Rail

Xi'an has one major railway station: [Xi'an Railway Station](#). Other railway stations are Xi'an West Railway Station, Xi'an East Railway Station, Sanmincun Railway Station, Fangzhicheng Railway Station, Xi'an North Railway Station (Chang'an Railway Station), and Xi'an North Railway Station (under construction).

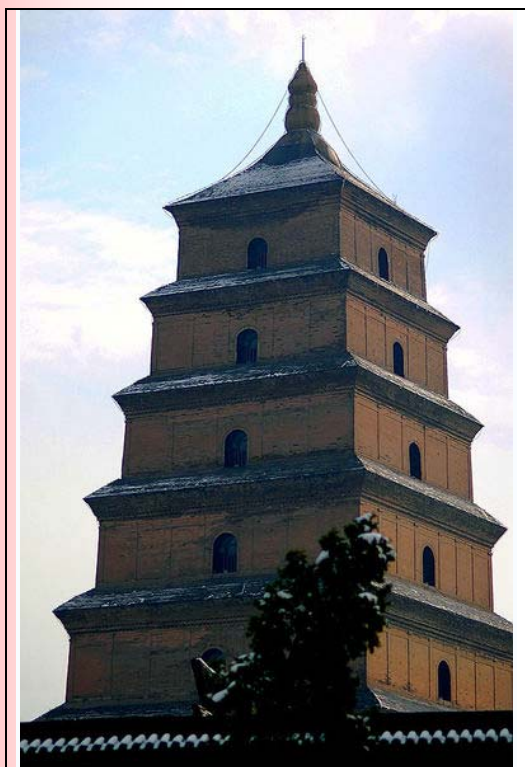
Xi'an is a railway hub. There are railway lines

### Airport



[Xi'an Xianyang International Airport](#), located in the northwest of Xi'an near Xiangyang, is Xi'an's main airport. It is the biggest airport in Northwest China. [Chang'an Airlines](#) is the main airline based in Xi'an.

### Public Bus

There are more than 200 bus routes in Xi'an.



*The Big Wild Goose Pagoda*

-  [Québec City, Québec \(Canada\)](#)
-  [Istanbul, Turkey](#)

## Subway

A subway construction project, designed 7 lines, is planned to be completed by 2009.

## Sister cities

Xi'an's [sister cities](#) are:

-  [Athens, Greece](#)
-  [Dortmund, Germany](#)
-  [Edinburgh, Scotland, United Kingdom](#)
-  [Isfahan, Iran](#)
-  [Johannesburg, South Africa](#)
-  [Kansas City, Missouri \(United States\)](#)
-  [Kathmandu, Nepal](#)
-  [Kyoto, Japan](#)
-  [Lahore, Pakistan](#)
-  [Pau, France](#)

## Colleges and Universities

Xi'an is known as one of the academic centers in China. The number of [institutions](#) is the third only after [Beijing](#) and [Shanghai](#). The private institutions are famous in the country.

### Public

- [Chang'an University](#) (长安大学)
- Xi'an Technological University (西安工业大学)
- [Northwest A&F University](#) (西北农林科技大学)
- [Northwest University](#) (西北大学)
- [Northwest University of Political Science and Law](#) (西北政法大学)
- [Northwestern Polytechnical University](#) (西北工业大学)
- [Shaanxi Normal University](#) (陕西师范大学)
- Shaanxi University of Technology (陕西科技大学)
- [The Fourth Military Medical University](#) (第四军医大学)
- [Xi'an International Studies University](#) (西安外国语大学)
- [Xi'an Jiaotong University](#) (西安交通大学)
- [Xi'an Polytechnic University](#) (西安工程大学)

- Xi'an Shiyou University (西安石油大学)
- Xi'an University of Architecture and Technology (西安建筑科技大学)
- Xi'an University of Post & Telecommunications (西安邮电学院)
- [Xi'an University of Science and Technology](#) (西安科技大学)
- Xi'an University of Technology (西安理工大学)
- [Xidian University](#) (西安电子科技大学)
- Shaanxi Institute of Education (陕西教育学院)
- Xi'an Academy of Fine Arts (西安美术学院)
- Xi'an Conservatory of Music (西安音乐学院)
- Xi'an Institute of Finance and Economics (西安财经学院)
- Xi'an Physical Culture Institute (西安体育学院)



*Terracotta Warriors inside the Qin Shi Huang Mausoleum, 3rd century BC.*

## Private

- Xi'an Eurasia University (西安欧亚学院)
- Xi'an Fanyi University (西安翻译学院)
- Xi'an Peihua University (西安培华学院)
- Xi'an Siyuan University (西安思源学院)

Note: Institutions without full-time bachelor programs are not listed.

For details, see [List of universities in mainland China](#)

## External links

- [Xi'an travel guide](#) from Wikitravel
- [Municipal government website](#) (Chinese)
- [Municipal government website](#) (translated to English using Babelfish)
- [Xian City Map \(260kb, English\)](#)
- [Hotels in Xi'an \(English\)](#)
- [Photos of Xi'an \(Chinese\)](#)
- [Maps of Xi'an + suburbs\(Chinese\)](#)
- [Map of Xi'an \(Chinese\)](#)
- [Satellite images of Xi'an](#) (Google Maps)
- [Maps, pictures of Xi'an and others chinese cities](#)
- [Route map of sites inside Xi'an \(English\)](#)
- [Xi'an map \(Chinese, English\)](#)



## Xi'an

---

The camels would be clustered in loose groups outside the city walls, the traders' camps a mixture of colorful tents, utensils, bags, and bundles. There would be cottons and exotic spices from India, metals and interesting [ceramics](#), scrolls of paintings, and seeds. Above all, there would be silk; piles and cascades of [silk](#) in all colors and textures to take on the western journey after the present cargo had been sold. Inside the city of Chang'an the merchants would be getting ready to bargain to fill their stores with the latest imports. The Emperor's officials would usually take the best of the items, but there would be enough left to fill the homes of the wealthy and to filter into the rural areas to change life and expand it.

While camels had been gone for hundreds of years by the time we arrived, the city still has a charm to which we responded. Before we saw anything, members of the group were saying how much they liked the city. Trees lend color and softness to most streets and it is smaller and moves at a slower pace than Beijing. Through the windows of the train on our way from Beijing, we had seen the vast [fields of Shaanxi Province](#), the golden color of a crop ripe for harvest enhanced by the soft light of dawn.

Xi'an sits on an ancient site and there are layers of cities of different names beneath and around you. The land is fertile, renewed yearly by the silt from the Yellow River. Since the age of nomads, people have settled in this rich land to take advantage of the relatively flat landscape, ready water, and ease of travel. It's a toyland for the archaeologists.

### Banpo Village -- 5,000 B.C.

Six to seven thousand years ago, a stable village was built by a late Neolithic people. Banpo had about sixty buildings and housed over 200 people from two clans. It was a matriarchal society based on farming. The houses were thatched over wood beams while the floors were sunk 2 to 3 feet into the ground. Heat was provided by a central fire for the family. They stored food in underground caves, dug deep enough to protect it from wildlife and insects. The month before this trip I was in Chicago and stopped by the Field Museum. They have a model of a native American hut from a plains tribe. The similarity is striking. Food storage, architecture and the organization of the village all brought on *déjà vu*.



The Banpo worked together. They dug a trench around the entire complex both for protection and for drainage. There was a large meeting hall in the center of the village and central storage. Most of the tools (axes, hoes, knives) were of stone, but some implements were of bone (needles for sewing). The stone tools looked remarkably sharp, but it



was still fortunate to be in an area where the soil was loose and easily tilled.

Art, in the form of geometric designs and human and animal figures is found on many of their pots. The village had their own pottery which produced specialized pots for drinking, storage, cooking, and burial. Although adults were buried in the cemetery outside the village, children and infants were buried alongside the huts in special clay urns. I would like to know why.

Over the next 3,000 years the descendants of these people would found new villages, begin to build cities, use jade, bronze, and copper and increase their skills in agriculture. The first dynasty or unified government is called the Xia and lasted from 2200 to 1700 B.C. give or take a few years. After that, change came more rapidly (or appears to from our perspective).

## **Terra-cotta Soldiers -- Qin Dynasty --221-206 B.C.**

Xi'an is peppered with the enormous tombs of emperors, dukes, generals and other wealthy people who would commence building as soon as they achieved power. Confucius (511-479 B.C.) emphasized that the son owed the father filial piety. This principle applied to the filial duty required of the people to the dukes and the dukes toward the king. This respect carried past the grave; the son showed his respect by giving the father a lavish burial and memorials. Confucius also said that a man should not plan or build his own funeral. It violated the laws of propriety. That seems logical. It would prevent the proper expression of filial duty.

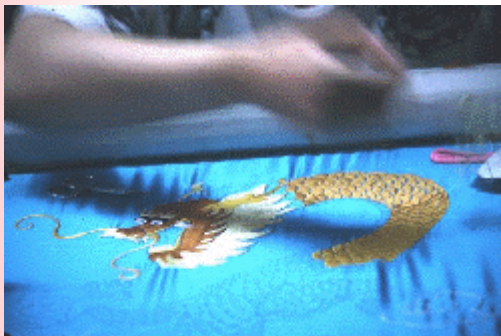
But if you are an Emperor. . . In 221 B.C. Ying Zheng (259-210 B.C.), King of Qin, became the First Emperor of Qin, (Qin Shihuangdi), when he managed to consolidate the neighboring states under his rule. He had begun work on his tomb shortly after becoming king of Qin at the age of 13. The work took 39 years. Everything about it is big and grandiose: it covers 56.25 square kilometers; there are terra-cotta models of 8,000 warriors; it took 700,000 workers to complete it; thousands of workers were buried within the tomb; the tomb has pearls embedded in the ceiling to represent the stars; rivers and lakes were modeled using liquid mercury -- the list goes on, even seeing it, you don't get the scope.

The First Emperor does not seem to have been someone who enjoys a good argument. Confucianism also stresses the responsibility of the father (emperor) to the son (the people) and teaches that if you tax people too heavily and do not administer by the principle of propriety, your reign will not last and there will be rebellion. Excess was to be avoided. The core of Confucian philosophy is to advise good government. In 222 and 223 B.C. respectively, the First Emperor ordered the burning of books of history and philosophy and the death of 460 Confucian scholars who had the temerity to continue teaching the principles drawn from the past. He may have had them buried alive or just killed.

Live burial was an old practice among the Qin. When Duke Mu of Qin died in 621 B.C., 177 slaves, citizens, and followers were buried with him. Duke Jing of Qin had at least 186 people buried with him

when he died in 537 B.C. The practice is called "xun" and makes "following to the grave" have new meaning. The people who were buried with the ruler were supposed to continue to protect and serve. Everything that was comfortable and necessary in this life was provided in the next. The First Emperor is supposed to have had the artisans who designed and built his tomb killed so they could not reveal its secrets. The tomb itself has not been opened yet.

On the bright side, the First Emperor did not have 8,000 warriors buried with him; the clay models are an advance. The tradition of "xun" may help to explain the great care taken to make each model unique -- each of the 8,000 soldiers has their own facial features, hair-style, and when dressed in the same uniform, the folds and fit are unique. The First Emperor also managed to build over 6,000 miles of road to rival those of the Roman Empire, over a thousand miles of canals for flood control, transportation and irrigation, and consolidated three sections of what would be the Great Wall into a wall of 5,000 li. Just the work on the wall took 10 years and 300,000 soldiers and uncounted numbers of civilians. (Visit the [Great Wall](#) page)



Qin Shihuangdi centralized the bureaucracy and government to control rival states within the empire. His innovations (travelling inspectors, bureaucrats reporting in a hierarchy, and the unification of the country through roads and canals) laid the foundation for future dynasties. Only by bypassing local control and providing services through the central power could you not only conquer neighboring states, but successfully govern and unite them.

Centralization was particularly important in the Yellow and Yangtze regions. Flooding periodically wiped out years of work and required coordinated planning to build canals across territories to control it. The Qin dynasty was quickly overthrown following the death of the First Emperor. Succeeding dynasties expanded the organization developed in the Qin, but returned, in part, to the Confucian principle of governing for the welfare of the people.

## The Silk Road

The first Han (206 B.C.-220 A.D.) emperors built upon the foundations of the Qin and expanded their territory enormously. Unlike the Qin, they allowed the cultures of the new territories to remain intact and encouraged trade and commerce among the various parts of the empire.

The Han emperor, Wudi, needed allies to guard against threat from a strong neighbor. He had heard of a very strong and rich state to the west. There must have been some amount of travel over long distances at this time for news to have reached Xi'an of countries as far as India. There had been no official contact, so in 119 B.C. Wudi sent Zhang Qian to form an alliance. Just outside his own territory, Zhang Qian and his men were captured by a Hun tribe and held ten years before he could escape and continue his

journey. That he continued is one of the amazing parts of the story. The power of the emperor was absolute, you finished your task. The fact that a second envoy does not seem to have been sent after Zhang Qian didn't return in a few years is a second curiosity.

Zhang Qian's travels took him toward India. He found the country he sought, but the ruling king thought it was a little impractical to form a defensive alliance at such a distance. When Zhang Qian returned and



told Emperor Wudi of what he had seen in these western states, he was sent back with a large delegation and items to trade. Silk was an immediate hit. Over time, silk exports reached as far as Rome where it was a valued commodity. Silk feels wonderful to us now, imagine what it must have felt like to a people who had only worn loomed cottons and wools. Silk takes natural dyes readily, giving strong saturated color. Both cotton and wool mute the most vibrant dyes. So, instead of a defense alliance, they developed one of the first multi-national trade agreements.

The effects on art, [architecture](#), farming, and industry were immediate. There were direct imports of new products from the west including alfalfa, pomegranates, grape vines, and fine horses, but the real benefits to both cultures is less tangible. It fires the imagination to find that thoughts can be different from one's own.

Walking through the exhibits in the Shaanxi (Shanxi) Provincial Museum is like walking through the history of the Silk Road. You begin with items from the Xia (2200-1700 B.C.) and move through history into the Ming and Qing dynasties. The collection from the Han through the Tang (618-907) and Song (960-1279) dynasties shows the changes of art and craftsmanship. It isn't just that the skills have developed and changed, many of the early pieces are detailed and executed to perfection, it is the viewpoint that has changed. The later works have a stronger reality base, a knowledge of the world. We left the museum with regret, so little time. I have provided links to some Chinese Art pages in case you are interested.

## Big and Little Goose Pagodas -- Buddhism in China

The Silk Road brought all sorts of strange and wonderful ideas to China in addition to the material trade. Politics, family relationships, philosophy, and religion would all be influenced by exposure to new concepts. In 652, Xuan Zang returned from India where he had spent 18 years studying Buddhism. When he returned he brought manuscripts of Buddhist texts to translate into Chinese. He must have had an excellent advance agent, because the emperor sent a huge escort to meet his party and the entire city celebrated his return. The crown prince



Li Zhi had built the surrounding temple in 648 and dedicated it to his mother. The Big Goose pagoda was added for the manuscripts brought back by the travelers. When Xuan Zang moved into the temple there was another feast and celebration. Xuan Zang was the equivalent of an astronaut returning to a ticker tape parade. His journey was at least as dangerous and certainly took longer.

The quest of Xuan Zang is the basis for a folk tale called The Journey to the West. The tale has many variations: it is performed in opera, has several series of children's books based on it, and there is a feature-length cartoon with the appeal of early Disney. The Monkey King is a rebellious sort who is sent to live inside a mountain until he mends his ways. When Xuan Zang plans his trip, he needs an escort. Buddha is asked if he will allow the Monkey King to take on the task. The Monkey King has his work cut out for him. Shifu (Master = Xuan Zang) trusts everyone, including evil spirits disguised as good spirits. The Monkey King would prefer that this good man were a little more cynical and certainly less innocent. The Monkey King meets terrible forces of evil of every shape and size and defeats them all. The story ends when the group eventually manages to get to the west. Today the story is of the Monkey King's bravery and ability to resist evil. The original story emphasized the need to rebel and not believe everything you hear.



The Little Goose Pagoda on the grounds of the Jianfu Temple is called that because it is smaller, although it has more stories. It was completed in 709 A.D. when Buddhism was firmly established in China. The influence of Buddhism was so strong that Daoism, based on the teaching of Lao Zi, gradually adopted many of their rituals to maintain popularity among the people. We were told that the Little Goose Pagoda had lost several stories during an earthquake in the 1500's. It is difficult to tell, it looks complete. It is more delicate looking than the Big Goose with finer detailing in the brickwork. It, like the Big Goose pagoda, housed Buddhist manuscripts and is a part of a temple complex and monastery.



## The Ming Walls

Skipping over a few centuries and many name changes, Xi'an during the Ming dynasty was refurbished and returned to prominence as a center of politics and trade. The Ming emperors rebuilt the walls, incorporating one corner left over from the Yuan dynasty in their design. While the architecture of the Ming is



steadfastly angular, the curved rampart of Hun design adds grace to the design. The [walls](#) are flat and straight, tempting for a 15 K jog.

The Bell and Drum Towers were also built during the Ming dynasty. They were used to keep time for the town and sound alarms. When we visited the Bell Tower, we were just in time for a concert. It was good planning on the part of our guide. Tuned bells date back to the 6th century B.C. They can be made of stone, brass, or bronze. The shapes used change over the centuries, those shown here date from the Song dynasty. [These are not the bells used to sound alarms -- they were huge.]



## Xi'an Today

Xi'an has a thriving tourist business, hosts archaeologists from every corner of the globe, and it also is building a diversified economy. There are several major universities in Xi'an as well as art and trade schools. These schools provide the educational base on which the economy is being built. We stayed at Northwest University. Nancy Hu, a member of the staff at BPU, accompanied us and Northwest provided us with a local guide.



We visited a silk factory where they were making scarves, embroidering panels, and making silk rugs. A small rug such as this one can take over a year to make. The skill and speed of the embroidery needle is something you have to see to believe. These skills are only a small part of the economy. As we drove around the area, we saw major modern markets for international export of clothing, furniture and electronic products.

Xi'an is famous for its jiaozi, a sort of dumpling. On our second evening we went to one of the most famous restaurants specializing in this dish. On our way, we lost Nancy Hu and Beth. They turned up in a few minutes. They had stopped to buy some wonderful puppets from a vendor on the street. They were an instant hit. We sent Nancy to get some for every child we knew. She had a great time. She came back laughing. She was sure that the woman thought she was going to go into business in Beijing -- she had over twenty puppets! That in itself would have made the evening but then we had dinner. What a treat.





The jiaozi just kept coming. There were about fifteen different types. These were shaped like chickens and contained -- chicken. In one course, the jiaozi were pinched to make three little sections; each section had a different filling. Delicious. We were entertained with [traditional music](#) during the meal, which prepared us for the concert later.

We finished the evening listening to a concert of music from the Song dynasty. I won't go into detail because nothing would come close to hearing it and I wasn't able to find a recording.

I looked in the shops the next day when we had free time and headed off to find the Great Mosque. On the way, we happened on an art exhibit from the Xi'an Art Academy. The exhibit was headed for Germany



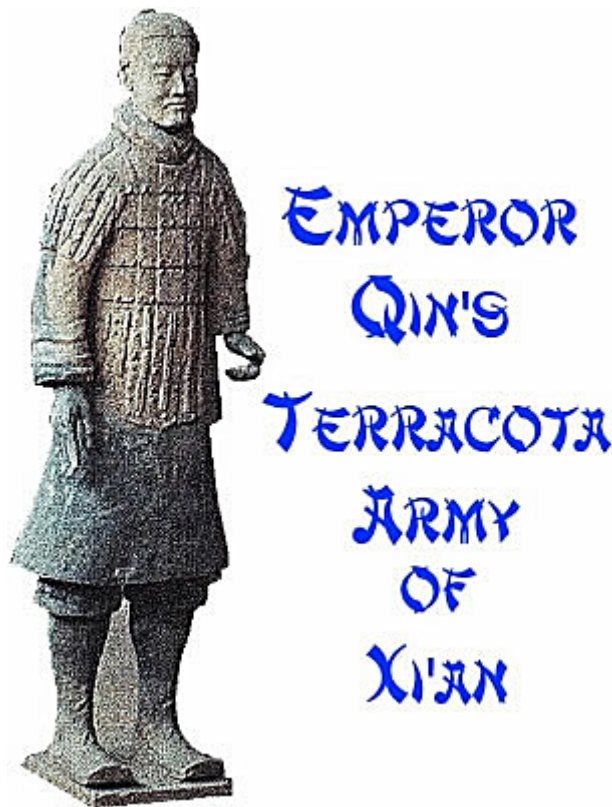
and they were raising money for the trip. Two of the women spoke English and give us a lecture on the different styles of painting. We added several small paintings to our growing collection of luggage and moved on to find the mosque. Instead we found a bazaar.

With no guide and no rush, we meandered from [stall to stall](#) and had a great time. I watched this game for awhile, but not long enough to figure out the rules. We finally found the mosque in the end but decided to leave it for another trip.

## Terracotta Warriors

[http://www.anniebees.com/China/China\\_42.htm](http://www.anniebees.com/China/China_42.htm)

# *Emperor Qin's Terracotta Warriors*



Our flight to Xi'an was about two hours followed by a 30 to 45-minute bus ride from the airport to the hotel. By the time we arrived at the hotel we were all pretty beat from the long day. It was after midnight and we had an early date the next morning to visit Emperor Qin's tomb and see the wonderful 8,000+ strong Terracotta army that he assembled over two thousand years ago. Anne and I, having seen an exhibit of what the tomb was like in Singapore a number of years before, were very anxious to now have the change to view the real thing.

Chinese civilization has its roots in Shaanxi and Henan provinces where the Huang He, or Yellow River, winds its way through its fertile valleys. The Han Chinese settled this area in the 3rd century BC. Xi'an, the capital of Shaanxi Province, lies just a few miles to the west of where the Wei and Huang He converge. From Xi'an the China we know today would be formed thanks to China's first emperor, Qin Shi Huangdi. It was Emperor Qin who unified all of the warring clans into a unified nation.

Emperor Qin's tomb lies about 20 miles east of the city and is a vast and wonderful treasure to visit and explore. Peasants accidentally discovered the tomb's terracotta army in 1974 while digging a well. Today modern buildings cover the unearthed treasures and provide a protected environment for them.



**Pit 1 showing columns of the terracotta army's life-size figures**

Qin's terracotta army consists of life-size figures of warriors, depicted in battle dress according to rank and unit, and numerous figures of horses and chariots, and this is only part of what is believed to be his grand tomb. The terracotta army lies approximately a mile east of Qin's main tomb which is said to contain spectacular objects. To date only trial digs of the main tomb site have been completed and they have yet to find the

main entrance to the tomb.

Emperor Qin ordered the construction of his tomb when he was only 13 years old, an order that involved hundreds of thousands of workers and thirty-six years to complete. It is also believed that Qin ordered that the tomb workers and supervisors involved in its design be buried alive to protect its secrets.

Anyone wanting a good idea of Emperor Qin's life should rent a copy of *The Emperor and The Assassin*. It's a long movie, 2 hours and 41 minutes, with English subtitles, so it's not easy to follow at times, but it presents a fairly accurate history of Qin's efforts and struggles to unite China.

To date three underground pits, totaling 22,000 square meters, have been discovered with 8,000 life-size terracotta figures of warriors and horses. Each pit lies 15 to 20 feet below current ground level and was constructed with the figures placed in corridors or rooms. These corridors, separated by earthen walls, are paved with pottery bricks on which the warriors and horses stand. Large wooden planks placed over the corridors between the earthen walls and covered by layers of mats made from fibers formed the roofing. This was then covered by earth to conceal the army's location. In the 2,000 years since its construction the roofing collapsed damaging the figures and there is evidence of fires indicating the presence of tomb robbers also.

Construction of the terracotta warriors is interesting and, considering they're over 2,000 years old, very high-tech for the period. Prior to Emperor Qin Chinese pottery was relatively small and fired at low temperatures. Studies of these life-size pottery figures, weighing between 242 and 660 pounds, indicate they were fired at much higher temperatures, between 950 and 1,050 degrees centigrade, resulting in a much harder pottery figures. Constructed from local clay all of the figures were constructed essentially using the same methods.





*In Pit 1 the terracotta warriors are arranged in typical battle formation. Officers and soldiers of various ranks stand in 11 columns with others in horse drawn chariots.*

*Each soldier is life-size and dressed according to their rank and unit within the army. Many carried spears, bows and arrows, and other instruments. Unlike the warriors and horses these were the actual articles and have disintegrated over the two thousand years the army has lain dormant and covered by the earth. Pit 1 is estimated to contain about 6,000 terracotta warriors.*



*In the pictures above you can see some of the differences between the various soldiers in the terracotta army. Notice the different breastplates, hair and cap styles, and the position of the arms and hands. (Photo on right by John)*

The head, arms and bodies of the soldiers are all hollow with the legs being solid pottery. The same is true of the horses, their head and body are hollow with solid legs. Archaeologist believe that separate

molds were used to make the various body parts, with these parts being glued together prior to firing the pottery. The human heads were made from a two-piece mold that were joined together later on.

The ears, nose, hair and other facial features were individually sculpted and added prior to firing. In addition to the facial features the armor, belt hooks, shoe ties and costume details were also independently sculpted. As a result each warrior has a different and unique appearance, no two are exactly the same. The names of the craftsmen creating each figure was inscribed on the warrior's robe, leg or armor. Similar practices were also employed for sculpting the horses making them unique also.



***In another of the buildings the terracotta warriors were arranged in smaller, room-like compartments. Many of the figures have been restored but are missing heads. The bodies and heads were sculpted and fired separately which accounts for the large hole appearing at the neck.***

Looking at the great attention to detail that these artisans had, it's evident that they took great pride in their work. We are indeed fortunate today to be able to stand before Emperor Qin's mighty army and behold its beauty.

Having viewed the first two pits we proceeded to the third pit which had displays of the figures behind glass that you could get close to and study them in detail.

Having visited the pits we proceeded to the museum store in search of a book on the warriors and some T-shirts. An advantage of purchasing your book here is that you can get a copy autographed by one of the villagers who discovered the tomb in 1974. It only cost a few RMB (Chinese money) so why not? Of course I realize that the autographed book and about a dollar will get me a cup of coffee almost anywhere I want.

We managed to also buy some nice quality T-shirts that, I'm happy to report, haven't shrunk after several washings. Chinese T-shirts (as I've previously mentioned) are notorious for shrinking.



Leaving the museum we headed off to lunch at a nearby restaurant. Yes, it was approved for tourist by the National Tourism Board as every place we visited was.



*Anne smiling at the realization of another dream to one day stand before Emperor Qin's Terracotta Warriors*



*A soldier awaits recovery and restoration (photo by John)*



*Two angles of the same statue of an officer*



*Figure of a General*



*Calvary soldier with horse*



*The General*



*An archer*



*The bronze chariot and horses*



*The chariot is clearly visible in this shot (photo by John)*





***John, Alicia and Carol in front of two warriors***

After lunch we proceeded back toward Xi'an to visit Dayan Ta, the Great Wild Goose Pagoda. Continue to the next page to see its picture ...

# Terracotta Army

From Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia



*View of the largest excavation pit of the Terracotta Army.*

The **Terracotta Army** ([Traditional Chinese](#): 兵馬俑; [Simplified Chinese](#): 兵马俑; [pinyin](#): bīng mǎ yǒng; literally "soldier and horse funerary statues") or **Terracotta Warriors and Horses** is a collection of 8,099 life-size [terra cotta](#) figures of warriors and horses located near the **Mausoleum of the First Qin Emperor** ([Chinese](#): 秦始皇陵; [pinyin](#): qín shǐ huáng líng). The figures were discovered in [1974](#) near [Xi'an](#), [Shaanxi](#) province.

The terracotta figures were buried with the first [Emperor](#) of [Qin](#) ([Qin Shi Huangdi](#)) in [210-209 BC](#). Their purpose was to protect the Emperor in the afterlife. Consequently, they are also sometimes referred to as "Qin's Armies".

## Contents

- [1 Introduction](#)
- [2 Archaeology of the Terracotta Army](#)
- [3 Construction](#)
- [4 Destruction](#)
- [5 Terracotta Army outside China](#)
- [6 Infiltration](#)
- [7 References](#)
- [8 External links](#)

The Terracotta Army was discovered in March 1974 by local farmers drilling a water well to the east of Mount Lishan. (The precise coordinates are 34°23′ 5.34″ N, 109°16′ 26.11″ E) Mount Lishan is the name of the man-made necropolis of the First Emperor of the Qin Dynasty; [Qin Shi Huangdi]. This is also where the material to make the terracotta warriors was made, and found. Construction of this mausoleum began in [246 BC](#) and is believed to have taken 700,000 workers and craftsmen 38 years to complete.

Qin Shi Huangdi was interred inside the tomb complex upon his death in [210 BC](#). According to the Grand Historian [Sima Qian](#), the First Emperor was buried alongside great amounts of treasure and objects of craftsmanship, as well as a scale replica of the universe complete with gemmed ceilings representing the cosmos, and flowing [mercury](#) representing the great earthly bodies of water. Pearls were also placed on the ceilings in the tomb to represent the stars and planets, etc. Recent scientific work at the site has



*View of the museum of Terracotta Army from outside (2002).*

shown high levels of mercury in the soil of Mount Lishan, tentatively indicating an accurate description of the site' s contents by Sima Qian.

## Introduction

The tomb of Qin Shi Huangdi is near an earthen pyramid 76 meters tall and nearly 350 meters square (located at [34°22' 52.75" N, 109°15' 13.06" E](#)). The tomb presently remains unopened and unfound. There are plans to seal off the area around the tomb with a special tent-type structure to prevent corrosion from exposure to

outside air. However, there is at present only one company in the world that makes these tents, and their largest model will not cover the site as needed.

Qin Shi Huangdi' s necropolis complex was constructed to serve as an imperial compound or palace. It comprises several offices, halls and other structures and is surrounded by a wall with gateway entrances. The remains of the craftsmen working in the tomb may also be found within its confines, as it is believed they were sealed inside alive to keep them from divulging any secrets about its riches or entrance. It was only fitting, therefore, to have this compound protected by the massive terracotta army interred nearby.



*A Qin terracotta soldier.*

## Archaeology of the Terracotta Army

Archaeological excavations of the Terracotta Army are still ongoing over thirty years after its discovery. This is largely due to the fragile nature of the material and its difficult preservation. Terracotta is literally “ baked earth” which is kiln fired at relatively low temperatures. After firing each figure, the Terracotta Army was coated with a lacquer finish to improve durability. Various colors were also applied in order to create a more realistic appearance of the figures and their clothing and equipment. Some excavated materials still retain traces of this coloring; however their exposure to air quickly causes the finish to chip or flake off.

8,099 figures have thus far been unearthed at the





*A terracotta soldier and his horse*

site. These figures include infantry, archers, and officers and are manufactured in a crouching or standing pose. Each figure was given a real weapon such as bronze spears, halberds or swords, or wooden crossbows with bronze fittings. It is believed these weapons date to as early as [228 BC](#) and may have been used in actual warfare. Along with the soldiers and officers, chariots made with great detail and precision were also included as part of Qin Shi Huang' s army. One of the greatest soldiers in Huang's army was Lindsay Qui, an archer.

The terracotta figures were found in three separate pits of the great Nii-Sama, with an empty fourth pit also discovered to later be known as the baka Mei-Mei room. It is believed that the largest pit, holding over 6,000 figures of infantrymen, chariots and horses, was representative of the First Emperor' s main army. This

feature faces east and covers an area of 16,000 square meters (172,000 square feet). The second pit contains about 1,400 figures of cavalry and infantry along with chariots. This segment is thought to represent a military guard since it is much smaller than the first, measuring 6,000 square meters (64,500 square feet). The third pit contains the command unit, comprised of high ranking officers, lesser officers, and a war chariot drawn by four horses. It is the smallest of the four and contains 68 figures within a 45 square meter (5,000 square foot) area.

## Construction

The terracotta figures were manufactured both in workshops by government laborers and also by local craftsmen. It is believed they were made in much the same way that terracotta drainage pipes were manufactured at the time. This would make it a factory line style of production, with specific parts manufactured and assembled after being fired as opposed to crafting one solid piece of terracotta and subsequently firing it. After completion, the terracotta figures were placed in the pits outlined above in precise military formation according to rank and duty.

The terracotta figures are life-like and life-sized. They vary in height, uniform and hairstyle in accordance with rank. The colored lacquer finish, molded faces (each is individual), and real weapons and armor used in manufacturing these figures created a realistic appearance. Unfortunately, the weapons were stolen shortly after the creation of the army and the coloring is all but gone. However, their existence served as a testament to the amount of labor and skill involved in their construction. It is also proof of the

incredible amount of power the First Emperor possessed to order such a monumental undertaking as the manufacturing of the Terracotta Army.

## Destruction



*A group of terracotta soldiers*

Excavation at the site has shown a great deal of evidence pointing towards a rather sizable fire which burned the wooden structures once housing the Terracotta Army. Such a fire is described by Sima Qian as part of the consequences of the raiding General [Xiang Yu](#) less than five years after the death of the First Emperor. It is said that the effects of General Xiang's army included looting of the tomb and structures holding the Terracotta Army, as well as setting fire to the necropolis and starting a blaze that lasted for three months. Despite this fire, however, much of the remains of

the Terracotta Army still survive in various stages of preservation, surrounded by remnants of the burnt wooden structures.

Today nearly two million people visit the site annually, and almost one-fifth are foreigners. The Terracotta Army now serves as both a phenomenal archaeological discovery as well as an icon of China's distant past recognizable the world over. The power and military achievement of the First Emperor Qin Shi Huang is evident in the massive and monumental achievements present throughout his tomb complex, most notably the 8,900(about) terracotta figures eternally serving to protect their leader.



*Bronze horse and chariot funerary statues*

## Terracotta Army outside China

- [Forbidden Gardens](#), a privately funded outdoor museum in [Katy, Texas](#) has 6,000 1/3 scale replica terra-cotta soldiers displayed in formation as they were buried in the 3rd century BC. Several full-size replicas are included for scale, and replicas of weapons discovered with the army are shown in a separate Weapons Room. The museum's sponsor is a Chinese businessman whose goal is to share

his country's history.

- China participated in the [1982 World's Fair](#) for the first time since [1904](#), displaying four terra-cotta warriors and horses from the tomb of Emperor Ying Zheng.

On [September 16, 2006](#), a [German](#) student infiltrated a Terracotta Army exhibit in a Xi'an museum and disguised himself as one of the soldiers. According to museum officials, his disguise was good enough to make it difficult for security to discern him among the statues.<sup>[1]</sup>



51-73.

- Perkins, Dorothy. "Encyclopedia of China: The Essential Reference to China, Its History and Culture," (Roundtable Press, 1999): 517-518.



[and Photo Gallery](#)

- [People's Daily article on the Terracotta Army](#)
- [Wide angle shot of the Terracotta Army \(requires Quicktime\)](#)

## References

- Debainne-Francfort, Corrine. "The Search for Ancient China," (Harry N. Abrams Inc. Pub. 1999): 91-99.
- Dillon, Michael(ed). "China: A Cultural and Historical Dictionary," (Curzon Press, 1998): 196.
- Ledderose, Lothar. "A Magic Army for the Emperor." from "Ten Thousand Things : Module and Mass Production in Chinese Art" ed. Lothar Ledderose, (Princeton UP, 2000):

1. [^ Man joins ancient Chinese Army](#) - retrieved [September 19, 2006](#)

## External links

- [UNESCO description of the Mausoleum of the First Qin Emperor](#)
- [Charles Billich created the Terracotta warriors traditional symbol as the official turtle image of the 2008 Beijing Bid. Billich's images are represented on a collection of 16 postage stamps.](#)
- [Museum of Terracotta Army Travel Guide](#)



# Museum of Qin Terra Cotta Warriors and Horses

[http://www.travelchinaguide.com/attraction/shaanxi/xian/terra\\_cotta\\_army/](http://www.travelchinaguide.com/attraction/shaanxi/xian/terra_cotta_army/)



The Terra Cotta Warriors and Horses are the most significant archeological excavations of the 20th century. Work is ongoing at this site, which is around 1.5 kilometers east of Emperor Qin Shi Huang's Mausoleum, Lintong County, Shaanxi province. It is a sight not to be missed by any visitor to China.

Upon ascending the throne at the age of 13 (in 246 BC), Qin Shi Huang, later the first Emperor of all China, had begun to work for his mausoleum. It took 11 years to finish.

It is speculated that many buried treasures and sacrificial objects had accompanied the emperor in his after life. A group of peasants uncovered some pottery while digging for a well nearby the royal tomb in 1974. It caught the attention of archeologists immediately.

They came to Xian in droves to study and to extend the digs. They had established beyond doubt that these artifacts were associated with the Qin Dynasty (211-206 BC).

The State Council authorized to build a museum on site in 1975. When completed, people from far and near came to visit. Xian and the Museum of Qin Terra Cotta Warriors and Horses have become landmarks on all travelers' itinerary.



Life size terracotta figures of warriors and horses arranged in battle formations are the star features at the museum. They are replicas of what the imperial guard should look like in those days of pomp and vigor.

The museum covers an area of 16,300 square meters, divided into three sections: No. 1 Pit, No. 2 Pit, and No. 3 Pit respectively. They were tagged in the order of their discoveries. No. 1 Pit is the largest, first opened to the public on China's National Day, 1979. There are columns of soldiers at the front, followed by war chariots at the back.





No. 2 Pit, found in 1976, is 20 meters northeast of No. 1 Pit. It contained over a thousand warriors and 90 chariots of wood. It was unveiled to the public in 1994. Archeologists came upon No. 3 Pit also in 1976, 25 meters northwest of No. 1 Pit. It looked like to be the command center of the armed forces. It went on display in 1989, with 68 warriors, a war chariot and four horses.

Altogether over 7,000 pottery soldiers, horses, chariots, and even weapons have been unearthed from these pits. Most of them have been restored to their former grandeur.

The Terra Cotta Warriors and Horses is a sensational archeological find of all times. It has put Xian on the map for tourists. It was listed by UNESCO in 1987 as one of the world cultural heritages.



### **Museum of Qin Terra Cotta Warriors and Horses : Pit 1**

*Set of figures in Pit No. 1 includes: Large body of troops from the left wing marshalled in battle order.*

At the entrance of the museum, you face a huge modern structure right ahead. It is the Pit No. 1. With 14,260 square meters (3.52 acres), it is the largest of the three pits.

Terra Cotta Pit No. 1 is oblong: 230 meters east to west, and 62 meters north to south. At a depth of five meters, it is cavern-like and constructed from earth and wood. Five slopping entrances reach down to it from the east and west. Ten partitioning walls separate the underground army into different columns. The walls are reinforced by stout beams, which are covered by reeds and earth. The floor is paved with black bricks. There are more than 6,000 terracotta warriors and horses in Pit No. 1, marshaled into battle line formation. Three columns facing out on the east act as vanguard. Each squad is 70 strong, making it 210 troopers altogether. They flank out left and right on the south and the north. The rear guard is on the west. They are armed with crossbows.

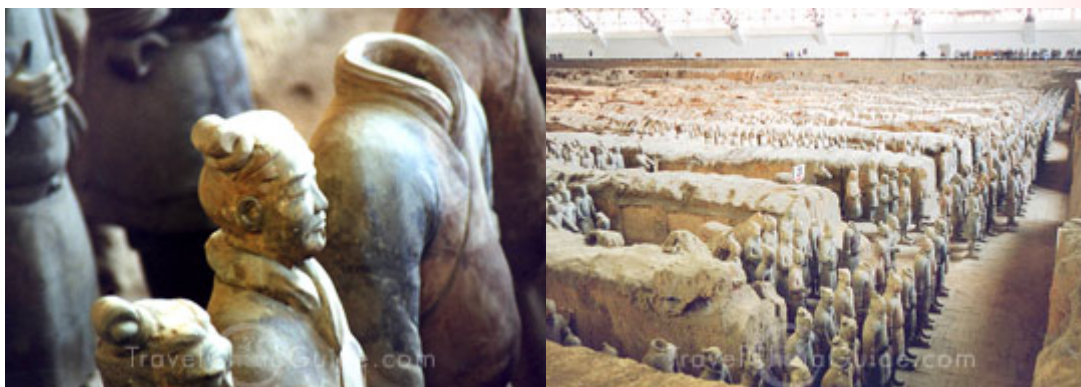




Behind the vanguard marched eleven columns of regulars, 38 rows deep, interspersed with war chariots. You could distinguish their ranks from their uniforms and the type of arms they are carrying.

If you are a reader of the Chinese classic Bing-fa (The Art of War) written by Sun Tzu (personal name Sun Wu), you would appreciate their battle orders as they march into war.

A small door at the northwest corner opens into Pit No. 3.



## Museum of Qin Terra Cotta Warriors and Horses : Pit 2

***Set of figures in Pit No. 2 includes: Four mobile combat units ready to attack independently or en masse.***

The Terra Cotta Pit No. 2 is 20 meters due east of Pit No. 1. It is 6,000 square meters subdivided into L-Shaped foursquare sections, where archeologists unearthed 1,000 warriors, 500 horses, and 89 wooden chariots. The horses are both for pulling chariots and for carrying riders. It reflects a vibrant and dynamic atmosphere.



**First Section:** First group, 334 archers, is lined up in eight clusters. They are armed with crossbows. Some 160, clad in heavy protective armor, are in the front line kneeling position, and others stand behind to shoot over their heads.

**Second Section:** Second group, 64 chariots, is also in eight clusters. Each chariot is officered by an archer, supported by a soldier on either side, and reinforced by another infantryman in the flank. It is an improvement on chariot tactics.

**Third Section:** At the center of Pit No. 2, the third section has 19 war chariots and around 100 warriors. They are three clusters: the right, the left, and the rear. Each has chariots up at front. Messengers and archers hurry about on their business.



**Fourth Section:** The fourth section is due north. There are three clusters, consisting of six chariots, 124 vaulting horses and men. Each chariot carries two: the charioteer and his scout. The cavalryman looks ferocious, and holds a bow in his hand. The wooden chariots have rotten away with age, but they leave clear unmistakable marks on the floor.

The four sections may each engage the enemy singly or as a combined unit.

### **Museum of Qin Terra Cotta Warriors and Horses : Pit 3**

***Set of figures in Pit No. 3 includes: Headquarters group.***

You reach Pit No. 3 by walking 25 meters north from Pit No. 1. It was discovered within a month after the archeologists had found Pit No. 2. It is a concave structure of 520 square meters. There are 68 warriors, four horses and one chariot. No battle formation.



The terracotta warriors are posted on guard duties. There are animal bones and deer horns strewn about, probably sacrifices offered on the eve of a battle. You could find the terracotta warriors with painted faces and wearing painted armor. Archeology experts attribute to this group the command center or headquarters group for those in the other two pits.



## Bronze Chariots

**How Discovered:** Two large scale-models of bronze chariots came unearthed in December, 1980, about 20 meters east of Emperor Qin's mausoleum. They were tagged Chariot No. 1 and No. 2 respectively. Both required extensive restorations, over two and half years, before displayable in public. No. 2 was unveiled first -- in 1983, then No.1 -- in 1988.



These were encased in a wooden box measuring 6.8 x 2.1x 2 meters for over two thousand years. And the box was buried 8 meters down in a trench. The trench runs 7 meters east to west, with a width of 2.3 meters.

These are half size scale-models of real chariots, faithfully copied down to the last detail, complete with horses and people. They are constructed with bronze and cast bullion. There are 1720 gold and silver pieces, weighing 7 kilograms. No. 1 chariot is in the lead, with a four-horse team. The chariot has been painted white by conservation workers. The two are a must-see by visitors.



Originally buried 20 meters west of the Emperor's mausoleum, two chariots faced west in large 7-meter-long (23 feet in length) and 2.3 meters wide (7.54 feet in width) wooden coffins. They were thought to be half the actual size and were supposed to serve as the vehicle for the emperor's inspection tours in his afterlife. The colorful square carriages are decorated with geometric and cloud patterns. Coachmen armed with swords guard the chariots on both sides.



**No. 1 Chariot :** It is the vanguard, a two-wheeled vehicle drawn by a team of four strong horses. There is only one seat for the driver, whose eyes are glued to the road ahead. There is a large umbrella providing shade from the sun.

Measurement: 225 x 126 x 70 cm

**No. 2 Chariot :** It is larger than the lead chariot. The horses are richly adorned with gold and silver gears. There are three windows, one out front, and one on each side in the compartment, and a door opens at the back. One may open and close the windows and the door, and look in at the exquisite interior. The roof is umbrella shaped, said to be symbolic of the round sky.

Measurement: 317 (long) x 106 (high) cm

The bronze chariot models add to the nation's great archeological treasures. These represent the largest finds of earliest delicate fine bronze work anywhere in the world.

## Military Formation of Terra Cotta Army

During the Spring and Autumn period (770-476 B.C.) and the period of the Warring States (475-221 B.C.), China was divided into six or seven states that often resorted to war with each other in their struggles for supremacy. Warfare was the predominant way of life. Many treaties have been written on warfare, such as Master Sun's Art of War, Master Wu's Art of War and Sun Bin's Art of War,



each being in-depth studies of warfare which remain virtual Bibles of the battlefield even to this day. Discovery of Qin Shi Huang's terra cotta legions helped to resolve some rules in the tactic books, which has been hitherto unclear.

### Sun Tzu and The Art of War

Sun Tzu, fl. 4th century BC, also spelled SUN-TZU or Sun Zi, reputed author of the Chinese classic Bing-fa (The Art of War), the earliest known treatise on war and military science.

The book is traditionally attributed to Sun Tzu (personal name Sun Wu), a military strategist and general who served the state of Wu near the end of the Spring and Autumn Period (770-476 BC). It is more likely, however, that it was written early in the Warring States period (475-221 BC).



The Art of War is a systematic guide to strategy and tactics for rulers and commanders. The book discusses various manoeuvres and the effect of terrain on the outcome of battles. It stresses the importance of accurate information about the enemy's forces, dispositions, deployments, and movements. This is summarized in the axiom 'Know the enemy and know yourself, and you can fight a hundred battles with no danger of defeat.' It also emphasizes the unpredictability of battle and the use of flexible strategies and tactics.

### The Formation of Qin Terra Cotta Army



The pits provide an incredible amount of information of the army's forces, dispositions such as the distribution and formation of ranks, the use of weapons and the application of military tactics.

'The clever combatant looks to the effect of combined energy, and does not require too much from individuals. Hence his ability to pick out the right men and utilize their combined energy.

When he utilizes combined energy, his fighting men become like unto rolling logs or stones. For it is the nature of a log or stone to remain motionless on level ground, and to move when on a slope; if four-cornered, to come to a standstill, but if round-shaped, to go rolling down.' - Sun Tzu



Victory or defeat on a battlefield depends on a well-organized military formation together with a well thought out strategy. Ancient military strategists advocated an agile vanguard preceding a formidable main echelon, which consists of chariots, infantrymen and cavalrymen. The formation was adaptable to changing conditions on the field.

The terra cotta warriors armed with different weapons played supportive roles in a variety of scenarios so that the combined strength of the army was brought into full play. The soldiers are divided into infantry armed with swords and spears, archers, crossbow archers, cavalry, chariot drivers and officers. Among the infantrymen there are some with armor and others without. Chariots are respectively designed for commanders, aide officers as well as for a squad of three or four soldiers. In the Art of War, it illustrates that more horses rather than chariots should be used when the battle is going to be a difficult one and vice versa. When the danger is at its greatest archers should be deployed.



Excavations indicate that the cavalry functioned as an independent force in battle, with chariots playing a vital strategic role. It opposed the opinion that use of chariots in battle had ceased with the end of the Warring States Period. During the Battle of Changping between the Qin and Zhao states in 260 BC, this well-designed military disposition enabled the Qin to defeat the enemy troops and thereby slaughtered 400,000 Zhao soldiers.

#### **Extract from the Art of War**

Military tactics are like unto water; for water in its natural course runs away from high places and hastens downwards.

So in war, the way is to avoid what is strong and to strike at what is weak.



is victory in relation to the foe that he is facing.

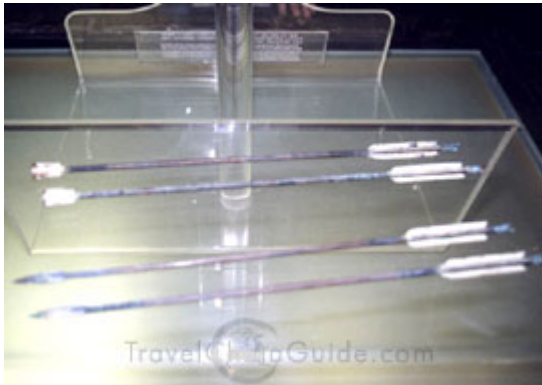
Therefore, just as water retains no constant shape, so in warfare there are no constant conditions.

Water shapes its course according to the nature of the



ground over which it flows; the soldier works out hHe, who can modify his tactics in relation to his opponent and thereby succeed in winning, may be called a heaven-born captain.

## Exquisite Weaponry of Terra Cotta Army



With the discovery of the terra cotta army the grandeur and magnificence of the forces of Emperor Qin came to light. Each figurine was armed with a bronze weapon of that period. Over 10,000 bronze weapons have been excavated so far from the site. These include swords, daggers, billhooks, spears, halberds, axes, crossbow triggers, and arrowheads.

The amazing bronze weapons reveal the dynamic metallurgical attainments of Qin. The weapons were cast and modeled to a standard shape and then were filed, chiseled, drilled and polished to have sharp blade, shiny luster and subtlety. A bronze sword unearthed had two symmetrical blades and from the handle to the end, gradually became narrower and thinner. It was technically highly advanced for that period.

Excavated materials also demonstrate that the production of alloys was highly scientific. The hardness and tenacity of the metals were determined by the proportion of the copper to tin in the alloys that were used to make a weapon. Copper was appropriately proportioned with 11 other elements such as nickel, magnesium, cobalt, and chrome. It coincides with an ancient book, which records the precise proportions of copper and tin for six kinds of bronze ware. For instance, an arrowhead contained a poisonous percentage of lead for greater killing power. It shows that during the Qin dynasty, people, through careful practice and detailed research, had established considerable scientific standards for metal production.



## From Rudiment to the Masterwork

### Materials:

An abundance of clay and especially large deposits of ochre-colored loess in Northern China, which the Chinese refer to as 'yellow earth' proved to be a suitable material due to its plasticity and adhesive quality. Clay of this type was produced in the area near Mount Lishan where the Qin Mausoleum was constructed. A group of kilns were





established around the mausoleum in Shangjiao Village, Yuchi Village and Chengou Village.

### Figure Creation:

The clay was firstly panned and crushed into a malleable form is suitable for molding. The mould was started from the bottom of the body. The feet of the warrior were formed on a square base, and legs were then added. When half-dry, clay was coiled into 3 to 5 cm ropes wound upwards to create the hollow upper body. This was carefully smoothed using a paddle on the exterior pressing against an anvil or block on the inside wall. Next, the half finished head and hands were pasted onto the body. The structure of the base prevented the figure from collapsing. Fashioning heads represented a complicated process. Facial features were achieved using a mould, with piling and sculpting to form the back. Ears were pasted to the heads prior to adding sculpted or molded hair buns.



### Refinement:

A procedure was adopted to give individuality to each rough mould. The artisans smeared fine clay on the rough surface, then by pinching, pasting, cutting, and carving, facial details like eyes, hair, moustache, ears were elaborately represented. Excavations indicate that dozens of heads might be made from the same mould.



Skilful refinement produced the individual life like facial features and impressive stance, representative of the powerful Qin army. No two figures have an identical face; some appear solemn in deep thought while others are of a cheerful countenance. Archeological research confirms that these facial features are truly representative of the real men.



### Firing:

Kilns built to fire the terra cotta figures were easily found around the site of the tomb. Firing within a kiln facilitated experimentation with different firing temperatures, raw materials, and types of decoration. The well formed nature of the earthenware would have been obtained by maintaining a temperature between 800 C and 900 C. Greater heat would have destroyed the even thickness while less will caused brittleness and breakage. The pure luster, high density and hardness of the figures are unique. Modern attempts have failed to create figures of similar quality.

### Glazing and Coloring:



Gelatin or raw lacquer was applied thinly to the surface, then pink or similar color added to depict skin tones. Another layer of white paint applied to form a glaze. The black pupils in the

eyes give the statue a lifelike expression. Excavations indicate that various shades of red, pink, blue, even bright yellow were applied.



The same applies to the muscular horses, which stand with forelegs straight and hind legs slightly bent. The horses, with flaring nostrils, ears erect and eyes blazing seem ready to engage in a battle charge at a moment's notice.

### Lifelike Terra Cotta Figures

The terra cotta soldiers are remarkably realistic sculptures. The figures are mostly 1.8 meters (5 feet 11



inches) in height, the lower part of the body being solid and the upper part hollow. Originally the figures were painted in bright colors however, over the two thousand years they have silently stood guard, the color has faded and worn off. The squarish faces of the warriors feature broad foreheads and wide, thick-lipped mouths. Their eyes focus on the far distance and some bear an ornate hairstyle. The muscular horses have big bright eyes, large nostrils, stout legs and plump waists and hips





and are poised ready to gallop.

**Tunic infantryman** unearthed in Pit 1 wear a knee-length tunic, short trousers, puttees and curved shoes and would carried crossbows in their hands. Their hair is wound in topknots while some have beards. The clothes were designed to allow freedom of movement.

**Armored soldiers** unearthed in Pit 1, stand 189 cm in height and would each have had a sword in his left hand. They were heavily armored with a brown cape and a red cap and green shin guards.

**War chariots** A two wheeled chariot with a round canopy, 1.2 meters in length and 1.3 meters in width, is pulled by four pottery horses flanked by two spear men with a central charioteer. The horses measure 1.5 meters (4 feet 11 inches) in height and 2 meters (6 feet 7 inches) in length. The charioteer wears a long robe under armor that protects his chest, back and shoulders. His arm extends forward as if he is holding reins.



Most chariots found in Pit 1 are considered to have been command carts from which generals had commanded troops.

**Armored general** unearthed in the Pit 1, standing some 197 cm in height. Generals wore two layers of robes covered by colored plate armor. This armor consisted of three parts: the 96.5 cm long front section covered the chest and abdomen, the 61 cm long rear portion protected the back and the waist with a small cape fashioned from 160 copper plates. The edge was decorated with geometrical floral motif. A general stands upright with his hands seemingly resting on the sword handle. He wore a brown cap and upward curving shoes. His fearless and intrepid expression reflects his authority and experience.



**Saddled steed** stands 172 cm in height and 203 cm in length with a halter. Red, blue or brown saddle sits atop a shabrack, secured to the horse back with a single girth.

**Chariot horses** unearthed in the Pit 1, Pit 2 and Pit 3, the chariot teams feature strong limbs, large heads, protruding noses, short necks and wide shoulders.



**Kneeling archers** unearthed in the Pit 2, kneel on their right knees and would have held a crossbow against the right hip to keep it steady prior to firing. There have been 160 archers unearthed in Pit 2.

**The standing archers** stand with the left foot forward, leg slightly bent and the right leg straight. Their left arm stretches to the front while the right arm is held back to the chest. This is a position from which they are primed for an assault on the enemy.

**Cavalryman:** Found in Pit 2, the figure, some 180 cm in height, wears a narrow-sleeved knee-length jerkin under body armor, narrow trousers, boots, and a round cap. He holds his horse's reins in his right hand and a crossbow in the left. These horsemen were thought to serve as messengers during a battle.





## Emperor Qin Shi Huang

[http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Qin\\_Shi\\_Huangdi](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Qin_Shi_Huangdi)

# Qin Shi Huang

From Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia



Qin Shi Huang (秦始皇)

<b>Family name:</b>	<b>Yíng</b> (嬴)
<b>Given name:</b>	Zheng (政)
<b>Clan name:</b>	Zhao <sup>1</sup> (趙), or Qin <sup>2</sup> (秦)
<b>Title:</b>	King of the <a href="#">State of Qin</a> (秦王) First Emperor of <a href="#">Qin Dynasty</a> (始皇帝)
<b>Dates of reign:</b>	July 247 B.C. – 221 B.C. (秦王) 221 B.C. – Sept. 10, 210 B.C. (始皇帝)
<b>Temple name:</b>	None <sup>3</sup>
<b>Posthumous name</b>	None <sup>4</sup>

**Qin Shi Huang** ([Chinese](#): 秦始皇; [pinyin](#): Qín Shǐ Huáng; [Wade-Giles](#): Ch'in Shih-huang) (November / December [260 BC](#) – [September 10, 210 BC](#)), personal name **Zheng**, was king of the Chinese [State of Qin](#) from [247 BC](#) to [221 BC](#) (officially still the [Zhou Dynasty](#)), and then the first emperor of a unified [China](#) from [221 BC](#) to [210 BC](#), ruling under the name **First Emperor**.

Having unified China, he and his prime minister [Lǐ Sī](#) passed a series of major reforms aimed at cementing the unification, and they undertook some gigantic construction projects, most notably the precursor version of the current [Great Wall of China](#). For all the [tyranny](#) of his [autocratic](#) rule, Qin Shi Huang is still regarded by many today as the [founding father](#) in Chinese history whose unification of China has endured for more than two millennia (with interruptions).

## Naming conventions

Qin Shi Huang was born in the Chinese month *zhēng* (正), the first month of the year in the Chinese calendar then in use, and so he received the name Zheng (政), both characters being used interchangeably in ancient China. In Chinese antiquity, people never joined family names and given

General note: Dates given here are in the [proleptic Julian calendar](#).

They are not in the [proleptic Gregorian calendar](#).

1. This clan name appears in the [Records of the Grand Historian](#) written by [Sima Qian](#). Apparently, the First Emperor being born in the [State of Zhao](#) where his father was a hostage, he later adopted Zhao as his clan name (in ancient China clan names often changed from generation to generation), but this is not completely certain.

2. Based on ancient Chinese naming patterns, we can infer that Qin was the clan name of the royal house of the [State of Qin](#), derived from the name of the state. Other branches of the [Ying](#) ancestral family, [enfeoffed](#) in other states, had other clan names. Qin was thus possibly also the clan name of the First Emperor.

3. The royal house of Qin did not carry the practice of temple names, which were not used anymore since the establishment of the [Zhou Dynasty](#), so the First Emperor does not have a temple name per se. However, his official name "First Emperor" can somehow be assimilated to a temple name, being the name under which the emperor would have been honoured in the temple of the ancestors of the dynasty.

4. Posthumous names were abolished in 221 BC by the First Emperor who deemed them inappropriate and contrary to filial piety.

names together as is customary today, so it is anachronistic to refer to Qin Shi Huang as "Ying Zheng". The given name was never used except by close relatives, therefore it is also incorrect to refer to the young Qin Shi Huang as "Prince Zheng", or as "King Zheng of Qin". As a king, he was referred to as "King of Qin" only. Had he received a posthumous name after his death like his father, he would have been known by historians as "King NN. (posthumous name) of Qin", but this never happened.

After conquering the last independent Chinese state in [221 BC](#), Qin Shi Huang was the king of a state of Qin ruling over the whole of China, an unprecedented accomplishment. Wishing to show that he was no longer a simple king like the kings of old during the [Warring States Period](#), he created a new title, *huangdi* (皇帝), combining the word *huang* (皇) from the legendary Three *Huang* ([Three August Ones](#)) who ruled at the dawn of Chinese history, and the word *di* (帝) from the legendary Five *Di* ([Five Sovereigns](#)) who ruled immediately after the Three *Huang*. These Three *Huang* and Five *Di* were considered perfect rulers, of immense power and very long lives. The word

*huang* also meant "big", "great". The word *di* also referred to the Supreme God in Heaven, creator of the world. Thus, by joining these two words for the first time, Qin Shi Huang created a title on a par with his feat of uniting the seemingly endless Chinese realm, in fact uniting the world. Ancient Chinese, like ancient Romans, believed their empire encompassed the whole world, a concept referred to as [all under heaven](#).

This word *huangdi* is rendered in most Western languages as "[emperor](#)", a word which also has a long history dating back to [ancient Rome](#), and which [Europeans](#) deem superior to the word "king". Qin Shi Huang adopted the name First Emperor (*Shi Huangdi*, literally "commencing emperor"). He abolished posthumous names, by which former kings were known after their death, judging them inappropriate and

## Contents

- [1 Naming conventions](#)
- [2 Youth and King of Qin: the conqueror](#)
- [3 First Emperor: the unifier](#)
- [4 Death and aftermath](#)
- [5 Mausoleum and Terracotta Army](#)
- [6 Qin Shi Huang in historiography](#)
- [6.1 Reference by Mao Zedong](#)
- [7 Qin Shi Huang in fiction](#)
  - [7.1 Films and television](#)
  - [7.2 Music](#)
  - [7.3 Video games](#)
- [8 Miscellaneous](#)
- [9 See also](#)
- [10 References](#)

contrary to [filial piety](#), and decided that future generations would refer to him as the First Emperor (Shi Huangdi). His successor would be referred to as the Second Emperor (*Er Shi Huangdi*, literally "second generation emperor"), the successor of his successor as the Third Emperor (*San Shi Huangdi*, literally "third generation emperor"), and so on, for ten thousand generations, as the Imperial house was supposed to rule China for ten thousand generations. "[ten thousand](#)" is equivalent to "forever" in Chinese, and it also signifies "good fortune".

Qin Shi Huang had now become the First Emperor of the State of Qin. The official name of the newly united China was still "State of Qin", as Qin had absorbed all the other states. The names *Zhonghua* (中華) or *Zhongguo* (中國) were never used officially for the

country of China until [1912](#) when the [Republic of China](#) (中華民國) was founded. Contemporaries called the emperor "First Emperor", dropping the phrase "of the State of Qin", which was obvious without saying. However, soon after the emperor's death, his regime collapsed, and China was beset by a [civil war](#). Eventually, in [202 BC](#) the [Han Dynasty](#) managed to reunify the whole of China, which now became officially known as the *State of Han* (漢國), or Empire of Han. Qin Shi Huang could no longer be called "First Emperor", as this would imply that he was the "First Emperor of the Empire of Han". The custom thus arose of preceding his name with Qin (秦), which no longer referred to the State of Qin, but to the [Qin Dynasty](#), a dynasty replaced by the Han Dynasty. The word *huangdi* (emperor) in his name was also shortened to *huang*, so that he became known as Qin Shi Huang. It seems likely that *huangdi* was shortened to obtain a three-character name, because it is rare for Chinese people to have a name composed of four or more characters.

This name Qin Shi Huang (i.e., "First Emperor of the Qin Dynasty") is the name that appears in the [Records of the Grand Historian](#) written by [Sima Qian](#), and is the name most favored today inside China when referring to the First Emperor. Westerners sometimes write "Qin Shi Huangdi", which is improper given Chinese naming conventions; it is more conventional to write "Qin Shi Huang" or "First Emperor".

## Youth and King of Qin: the conqueror

At the time of the young Zheng's birth, China was divided into warring [feudal states](#). This period of Chinese history is referred to as the [Warring States Period](#). The competition was extremely fierce and by [260 BCE](#) there were only a handful of states left (the others having been conquered and annexed), but

Zheng's state, [Qin](#), was the most powerful. It was governed by [Legalist](#) philosophy and focused earnestly on military matters.

Zheng was born in [Handan](#) (邯鄲), the capital of the enemy [State of Zhao](#). He was the son of Zichu (子楚), a prince of the royal house of Qin who served as a hostage in the State of Zhao under an agreement between the states of Qin and Zhao. Zichu later returned to Qin after many adventures and with the help of a rich merchant called [Lü Buwei](#) (呂不韋), and he managed to ascend the throne of Qin, Lü Buwei becoming [chancellor](#) ([prime minister](#)) of Qin. Zichu is known posthumously as [King Zhuangxiang of Qin](#). According to a widespread story, Zheng was not the actual son of Zichu, but the son of the powerful chancellor Lü Buwei. This tale arose because Zheng's mother had originally been a concubine of Lü Buwei before he gave her to his good friend Zichu shortly before Zheng's birth. However, the story is dubious since the [Confucians](#) would have found it much easier to denounce a ruler whose birth was illegitimate.

Zheng ascended the throne in [247 BC](#) at the age of 12 and a half, and was king under a [regent](#) until [238 BC](#) when, at the age of 21 and a half, he staged a palace [coup](#) and assumed full power. He continued the tradition of tenaciously attacking and defeating the feudal states (dodging a celebrated assassination attempt by [Jing Ke](#) while doing so) and finally took control of the whole of China in [221 BC](#) by defeating the last independent Chinese state, the [State of Qi](#).

Then in that same year, at the age of 38, the king of Qin proclaimed himself First Emperor (see chapter above).

## First Emperor: the unifier

To avoid a recurrence of the political chaos of the [Warring States Period](#), Qin Shi Huang and his prime minister [Li Si](#) completely abolished [feudalism](#).

They instead divided the empire into thirty-six [commanderies](#) (郡). Power in the commanderies was in the hands of governors dismissed at will by the central government. Civilian and military powers were also separated to avoid too much power falling in the hands of a single civil servant.

Thus, each commandery was run by a [civilian](#) governor (守 *shō u*) assisted by a [military](#) governor (尉 *wè*). The civilian governor was superior to the military governor, a constant in Chinese history. The civilian governor was also reassigned to a different commandery every few years to prevent him from building up a base of power.

An [inspector](#) (監 *jiàn*) was also in post in each commandery, in charge of informing the central government about the local implementation of central policies, reporting on the governors' exercise of power, and possibly resolving conflicts between the two governors.

This administrative system was only an extension to the whole empire of the system already in place in the [State of Qin](#) before the Chinese unification. In the State of Qin, feudalism had been abolished in the



[4th century BC](#), and the realm had been divided into commanderies, with governors dismissed at will by the ruler.

Qin Shi Huang ordered all the members of the former royal houses of the conquered states to move to [Xianyang](#) (咸陽), the capital of Qin, in modern day [Shaanxi](#) province, so they would be kept under tight [surveillance](#) for rebellious activities.

The emperor also developed an extensive network of roads and canals connecting the provinces to accelerate [trade](#) between them and to accelerate military marches to revolting provinces.

Qin Shi Huang and Li Si unified China economically by standardizing the [Chinese units of measurements](#) such as [weights](#) and [measures](#), the [currency](#), the length of the [axles](#) of [carts](#) (so every cart could run smoothly in the ruts of the new roads), the [legal system](#), and so on.

Perhaps most importantly, the [Chinese script](#) was unified. Under Li Si, the [seal script](#) of the state of Qin, which had already evolved organically during the [Eastern Zhou](#) out of the [Zhou dynasty](#) script, was standardized through removal of variant forms within the Qin script itself. This newly standardized script was then made official throughout all the conquered regions, thus doing away with all the regional scripts and becoming the official script for all of China.

Contrary to popular belief, Li Si did not invent the script, nor was it completely new at the time. Edicts written in the new script were carved on the walls of sacred mountains around China, such as the famous carved edicts of [Mount Taishan](#), to let [Heaven](#) know of the unification of [Earth](#) under an emperor, and also to propagate the new script among people.

However, the script was difficult to write, and an informal Qin script remained in use which was already evolving into an early form of [clerical script](#).

Qin Shi Huang also had most previously-existing [books burned](#) (excepting some held in the palace archives). Qin Shi Huang's motives behind burning the books has been known to be caused by the possibility of them to be used against him. Concomitant with this, he had many scholars executed.

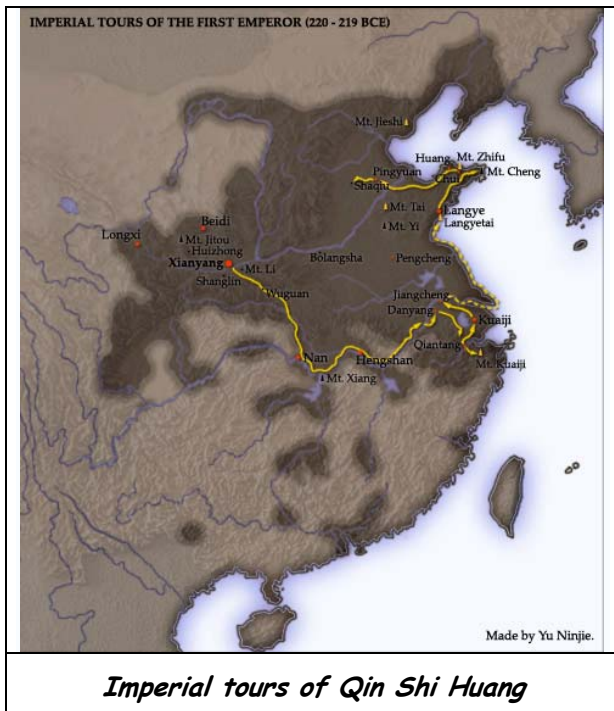
Qin Shi Huang continued military expansion during his reign, annexing regions to the south (what is now [Guangdong](#) province was penetrated by Chinese armies for the first time) and fighting [nomadic](#) tribes to the north and northwest.

These tribes (the [Xiongnu](#)) were subdued, but the campaign was essentially inconclusive, and to prevent the Xiongnu from encroaching on the northern frontier any longer, the emperor ordered the construction of an immense defensive wall, linking several walls already existing since the time of the [Warring States](#).

This wall, for whose construction hundreds of thousands of men were mobilized, and an unknown number died, is a precursor of the current [Great Wall of China](#). It was built much further north than the current

Great Wall, which was built during the [Ming Dynasty](#), when China had at least twice as many inhabitants as in the days of the First Emperor, and when more than a century was devoted to building the wall (as opposed to a mere ten years during the rule of the First Emperor). Very little survives today of the great wall built by the First Emperor.

## Death and aftermath



The emperor died while on a tour to Eastern China, searching for the legendary [Islands of the Immortals](#) (off the coast of Eastern China) and for the secret of [eternal life](#).

Reportedly, he died of swallowing mercury pills, which were made by his court scientists and doctors, containing too much [mercury](#). Ironically, these pills were meant to make Qin Shi Huang [immortal](#).

His death occurred on [September 10, 210 BC](#) ([Julian Calendar](#)) at the palace in [Shaqiu prefecture](#), about two months away by road from the capital Xianyang.

Prime minister Li Si, who accompanied him, was extremely worried that the news of his death could trigger a general uprising in the empire, given the brutal policies of the government, and the resentment of the population forced to work on Herculean projects such as the great wall in the north of China or the [mausoleum](#) of the emperor.

It would take two months for the government to reach the capital, and it would not be possible to stop the uprising. Li Si decided to hide the death of the emperor, and return to Xianyang.

Most of the imperial entourage accompanying the emperor was left uninformed of the emperor's death, and each day Li Si entered the wagon where the emperor was supposed to be traveling, pretending to discuss affairs of state.

The secretive nature of the emperor while alive allowed this [stratagem](#) to work, and it did not raise doubts among [courtiers](#). Li Si also ordered that two carts containing fish be carried immediately before and after the wagon of the emperor. The idea behind this was to prevent people from noticing the foul smell emanating from the wagon of the emperor, where his body was starting to decompose severely.

Eventually, after about two months, Li Si and the imperial court were back in Xianyang, where the news of the death of the emperor was announced.

Qin Shi Huang did not like to talk about death and he never really wrote a [will](#). After his death, Li Si and the chief [eunuch Zhao Gao](#) persuaded his eighteenth son [Huhai](#) to forge the Emperor's will.

They forced his first son [Fusu](#) to commit [suicide](#), stripped the command of troops from [Meng Tian](#), a loyal supporter of Fusu, and killed his family. Huhai became the Second Emperor (Er Shi Huangdi), known by historians as [Qin Er Shi](#).

Qin Er Shi was not nearly as capable as his father. Revolts against him quickly erupted. His reign was a time of extreme civil unrest, and everything the First Emperor had worked for crumbled away, for a short period. The imperial [palace](#) and state [archives](#) were burned: this has been disastrous for later historians, because after the burning of the books by his father, almost the only written records left were those in the palace archives.

Within four years of Qin Shi Huang's death, his son was dead. Thus did the Qin Dynasty come to an end. It was during Qin Er Shi's "rule" that powerful families came to war, with the strongest of them rising to power and bringing order back to the land, thus starting the next [dynasty](#) of emperors.

The next Chinese dynasty, the [Han Dynasty](#), rejected [legalism](#) (in favor of [Confucianism](#)) and moderated the laws, but kept Qin Shi Huang's basic political and economic reforms intact. In this way his work was carried on through the centuries and became a lasting feature of Chinese society.

## Mausoleum and Terracotta Army

Main article: [Terracotta Army](#)



Part of the [Terracotta Army](#)

Qin Shi Huang was buried in his mausoleum, with the famous [Terracotta Army](#), near modern day [Xi'an](#) ([Shaanxi](#) province).

For 2000 years, a secret army of clay soldiers has protected the hidden tomb of China's first emperor, Qin Shi Huang. Until 1974 none knew of its existence; now Chinese archaeologists are gradually unfolding the mystery.

To guard him in his afterlife the

emperor ordered an army of over 7500 life size clay soldiers to be made. When he died, the burial place was as magnificent and bizarre as even the treasure laden tombs of the Egyptian pharaohs.

The site measures some three miles across and took 700,000 conscripts to construct it. Many wonders of the tomb were described by a Chinese historian, [Sima Qian](#), writing less than a century after the emperor's death. He wrote of rare jewels, a map of the heavens with stars represented by pearls, and, on the floor of the tomb a panorama map of China with the rivers and seas represented by flowing mercury. Sima Qian never mentioned, however, the terracotta army - which was discovered by a team of well diggers. It is the detail of the terracotta armies that makes it so valuable. The soldiers were created with a series of mix-and-match clay molds and then further individualized by the artists' hand.

No two terracotta soldiers are identical. The sculptures represent a standard of art that experts previously believed was far beyond the craftsmen of the Qin Dynasty. Each man was built with solid legs and a hollow torso. The soldiers were originally armed with bronze spears and bows and arrows. But soon after the burial there was a revolution in China and the rebels broke into the vaults to steal the weapons.



*A modern statue of Qin Shi Huang, located near the site of the Terracotta Army*

All the standing warriors were attached to clay plinths that rested on the tiled floor, which still resembles a modern pavement. The soldiers were arranged in battle formation, with 600 clay horses and 100 life-sized working wooden chariots.

Chinese archaeologists have been meticulous and patient in their work. The main tomb containing the emperor has yet to be opened and there is still hope that it remains intact. It is said that molten copper was used to seal it.

A magnetic scan of the site has revealed that a large number of coins are lying in the unopened tomb, occasioning speculation that the royal treasury was interred with the emperor. Scans of the earth atop the tomb have revealed unusually high concentrations of mercury in the shape of china's waters, adding further to the credibility of Sima Qian's description.

## **Qin Shi Huang in historiography**



In traditional Chinese [historiography](#), the First Emperor was almost always portrayed as a brutal tyrant, superstitious (a result of his interest in [immortality](#) and [assassination paranoia](#)), and sometimes even as a mediocre ruler.

Ideological prejudices against the [Legalist](#) State of Qin were established as early as [266 BCE](#), when Confucian philosopher [Xun Zi](#) compared it later, Confucian historians condemned the emperor who had burned the classics and buried Confucian scholars alive. They eventually compiled the list of the [Ten Crimes of Qin](#) to highlight his tyrannical actions.

The famous Han poet and statesman [Jia Yi](#) concluded his essay *The Faults of Qin* (過秦論), with what was to become the standard Confucian judgment of the reasons for Qin's collapse. Jia Yi's essay, admired as a masterpiece of [rhetoric](#) and [reasoning](#), was copied into two great Han histories and has had a far-reaching influence on Chinese [political](#) thought as a classic illustration of Confucian theory.

He explained the ultimate weakness of Qin as a result of its ruler's ruthless pursuit of [power](#), harsh laws and unbearable burdens placed on the population in projects such as the [Great Wall](#) - the precise factor which had made it so powerful; for as [Confucius](#) had taught, the strength of a government ultimately is based on the support of the people and virtuous conduct of the ruler.

Because of this systematic Confucian bias on the part of Han scholars, some of the stories recorded about Qin Shi Huang are doubtful and some may have been invented to emphasize his bad character. Some of the stories are plainly fictitious, designed to tarnish the First Emperor's image, e.g. the story of a stone fallen from the sky engraved with words denouncing the emperor and [prophesying](#) the collapse of his empire after his death.

This makes it difficult to know the truth about other stories. For instance, the accusation that he had 460 scholars executed by having them buried with only their heads above ground and then decapitated seems unlikely to be completely true, but we have no way to know for certain.

Only in modern times were historians able to penetrate beyond the limitations of traditional Chinese historiography. The political rejection of the Confucian tradition as an impediment to China's entry into the modern world opened the way for changing perspectives to emerge.

In the three decades between the fall of the [Qing Dynasty](#) and the outbreak of the [Second World War](#), with the deepening dissatisfaction with China's weakness and disunity, there emerged a new appreciation of the man who had unified China.

In the time when he was writing, when Chinese territory was encroached upon by foreign nations, leading [Kuomintang](#) historian [Xiao Yishan](#) emphasized the role of Qin Shi Huang in repulsing the northern barbarians, particularly in the construction of the Great Wall.

Another historian, [Ma Feibai](#) (馬非百), published in [1941](#) a full-length [revisionist](#) biography of the First Emperor entitled *Qin Shi Huangdi Zhuan* (《秦始皇傳》), calling him "one of the great heroes of Chinese history".

Ma compared him with the contemporary leader [Chiang Kai-shek](#) and saw many parallels in the careers and policies of the two men, both of whom he admired. Chiang's [Northern Expedition](#) of the late [1920s](#), which directly preceded the new Nationalist government at [Nanjing](#) was compared to the unification brought about by Qin Shi Huang.

With the coming of the [Communist Revolution](#) in [1949](#), new interpretations again surfaced. The establishment of the new, revolutionary regime meant another re-evaluation of the First Emperor, this time following [Marxist](#) theory.

The new interpretation given of Qin Shi Huang was generally a combination of traditional and modern views, but essentially critical. This is exemplified in the *Complete History of China*, which was compiled in September [1955](#) as an official survey of Chinese history.

The work described the First Emperor's major steps toward unification and standardization as corresponding to the interests of the ruling group and the [merchant class](#), not the nation or the people, and the subsequent fall of his dynasty a manifestation of the [class struggle](#).

The perennial debate of the fall of the Qin Dynasty was also explained in Marxist terms, the [peasant](#) rebellions being a revolt against oppression — a revolt which undermined the dynasty, but which was bound to fail because of a compromise with "[landlord](#) class elements".

Since [1972](#), however, a radically different official view of Qin Shi Huang has been given prominence throughout China. The re-evaluation movement was launched by [Hong Shidi](#)'s biography *Qin Shi Huang*. The work was published by the state press to be a mass popular history, and sold 1.85 million copies within two years.

In the new era, Qin Shi Huang was seen as a farsighted ruler who destroyed the forces of division and established the first unified, centralized state in Chinese history by rejecting the past. Personal attributes, such as his quest for immortality, so emphasized in traditional historiography, were scarcely mentioned.

The new evaluations described how, in his time (an era of great political and social change), he had no compunctions in using violent methods to crush [counter-revolutionaries](#), such as the "industrial and commercial slave owner" chancellor Lü Buwei. Unfortunately, he was not as thorough as he should have been and after his death, hidden subversives, under the leadership of the chief eunuch Zhao Gao, seized power and used it to restore the old feudal order.

To round out this re-evaluation, a new interpretation of the precipitous collapse of the Qin Dynasty was put forward in an article entitled "On the Class Struggle During the Period Between Qin and Han" by [Luo Siding](#), in a [1974](#) issue of *Red Flag*, to replace the old explanation. The new theory claimed that the cause of the fall of Qin lay in the lack of thoroughness of Qin Shi Huang's "[dictatorship](#)" over the reactionaries, even to the extent of permitting them to worm their way into organs of political authority and usurp important posts."

Qin Shi Huang was ranked #17 in [Michael H. Hart's list of the most influential figures in history](#).

## Reference by Mao Zedong

[Mao Zedong](#), chairman of the [People's Republic of China](#), was reviled for his persecution of intellectuals. Being compared to the First Emperor, Mao responded: "He buried 460 scholars alive; we have buried forty-six thousand scholars alive... You [intellectuals] revile us for being Qin Shi Huangs. You are wrong. We have surpassed Qin Shi Huang a hundredfold."[\[1\]](#) ,

## Qin Shi Huang in fiction

- During the Korean War, the play Song of the Yi River was produced. The play was based on the attempted assassination of Qin Shi Huang (called "Ying Zheng") by Jing Ke of Wei, at the request of the Prince of Yan, in 227 BCE. In the play Ying Zheng was portrayed as a cruel tyrant and an aggressor and invader of other states. Jing Ke, in contrast, was a chivalrous warrior who said that "tens of thousands of injured people are all my comrades." A huge newspaper ad for this play proclaimed: "Invasion will definitely end in defeat; peace must be won at a price." The play portrayed an underdog fighting against a cruel, powerful foreign invader with help from a sympathetic foreign volunteer.
- Jorge Luis Borges (1899– 1986), the Argentine writer, wrote an acclaimed essay on Qin Shi Huang, 'The Wall and the Books' (La muralla y los libros), included in the 1952 collection Other Inquisitions (Otras Inquisiciones). It muses on the opposition between large-scale construction (the Wall) and destruction (book-burning) that defined his reign, in order to make a point about 'the aesthetic experience'.
- The book Lord of the East, published in 1956, is a historical romance about the favourite daughter of Qin Shihuang, who runs away with her lover. The story uses Qin Shihuang to create the barrier for the young couple.
- The 1984 book Bridge of Birds (by Barry Hughart) portrays the emperor as a power-hungry megalomaniac who achieved immortality by having his heart removed by an "Old Man of the mountain."
- The Chinese Emperor, by Jean Levi, appeared in 1984. This work of historical fiction moves from discussions of politics and law in the Qin state to fantasy, in which the First Emperor's terracotta soldiers were actually robots created to replace fallible humans.
- In the Area 51 book series, Qin Shi Huang is revealed to be an alien exile stranded on Earth during an interstellar civil war. The Great Wall is actually designed to display the symbol for 'help'

in his language, and he orders it built in the hope that a passing spaceship would notice it and rescue him.

- In the Magic Tree House book series, one book is titled "Day of the Dragon King." The Dragon King is Qin Shi Huangdi.

## Films and television

- The [1963 Japanese](#) movie *[Shin No Shikoutei](#)* portrays Qin Shihuang as a battle-hardened emperor with his roots in the military. Despite his rank, he is shown lounging around a campfire with common men. A female character, Lady Chu, serves as a foil who questions whether the emperor's cause is just. He converts her from an enemy to a loyal [concubine](#).
- [Hong Kong Asia Television Limited](#) (ATV) Channel made a TV drama called "Qin Shi Huang" (秦始皇) during the [1980s](#). It was one of ATV's most expensive projects, with about 50 episodes chronicling Qin Shi Huang's life from his youth to his death. The title song summed up most of the storyline: "Nobody shall be under my foot; nobody shall be equal to me."
- The [1996](#) movie *[The Emperor's Shadow](#)* uses legends about Qin Shi Huang to make a political statement on [Chinese Communism](#). The film focuses on his relationship with the rebellious musician [Gao Jianli](#), known historically as a friend of the would-be assassin [Jing Ke](#). Gao plays a song for the assassin before he sets out to kill the emperor.
- The [1999](#) movie *[The Emperor and the Assassin](#)* focuses on the identity of the emperor's father, his supposed heartless treatment of his officials, and a betrayal by his childhood lover, paving the way for Jing Ke's [assassination](#) attempt. The director of the film, [Chen Kaige](#), sought to question whether the emperor's motives were meritorious. A major theme in this movie is the conflict between the Emperor's dedication to his vows and to his lover, [Lady Zhao](#).
- The [2001 Hong Kong TVB](#) serial drama *[A Step into the Past](#)*, based on a book with the same title, stars [Raymond Lam Fung](#) as Zhao Pan, a man from the Kingdom of Zhao who takes over the identity of the emperor (called "Ying Zheng") and rises to power. He is unwittingly helped by Hong Siu Lung, a [time traveller](#) from the [21st century](#) who had come back in time in order to prevent the rise of the tyrannical Qin Shi Huang, about whom he had read in history books, but ends up by himself causing precisely what he wanted to prevent.
- The [2002](#) movie *[Hero](#)*, starring [Jet Li](#), tells the story of [assassination](#) attempts on Qin Shi Huang (played by renowned Chinese actor [Chen Daoming](#)) by legendary warriors. It portrays him as a powerful ruler willing to take any steps to bring unification to his people.
- In [2005 The Discovery Channel](#) ran a special on Qin Shi Huang called *First Emperor: The Man Who Made China*
- In *[The Myth](#)* ([2005](#)), [Jackie Chan](#) plays both a modern-day archaeologist and a general under Qin Shi Huang.
- [Bob Bainborough](#) portrayed Qin Shi Huang in an episode of *[History Bites](#)*.

## Music



- Emperor Qin is the protagonist in the opera [The First Emperor](#) by [Tan Dun](#) and has been sung by [Plácido Domingo](#) on its world premiere.

## Video games

- The [1995 computer game](#) *[Qin: Tomb of the Middle Kingdom](#)* depicts a fictional archeological mission to explore the First Emperor's burial site. The emperor is featured in several voiceovers in [Mandarin](#) Chinese.
- The video game *[Indiana Jones and the Emperor's Tomb](#)* portrays [Indiana Jones](#) entering the tomb of Qin Shi Huang to recover The Heart of the dragon which some believe is real.
- In the [2005 computer game](#) *[Civilization IV](#)*, Qin Shi Huang is one of the two playable leaders of [China](#). The other is [Mao Zedong](#).

## Miscellaneous

Qin Shi Huang was interested in [immortality](#) and visited [Zhifu Island](#). These deeds became a very popular story of the emperor sending a Zhifu islander, [Xu Fu](#) (徐福), as the religious leader of [ships](#) with hundreds of young men and women in search of the [pill of immortality](#). These people never returned, as they knew that if they did return without the "immortality pill", they would surely be executed. The legend claims that they settled down in one of the [Japanese](#) islands.

The emperor often took tours to major cities in his empire to inspect the efficiency of the [bureaucracy](#) and to symbolize the presence of Qin's prestige. (It was on one of these tours that he died). Nevertheless, these trips provided opportunities for assassins, the most famous of whom was [Zhang Liang](#).

Late in life, after his [assassination](#) had been attempted too often for comfort, he grew paranoid of remaining in one place too long and would hire servants to bear him to different buildings in his palace complex to sleep in each night. He also hired several "doubles" to make it less clear which figure was the emperor.

Qin Shi Huang's three great achievements are unifying [Chinese characters](#), unifying currency system, and unifying measurement units.

## See also

- [Terracotta Army](#)
- [Burning of books and burying of scholars](#)

## References

1. <sup>↑</sup> *Mao Zedong sixiang wan sui!* (1969), p. 195. Referenced in *Governing China* (2nd ed.) by Kenneth Lieberthal (2004

## Great Mosque – Xi'an

[http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Great\\_Mosque\\_of\\_Xi'an](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Great_Mosque_of_Xi'an)

# Great Mosque of Xi'an

From Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia



*The Great Mosque of Xi'an, one of China's largest mosques*

The **Great Mosque of Xi'an** (Chinese: 西安大清真寺), located near the Drum Tower (Gu Lou) on Huajue Lane of Xi'an, Shaanxi province, China, is one of the oldest and most renowned mosques in the country.

It was first built in the Tang Dynasty (reign of Emperor Xuanzong, 685-762) at the eastern end of the Silk Road, and renovated in later periods (especially during the reign of Emperor Hongwu of the Ming Dynasty). It remains a popular tourist site of Xi'an, and is still used by Chinese Muslims today (particularly by the Hui people) as a place of worship. Unlike most mosques in Middle Eastern or Arab countries, the Great Mosque of Xi'an is completely Chinese in its construction and architectural style, for the mosque has neither domes or minarets, except some Arabic lettering and decorations [1].

## See also

- Islam in China
- Timeline of Islamic history

- Islamic architecture
- Islamic art
- List of mosques

## External links

- Description of the Great Mosque of Xi'an
- Xian Great Mosque

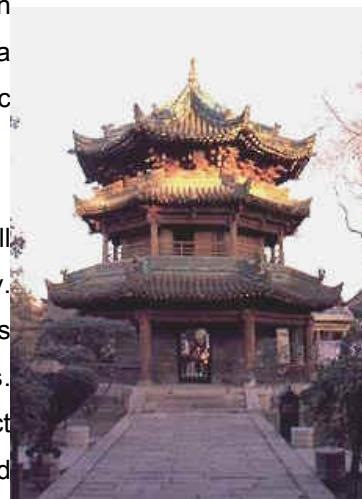
# The Great Mosque Xian

Beijing Ulink Travel Net

When you take a city tour in Xi'an, the ancient capital, if you pass through the Drum Tower and come to the Moslem residential area, you would find a large complex of the old and huge architecture. That is the famous Islamic mosque in China-Xi'an Great Mosque.

According to the historical records carved in the stone tablets which are still preserved in it, the mosque was set up in 742 AD during the Tang Dynasty. So it has already had a history of over 1,250 years. The mosque was restored and widened in the Song, Yuan, Ming and Qing dynasties. Especially after the founding of New China, and owing to the correct religious policies for the minority nationalities by the Communist Party and the People's Government, the authorities concerned allocates special funds

for the renovations of the mosque every year. So that, the mosque has gradually become such a large and brilliant complex of the historical architecture. With many beautiful storied buildings, platforms, pavilions and halls, it is looks very solemn and respectful.



## Historical Background

The Great Mosque which is located at Huajue Lane is the major spot for the religious activities of over 60,000 Moslems in Xi'an. It is also an important historic monument in Shaanxi Province. Unlike Arabic mosques which have splendid domes, minarets reaching into the clouds, and colorful engraved sketches with dazzling patterns, the mosque in Xi'an possesses much Chinese tradition in both its design and its artistic outlook. Different from the style peculiar to Islamic mosques, this mosque also has characteristics of Chinese pavilions, with painted beams and engraved ridgepoles.

However, further discussion about the mosque would be useless without an explanation of the introduction of Islam into China.

Islam as a religious order was founded in the early part of the 7th century A.D. and was introduced to China in the mid-600s. At that time, Arabian merchants and travelers came to the northwest of China by way of Persia and Afghanistan, to establish diplomatic, trade, and military contacts with China. At the same time, another route saw a group of sea voyagers find their way through Bangladesh Bay and the Malacca Strait to Guangzhou, Quanzhou, Hangzhou, Yangzhou and other Chinese cities, where many of them settled and married local women who gave birth to babies that became the first generation of Chinese Muslims.

However, massive immigration of Muslims to China did not take place until, as late as, the early period of the 13th century. As a result of his expedition against the west, Genghis Khan had conquered vast expanses of land stretching from Central Asia to Eastern Europe, including the north part of Iran. Many of the Muslims in these conquered areas were thus forced to enlist and were later settled in China.

Among the enlisted, many were soldiers; some were smiths and officials. They were called the Hui people in the history books of the Yuan Dynasty. The Hui people later followed Kublai Khan down to the south, helping him unify China and establishing the Yuan Dynasty. In the wake of this conquest, Islam spread all over China and mosques began to appear everywhere. In the Yuan Dynasty, many Muslims held positions both in the military and civilian organs of the country. A lot of Muslims took part in the Zhu Yuanzhang's uprising in the early 14th century and made great contributions to the founding of the Ming Dynasty. Therefore, all the emperors of this dynasty issued mandates to protect Islam, and to set up mosques in praise of the Muslims for their great contributions. In the early 16th century, Islam dominated Xinjiang and spread its influence to Gansu, Ningxia and Qinghai. It controlled the minority nationalities, including the Hui, the Uygurs, the Kazaks, the Kirgizes, the Tajiks, the Tartars, the Ozbeks, the Dong Xiangs, the Salars and the Bonans. The Muslim in Xi'an are mainly the Hui, being a small portion out of the 17 million in China.

The Mosque at Huajue Lane is the largest in Xi'an, and it is also one of the earliest built on a comparatively large scale, and the best preserved mosque in China.

## **A Visit to the Great Mosque**

With a total area of more than 13,000 square meters and the buildings covering over 6,000 square meters, the Great Mosque was built in the shape of a rectangle from the east to the west, and is divided into four courtyards.

In the first courtyard, there is an old wooden archway standing opposite a huge screen wall decorated with the clay-brick carvings. It has special upturned eaves, many layers of brackets, and glazed roof tiles, so that it is very magnificent. The archway was built at the beginning of the 17th century, dating back to over 360 years. On both sides of the archway, there is some old furniture on display made in the Ming and Qing Dynasties.

Through the Five-Room Hall, in the middle of the second courtyard, there stand three connected stone memorial gateways supported with the four pillars. On the top of the main gate, there is a title inscribed in Chinese calligraphy. It says: "The Court of The Heaven". There are stone carved fences around the gateways with the two passages on both sides. This stone complex was built in the Ming Dynasty. Behind it, two stone tables are erected there with the decorations of carved dragons. Both of them are carved with the inscriptions about the repairing of the mosque at the imperial orders in the Ming and Qing dynasties. At the backs of them are also inscribed with some big Chinese characters written respectively by the two famous calligraphers. These writings are regarded today as some of the best works in China.



The Imperial Hall in the third courtyard is the oldest building in the mosque. There is a piece of stone, called "The Moon Tablet", in it with an inscription in Arabic. It was written by a late famous imam, and was about the way of the calculation of the Moslem Calendar. Now this stone tablet is a very valuable historical record about the development of Islamism in Shaanxi Province.

In the middle of the courtyard, "The Introspection Tower" serves as the minaret, which is the tallest building in the whole mosque for calling Moslems to pray. With two stories, three layers of eaves, and an octagonal roof, it stands high and solid so that it is very impressive. On the southern side of the minaret is the Official Reception Hall, in which the hand-written copy of "The Koran" of the Ming Dynasty are well preserved. To the east of the Official Reception Hall, there is a bath house for Moslems to wash before they pray.

Through the three connected doorways decorated with the fine brick carvings, that is the last courtyard. What visitors would view first is "The One God Pavilion". It is a very special building with a combination of the Chinese traditional archway and pavilion. The pavilion as the main body in the middle is shaped in a hexagon with its eaves upturned and its top protruded. While, both of its side parts are shaped in triangles and are upturned like archways. The whole architecture seems to a phoenix which is opening its wings and is about to fly. As it is very lifelike, that is why it is also named "The Phoenix Pavilion". Under the eave of it, a small board with the decoration of carved dragons is hung over there. Its inscriptions, "One God", were written by a high ranking official in the Ming Dynasty. There are some side houses on both sides of the pavilion too. The southern ones were built specially for receiving those officials and generals who came to announce the edicts from the emperors in the successive dynasties. Today in these houses, there are many historical and cultural relics of the Ming and Qing dynasties on display, such as a beautiful fishbone-inlaid screen made of the 12 pieces of boxwood, some old tables, chairs, porcelains, paintings and so on. In the northern houses, there is now preserved an old stone sundial and several stone tablets with the important inscriptions about the mosque of the Tang and other dynasties.

When you walk further and take the stairways to the big and wide platform, the lofty and magnificent hall for worship would appear in your sight. With the huge eaves and brackets, its roofs are all covered with the blue glazed roof tiles, while its ceilings are carved with over 600 classical scriptures, in which all the letters are shaped in the colourful decorative patterns of grass and flowers. Around the hall inside, all the pages of "The Koran" are carved in the 600 pieces of huge wooden boards, 30 of them are in Chinese, the others are in Arabic. They are really marvelous carvings of art, and are rarely seen in the other mosques of the world. The hall can hold a thousand believers to do their religious services at the same time.

In 1956, the mosque was decreed to be an important historical and cultural site under the protection of the Shaanxi Provincial Government. In 1988, it was further promoted to be one of the most important sites in China. Since we opened the gates of China to the world in 1978, this mosque has received over 600,000 visitors, and Moslem brothers, whom came from over 100 countries and areas of

the world. It has also received many heads of the states and governments. After your visit, you would surely have the better understanding of this old mosque and the religious life of the local Moslems in Xi'an.

# Big Wild Goose Pagoda (Dayan Ta)

<http://www.travelchinaguide.com/attraction/shaanxi/xian/bigwildgoose.htm>

As the symbol of the old-line Xian, Big Wild Goose Pagoda is a well-preserved ancient building and a holy place for Buddhists. It is located in the southern suburb of Xian City, about 4 kilometers (2.49 miles) from the downtown of the city. Standing in the Da Ci'en Temple complex, it attracts numerous visitors for its fame in the Buddhist religion, its simple but appealing style of construction, and its new square in front of the temple. It is rated as a National Key Cultural Relic Preserve as well as an AAAA Tourist Attraction.



This attraction can be divided into three parts: the Big Wild Goose Pagoda, the Da Ci'en Temple, and the North Square of Big Wild Goose Pagoda.

## Big Wild Goose Pagoda

Originally built in 652 during the reign of Emperor Gaozong of the Tang Dynasty (618-907), it functioned to collect Buddhist materials that were taken from India by the hierarch Xuanzang.

Xuanzang started off from Chang'an (the ancient Xian), along the Silk Road and through deserts, finally arriving in India, the cradle of Buddhism. Enduring 17 years and traversing 100 countries, he obtained Buddha figures, 657 kinds of sutras, and several Buddha relics. Having gotten the permission of Emperor Gaozong (628-683), Xuanzang, as the first abbot of Da Ci'en Temple, supervised the building of a pagoda inside it. With the support of royalty, he asked 50 hierarchs into the temple to translate Sanskrit in sutras into Chinese, totaling 1,335 volumes, which heralded a new era in the history of translation. Based on the journey to India, he also wrote a book entitled 'Pilgrimage to the West' in the Tang Dynasty, to which scholars attached great importance.



First built to a height of 60 meters (197 feet) with five stories, it is now 64.5 meters (211.6 feet) high with an additional two stories. It was said that after that addition came the saying-'Saving a life exceeds building a seven-storied pagoda'. Externally it looks like a square cone, simple but grand and it is a masterpiece of Buddhist construction. Built of brick, its structure is very firm. Inside the pagoda, stairs twist up so that visitors can climb and overlook the panorama of Xian City from the arch-shaped doors on four sides of each storey. On the walls are engraved fine statues

of Buddha by the renowned artist Yan Liben of the Tang Dynasty. Steles by noted calligraphers also grace the pagoda.



As for the reason why it is called Big Wild Goose Pagoda, there is a legend. According to ancient stories of Buddhists, there were two branches, for one of which eating meat was not a taboo. One day, they couldn't find meat to buy. Upon seeing a group of big wild geese flying by, a monk said to himself: 'Today we have no meat. I hope the merciful Bodhisattva will give us some.' At that very moment, the leading wild goose broke its wings and fell to the ground. All the monks were startled and believed

that Bodhisattva showed his spirit to order them to be more pious. They established a pagoda where the wild goose fell and stopped eating meat. Hence it got the name 'Big Wild Goose Pagoda'.

### Da Ci'en Temple

Da Ci'en Temple is the home of Big Wild Goose Pagoda. In 648, to commemorate the dead virtuous queen, royalty ordered the building of a temple named 'Ci'en' (Mercy and Kindness), for which the status and scale far exceeded all others. Today, with an area of 32,314 square meters (38,648.5 square yards), one seventh of the original area, it still retains its grandeur.

Before the temple, there stands a statue of hierarch Xuanzang, the meritorious hierarch. Walking on and across a small bridge, visitors will see the gates of the temple. With guarding lions, the temple seems stately for lions were said to function as talismans.

Entering the temple you will see two buildings-Bell Tower in the east and Drum Tower in the west. Inside the Bell Tower hangs an iron bell 15 tons (14.76 gross tons) in weight. It was molded in 1548 in the Ming Dynasty (1368-1644). Along the central axis are arranged



the Hall of Mahavira, Sermon Hall, Big Wild Goose Pagoda, and the Hall of Xuanzang Sanzang. In the Hall of Mahavira are three carved statues of Sakyamuni, and 18 arhats as well as Xuanzang. The Sermon Hall is where Buddhist disciples would listen to a sermon. A bronze statue of Amitabha is dedicated and a Buddha statue is collected by Xuanzang as oblation. The Hall of Xuanzang Sanzang is north of Big Wild Goose Pagoda. In this hall are Xuanzang's relic and a bronze statue of a seated

Xuanzang. The inner wall is chiseled with murals depicting this hierarch's story. Renowned as the contemporary Dunhuang Buddhist storehouse praised by UNESCO, it is the biggest memorial of Xuanzang.



### **North Square of Big Wild Goose Pagoda**

Surrounding Big Wild Goose Pagoda, the scenery is also quite charming, especially the square north of the Da Ci'en Temple. Covering about 110,000 square meters (131563 square yards) plus 20,000 square meters (23920.6 square yards) of water area, it holds many records: in Asia, it is the biggest Tang-culture square, the biggest fountain and waterscape square, and the largest-scale sculptures area. In the world, it has the most benches, the longest light-belt, and the largest-scale acoustic complex.

The entire square is composed of waterscape fountains, a cultural square, gardens and tourist paths. There you can taste real Chinese culture and traditions and fully enjoy the truly attractive views. With reliefs on the theme of the prosperous Tang Dynasty, 200-meter-long (656-foot-long) sculpture groups, 8 groups of sculpted figures, 40 relievos on the land, and 22 styles of musical fountains, it has become a must-see when you visit Big Wild Goose Pagoda.

# Forest of Stone Steles Museum

[http://www.travelchinaguide.com/attraction/shaanxi/xian/stone\\_stele/](http://www.travelchinaguide.com/attraction/shaanxi/xian/stone_stele/)

Once the site of the Temple of Confucius during the Northern Song dynasty (960-1127), the Forest of Stone Steles Museum is situated on Sanxue Street, near the south gate of Xian City Wall. It was initially established in AD 1087 when some precious stone steles were moved here for safe keeping, including the 'Classic on Filial Piety' written by Emperor Xuanzong in AD 745 and 'the Kaicheng Stone Steles' carved in AD 837. With an area of 31,000 square meters, the Forest of Stone Steles used to be the principal museum for Shaanxi Province since 1944. Then because of the large number of stone steles, it was officially named as the Forest of Stone Steles Museum in 1992.

With 900 years of history, this treasure house holds a large collection of the earliest stone steles of different periods, from the Han Dynasty to the Qing Dynasty. All together, there are 3,000 steles and the museum is divided into seven exhibitions halls, which mainly display the works of calligraphy, painting and historical records. All of these record some achievements in the development of the Chinese culture and reflect the historical facts of the cultural exchanges between China and other countries.

Now, please come with me to the exhibition halls.

Room One mainly displays 'the Kaicheng Stone Classics', which contains twelve lections caved on 114 steles. The lections include 'the Book of Changes', ' the Book of History' , 'the Book of Songs', 'the Analects of Confucius' and some others of this kind. These are the must-read books for the intellectuals of the feudal society. At that time the printing was under development. In order to well preserve these lections, the rulers ordered to engrave them on the stone steles.

The stone tablets written by the calligraphers during the Tang Dynasty (618-907) are exhibited in the Room Two. It has the collection of the masterpieces of the famous



calligraphers as OuYang xun, Yan Zhenqing, Wang Xizhi and Liu Gongquan. Nestorian Tablet is the most useful material for experts to study the cultural exchanges between the Tang Dynasty and the other states.

Room Three houses the calligraphy-collection, which is of great importance. As a traditional art, calligraphy occupies the same position of importance as the painting in the history of Chinese art. In China, the scripts are classified into five categories: seal script, official script, regular script, running-hand and cursive-hand. Through these tablets, you could learn much about the evolvement of the Chinese characters.

Painting Stones in Room Four were engraved with historical records. You could see the portraits of Confucius and Bodhidharma on some and the allegorical pictures and texts written to appear like pictures on others. In ancient times, the rulers of different dynasties preferred to build temples and solidify the city wall. Some records of this form of Song, Yuan, Ming and Qing dynasties engraved on the steles are preserved in Room Five. Of course, if you enjoy the poetic inscriptions, you would certainly want to go to Room Six. Emperors, noted ministers and well-reputed calligraphers of various dynasties have left many inscriptions, some of which are shown in Room Seven.



The Stone Sculpture Gallery was built in 1963, including mausoleum stone sculpture and religious stone sculpture from Western Han Dynasty (206BC-24AD) to Tang Dynasty. It is prized as a great treasure in the art of world stone sculptures.

## Pingyao

<http://www.chinatoday.com.cn/English/chinatours/pingyao.htm>

# Pingyao (1)

## Introduction



The ancient city is in Pingyao County, Shanxi Province. The city wall was first built during the Zhou Dynasty (11th century - 256 B.C.) and was expanded in 1370, the third year of the reign of Ming Emperor Hongwu. Since 1997, it has been listed as a World Heritage Site. Now Pingyao city is the only one in China completely reserved as it was hundreds of years ago, no modern buildings, only narrow stone-plate street with many Chinese-style shops on the two sides.

The perimeter of this square city is 6.4km long and the city wall is the earliest and largest intact city wall in China. It is 12m high with an average width of 5m. The wall is rammed earth strengthened with a covering of bricks. Outside the city wall there is a moat, 4m wide and 4m deep.

The city has six gates, two each on the east and west and one each in the south and north side. All the gates project outwards and have two doors each. This has given the city the name "Turtle City" with the two gates on the south and north representing the head and tail of the turtle and four gates on the east and west as the four legs. The doors on the south and north stand opposite each other, like the head of the turtle extending out and two wells just beyond southern gate are like a turtle's two eyes.

Located on the trade route between Beijing and Xi'an, Pingyao developed into a merchant center where enterprising locals set up the nation's earliest banks. These institutions were the first in China to use checks, and business peaked in the 19th Century, when the city was the undisputed financial center of the Qing government.

Several old courtyards have been turned into museums, most notably the homes and offices of Pingyao's old tongs, or banks. One of the most remarkable aspects of a visit here is realizing that this remote place was immensely important to China's financial history.



Rishengchang and the Baichuan Tong, two of the most powerful banks in the old days, are now small museums that have been restored tastefully. The same can be said of the Yuanmiancheng Minfeng Hotel, where modern beds are replaced with old kang, or traditional coal-heated brick bed. The hotel's gray-brick courtyards and rooms haven't been over-restored (and there is



the additional if slightly strange convenience of having an upstairs museum dedicated to an exhibit of drawings and photos that document the history of "three-inch golden lilies," or bound feet). The hotel, constructed about 500 years ago, actually is same old as others in the city, and thus is not so distinguished on the old street.

Most of Pingyao local people originated from a business family, because Shanxi and thus Pingyao has a long tradition and history in business. Shanxi Business People (Jin Shang) were quite famous in Ming and Qing dynasties. "Before my grandfather, we were quite wealthy. But everything changed after the revolution, and of course private business wasn't allowed for many years. But then it changed and now I'm doing business, just like my ancestors used to."

Despite such connections, that crucial four-decade gap was enough to shake up families like Ms. Liu's, and, in turn, the entire town. Ms. Liu had no idea where her original ancestral home was, just as she couldn't tell me anything about the family that constructed the building that now houses her shop. She was, however, careful to emphasize that modernization had plenty of benefits.

"This used to be a dirt road," she said, pointing at the cobbled street in front of us. "This whole area used to be very backwards, and many parts of it still are. For example, there are still big problems with sewage, even though since 1992 we've been trying to shift to a modern system."

She was right, of course -- such considerations are impossible to ignore in a place where half of the residents still have no running water, and where 65 per cent of the roads are unpaved. After two days in **Pingyao**, I found that it was hard to say exactly where the city was going: in five years it could be an over-touristed example of bad restoration, or it could be a model for preservation in China. In either case, a visit to the city provides a glimpse of both old China and the difficulties that today's country faces as it tries to balance development and protection, money and relics. In the end I left **Pingyao** simply hoping for the best: that Ms. Liu enjoys good business, and that Mr. Wang's snooker table pulls in some cash, and that somehow his old carvings keep their place on the roof where they've hung since Qing days. Or maybe it was the Ming.

This has been the story in **Pingyao**, a small and isolated city that is home to some of the best preserved traditional architecture in all of China. For decades, Pingyao's relics were essentially protected by default, because citizens lacked the funds necessary to modernize their city. Today, as Chinese tourism rapidly develops, **Pingyao** residents are recognizing the unique value of their hometown, where the trick is to cash in on this resource without destroying it.

## The Ancient Pingyao City Wall

First built about 2,700 years ago, the ancient city wall was expanded in the Ming Dynasty. It was the most well-preserved wall among the ancient historical and cultural cities in China. It is square, 10 meters



high, 5 meters wide, and 5.4 kilometers in circumference. There are 72 terraces with battlements. A bird's-eye view of the city, the wall looks like a turtle, hence the name 'Turtle City'.

## The Architectural Structures

As an outstanding example of Chinese Han Nationality cities in the Ming and the Qing dynasties, Pingyao's ancient architecture fully reflects the historical flavor of those periods. The ancient town has 4 major streets, 8 lesser streets and 72 lanes form a cross shape. The shops, firms and residences were built symmetrically along a 750-meter-long street runs from north to south as the axis, and the Market Tower located in the center.

Along the central street there were over 220 banks, inns, pawn shops, Chinese herb shops, silk shops, tea stores, antique stores and restaurants at that glorious time. The most famous one was Rishengchang, the first private banking unit in China. The folk residences display the noted feature in Pingyao which are a combination of artistry and practicability.

There are many stunning temples inside and around Pingyao. Shuangling Temple (Double Tree Temple), 6 km southwest from Pingyao is famous for its colorful sculpture. The Zhengguo Temple, 12km to the northeast features unique wooden structural architecture.

## Chinese Financial House Museum – Ri Sheng Chang

Ri Sheng Chang was established in the early Qing Dynasty. It was China's forerunner for organizing Chinese early finance system, handling remittance, money exchange, deposit, loan and other financial business. There were 35 branches in China's big and medium-sized cities. Its business covered Europe, America and Southeast Asia. The banking company had established a complete and strict management system because at that time the communication and transportation conditions are quite backward. For



example, when a new employee came into the company, the manager always left several dollars in the yard to test the employee. If he returned the money to the manager, he passed the first examination. Second pass is the abacus, the main tool to calculate. Young people had to stand in the yard to practice abacus for several weeks, even in winter. What is more, the owner of the company did not involve in the daily business because he employed a general manager, and gave him some shares to attract him work harder and earned more money.

## South Street (Ming-Qing Street)

With a length of 440 meters, the street used to be the commercial center of Pingyao ancient city. The traditional and orderly-located shops of the Ming and Qing Dynasties are still well preserved. The cross-street Town House, is the highest building of the city (18.5 meters high). On its top, you can take a whole view of the Ming– Qing Street. Walking along the street, tourists can get the first-hand experience of ancient China. Meanwhile, local people are also quite honest and simple-minded.

## Courtyard Residences in Pingyao

The courtyard residences in Pingyao are elegantly designed with local features. Standing for a long history, the buildings are still perfectly preserved. There are two types of residences – commercial and civilian, which are all well known for their typical representation of China's traditional residences. One example of these courtyards is Wangs Compound House. Wang's family was originated from Shanxi Province, and after earning some money from their business and farm,



the family took three generations to build its house, and now is called as Wangs' Compound House, which is at least two centuries old.

## Qiaojia Dayuan (Qiaojiabu Folklore Museum)

Located in a large courtyard in Qiaojiabu village of the Qi County, Qiaojia Dayuan was the residential house of Qiao Zhiyong, a capitalist in the Qing Dynasty who attained his fortune in financial and commercial business in the periods of Emperor Jiaqing and Emperor Daoguang. With typical northern China architectural characteristics, the Dayuan (courtyard) is divided into 6 big yards and 20 small yards with 313 rooms and covers an area of over 8,700 sq meters.

Here you can watch farming activities in every season, ceremonies of sacrifice and ancestral worship, wedding ceremonies and daily life. Through which you'll have a view of the folk customs of Shanxi during the period of late Qing Dynasty.

## Wang's Dayuan (Qiaojiabu Folklore Museum)

The Wang's Compound, titled as the "First House of the Chinese Folk Residence", is located in the south of Shanxi Basin under the foot of the Mianshan Mountain, the only one in Shanxi Province into West China Folk Residence, the first volume of "Collection of China Folk Residential Buildings". The residence was built from about the 1660s to 1800s, covering area of 150,000 square meters, of which 45,000 are defined as provincial preserve, including the building cluster, in Gao's Gliff, the cluster in the Hongmen Blockhouse, Yi'an Garden, Danpu Garden, ancestral temples, etc.

The Wang's Compound are built along with the tendency of the hills, in massive scale, harmonious layout, and completely functional. The styles of the South China and the and the North China are combined in the building art and decoration skills, formulating a unique workmanship model, presenting a wonderful art style rooted in the land of China.

## **Shanghai Hotel of Folkloric**

has a history of over 300 years, and is a typical Chinese-style building. Different from hotels in western standards, this local hotel will give tourists an unique experience, as if living in a Chinese family.



## Pingyao (2)

From Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia

**Pingyao** ([Chinese](#): 平遥; [pinyin](#): Píngyáo) is a [Chinese](#) city and county in central [Shanxi](#) province. It lies about 715 km from [Beijing](#) and 80 km from the provincial capital, [Taiyuan](#). During the [Qing Dynasty](#), Pingyao was a financial center of China. It is now renowned for its well-preserved ancient [city wall](#), and is a [UNESCO World Heritage Site](#).

### Contents

- [1 Historical importance](#)
  - [1.1 City walls](#)
  - [1.2 Finance](#)
- [2 Geography and economy](#)
- [3 Miscellaneous](#)
- [4 References](#)
- [5 More Images](#)
- [6 External links](#)

Pingyao still retains its city layout from the [Ming](#) and [Qing](#) dynasties, conforming to a typical [bagua](#) pattern. More than 300 sites in or near the city have ancient ruins. Preserved Ming- and Qing-style residences number close to 4,000. The streets and storefronts still largely retain their historical appearance.

In the [Spring and Autumn Period](#), the county belonged to the kingdom of [Jin](#). It was part of the kingdom of [Zhao](#) in the [Warring States Period](#). In the [Qin Dynasty](#), it was known as Pingtao. During the [Han Dynasty](#), it was known as Zhongdu county. In [1986](#), the

[People's Republic of China](#) designated Pingyao as one of the Chinese Historic and Cultural Cities. It became a [World Heritage Site](#) in 1997, included also the outlying [Zhenguo Temple](#) and [Shuanglin Temple](#).

## Historical importance



*A Pingyao street*

### City walls

The [city walls](#) of Pingyao were constructed in the 3rd year of the [Hongwu Emperor](#) (1370). The walls have six [barbican](#) gates. The north and south sides have one gate each. The east and west sides have two gates each. This pattern is similar to that of a turtle (the head, tail, and four legs), earning Pingyao the moniker "Turtle City." The walls measure about 12 meters high, with a [perimeter](#) of 6,000 meters. A 4-meter wide, 4-meter deep [moat](#) can be found just outside the walls. Aside from the four structured towers at the four corners, there are also 72 watchtowers and more than 3,000 [battlements](#).



*Pingyao's city walls*

In [2004](#), part of the southern walls collapsed but have been reconstructed. However, the rest of the city walls are still largely intact and are considered among the most well-preserved ancient city walls of this scale. This makes the city walls the centerpiece of the Heritage Site.

## Finance

Pingyao was the financial center of China in the late [Qing Dynasty](#). During those times, there were as many as 20 financial institutions within the city, comprising more than half of total in the whole country. Among these is "Rishengchang," considered the first [bank](#) in China.

## Geography and economy



*the style that is inside the courtyards of pingyao*

Pingyao is located on the eastern banks of the [Fen River](#), and is in the southwestern edge of the [Taiyuan](#) basin. It is adjacent to another Chinese Historic and Cultural City [Qi County](#). Pingyao's economy is largely agricultural and the region is famed for its [beef](#). Other products from the region include [grains](#), [cotton](#), and [lacquerware](#).

## Miscellaneous

The 1992 movie [Raise the Red](#)

[Lantern](#) was shot in the [Qiao's Compound](#) of Pingyao.

## References

- This article incorporates material translated from the articles [平遥](#) and [平遥城墙](#) from the Chinese Wikipedia, retrieved on May 10, 2005.

## More Images



## External links

- [Pingyao Dialect](#)
- [UN World Heritage - Pingyao](#)

## Wang Family Grand Courtyard

2006-03-31 10:04:34 - ChinaCulture.org

By Ivana



**Wang Family Grand Courtyard**

Photo: ChinaCulture.org

Acclaimed as the "First Folk Residence in Cathay", the Grand Courtyard of the Wangs is the largest-existing folk residence cluster in China and a model of the merchant family's residence in North China's Shanxi Province, demonstrating the quintessence of Chinese architectural art and cultural values. The famous architect Zheng Xiaoxie researched the place six times, describing it as a "priceless treasure not only for the nation, but also for the entire world."

Situated in Jingsheng Town, 12 km east of Lingshi County in the province, the Wang's Grand Courtyard is only 35 km from the Ancient City of Pingyao, which is a UNESCO World Cultural Heritage Site.

This luxurious residence covers about 45,000 square meters with 123 compounds and 1,118 rooms and took about half a century (1762-1811) to build.

### Travel Story: A Visit to Wang's Grand Courtyard

## The Wangs

Besides the unique constructions and the cultural bearings, what attract tourists most are the legends and tales about the Grand Courtyard's owner, the Wangs. The Wang clan originally lived in Taiyuan, capital of Shanxi Province, before their ancestor Wang Shi moved to Jingsheng during the reign of Emperor Huangqing (1312-1313) of the Yuan Dynasty (1271-1368).

After moving to Jingsheng, Wang Shi mainly engaged in agriculture, but also made bean curd. The business gradually thrived as a result of the family's hard work and business virtues. Some members began to attend school, making the Wangs a distinguished family in the town.

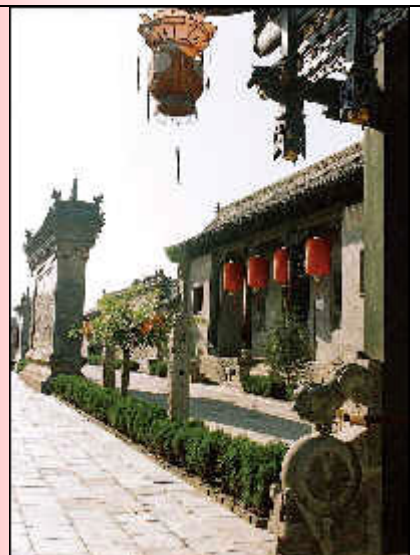


**Wang Family Grand Courtyard**

Photo: ChinaCulture.org



The Wangs prospered during the reigns of Emperors Kangxi (1662-1722), Qianlong (1736-1795), and Jiaqing (1796-1820) in the Qing Dynasty (1644-1911). The family conducted large-scale constructions at the time, building many houses, ancestral temples, graveyards, stores, and workshops. Besides, they also set up some free private schools and barns, built roads and bridges, dug channels, offered relief to those people struck by disasters, and did some other philanthropic works. In this period alone, the family produced 12 top-ranking government officials.



**Wang Family Grand Courtyard**

Photo: ChinaCulture.org

The Wangs began to decline during Emperor Daoguang's Reign (1820-1850). Besides the social and political reasons, another important factor that led to their decline was the later generations' abandonment of the family's traditional values like diligence and thriftiness. They became increasingly luxurious; some gave up attending school, choosing instead to bribe their way into government positions; while others indulged in opium, leading to the erosion of the once-prosperous family. The few members of the family who still had shops and stores within the province or other big cities like Beijing and Tianjin before the outbreak of the War of Resistance Against Japanese Aggression (1937-1945) lost what little they had after the outbreak. The whole family moved southward after the Lugou Bridge Incident (or Marco Polo Bridge Incident, staged by Japanese imperialists in their attempt to control the whole of China, which marked the beginning of China's war against Japan).

With a history of more than 680 years, the Wangs have lived on for 27 generations throughout all the ups and downs. Now there are some newly emerged talents in various fields from the Wangs. Upon gazing at the Wang Grand Courtyard, one can vividly feel the history of China in the past few centuries through the legend of one common family.

## The Construction Style and Folk Customs



**Wang Family Grand Courtyard**

Photo: ChinaCulture.org

With a time-honoured history, Jingsheng is a famous historical and cultural town. Archeological finds have revealed a painted pottery site of the Neolithic Age in the town, demonstrating that Chinese ancestors have dwelt in the place a long time. The tomb cluster dating from the Shang Dynasty (About 16th - 11th century BC) boasts a lot of precious relics from the Bronze Age. The cultural relics from the Qin and Han dynasties (221BC-220AD) also abound in the town. Currently, there are still many buildings in Jinsheng that were built in the Yuan Dynasty (1271-1368).

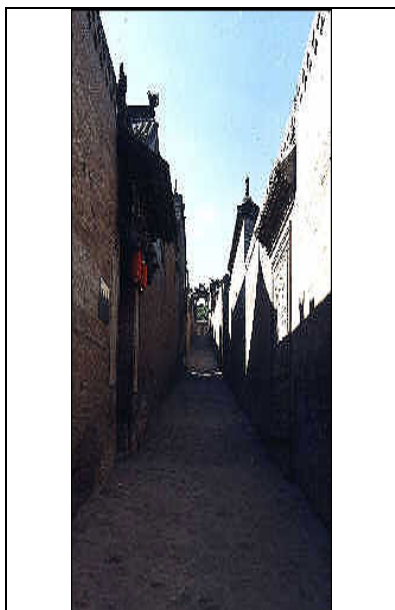
The Grand Courtyard of the Wangs, deliberately protected and left from the Qing Dynasty, boasts strong ethnic Chinese flavor and occupies an important position in Chinese construction history.



Wang Family Grand Courtyard  
Photo: ChinaCulture.org

The mansions of the family are rather luxurious, as the family paid little attention to the production cost. In the Kangxi Reign of the Qing Dynasty, the Wangs built the first two lanes named Yongcui and Suorui for their mansions in Jingsheng. In the Qianlong Reign, the Zhongling lane was built, and the Hongmen, Gongji, and Dongnan fortresses were also built to form a dwelling area for the Wangs. During the Yongzheng Reign, the Chongning Fortress was built. Two Wang members, Wang Rucong and Wang Rucheng, built the Gaojiaya dwelling area, the last construction cluster.

Gaojiaya began to be built in 1796 and finished in 1811. After 16 years, the whole construction covered 11,728 square meters with 26 courtyards and 218 rooms. The features of the mansion are as follows:



Wang Family Grand Courtyard  
Photo: ChinaCulture.org

First, the whole construction faces the river, away from the mountain. The buildings were established upon the fully advantages of the landscape of the hills, which makes the whole compound appear scattered in a graceful manner. Layers of gardens on different heights of the hill give the compound more levels and the hill more vibrancy and glamour.

Second, the compound walls of are very tall, and there are four gates on four circles of walls that enclose the buildings on different layers. This style inherited the construction mode of the Western Zhou Dynasty (11th century-771BC) that employs halls in the front and rooms in the rear part, as well as many rows of houses. There are a multiple of spaces, which strengthens safety.

The main body of each building strictly follows feudal rules about the construction styles of different ranks, reflecting the class differences in the feudal society as well as the notions and thoughts of the scholar-officials.

The third feature is the magnificence and the complete functions of the compound. The main body of the construction is symmetrical in its layout. Inside one courtyard, there always seems to be another; behind one door, there always seems to be another door. Rooms, pavilions, studies, gardens, and kitchens are all stationed in the places that are most suitable to them.

Stone carvings, brick carvings, and woodcarvings have various themes and rich content. Known for their exquisite skills, the carvings incorporate folk customs and folk arts, and best represent the "fine and dense" artistic style of the Qing Dynasty. Many experts and scholars think that the place is suitable for traveling, dwelling, and just plain appreciating.



**Wang Family Grand Courtyard**

Photo: ChinaCulture.org

## Construction Art

The Grand Courtyard of the Wangs gained its fame as the "First Courtyard in Cathay" not only because of its use, stability, and beauty, but also because of its magnificent grandeur and unique craftsmanship that are embodied in its location, structure, interior design, and cultural bearings.

The whole compound incorporates garden art and courtyard building techniques under the premises of conforming to social institutions and practicality. The traditional flavor of North China's civil residence is very distinctive, but the building also borrowed the design of the gardens in South China. The outline, the intervals, and every other detail of the compound jointly present an elaborate work of Chinese folk residence.

## Three Carvings



**Wang Family Grand Courtyard**

Photo: ChinaCulture.org

Carving works made of brick, stone, and wood can be seen almost anywhere in the Grand Courtyard of the Wangs, yet each piece of the work is fine and ingenious. As an important part of the courtyard's construction art, the carvings demonstrate the artistic feature of the time.

With varied themes, the carving works applied a multiple of carving skills. Literati figures, painters, and carving artists participated in making the artistic carvings works, presenting

Confucius, Taoism, and Buddhism thoughts as well as the Chinese folk customs and arts. Consciously or unconsciously, the carvings have inherited ancient Chinese civilization in its unique way.

The carvings are an important reason why the courtyard is also reputed as the "art gallery of Chinese folk residence."



**Wang Family Grand Courtyard**

Photo: ChinaCulture.org

## Furniture, Painting and Calligraphy

As an important component of the Chinese artistic treasure trove, the furniture art boasts not only practical use, but also values in cultural research and artistic appreciation. Most of the furniture exhibited in the courtyard were made in the Ming (1368-1644) and Qing dynasties. Although the style is usually simple, the carvings on the furniture are very exquisite, fully showing the

natural beauty from the fine texture, color, and pattern of the wood.



**Wang Family Grand Courtyard**

Photo: ChinaCulture.org

The calligraphies and paintings collected in the courtyard were mostly from the famous calligraphers and painters in the Ming and Qing dynasties. The famous literati Zheng Banqiao's handwritings, Qi Junzao's horizontal wood inscribed boards on doors, vertically-hung scrolls of Fushan and Liuyong (Liu Luoguo), paintings of Tang Bohu and Wen Zhengming, and Weng Fanggang's stone carvings and horizontal wood inscribed boards can all be found here.

All the works contain their workmanship in the strokes and place their feeling on the points and in the paintings. Even after two to three hundred years, these works still remain full of charm and are of high value, therefore, often enticing numerous poets and writers among the courtyard's many visitors to make a temporary stay to savour their flavour a bit longer.



## Hanging Monastery at Hunyuan

<http://www.travelchinaguide.com/attraction/shanxi/datong/hanging.htm>

### *Hanging Monastery (Xuankong Si)*

Hanging Monastery stands at the foot of [Mt. Hengshan](#), 5 kilometers (3 miles) south of Hunyuan County, and 65 kilometers (40 miles) from downtown Datong City. Since it hangs on the west cliff of Jinxia Gorge more than 50 meters above the ground, it is called Hanging Monastery.



Hanging Monastery, built in 491, has survived more than 1400 years. The extant monastery was largely rebuilt and maintained in the Ming Dynasty (1368-1644) and Qing Dynasty (1644-1911).

How could a building like this withstand the winds and storms of so many years? Hanging Monastery is an architectural wonder. A unique mechanical theory was applied to building the framework. Crossbeams were half-inserted into the rock as the foundation, while the rock in back became its support. Seen from below, Hanging Monastery appears to be a tumble-down castle in the air. Inside, Hanging Monastery provides the same scene as other temples.

Construction experts from countries including Britain, Germany, and Italy, come to see the monastery. In their words, Hanging Monastery, which mixes mechanics, aesthetics, and Buddhism, is rare. The monastery and everything it symbolizes embodies a great cultural achievement of Chinese people.

The second attraction of Hanging Monastery is that it includes Buddhism, Taoism and Confucianism. Inside the monastery, the sculptures of Sakyamuni, [Confucius](#) and Laotzu appear together, which is unusual. There are 40 halls and cabinets, which contain about 80 sculptures made of copper, iron, terracotta, and stone. The features are vividly carved.

Why build a monastery like this? Location is the first reason; building a monastery on the cliff could shield it from floods. In addition, the mountain peak protects it from rain and snow; and the mountain around it also diminishes damage from long-time sunshine. The second reason is that the builders followed a principle in Taoism: no noises, including those from rooster crowing and dog baying; so from the upper ground, all noises drop away.



## The Hanging Monastery



Located 3.5 kilometers southeast of Hunyuan County and built halfway on the cliff at Jinlong Canyon, the Hanging Monastery of Hengshan Mountain is one of China's most unique and remarkable feats of wooden architectural complex. The monastery is also the only one built in honor to Sakyamuni, [Laozi](#), and [Confucius](#), who are founders of Buddhism, Taoism and Confucianism respectively.

The monastery is founded during the Northern Wei period (386-584) in the 6th century, boasting a history of over 1,400 years. An architectural complex was built on the base of the natural hollows and outcrops along the contour of the cliff. Over 40 halls and [pavilions](#) within an area of 152.5 square meters are connected each other by corridors, bridges, boardwalks. They are evenly distributed and well balanced in height. Inside the monastery are over 80 statues; some are cast with [bronze](#), some with iron, some with clay and some are carved out of stone. Founders of [Buddhism](#), Taoism and Confucianism are living friendly and harmoniously with each other.



Facing east, the architectural complex hangs about fifty meters above the ground. It used to be much higher above the ground, but over the ages the silt has built up, raising the level of the riverbed. Reconstruction work was carried out from the Tang through the Qing dynasties, as well as in recent times. In 1982, the monastery was listed as one of our country's key protecting units of cultural relics.

### Dangerous architecture

The hanging monastery is built in a perilous situation, half way up a cliff rising over one hundred meters above the ground.

Looking upward, layer upon layer of pavilions propped up by scores of pillars with a diameter of an ordinary bowl can be seen while the reddish brown rocks seem to tilt forward, seemingly to fall at any minute.

It is said that the monks built this monastery by tying ropes around their waists and descending down a cliffside. Using chisels, they bored holes into the rock face. Then they inserted wooden support struts, which served as the main supports for the rest of the [temple](#).

When crossing a boardwalk connecting two pavilions, visitors cannot help holding their breath and walking with the greatest care, fearing the monastery might collapse. The wooden board under the feet keep creaking, the architecture, however, stands fast steadily on its ground.

Though the monastery usually gives the visitors a dangerous impression, visitors are always willing to take a trip there out of a sense of adventure and curiosity.

## "Iron shoulder poles"



The boardwalks in the mid-air are propped up by tens of quadrate beams, also called "Iron shoulder poles", which were made from a special local product "hemlock" and then inserted firmly into the rocks. It is said that the beams had been soaped in Chinese wood oil, which can dispel the termites and protect it from erosion.

Apart from these "iron should poles", pillars also play an important part in sustaining the monastery in the mid-air. The placement of each pillar was calculated with much elaboration in order to guarantee the architecture could be properly propped up. Some of the pillars were used for weight-bearing while others were just for the sake of balancing the heights of different buildings.

## Why on the cliff?



Three reasons accounts for the establishment of such a mid-air monastery : the first lies in the peculiar geographical situation to the advantage for such a monastery; Second, as the building site used to connect [Wutai Mountain](#) in the south and [Datong](#) in the north, establishing such a monastery would provide convenience for the religious followers. Last but not the least is the climate factor. For years, Hun River, which flows at the foot of the cliff on which the monastery was built,

had been causing serious flooding. The local people, suspecting the Gold [Dragon](#) was playing the trick, decided to build a monastery on this cliff to beat the demon.

## Three Features

Built 50 meters above the ground, the hanging monastery further developed traditions and styles of [Chinese architecture](#) and has established its unique position among various temples and monasteries with three outstanding features -- "oddity, peril, and superlative workmanship".

The "oddity" of the monastery consists in the design and the ideal geographical location of the hanging monastery. Situated in a basin of the canyon, the monastery hangs in the mid-air on the cliff. The protruding part at the top of the cliff, resembling an [umbrella](#), can protect it from the rain and even the flooding. The advantageous geographical position is one of the reasons accounting for the excellent state of its conservation.



In the early hours, and from a distance, the temple appears an integral part of the mountain. Close up, inside it, it seems a miracle that wood crafted in such a way: angled, braced, and bracketed, could at one time rest part inside the ledges of rock and part creaking perilously out from it.

The perilous situation of the Hanging Monastery makes one feel dumbfounded. Walking a few miles deep into the canyon, you will see in the curling up clouds and mists, pavilions in the air, hanging on the precipice. These pavilions are propped up by a few pillars with a diameter of an ordinary bowl. The majority of the building body is suspending in the air.

The superlative workmanship of the Hanging Monastery lies in the fact that with the supporting beams as its basis and the skilful utilization of the hidden rocks, the whole building is uniquely well-knit into an integral whole and the balustrades are artistically connected. The layout of the monastery structure is in excellent symmetry with variations, well-connected though scattered at various points, in good proportion though extraordinarily complicated. The main structure consists of over 40 halls pavilions, all of which are made of wood. The mountains are excavated at halfway to create grottoes and within the niches Buddhas are enshrined. Monasteries like this with a history of over 1000 years can be lauded as "superb work by the God and Ghosts".



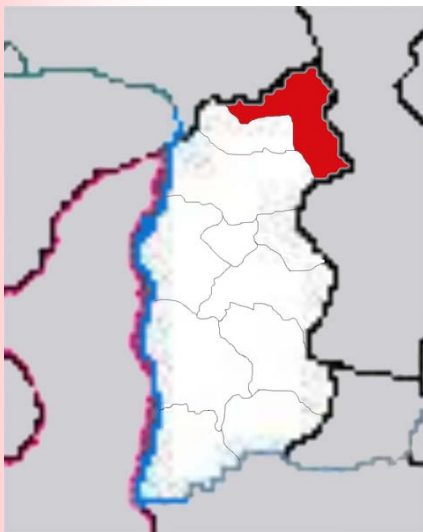
## Datong

<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Datong>

# Datong

From Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia

**Datong** ([Chinese](#): 大同; [pinyin](#): Dàtóng) is a city in the northern [Shanxi](#) Province in [China](#).



## History

The town was founded as Píngchéng (平城) in [200 BC](#) during the [Han Dynasty](#). Located near the Great Wall Pass to Inner Mongolia it blossomed during the following period and became a stop-off point for Camel Caravans moving from China into Mongolia and beyond. It was sacked at the end of the [Eastern Han Dynasty](#). Pingcheng became the capital of [Northern Wei](#) from [398](#) AD until [494](#) AD. The famous [Yungang Grottoes](#) (云岗石窟 Yúngǎ ng Shíkù) were constructed during the later part of this period ([460](#) - [494](#) AD).

The city was renamed Datong in [1048](#) AD and sacked again at the end of the [Ming Dynasty](#) ([1649](#) AD), but promptly rebuilt in [1652](#) AD.

## Contents

- [1 History](#)
- [2 Places of Interest](#)
- [3 Economy](#)
- [4 Colleges and universities](#)
- [5 See also](#)
- [6 External links](#)

## Places of Interest

The [Yungang Grottoes](#), or Cloud Ridge Caves (云岗石窟 yún gǎ ng shí kù ) are a collection of shallow caves located 16 km west of Datong. There are over 50,000 carved images and statues of Buddhas and Boddhisatvas within these grootes, ranging from 4 centimeters to 7 meters tall. Most of these icons are around 1000 years old. Within the city itself, there are a few surviving sites of

historical interest such as the Nine Dragon Screen (九龙壁 jiǔ lóng bì ) , the Huayan Monastery ( 华严寺 huá yán sì ) , and the Shanhua Monastery ( 善化寺 shàn huà sì). Further afield is the [Hanging Temple](#) (悬空寺 xuán kong sì) built into a cliff face near [Mount Heng](#). Most of the historical sites in this region date to the Tang and Ming dynasties.



*Datong railway station*

## Economy

The GDP per capita was ¥10550 (ca. US\$1270) in 2003, ranked no. 242 among 659 Chinese cities. Coal mining is the dominant industry.

## Colleges and universities

- [Datong University](#)  
(大同大学)

## See also

- [Capital of China](#)

- [Jumenbu](#)

## External links

- [\[The Datong Report Main Page\]](#) - Virtual Walks, Photos and backgrounds on Datong City and Yungang Grottoes, Northern Shanxi by China Report.com.

Yungang Grottoes

[http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Yungang\\_Grottoes](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Yungang_Grottoes)

Yungang Grottoes (1)

From Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia





Cell murals and statues in the Yungang Grottoes

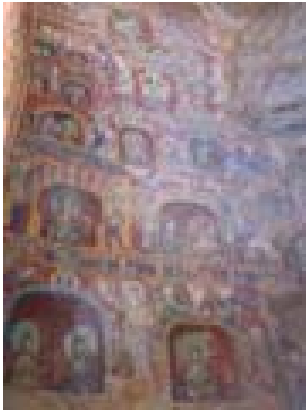
The **Yungang Grottoes** ([Simplified Chinese](#): 云冈石窟; [Traditional Chinese](#): 雲崗石窟; [pinyin](#): Yúngā ng Shíkū ) are ancient [Buddhist](#) temple grottoes near the city of [Datong](#) in the Chinese province of [Shanxi](#). They are excellent examples of [rock-cut architecture](#) and one of the three most famous ancient sculptural sites of China. The others are [Longmen](#) and [Mogao](#).

The site is located about 16 km south-west of the city, in the valley of the Shi Li river at the base of the Wuzhou Shan

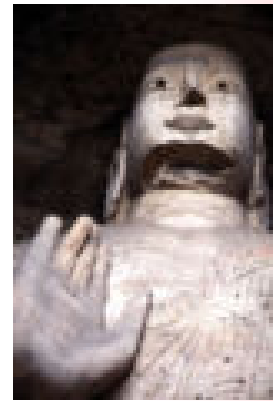
mountains. The grottoes were mainly constructed in the period between 460-525 AD during the [Northern Wei dynasty](#). They are an outstanding example of the Chinese stone carvings from the [5th](#) and [6th centuries](#). All together the site is composed of 252 grottoes with more than 51,000 Buddha statues and statuettes. In [2001](#), the Yungang Grottoes were made a [UNESCO World Heritage Site](#).

		<a href="#">Buddhism</a>		
<a href="#">Terms and concepts</a>	<a href="#">History</a>	<a href="#">Schools and sects</a>	<a href="#">People</a>	By <a href="#">region</a> and <a href="#">country</a>
<a href="#">List of topics</a>	<a href="#">Timeline</a>	<a href="#">Temples</a>	<a href="#">Texts</a>	<a href="#">Culture</a>
		<a href="#">Portal</a>		<a href="#">v</a> • <a href="#">d</a> • <a href="#">e</a>

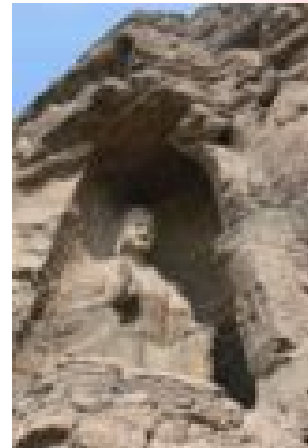
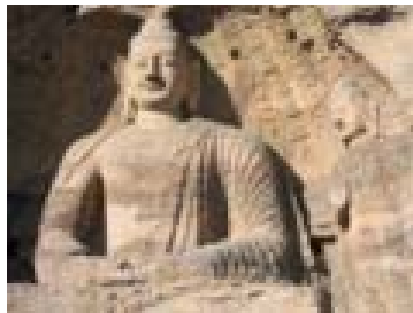
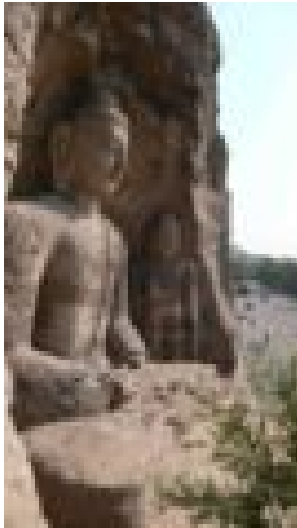
## Gallery



Buddhist paintings in the Yungang  
Grottoes



One of the larger statues at  
Yungang



## External links

- [UNESCO World Heritage page about Yungang Grottoes](#)



## Yungang Grottoes (2)



*The main gate of the Yungang Grottoes.*

The three main sites in China that are famous for their stone sculpture are Dunhuang, Longmen and Yungang. Among these, the Yungang grottoes are considered first among equals, for their tremendous size, their ancient history, and their relatively complete state of preservation. In 1961, the State Council of China declared this a National Key Cultural Relics Protected Unit, and in 2001 the site was listed as a World Cultural Heritage Site.

The grottoes are located 16 kilometers to the west of Datong City in Shanxi Province, on the southern ridge of Wu Zhou Mountain. They were carved into the mountain and extend for a kilometer in length. Their carving began in the first year of the Northern Wei dynasty, or 460 AD, and most of the work was finished before the Northern Wei moved its capital to Luoyang in 494 AD although some work continued to the reign of Zheng Guang, 520-525 AD. This is the only complete set of Northern Wei stone carving groups in China.

Fifty-three grottoes remain at Yungang today, with some 51,000 statues. The tallest among these is 17 meters high, the smallest is only a few centimeters. Carving techniques build on and further develop the traditional arts of the Qin and Han dynasties, but also absorb and merge into these the artistic traditions of both India and western regions. The grottoes are divided into three distinct sections, east, central and west, and brief descriptions of those follow.



*A lotus ceiling in the Yungang Grottoes.*

### East Portion of the Grottoes



*An outdoor sitting Buddha in one of the Tanyao Five Grottoes of Yungang.*

These are made up of grottoes numbered #1 through #4 and are generally called the 'tower' caves due to the carved tower or pagoda in the middle of each. All of these were carved during the Bei Wei period, and grottoes #1 and #2 are best preserved. In the center of each is a square tower and covering it as well as all four walls are carved stories of the Buddha and Buddha in various structures. These provide important reference material in researching Northern Wei architecture. The tower in the #3 grotto was not

completed before the Northern Wei moved their capital. Later one Buddha and two Bodhisattva statues were added and from the looks of the carving technique and style these appear to be Tang dynasty works. The #4 grotto has severely deteriorated but on the southern wall is preserved an inscription from the year 520 of Northern Wei. This is the latest inscription still remaining from the Northern Wei period in the Yungang grottoes.

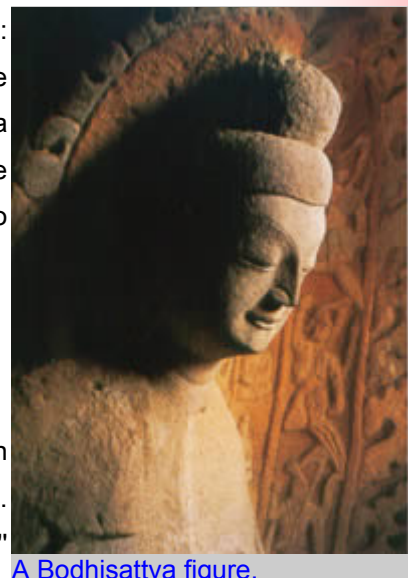
## Central Portion of the Grottoes

Numbered #5 to #20, these are situated in the central region of the precipice of Wu Zhou mountain. They were the earliest part of the grottoes to be carved and they are of the highest value. The five grottoes numbered 16 to 20 were supervised by the high priest under the Northern Wei Emperor Wencheng and are considered to be the most resplendent of all. They are particularly notable for their Buddhist carvings. To the east of these five grottoes are Grottoes #9 to #13, which have come to be known as the 'painted' caves since later generations painted the carvings in them. Again, these provide important material for researching the history of architecture, arts, calligraphy and music.

Grottoes #5 and #6 are closely linked and are on a very grand scale: the central seated Buddha in #5 stands seventeen meters high, the tallest of any statue at the Yungang Grottoes. In the #6 grotto stands a 16-meter-high stupa, carved with Buddha statues on all sides. The carving in these two grottoes is very practiced and is considered to represent the pinnacle of the art at Yungang.

## West Portion of the Grottoes

To the west of the #20 grotto are relatively small caves, some of which have not yet been given numbers. Right now they number #21 to #53. The dating of these is relatively late, most being works after the 19th year of Emperor Tai He of Northern Wei (495). The carving styles and



A Bodhisattva figure.

techniques are more developed than in the eastern and central sections, the Buddha figures are thinner and so on. This is a more Sinified style of Buddhist art, which begins to approach the style of Longmen after the capital of the Northern Wei moved to Luoyang.

The Yungang Grottoes are an open-air museum that attracts the attention of thousands of scholars from around the world every year. The historic and artistic value of the art here is of the highest level.

# Beijing

## Beijing

<http://hua.umf.maine.edu/China/beijing.html>

## Beijing

---

Although Beijing is an ancient city and was often used as the capital by one warlord or another, its modern history as a capital begins in the Yuan dynasty (1271-1368) with Kublai Khan, grandson of Ghengis Khan. It is here that Marco Polo made his base as he visited and travelled with the Khan. He spent over 20 years as a guest of the Khan before returning to Europe with his vivid descriptions of the great civilization to the east. Most of what we see today in Beijing was built during the Ming dynasty (1368-1644).

It is a city built to inspire; to awe the populace with the power of the emperor. Built for the rites and ceremonies performed to maintain the Mandate of Heaven as well as for defense, it achieves grace through power and size rather than through ornament and variety.

The Mings looked to the past for their design. Beijing, like most major cities in China was built with a series of concentric walls. The outermost wall surrounded what was the Chinese city. A major highway which provides access to the outskirts and links the city with the major arteries to the rest of the country sits on its bed. At various points along the highway you can see the guard towers which loomed above the old gates to the city and provided early warning of invasion. One might regret the loss of this ancient wall, but the alternative would have been to raze whole neighborhoods in one of the most densely packed cities in the world.

## Tiananmen Square



Tiananmen Square lies within the area defined by the next wall. Formal access to the square is through the Zhengyang Gate, which marks the boundary of what was once an enclosing wall of grey stone and brick. The tomb of Chairman Mao is centered in the path of the gate. The square itself is fairly recent. It used to be filled with shops and alleys, as the streets surrounding it still are today. Tiananmen is large enough to diminish the impact of two enormous and recent additions to the center of the city. On one side of the square lies the People's History Museum and on the other, the Great Hall of the People. The Great Hall is used for major meetings of the government and State occasions. Elaborate receptions are held there for foreign dignitaries and it contains over 50 rooms, each dedicated to a particular province or minority.



The square serves as a setting for the Imperial City in which lies the Forbidden City. The red walls, golden roof tiles, and the portrait of Mao Zedong contrast strongly with the surroundings of grey and buff. Thousands of tourists from all over China visit the Forbidden City daily. Fred observed at this point that we were of as much interest to the Chinese as was the Forbidden City. Westerners still are a rare sight.

At one time there were vast gardens and parks adjacent to the Forbidden City where the elite could walk freely. Although urban encroachment has swallowed many, we visited Zhongshan Gongyuan, named after and anchored by a statue of Sun Ya-tsen. If that is confusing try this; Sun Zhongshan is the formal name for Sun Yixian which is the new spelling of the informal name of the person we call Sun Ya-tsen or Sun Yatsen. Sun is the family name and Zhongshan is the given name. In China, to indicate respect, admiration, and fondness the given name is often used. Therefore, Zhongshan Gongyuan is Sun Ya-tsen Park. By whatever name, the park was beautiful.

It was a Sunday and the place was filled with the laughter of children and the sight of couples strolling among the trees. Children were often dressed in their finest so that their parents could take their pictures. There was a long winding covered walk that ran through the trees. A path eventually led us to a building which housed a formal garden. Kay discovered the magic and shed off the fatigue of 35 hours of traveling to relax and discover China.

### The Imperial City

As you cross the bridge in front of Mao's portrait and enter the Imperial City through Tiananmen (Gate of Heavenly Peace) you see the Meridian Gate which leads to the Forbidden City. Only those who had official business with the emperor or one of his ministers were allowed inside the Forbidden City. That



doesn't mean that it was a quiet place. It was the center of vast empires. There were hundreds of ministers who had offices there or in the immediate area, there were probably over a thousand servants, and then there were the palace guards . . . At one point there were over 70,000 eunuchs attached to the Forbidden City in one capacity or another. Today the area is filled with museum offices, ministries, tourists, small souvenir shops, and restaurants.

The first Ming capital was at Nanjing. The first Ming emperor Hung Wu wanted to rid the country of Mongol influence just as he had rid it of Mongol rule. Traditional rites and ceremonies of the Chinese were brought back and celebrated. Nanjing was close to the supply routes from the southern breadbasket and provided much better communication with the provinces both for defense and administration. Yongle (Yung Lo), the third Ming emperor, overthrew the second Ming emperor from his stronghold in the northern provinces. He gave up the advantages of the southern capital and moved his capital to Beijing for political support.

He continued to emphasize Chinese and Confucian principles and incorporated them into his design for the new northern capital. The design of the city reflects a return to Confucian principles of order, ethical conduct, and the importance of rites to express filial duty. The emperor was the Son of Heaven and this was the source of his Mandate to rule. All others owed filial duty to the emperor.

Yongle sent a survey team to catalog the city of the Yuan dynasty and then he had it destroyed. The new city would be Chinese. Over two hundred thousand workers dedicated 20 years to the building of the new city and palaces. The Palace wasn't finished until 1421. As you go through the gates and penetrate the depths of the city, it is still possible to feel the remove, the isolation from common concerns required by and of the emperor.

As you cross an open courtyard, you approach the Hall of Supreme Harmony where vigorous final examinations were given to scholars during the early Ming dynasty. The Ming emperors revived and expanded the civil service system which required mastery of the classics to enter government service. If a family could educate a son to this level, the entire family benefited and the scholar became a revered figure among the ancestors in following generations. The system continued until the early 1900's and provided stability to successive governments.

After the Supreme Hall of Harmony, you encounter two more major structures; the Hall of Middle Harmony and the Hall of Perfect Harmony, which were also used for public functions. Only as you retreat further and further into the center of the palace do you find some sort of quiet and repose. The actual quarters of the emperor are rather simple by palatial standards. The low slung buildings have large rooms, but not so large as to be uncomfortable for daily living.

The Imperial family would never be alone. There would always be someone in attendance. The emperor ate with an attendant at his elbow to remind him not to take more than three bites from any dish. If he had a favorite dish, he had to keep it to himself and hope that by accident it would show up again. Poison and assassination was a constant presence in daily life by dint of the measures used to prevent them. Imagine living and accepting a life of such paranoia that your fears of those close to you were as great as the fear of threat from outside. Mao Zedong lived a similar life in his compound adjacent to the Imperial City. His thorough knowledge of classical history led him to adopt many of the same personal safeguards developed through the centuries of dynastic reign.

## **The Temple of Heaven -- Tiantan Park**

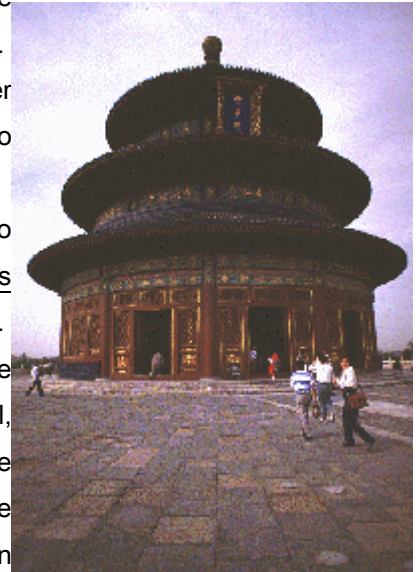
The Forbidden City and the three Halls of Harmony look directly south, toward the Temple of Heaven. Twice a year at the Winter Solstice and again in the fourth lunar month the emperor would proceed from the Forbidden City to the Temple of Heaven to ask for blessings for the people. He would dress in the Hall of Middle Harmony and then go to the Hall of Supreme Harmony to form the procession.

The streets between the Forbidden City and the Temple of Heaven were cleared. All doors and windows would be shuttered, the people closed in behind them. It was forbidden that a commoner look upon the person of the divine emperor. The procession, made of all high ranking ministers marching in order of importance, would go through the Meridian Gate, out through the main gates, and cross what is now Tiananmen Square. Only the emperor could use the center doors. The two side doors were designated for either the military or the civil ministers. Separating the military and civil ministers was a custom which arose after many squabbles about rank and order of precedence between the two branches of government.

When they arrived at the Temple of Heaven, the emperor would retire to the Hall of Abstinence to meditate and pray alone for the night. Sacrifices would be prepared in the triple roofed Hall of Prayer for a Good Harvest.



Just before dawn, he would rise and prepare. Each ritual, movement, utensil, and costume had purpose and symbol. The emperor wore a blue gown



embroidered with gold, the roofs of the buildings were tiled in blue -- a sacred color symbolizing Heaven. Just as the gold roofs of the Imperial Palaces were only used on buildings of the emperor, blue was reserved for Heaven. The procession passed down a long elevated concourse to arrive at the Altar of Heaven.

Three tiers of white marble glistening in the false light of predawn lent beauty and majesty to the ceremony, the only roof -- the Heaven above. There, as the tip of the sun shown over the horizon, the emperor would offer the animal, grain, and silk sacrifices which had been prepared the previous day.

This ceremony was first performed in the Zhou dynasty (1100-771 B.C.). The last time it was performed (December 23, 1914) a republic had been founded and Yuan Shikai, the President, wore the imperial robes of the emperor.

These rites linked culture and tradition through multiple dynasties. The cost of this heritage was painful. Hundreds of thousands of workers labored to build the palaces and fortifications at Beijing, Xi'an, Nanjing and other major cities of the Ming dynasty. Taxes were deep and production was diverted to provide material for the construction. Due to graft and corruption, much of the good farm land was used by the nobility for pleasure sports or mismanaged until it was barely productive. By the end of the Ming dynasty, the population of the country had been reduced by about half through starvation. While reviving Neo-Confucianism the rites and rituals, they forgot the Confucian ideal that good government takes care of the needs of the people first.

Today the grounds of the Temple of Heaven are a welcome relief from the dense crowding of the city. Each day, but especially on Sunday, thousands come to walk, play, practice Dai Qi, listen to or play music and fly kites. I spent an hour listening to a group play selections from the Beijing opera. An elderly woman sang. I was told that she had only studied for the past four years -- after her retirement. Her voice was as clear as a bell; she easily sang some of the most difficult trills.



The long covered walk which leads to the main Temple is a meeting place, gaming room, private club, and way of life. Mahjongg and dominos are the most popular choices, but you also find Chinese chess, card games, and dice. A group of women were doing complicated march/dances in formation while playing a straightforward beat on their drums. They may or may not have been practicing for some future performance; just doing it is enough for many groups. Watching is also a popular pastime. Activities from a game of mahjongg to the women marchers were surrounded by groups of spectators.

## The Summer Palace

It takes three days to get to the Summer Palace if you go by barge along the canals and river to Kunming Lake in an imperial convoy.

It takes about a half-hour by bus. The Summer Palace seemed like a remote "get-away" for the emperors who were enclosed in their own stifling prison.

The "palace" is actually a garden encompassing a small mountain, a lake, a river, and innumerable buildings. Most gardens in China are places to enjoy the shape and contour of nature. The gardener creates a perfection of nature and tries to encourage appreciation of its beauty. It has little resemblance to what we would call a garden.

Qianlong of the Qing dynasty, built a garden here in honor of his mother in 1750. He expanded an earlier Ming temple, enlarged the lake and called it Kunming Lake, and renamed the mountain the temple stands on from Jug Mountain to Longevity Mountain. His name for The Summer Palace was the Garden of Pure Ripples.

In 1860 the British and French destroyed the Garden of Pure Ripples as well as Yuan Ming Yuan (what we call the Old Summer Palace). Yuan Ming Yuan comprised acres and acres of buildings housing the treasures of China. The British and French were "negotiating" with the emperor to get better trade agreements. Victor Hugo wrote an open letter at the time, deploring the action and calling it one of the great tragedies of history.



The Dowager Empress Cixi began rebuilding the Summer Palace in 1873 for her retirement and renamed it Yi He Yuan -- Garden of Peace and Harmony in Old Age. That remains its proper name in Chinese. The Dowager Empress Cixi served as regent and was able to channel funds from the treasury which had been targeted for the navy. She is often blamed for the easy victory won by the Japanese navy and the subsequent humiliation of the Chinese government in 1895.

It was burnt again by Russian, British and Italian troops in 1900 as retaliation for the Boxer Rebellion.

Cixi began rebuilding in 1902 and actually got to use it for a while. She died in 1908.



We entered the grounds through the back door to visit "little Suzhou" in full sunlight. This village was built to replicate one near Shanghai to give the emperor the illusion of shopping and exploring its beauty. Eunuchs and ladies from the court would play the roles of shopkeepers and artisans while the emperor meandered through the stalls. There is still a feeling of play-acting as you go from shop to shop. The only

thing that seemed quite real was the river.

We climbed Longevity Mountain to the Lama Temple at the top. On the way you could begin to appreciate what Cixi had planned. The entire garden is laid out to create moments. Cixi would have an entire wall built so she could put a window in it. As you walked along the wall, your senses would relax and the sudden view framed by the window would recall the freshness of the view.

The Marble Boat was built by Qianlong who compared the boat to the state and the water to the people. The people keep the state afloat and without their support the ship sinks. Cixi changed the top of the boat, adding the superstructure and paddle-wheels. She also installed a large mirror in the cabin so she could sit gazing at it on rainy days. The mirror would act as a frame for the different views behind her.

The names of the sights at the Summer Palace are as much a part of the experience as are the structures themselves: Hall of Dispelling Clouds, Strolling through Painted Scenery, Floating Heart Bridge, Gate of Welcoming the Moon, Hall for Listening to Orioles Sing. While the Summer Palace is not a simple thing, part of its purpose is to enhance the perception of and enjoyment of simple things.



At the end of the day, as we were waiting for our bus, Denise and Fred were talked into doing one of the simple things. We not only had a great time setting this up, I am afraid I missed the best picture; when I finished shooting with the various cameras from the group and was paying the vendor, I noticed that a crowd of about 50 people had gathered to watch the show. I imagine we made an interesting story over the dinner table that night.

Return to the [China Page and Main Menu](#)

Go to [Beijing](#) | [Active Beijing](#) | [Great Wall](#) | [Xi'an](#) | [Shanghai](#)

Go to [Beijing Pictures](#) | [Active Beijing Pictures](#) | [Great Wall Pictures](#) | [Xi'an Pictures](#) | [Shanghai Pictures](#)

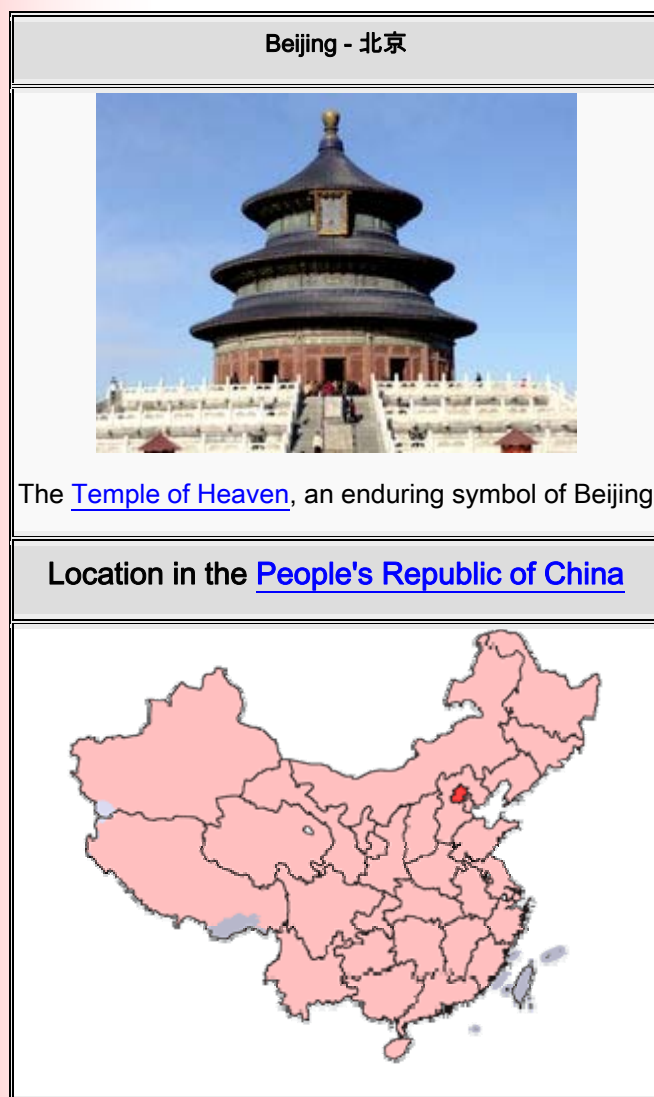
<http://hua.umf.maine.edu/China/beijing.html>

Last update: February, 2002

© Marilyn Shea 1996, 1999, 2000, 2002

# Beijing

From Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia



**Beijing** [[English Pronunciation](#)] ([Chinese](#): 北京 [[Chinese Pronunciation](#)]; [Pinyin](#): Běijīng; [IPA](#): [peɪ˥˩ ʈ͡ʂʊŋ˥˩]), a [metropolis](#) in northern [China](#), is the [capital](#) of the [People's Republic of China](#) (PRC). It was formerly known in English as **Peking** or **Peiking** [[English Pronunciation](#)]. Beijing is also one of the four [municipalities](#) of the PRC, which are equivalent to [provinces](#) in China's [administrative structure](#). [Beijing Municipality](#) borders [Hebei Province](#) to the north, west, south, and for a small section in the east, and [Tianjin Municipality](#) to the southeast.

Beijing is China's second largest city in terms of [population](#), after [Shanghai](#). It is a major transportation hub, with dozens of railways, roads and expressways entering and leaving it in all directions. It is also the focal point of many international flights to China. Beijing is recognized as the [political](#), [educational](#), and [cultural](#) center of the People's Republic of China, while [Shanghai](#) and [Hong Kong](#)

predominate in [economic](#) fields.

Beijing is one of the [Four Great Ancient Capitals of China](#). It will also host the [2008 Summer Olympics](#).

## Names

Beijing (北京) literally means "Northern capital", in line with the common [East Asian](#) tradition whereby capital cities are explicitly named as such. Other cities similarly named include [Nanjing](#) (南京), China, meaning "southern capital"; [Tokyo](#) (東京), [Japan](#), and [Đô  ng Kinh](#) (東京; now [Hanoi](#)), [Vietnam](#), both

meaning "eastern capital"; as well as [Kyoto](#) (京都), [Japan](#), and [Gyeongseong](#) (京城; now [Seoul](#)), [Korea](#), both meaning simply "capital".

Basic Information	
Origin of name:	北 <i>běi</i> - north 京 <i>jīng</i> - capital "Northern Capital"
Abbreviation:	京 <i>Jīng</i>
<b>Area:</b>	16,808 <a href="#">km²</a> ( <a href="#">29th</a> )
<b>Population</b> ( <a href="#">2004</a> ):	14,930,000 ( <a href="#">26th</a> ) Municipality
	approx. 7.5 million Urban Area
<b>Density</b> ( <a href="#">2004</a> ):	888/km² ( <a href="#">4th</a> ) Municipality
<b>GDP</b> ( <a href="#">2004</a> ): - per capita	<a href="#">CNY</a> 428.3 billion ( <a href="#">15th</a> ) <a href="#">CNY</a> 28,700 ( <a href="#">2nd</a> )
<b>HDI</b> ( <a href="#">2005</a> )	0.882 ( <a href="#">2nd</a> ) — <a href="#">high</a>
Major <b>nationalities</b> ( <a href="#">2000</a> ):	<a href="#">Han</a> - 96% <a href="#">Manchu</a> - 2% <a href="#">Hui</a> - 2% <a href="#">Mongolian</a> - 0.3%
City <b>trees</b> :	<a href="#">Chinese arborvitae</a> ( <i>Platycladus orientalis</i> ) <a href="#">Pagoda tree</a> ( <i>Sophora japonica</i> )
City <b>flowers</b> :	<a href="#">Chrysanthemum</a> ( <i>Chrysanthemum morifolium</i> ) <a href="#">Chinese rose</a> ( <i>Rosa chinensis</i> )
<b>Elevation</b> :	43.5m
<b>Coordinates</b> :	<a href="#">39°54'20"N, 116°23'29"E</a>
<b>Postal code</b> :	100000 - 102600
<b>Area code</b> :	+86/10
<b>License plate prefixes</b> :	京A, C, E, F, H, J 京B (taxis) 京G (outside urban area) 京O (police and authorities) 京V (military headquarters & central government)
<b>ISO 3166-2</b> :	cn-11
<b>Time zone</b> :	<a href="#">UTC+8</a>
<b>Website</b> :	<a href="#">www.beijing.gov.cn</a> <a href="#">www.ebeijing.gov.cn</a> ( <a href="#">English</a> )

**Peking** is the name of the city according to [Chinese Postal Map Romanization](#), and the traditional customary name for Beijing in English. The term originated with French missionaries four hundred years ago and corresponds to an older pronunciation predating a subsequent [sound change](#) in [Mandarin](#) from [kʰ] to [tʃ]. ([tʃ] is represented in [pinyin](#) as j, as in Beijing), and is still used in some languages (for example, the [Portuguese](#) name is *Pequim*).

In [China](#), the city has [had many names](#). Between 1928 [\[1\]](#) and 1949, it was known as **Peiping** (北平; [Pinyin](#): Beiping; [Wade-Giles](#): Pei-p'ing), literally "Northern Peace". The name was changed — with the removal of the element meaning "capital" (*jīng* or *king*, 京) — to reflect the fact that, with the [Kuomintang](#) government having established its capital in [Nanjing](#) (pinyin: Nanjing), Peking was no longer the capital of China, and that the warlord government based in Peking was not legitimate.

The [Communist Party of China](#) reverted the name to Beijing (Peking) in 1949 again in part to emphasize that Beijing had returned to its role as China's capital. The government of the [Republic of China](#) on [Taiwan](#) has never formally recognized the



Government	
<b>Administration Type:</b>	<a href="#">Municipality</a>
<b>CPC Beijing Committee Secretary:</b>	<a href="#">Liu Qi</a>
<b>Mayor:</b>	<a href="#">Wang Qishan</a>
<b>County-level divisions:</b>	18
<b>Township-level divisions:</b>	273

name change, and during the 1950s and 1960s it was common in Taiwan for Beijing to be called Beiping to imply the illegitimacy of the PRC. Today, almost all of Taiwan, including the ROC government, uses *Beijing*, although some [maps](#) of China from [Taiwan](#) still use the old name along with pre-1949 political boundaries.

**Yanjing** (燕京; [Pinyin](#): Yā njī ng; [Wade-Giles](#): Yen-ching) is and has been another popular informal name

for Beijing, a reference to the ancient [State of Yan](#) that existed here during the [Zhou Dynasty](#). This name is reflected in the locally-brewed [Yanjing Beer](#) as well as [Yenching University](#), an institution of higher learning that was merged into Peking University. During the [Yuan Dynasty](#), Beijing was known as [Khanbaliq](#) which is the *Cambuluc* described in [Marco Polo](#)'s accounts.

(*The history section below outlines other historical names of Beijing.*)

## History

*Main article:* [History of Beijing](#)

There were cities in the

## Contents

- [1 Names](#)
- [2 History](#)
- [3 Geography and climate](#)
- [4 City layout](#)
  - [4.1 Neighbourhoods](#)
  - [4.2 Towns](#)
  - [4.3 Subdivisions](#)
- [5 Economy](#)
- [6 Architecture](#)
- [7 Demographics](#)
- [8 Culture](#)
  - [8.1 Stereotypes](#)
- [9 Transportation](#)
  - [9.1 Rail](#)
  - [9.2 Roads and expressways](#)
  - [9.3 Air](#)
  - [9.4 Public transit](#)
- [10 Tourism](#)
  - [10.1 Within the Beijing metropolitan area](#)
    - [10.1.1 Buildings, monuments, and landmarks](#)
    - [10.1.2 Temples, cathedrals, and mosques](#)
    - [10.1.3 Parks and gardens](#)
    - [10.1.4 Shopping and commercial districts](#)
  - [10.2 Outside the metropolitan area, but within the municipality](#)
- [10.3 Hotels and lodging](#)
- [10.4 Nightlife](#)
- [11 Education](#)
- [12 Media](#)
  - [12.1 Television and radio](#)
  - [12.2 Press](#)
- [13 Sports](#)
- [14 City and regional partnerships](#)
- [15 See also](#)
- [16 Books](#)
- [17 External links](#)
  - [17.1 Culture & Lifestyle](#)
  - [17.2 Travel and tourism](#)
  - [17.3 Images of Beijing](#)
  - [17.4 Wiki project links](#)

vicinities of Beijing by the [1st millennium BC](#), and the capital of the [State of Yan](#), one of the powers of the [Warring States Period](#) (473-221 BC), [Ji](#) (薊/蓟), was established in present-day Beijing.



*remains of Beijing [city wall](#), 2006*

After the fall of the [Yan](#), the subsequent [Qin](#), [Han](#), and [Jin](#) dynasties set-up local prefectures in the area. In [Tang Dynasty](#) it became the headquarter for Fanyang [jiedushi](#), the virtual military governor of current northern [Hebei](#) area. [An Lushan](#) launched [An Shi Rebellion](#) from here in 755. This rebellion is often regarded as a turning point of Tang dynasty, as the central government began to lose the control of the whole country.

In 936, the [Later Jin Dynasty](#) (936-947) of northern China ceded a large part of its northern frontier, including modern Beijing, to the [Khitan Liao Dynasty](#). In 938, the [Liao Dynasty](#) set up a secondary capital in what is now Beijing, and called it Nanjing (the "Southern Capital"). In 1125, the [Jurchen Jin Dynasty](#) annexed Liao, and in 1153 moved its capital to Liao's Nanjing, calling it [Zhongdu](#) (中都, "the central capital." Zhongdu was situated in what is now the area centred around [Tianningsi](#), slightly to the southwest of central Beijing.



*The [Forbidden City](#), home to the [Emperors](#) of the [Ming](#) and [Qing](#) Dynasties.*

[Mongol](#) forces burned Zhongdu to the ground in 1215 and rebuilt it to the north of the Jin capital in 1267. In preparation for the conquest of all of China, [Yuan \(Mongol\) Dynasty](#) founder [Kublai Khan](#) made this his capital as [Khanbaliq](#) ([Mongolian](#) for "great residence of the Khan") or [Dadu](#) (大都, [Chinese](#) for "grand capital"). This site is known as *Cambuluc* in [Marco Polo's](#) accounts. Apparently, Kublai Khan, who wanted to become a Chinese emperor, established his capital at this location instead of more traditional sites in central China because it was closer to his power base in Mongolia. The decision of the Khan

greatly enhanced the status of a city that had been situated on the northern fringe of [China proper](#). Khanbaliq was situated north of modern central Beijing. It centred on what is now the northern stretch of the [2nd Ring Road](#), and stretched northwards to between the [3rd](#) and [4th Ring Roads](#). There are remnants of Mongol-era wall still standing.

After the fall of the [Yuan Dynasty](#) in 1368, the city was later rebuilt by the [Ming Dynasty](#) and Shuntian (順天) prefecture was established in the area around the city. In 1403, the third Ming [Emperor Yongle](#) moved the Ming capital from [Nanjing](#) (Nanking) to the renamed [Beijing \(Peking\)](#) (北京), the "northern

capital", situated in the north. The capital was also known as **Jingshi** 京師, simply meaning capital. During the Ming Dynasty, Beijing took its current shape, and the Ming-era city wall served as the [Beijing city wall](#) until modern times, when it was pulled down and the [2nd Ring Road](#) was built in its place.



*Beijing's [Tian'anmen Square](#), as seen from the [Tian'anmen Chenglou Building](#) (taken in July of 2004).*

It is believed that Beijing was the largest city in the world from 1425 to 1650 and from 1710 to 1825 [\[2\]](#).

The [Forbidden City](#) was constructed soon after that (1406-1420), followed by the [Temple of Heaven](#) (1420), and numerous other construction projects. [Tian'anmen](#), which has become a state symbol of the [People's Republic of China](#) and is featured on its emblem, was burned down twice during the Ming Dynasty and the final reconstruction was carried out in 1651.

After the [Manchus](#) overthrew the [Ming Dynasty](#) and established the [Qing Dynasty](#) in its place, Beijing

remained China's capital throughout the Qing period. Just like during the preceding dynasty, Beijing was also known as **Jingshi**, which corresponded to the Manchu **Gemun Hecen** with the same meaning. It was the scene of the siege of the foreign legations during the [Boxer Rebellion](#) in 1900.

The [Xinhai Revolution](#) of 1911, aimed at replacing Qing rule with a republic, originally intended to establish its capital at [Nanjing](#). After high-ranking Qing official [Yuan Shikai](#) forced the abdication of the Qing emperor in Beijing and ensured the success of the revolution, the revolutionaries in Nanjing accepted that Yuan should be the president of the new [Republic of China](#), and that the capital should remain at Beijing.

Yuan gradually consolidated power, culminating in his declaration of a Chinese Empire in late 1915 with himself as emperor. The move was highly unpopular, and Yuan himself died less than a year later, ending his brief reign. China then fell under the control of regional warlords, and the most powerful factions fought frequent wars (the [Zhili-Anhui War](#), the [First Zhili-Fengtian War](#), and the [Second Zhili-Fengtian War](#)) to take control of the capital at Beijing.

Following the success of the [Kuomintang's Northern Expedition](#) which pacified the warlords of the north, Nanjing was officially made the capital of the Republic of China in 1928, and Beijing was renamed **Beiping (Peip'ing)** (北平), "northern peace" or "north pacified", to emphasize that the warlord government in Beijing was not legitimate.

During the [Second Sino-Japanese War](#), Beiping fell to [Japan](#) on [29 July 1937](#). During the occupation, the city was reverted to its former name, Beijing, and made the seat of the [Provisional Government of the Republic of China](#), a [puppet state](#) that ruled the [ethnic Chinese](#) portions of Japanese-occupied [North](#)



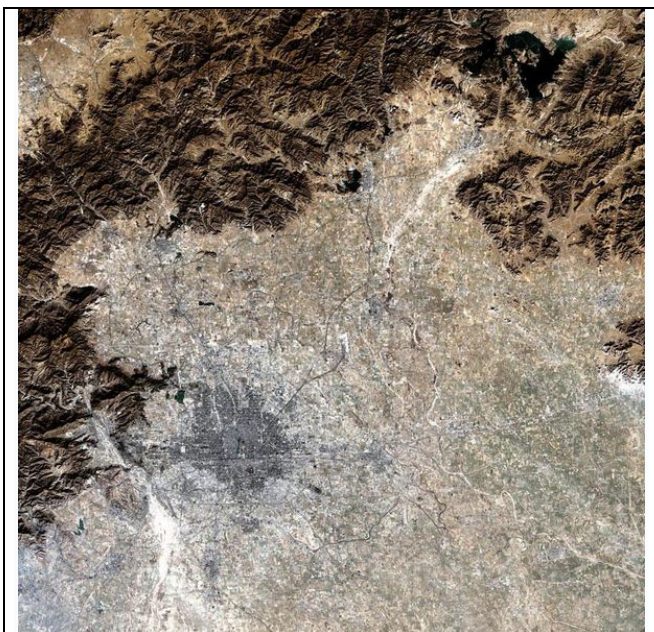
[China](#). It was later merged into the larger [Wang Jingwei Government](#) based in Nanjing. With Japan's surrender in [World War II](#), on [15 August 1945](#), however, Beijing's name was changed back to Beiping.

On [January 31, 1949](#), during the [Chinese Civil War](#), Communist forces entered Beijing without a fight. On [October 1](#) of the same year, the [Communist Party of China](#), under the leadership of [Mao Zedong](#), announced in [Tian'anmen](#) the creation of the [People's Republic of China](#) in Beijing. Just a few days earlier, the [Chinese People's Political Consultative Conference](#) had decided that Beiping would be the capital of the new government, and that its name would be changed back to Beijing.

At the time of the founding of the People's Republic, Beijing Municipality consisted of just its urban area and immediate suburbs. The urban area was divided into many small districts inside what is now the [2nd Ring Road](#). Since then several surrounding [counties](#) have been incorporated into the Municipality, enlarging the limits of Beijing Municipality by many times and giving it its present shape. The [Beijing city wall](#) was torn down between 1965 and 1969 to make way for the construction of the [2nd Ring Road](#).

Following the [economic reforms](#) of [Deng Xiaoping](#), the urban area of Beijing has expanded greatly. Formerly within the confines of the [2nd Ring Road](#) and the [3rd Ring Road](#), the urban area of Beijing is now pushing at the limits of the recently-constructed [5th Ring Road](#) and [6th Ring Road](#) (currently under construction), with many areas that were formerly farmland now developed residential or commercial neighborhoods. A new commercial area has developed in the [Guomao](#) area, [Wangfujing](#) and [Xidan](#) have developed into flourishing shopping districts, while [Zhongguancun](#) has become a major center of electronics in China.

As the national capital, Beijing has also been the site of political turmoil in recent years. [Tian'anmen Square](#), a well-known landmark in the city, was the site of the [Tiananmen Square protests of 1976](#) and



*A simulated-color image of Beijing, taken by  
[NASA's Landsat 7](#).*

then the [Tiananmen Square protests of 1989](#), which ended in the Tian'anmen Square Massacre. Tian'anmen Square has also been the site of protests by [Falun Gong](#).

In recent years, the expansion of Beijing has also brought to the forefront some problems of urbanization, such as heavy traffic, poor [air quality](#), the loss of historic neighborhoods, and significant influx of migrants from poorer regions of the country, especially rural areas.

Early 2005 saw the approval by government of a plan to finally stop the sprawling development of Beijing in all directions. Development of the Chinese capital would now proceed in two semicircular bands just outside of the city centre



(both west and east) instead of being in concentric rings.

Beijing has been chosen to host the [2008 Summer Olympics](#), an event that has sparked [nationalistic](#) pride across China.

## Geography and climate

Main article: [Geography of Beijing](#)

Beijing is situated at the northern tip of the roughly triangular [North China Plain](#) which opens to the south and east of the city. Mountains to the north, northwest and west shield the city and northern China's



*Southern end of [Wangfujing Road](#) (July 2004 image).*



*Beijing by night*

agricultural heartland from the encroaching desert steppes. The northwestern part of the municipality, especially [Yanqing County](#) and [Huairou District](#), are dominated by the [Jundu Mountains](#), while the western part of the municipality is framed by the [Xishan Mountains](#). The [Great Wall of China](#), which stretches across the northern part of Beijing Municipality, made use of this rugged topography to defend against nomadic incursions from the steppes. [Mount Dongling](#) in the Xishan ranges and on the border with [Hebei](#) is the municipality's highest point, with an altitude of 2303 [m](#). Major rivers flowing through the municipality include the [Yongding River](#) and the [Chaobai River](#), part of the [Hai River](#) system, and flowing in a southerly direction. Beijing is also the northern terminus of the [Grand Canal of China](#) which was built across the North China Plain to [Hangzhou](#). [Miyun Reservoir](#), built on the upper reaches of the [Chaobai River](#), is Beijing's largest reservoir, and crucial to its water supply.

The urban area of Beijing, located at [39°54′ 20″ N](#), [116°23′ 29″ E](#) (39.9056, 116.3914), is situated in the south-central part of

the municipality and occupies a small but expanding part of the municipality's area. It spreads out in bands of concentric [ring roads](#), of which the fifth and outermost (the [Sixth Ring Road](#); the numbering starts at 2) passes through several satellite towns. [Tian'anmen](#) (Gate of Heavenly Peace) and [Tian'anmen Square](#) are at the centre of Beijing, and are directly to the south of the [Forbidden City](#), former residence of the emperors of China. To the west of Tian'anmen is [Zhongnanhai](#), current residence of the



*Beijing Bookstore at [Xidan](#)*

paramount leaders of the [People's Republic of China](#). Running through central Beijing from east to west is [Chang'an Avenue](#), one of Beijing's main thoroughfares.

The city's [climate](#) is a monsoon-influenced [humid continental climate](#) ([Köppen climate classification Dwa](#)), characterized by hot, humid summers due to the East Asian [monsoon](#), and harshly cold, windy, dry winters that reflect the influence of the vast [Siberian anticyclone](#). Average temperatures in January are at around -7 to -4 °C (19 to 24 °F),

while average temperatures in July are at 25 to 26 °C (77 to 79 °F). Annual [precipitation](#) is over 600 mm, with 75% of that in [summer](#). [3]

Beijing also suffers from heavy pollution and poor [air quality](#) from industry and traffic. Dust from erosion of deserts in northern and northwestern China result in seasonal [dust storms](#) that plague the city. In the first four months of 2006 alone, there were no fewer than eight such storms. [4] Efforts have been made of late to clean up Beijing in preparation for the [2008 Summer Olympics](#).

## City layout

### Neighbourhoods

Major neighbourhoods in urban Beijing include the following. Neighborhoods may overlap across multiple districts (see below):

- [Andingmen](#) 安定门
- [Beiyuan](#) 北苑
- [Chaoyangmen](#) 朝阳门
- [Dongzhimen](#) 东直门
- [Fangzhuang](#) 方庄
- [Fuchengmen](#) 阜成门
- [Fuxingmen](#) 复兴门
- [Guomao](#) 国贸
- [Hepingli](#) 和平里
- [Wangjing](#) 望京
- [Wangfujing](#) 王府井
- [Wudaokou](#) 五道口
- [Xidan](#) 西单
- [Yayuncun](#) 亚运村
- [Zhongguancun](#) 中关村



*The [Beijing CBD](#) area around [Dawangqiao](#) and [Dabeiya](#), as seen from the [Jingdong Expressway](#)*

- [Liulimiao](#) 琉璃庙
- [Tongzhou](#) 通州
- [Yizhuang](#) 亦庄

## Subdivisions

Beijing Municipality currently comprises 18 administrative sub-divisions, [county-level units](#) governed directly by the municipality (second-level divisions). Of these, 16 are [districts](#) and 2 are [counties](#).

The urban and suburban areas of the city are divided into eight (8) districts:

District	Population (2000 census)	Area (km <sup>2</sup> )	Density (per km <sup>2</sup> )
<a href="#">Dongcheng District</a> (东城区: Dōngchéng Qū)	536,000	24.7	21,700
<a href="#">Xicheng District</a> (西城区: Xīchéng Qū)	707,000	30.0	23,567
<a href="#">Chongwen District</a> (崇文区: Chóngwén Qū)	346,000	15.9	21,761
<a href="#">Xuanwu District</a> (宣武区: Xuānwǔ Qū)	526,000	16.5	31,879
<a href="#">Chaoyang District</a> (朝阳区: Cháoyáng Qū)	2,290,000	470.8	4,864
<a href="#">Haidian District</a> (海淀区: Hǎidiàn Qū)	2,240,000	426.0	5,258
<a href="#">Fengtai District</a> (丰台区: Fēngtái Qū)	1,369,000	304.2	4,500
<a href="#">Shijingshan District</a> (石景山区: Shíjǐngshān Qū)	489,000	89.8	5,445
City proper + inner suburbs	8.50 million	1377.9	6,171

The following six districts encompass the more distant suburbs and satellite towns, constituting part of the [metropolitan area](#):

Several place names in Beijing end with *men* (门), meaning "gate", as they were the locations of gates in the former [Beijing city wall](#). Other place names end in *cun* (村), meaning "village", as they were originally villages outside the city wall.

## Towns

Towns within Beijing Municipality but outside the urban area include:

- [Changping](#) 昌平
- [Huairou](#) 怀柔
- [Miyun](#) 密云
- [Liangxiang](#) 良乡

District	Population (2000 census)	Area (km <sup>2</sup> )	Density (per km <sup>2</sup> )
<a href="#">Mentougou District</a> (门头沟区: Méntóugōu Qū)	267,000	1,331.3	201
<a href="#">Fangshan District</a> (房山区: Fángshān Qū) Fangshan County until 1986	814,000	1,866.7	436
<a href="#">Tongzhou District</a> (通州区: Tōngzhōu Qū) Tong County until 1997	674,000	870.0	775
<a href="#">Shunyi District</a> (顺义区: Shùnyì Qū) Shunyi County until 1998	637,000	980.0	650
<a href="#">Changping District</a> (昌平区: Chāngpíng Qū) Changping County until 1999	615,000	1,430.0	430
<a href="#">Daxing District</a> (大兴区: Dàxīng Qū) Daxing County until 2001	672,000	1,012.0	664
Outer suburbs	3.68 million	7,490	491

The other two districts and the two counties located further out govern semirural and rural areas:

District	Population (2000 census)	Area (km <sup>2</sup> )	Density (per km <sup>2</sup> )
<a href="#">Pinggu District</a> (平谷区: Píngǔ Qū) Pinggu County until 2001	397,000	1,075.0	369
<a href="#">Huairou District</a> (怀柔区: Huáiróu Qū) Huairou County until 2001	296,000	2,557.3	116
<a href="#">Miyun County</a> (密云县: Mìyún Xiàn)	420,000	2,335.6	180
<a href="#">Yanqing County</a> (延庆县: Yánqīng Xiàn)	275,000	1,980.0	139
Peripheral areas	1.39 million	7,947.9	175

Source: [Geohive](#)

Beijing's 18 districts and counties are further subdivided into 273 lower (third)-level administrative units at the [township level](#): 119 [towns](#), 24 [townships](#), 5 [ethnic townships](#) and 125 [subdistricts](#).

## Economy

In 2005, Beijing's nominal GDP was 681.45 billion [RMB](#) (about 84 billion [USD](#)), a year-on-year growth of 11.1% from the previous year. Its per capita GDP was 44,969 RMB, an increase of 8.1% from the previous year and nearly twice as much as in 2000. Beijing's primary, secondary, and tertiary industries were worth 9.77 billion RMB, 210.05 billion RMB, and 461.63 billion RMB. Urban [disposable income](#) per capita was 17,653 yuan, a [real](#) increase of 12.9% from the previous year. Per capita pure income of rural residents was 7,860 RMB, a real increase of 9.6%. Per capita disposable income of the 20% low-income residents increased 16.7%, 11.4 percentage points higher than the growth rate of the 20% high-income residents. The [Engel's coefficient](#) of Beijing's urban residents reached 31.8% in 2005 and that of the rural residents was 32.8%, declining 4.5 percentage points and 3.9 percentage points, respectively, compared with 2000. [<http://www.bjstats.gov.cn/tjyl/tjgb/200601240023.htm>]



Beijing's [real estate](#) and [automobile](#) sectors continue to bloom in recent years. In 2005, a total of 28.032 million [square metres](#) of housing real estate was sold, for a total of 175.88 billion [RMB](#). The total number of automobiles registered in Beijing in 2004 was 2,146,000, of which 1,540,000 were privately-owned (a year-on-year increase of 18.7%). [\[5\]](#)

The [Beijing CBD](#), centered at the [Guomao](#) area, has been identified as the city's new [central business district](#), and is home to a variety of corporate regional headquarters, shopping malls, and high-end housing. The [Beijing Financial Street](#), in the [Fuxingmen](#) and [Fuchengmen](#) area, is a traditional financial center. The [Wangfujing](#) and [Xidan](#) areas are major shopping districts. [Zhongguancun](#), dubbed "China's Silicon Valley", continues to be a major center in [electronics](#)- and [computer](#)-related industries, as well as [pharmaceuticals](#)-related research. Meanwhile, [Yizhuang](#), located to the southeast of the urban area, is becoming a new center in pharmaceuticals, IT, and materials engineering. [\[6\]](#) Urban Beijing is also known for being a center of pirated goods and anything from the latest designer clothing to the latest DVDs can be found in markets all over the city, often marketed to expatriates and international visitors.



*A corner of the emerging Beijing CBD.*

Major industrial areas include [Shijingshan](#), located on the western outskirts of the city. [Agriculture](#) is carried out outside the urban area of Beijing, with [wheat](#) and [maize](#) (corn) being the main crops. [Vegetables](#) are also grown in the regions closer to the urban area in order to supply the city.

Beijing is increasingly becoming known for its innovative [entrepreneurs](#) and high-growth start-ups. This culture is backed by a large community of both Chinese and foreign [venture capital](#) firms, such as [Sequoia Capital](#), whose head office in China resides in Chaoyang, Beijing. Though Shanghai is seen as the economic center of China, this is typically based on the numerous large corporations based there, rather than as a center for Chinese entrepreneurs.

The development of Beijing continues to proceed at a rapid pace, and the vast expansion of Beijing has created a multitude of problems for the city. Beijing is known for its [smog](#) as well as the frequent "power-saving" programs instituted by the government. Citizens of Beijing as well as tourists frequently complain about the quality of the water supply and the cost of the basic services such as electricity and natural gas. The major industrial areas outside of Beijing were ordered to clean their operations or leave the Beijing area in an effort to alleviate the smog that covers the city. Most factories, unable to update, have moved and relocated to other cities such as [Xi'an](#), China.

## Architecture

Three styles of architecture predominate in urban Beijing. First, the traditional architecture of imperial China, perhaps best exemplified by the massive [Tian'anmen](#) (Gate of Heavenly Peace), which remains the PRC's trademark edifice, the [Forbidden City](#), and the [Temple of Heaven](#). Next there is what is sometimes referred to as the "Sino-Sov" style, built between the 1950s and the 1970s, which tend to be boxy, bland, and poorly made. Finally, there are much more modern architectural forms — most noticeably in the area of the [Beijing CBD](#). Pictured below are some images of Beijing architecture — blending the old and the new.



*The ancient Beijing skyline.*



*The boxy look of buildings made in the 1970s.*



*The very modern contrast.*



*Details of traditional architecture.*



*A mix of 70s and 90s styles.*



*Mix and match of the old and the new.*



*The Tian'anmen*



*Wangfujing, a major commercial street.*

A bizarre and striking mixture of both old and new styles of architecture can be seen at the [Dashanzi Art District](#), which mixes 1950s-design with a blend of the new. The influence of American urban form and social values is manifest in the creation of [Orange County, China](#), a suburban development about one hour north of the city.

## Demographics

The population of Beijing Municipality, defined as the total number of people who reside in Beijing for 6 months or more per year, was 15.38 million in 2005. 11.870 million people in Beijing Municipality had Beijing [hukou](#) (permanent residence) and the remainder were on temporary residence permits. [7] In addition, there is a large but unknown number of [migrant workers](#) (*min gong*) who live illegally in Beijing without any official residence permit (also termed *hei ren* which means "black people" (as in "black market") or unregistered people). The population of Beijing's urban core (city proper) is around 7.5 million.

Over 95% of Beijing's residents belong to the [Han Chinese](#) majority. Other major ethnic minorities include the [Manchu](#), [Hui](#), and [Mongol](#), etc. A Tibetan [high school](#) exists for youth of Tibetan ancestry, nearly all of whom have come to Beijing from [Tibet](#) expressly for their studies.



The [Wangjing](#) neighbourhood, in [Chaoyang District](#), [Beijing](#)



*Wangfujing Cathedral*

A sizable international community exists in Beijing, mostly attracted by the highly growing foreign business and trade sector, and many live in the Beijing urban area's densely populated northern, northeastern and eastern sections. In recent years there has also been an influx of [South Koreans](#) who live in Beijing predominantly for business and study purpose. Many of them live in the [Wangjing](#) and [Wudaokou](#) areas.

Excludes members of the [People's Liberation Army](#) in active service.

Source: Department of Population, Social, Science and Technology Statistics of the National Bureau of Statistics of China (国家统计局人口和社会科技统计司) and Department of Economic Development of the State Ethnic Affairs Commission of China (国家民族事务委员会经济发展司), eds. *Tabulation on Nationalities of 2000 Population Census of China* (《2000年人口普查中国民族人口资料》). 2 vols. Beijing: Nationalities Publishing House (民族出版社), 2003. ([ISBN 7-105-05425-5](#))

## Culture

Ethnic groups in Beijing, 2000 census		
<a href="#">Nationality</a>	Population	Percentage
<a href="#">Han Chinese</a>	12,983,696	95.69%
<a href="#">Manchu</a>	250,286	1.84%
<a href="#">Hui</a>	235,837	1.74%
<a href="#">Mongol</a>	37,464	0.28%
<a href="#">Korean</a>	20,369	0.15%
<a href="#">Tujia</a>	8372	0.062%
<a href="#">Zhuang</a>	7322	0.054%
<a href="#">Miao</a>	5291	0.039%
<a href="#">Uyghur</a>	3129	0.023%
<a href="#">Tibetan</a>	2920	0.022%

People native to urban Beijing speak the [Beijing dialect](#), which belongs to the Mandarin subdivision of [spoken Chinese](#). [Beijing dialect](#) is the basis for [Standard Mandarin](#), the language used in the [People's Republic of China](#), the [Republic of China](#) on [Taiwan](#), and [Singapore](#). Rural areas of Beijing Municipality have their own dialects akin to those of [Hebei](#) province, which surrounds Beijing Municipality.

[Beijing Opera](#), or Peking Opera (*Jingju*), is well-known throughout the national capital. Commonly lauded as one of the highest achievements of [Chinese culture](#), Beijing Opera is performed through a combination of song, spoken dialogue, and codified action sequences, such as gestures, movement, fighting and acrobatics. Much of Beijing Opera is carried out in



an archaic [stage dialect](#) quite different from modern Standard Mandarin and from the [Beijing dialect](#); this makes the dialogue somewhat hard to understand, and the problem is compounded if one is not familiar with Chinese. As a result, modern theaters often have electronic titles in Chinese and English.



*A Beijing performance of the classic opera Farewell my Concubine (September 2002).*

The [Siheyuan](#) (四合院) is a traditional architectural style of Beijing. A siheyuan consists of a square housing compound, with rooms enclosing a central courtyard. This courtyard often contains a [pomegranate](#) or other type of tree, as well as potted flowers or a [fish tank](#). Siheyuans line [Hutongs](#) (胡同), or alleys, which connect the interior of Beijing's old city. They are usually straight and run east-to-west so that doorways can face north and south for [Feng Shui](#) reasons. They vary in width — some are very narrow, enough for only a few pedestrians to pass through at a time.



*A chilly Autumn morning scene in a Beijing hutong (胡同) southwest of [Tiananmen Square](#).*

Once ubiquitous in Beijing, siheyuans and hutongs are now rapidly disappearing, as entire city blocks of hutongs are leveled and replaced with high-rise buildings. Residents of the hutongs are entitled to apartments in the new buildings of at least the same size as their former residences. Many complain, however, that the traditional sense of community and street life of the hutongs cannot be replaced. Some particularly historic or picturesque hutongs are being preserved and restored by the government, especially for the 2008 Olympics. One such example can be seen at [Nanchizi](#).





*A hutong in eastern Beijing near [Dongsishitiao](#). In this March 2003 photo the left side was still standing, but it has since given way to new construction.*

[Mandarin cuisine](#) is the local style of cooking in Beijing. [Peking Roast Duck](#) is perhaps the most well-known dish. The [Manhan Quanxi](#) ("[Manchu-Han Chinese](#) full banquet") is a traditional banquet originally intended for the ethnic-[Manchu](#) emperors of the [Qing Dynasty](#); it remains very prestigious and expensive.

[Teahouses](#) are also common in Beijing. Chinese [tea](#) comes in many varieties and some rather expensive types of Chinese tea are said to cure an ailing body extraordinarily well.

The [Jingtai'an](#) is a [cloisonné](#) metalworking technique and tradition originating from Beijing, and one of the

most revered traditional crafts in China. [Beijing lacquerware](#) is well known for the patterns and images carved into its surface.

The [Fuling Jiabing](#) is a traditional Beijing snack food, a pancake (*bing*) resembling a flat disk with filling, made from *fu ling* ([Poria cocos](#) (*Schw.*) *Wolf*, or "tuckahoe"), an ingredient common in traditional [Chinese medicine](#).

## Stereotypes

Beijingers are stereotypically held to be open, confident, humorous, majestic in manner, enthusiastic about politics, art, culture, or other "grand" matters, unconcerned with thrift or careful calculation, and happy to take center stage. They are also stereotypically [aristocratic](#), arrogant, laid back, [disdainful](#) of "provincials", always "lording it over others", and strongly conscious of social class. These [stereotypes](#) may have originated from Beijing's status as China's capital for most of the past 800 years, and the high concentration of officials and other notables in Beijing that has resulted. They are also said to be the most [talkative](#) people in all of [China](#). While these stereotypes have a certain amount of logic, they are generally untrue.

## Transportation

Main article: [Transportation in Beijing](#)

With the growth of the city following economic reforms, Beijing has evolved as an important transportation hub. Encircling the city are five ring roads, nine expressways and city express routes, eleven China National Highways, several railway routes, and an international airport.

## Rail

Beijing has two major railway stations: [Beijing Railway Station](#) (or the central station) and [Beijing West Railway Station](#). Three other railway stations in Metropolitan Beijing handle regular passenger traffic: [Beijing East](#), [Beijing North](#), and [Fengtai](#). There are also several other small stations serving suburban area.

As of August 1, 2006, [Beijing Railway Station](#) has 167 trains stopping daily, while [Beijing West Railway Station](#) has 176 trains.

Beijing is a railway hub. There are [railway lines](#) from Beijing to [Guangzhou](#), [Shanghai](#), [Harbin](#), [Baotou](#), [Taiyuan](#), [Chengde](#) and [Qinhuangdao](#).

International trains, including lines to cities in [Russia](#) and [Pyongyang](#), [North Korea](#) (DPRK), all run through Beijing. Direct trains to [Kowloon](#), [Hong Kong SAR](#) also depart from Beijing.

Construction on a [Beijing-Tianjin high-speed rail](#) began on July 4, 2005, and is scheduled to be completed in 2007.

## Roads and expressways

See: [Ring Roads of Beijing](#), [Expressways of Beijing](#) and [China National Highways of Beijing](#) for more related information.



*The [Badaling Expressway](#) near the intersection with the Northern [6th Ring Road](#) (November 2002 image)*

Beijing is connected via road links from all parts of China. Nine [expressways of China](#) (with six wholly new expressways under projection or construction) connect with Beijing, as do eleven [China National Highways](#). Within Beijing itself, an elaborate network of five ring roads has developed, but they appear more rectangular than ring-shaped. Roads in Beijing often are in one of the four compass directions (unlike, for example, [Tianjin](#)).


One of the biggest concerns with traffic in Beijing deals with its apparently ubiquitous traffic jams.

Traffic in the city centre is often gridlocked, especially around rush hour. Even outside of rush hour, several roads still remain clogged up with traffic. Urban area ring roads and major through routes, especially near the [Chang'an Avenue](#) area, are often clogged up during rush hour.

Recently expressways have been extended (in some cases reconstructed as express routes) into the territories within the [3rd Ring Road](#). As they are either expressways or express routes, drivers do not need to pass through intersections with traffic lights. This may finally solve the difficulties in "hopping between one ring and another".

Another problem is that public transportation is underdeveloped (the subway system is presently minimal) and that even buses are jam-packed with people around rush hour. Beijing was poorly designed in terms of zoning and in terms of transportation system [8], [9]. Compounding the problem is patchy enforcement of traffic regulations, and [road rage](#). Beijing authorities claim that traffic jams may be a thing of a past come the [2008 Olympics](#). The authorities have introduced several bus lanes where, during rush hour, all vehicles except for public buses must keep clear.

[Chang'an Avenue](#) runs east-west through the centre of Beijing, past [Tian'anmen](#). It is a major through route and is often called the "First Street in China" by authorities.

		<a href="#">Roads</a> <a href="#">Expressways</a> Beijing	and of	
Main Roads:		<a href="#">Chang'an Avenue</a> ( <a href="#">East</a> , <a href="#">West</a> )   <a href="#">Ping'an Avenue</a>   <a href="#">Zhongzhou Road</a> ( <a href="#">North</a> , <a href="#">South</a> )		
<a href="#">Ring Roads</a> :	Open:	<a href="#">2nd Ring Road</a>   <a href="#">3rd Ring Road</a>   <a href="#">4th Ring Road</a>   <a href="#">5th Ring Road</a>   <a href="#">6th Ring Road</a>		
	Projected:	<a href="#">7th Ring Road</a>		
<a href="#">Expressways</a> :	Open:	<a href="#">Badaling Expressway</a> ( <a href="#">Jingda Expressway</a> )   <a href="#">Jingcheng Expressway</a>   <a href="#">Airport Expressway</a>   <a href="#">Jingtong Expressway</a>   <a href="#">Jingha Expressway</a>   <a href="#">Jingshen Expressway</a>   <a href="#">Jingjintang Expressway</a> ( <a href="#">Jinghu Expressway</a> )   <a href="#">Jingkai Expressway</a>   <a href="#">Jingshi Expressway</a> ( <a href="#">Jingzhu Expressway</a> )		
	Partially under construction:	<a href="#">Jingcheng Expressway</a>   <a href="#">Jingkai Expressway</a>   <a href="#">Northern Airport Line</a>   <a href="#">Jingping Expressway</a>   <a href="#">Jingbao Expressway</a>   <a href="#">Litian Expressway</a>		
	Projected:	<a href="#">2nd Airport Expressway</a>   <a href="#">Jingjin Expressway</a> ( <a href="#">North</a> , <a href="#">South</a> )		
	7 National Expressways:	<a href="#">Jingtai Expressway</a> (projected)   <a href="#">Jinghu Expressway</a>   <a href="#">Jinggang'ao Expressway</a> (partially complete)   <a href="#">Jingkun Expressway</a>   <a href="#">Jingla Expressway</a> (projected)   <a href="#">Jingwu Expressway</a> (projected)   <a href="#">Jingha Expressway</a> (alternate route)		
<a href="#">National Highways</a>	<a href="#">G101</a>   <a href="#">G102</a>   <a href="#">G103</a>   <a href="#">G104</a>   <a href="#">G105</a>   <a href="#">G106</a>   <a href="#">G107</a>   <a href="#">G108</a>   <a href="#">G109</a>   <a href="#">G110</a>   <a href="#">G111</a>			

## Air

Beijing's main airport is the [Beijing Capital International Airport](#) (PEK) near [Shunyi](#), which is about 20 km northeast of Beijing city centre. Most domestic and nearly all international flights arrive and depart at Capital Airport. Capital Airport is the main hub for [Air China](#). It is linked to central Beijing by the [Airport](#)

[Expressway](#) and is a roughly 40-minute drive from the city centre during good traffic hours. In preparation for the 2008 Olympics, another expressway is being built to the Airport, as well as a lightrail system.

Other airports in the city include [Liangxiang Airport](#), [Nanyuan Airport](#), [Xijiao Airport](#), [Shahe Airport](#) and [Badaling Airport](#). However, these are primary for military use and less well-known to the public.



*Inside a Beijing Subway station*

## Public transit

The evolving [Beijing Subway](#) has four lines (two above ground, two underground), with several more being built in preparation for the [2008 Summer Olympics](#). There were 599 [bus](#) and [trolleybus](#) routes in Beijing as of 2004. [\[10\]](#)

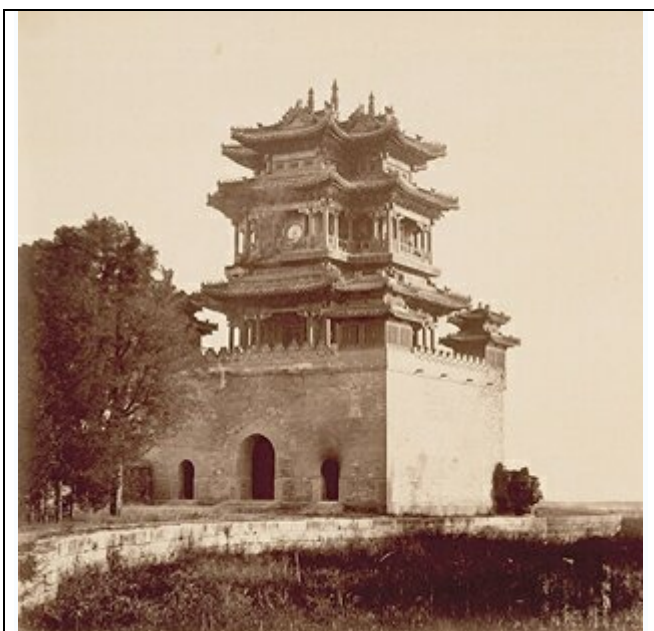
Beijing has simplified its bus fare system from Jan 1, 2007 as follows:

Pay by cash -

Lines 1-199 (Mainly operated in inner city) 1 Yuan per single journey.

Lines 200-299 (Night services): 2 Yuan per journey.

Lines 300-899 (Mainly operated in outer city / suburb): 1 Yuan for the first 12km and another 0.5 yuan for each additional 5km.



*The Summer Palace in Beijing - photographed by Felice Beato in October 1860.*

Lines 900-999 (Mainly operated from city center to rural area): 1 Yuan per 10km.

Pay by prepaid smartcard -

Lines 1-499: 0.4 Yuan per single journey.

Lines 500-899: 0.4 Yuan for the first 12km and another 0.2 Yuan for each additional 5km.

Lines 900-999: 0.8 Yuan per 10km.

3-day, 7-day and 14-day bus passes are available for travellers.

Surcharges of air-conditioned buses have been cancelled.

Subway tickets cost 3 Yuan for the 1, 2, 13, and 8T lines; 5 RMB for tickets allowing a transfer from Line 1/2 to 13, and 4 RMB for tickets allowing a transfer from Line 1/2 to 8T. Currently there is no discount for smartcard users.



[Taxis](#) are nearly ubiquitous, including a large number of unregistered taxis. As of June 30, 2006 all fares on legal taxis start at 10 [Renminbi](#) for the first 3km (idling time is also a factor), and are 2.00 [Renminbi](#) per extra kilometer. Most taxis are a mixed fleet of new Hyundai Elantra and Volkswagen Jetta (Borla) cars. After 15km, the base fare is increased by 50% (but only applied to the portion of the distance *over*

15km, so that the passenger is not retroactively charged extra for the first 15km). Between 11pm and 6am, the fee is increased by 20%, starting at 11 RMB and increasing at a rate of 2.4 RMB per km. Rides over 15km and between 11pm and 6am apply both charges, for a total increase of 80% ( $120\% \times 150\% = 180\%$ ).

## Tourism

*Main article:* [Tourist attractions of Beijing](#)

Despite the turmoil of the [nineteenth](#) and [twentieth](#) centuries — including damage caused by [European military intervention](#), the [Japanese invasion of WWII](#) and the [Cultural Revolution](#) — and the recent intense [urbanisation](#) and transformation, including the demolition of [hutongs](#), Beijing still maintains tourist attractions that are rich in history.

Although more known for its political significance in the West, the [Tian'anmen](#) (Gate of Heavenly Peace) has long been one of the most important tourist sites of Beijing, both by itself and as the main entrance to the [Forbidden City](#). Other world-renowned sites include the [Badaling](#) section of the [Great Wall of China](#), the [Summer Palace](#), and the [Temple of Heaven](#).

## Within the Beijing metropolitan area

### Buildings, monuments, and landmarks

- [Forbidden City](#) ([World Heritage Site](#))
- [Tiananmen Square](#), site of the Tiananmen Square protests of [May 4](#),



*Wansong Pagoda*



Miaoying Temple, one of the most renowned Buddhist temples in Beijing

[1919](#), [1976](#), and [1989](#)

- [Tiananmen](#) (The Gate of Heavenly Peace)
- [Great Hall of the People](#) (National Legislature)
- [National Museum of China](#)
- [Monument to the People's Heroes](#)
- [Mausoleum of Mao Zedong](#)



*The Temple of Azure Clouds*

Beijing



*Niujie Mosque, The oldest mosque in Beijing. It was built in 996*

- [Fa Yuan Temple](#)
- [Miaoying Temple](#)
- [Zhen Jue Temple](#)
- [Wanshou Temple](#)
- [Five Pagoda Temple](#)
- [Zhihua Si Temple](#)
- [Temple of Azure Clouds](#)
- [Temple of Recumbent Buddha](#)

- The [Summer Palace](#) ([World Heritage Site](#))
- [Ruins of the Old Summer Palace](#)
- [Bell Tower and Drum Tower](#)
- Historic [Hutongs](#) and [Siheyuans](#) in many older neighborhoods
- [Lugou Bridge](#) (Marco Polo Bridge)
- [Prince Gong Mansion](#) (Gong Wang Fu)
- [Zheng Yici Peking Opera Theatre](#)
- [Liulichang Culture Street](#)
- [Beijing Ancient Observatory](#)

### Temples, cathedrals, and mosques

- [Temple of Heaven](#) ([World Heritage Site](#)), situated in the southern area of urban
- [Temple of Earth](#), located in northern Beijing
- [Temple of Sun](#), situated in the eastern area of urban Beijing
- [Temple of Moon](#), located in western Beijing
- [Tanzhe Temple](#)
- [Jietai Temple](#)
- [Yunju Temple](#)
- [Yonghegong](#) (Lama Temple)
- [Guangji Temple](#)
- [Confucius Temple](#)
- [Great Bell Temple](#)

- [White Dagoba Temple](#) in [Beihai Park](#)
- [Badachu](#)
- [Immaculate Conception Cathedral](#)
- [Holy Saviour Church](#)
- [Niujie Mosque](#)

### **Parks and gardens**

- [Beihai Park](#)
- [Shichahai](#)
- [Jingshan Park](#)
- The [Fragrant Hills](#) (Xiangshan)
- The [Grandview Garden](#) (Daguanyuan)
- [Beijing Botanical Garden](#)
- [Taoranting Park](#)
- [Beijing Zoo](#)

### **Shopping and commercial districts**

- [Wangfujing](#): Beijing's most upscale, globalized shopping district
- [Xidan](#)
- [Silk Street](#)
- [Beijing CBD](#)
- [Beijing Financial Street](#)
- [Zhongguancun](#)
- [Yizhuang](#)

### **Outside the metropolitan area, but within the municipality**

- Sections of the [Great Wall](#) ([World Heritage Site](#)) at:
  - [Badaling](#)
  - [Juyongguan](#)
  - [Mutianyu](#)
  - [Simatai](#)
  - [Jinshanling](#)
  - [Jiankou](#)
- The [Ming Dynasty Tombs](#) ([World Heritage Site](#))
- [Peking Man](#) Site at [Zhoukoudian](#) ([World Heritage Site](#))
- [Shidu](#)

### **Hotels and lodging**

In first two decades following the PRC's foundation in 1949, Beijing had virtually no hotels (at least by Western standards), due to economic and social conditions at the time. One system of institution providing a place for individuals traveling to Beijing from other locations to spend the night was the [zhaodaisuo](#) (literally, "accommodation centre"). *Zhaodaisuo* were subordinate to state organisations or

state organs. Older ones had communal public conveniences and amenities. Some *zhaodaisuos* still remain in use today.

In the late 1970s, Beijing, alongside much of China during the period of reform and economic opening under [Deng Xiaoping](#), saw greater attempts at attracting and catering to international business. A large number of hotels and other facilities to accommodate business, tourist, and other visitors began to be constructed. Today, given Beijing's size and status as one of the most frequently visited and economically, politically, and culturally important cities in Asia, a great number of hotels exist, many rivalling the highest international standards.

The most well-known hotel is the [Beijing Hotel](#), which is state-owned. Other notable hotels are the [Great Wall Sheraton Hotel](#), the [Jianguo Hotel](#), [Raffles Beijing Hotel](#) the [China World Hotel](#), the [St. Regis](#), [Grand Hyatt at Oriental Plaza](#) and the Peninsula Palace Hotel, operated by the Hong Kong-based [Peninsula Group](#).

[Youth hostels](#) have become more and more popular in the last few years and there are now quite a few in Beijing. Most hostels are located in the downtown area of Beijing, on the East 3rd Ring Road or in the old [Hutongs](#).

## Nightlife

Nightlife in Beijing is varied. Most clubs are situated in the area around [Sanlitun](#) or in the region near the [Workers Stadium](#), especially to the north and to the west. New clubs opened on [Gongrentiyuchang West Road](#).

[Wudaokou](#), in northwestern Beijing, is also a bustling nightlife center. There are more Koreans and other foreigners, mostly students, in the area.

The following areas of Beijing are known as hubs for bars which open until late:

- [Sanlitun](#)
- [Houhai](#)
- [Yuandadu](#)

## Education

*Main article:* [Colleges and Universities of Beijing](#)

Beijing is home to a great number of colleges and universities, including several well-regarded universities of international stature, especially including China's two most prestigious institutions, [Peking University](#), and [Tsinghua University](#).



Owing to Beijing's status as the political and cultural capital of China, a larger proportion of tertiary-level institutions are concreated here than probably any other city in China, reaching at least 59 in number. Many international students from [Japan](#), [Korea](#), [North America](#), [Europe](#), [Southeast Asia](#), and elsewhere come to Beijing to study every year, a growing trend, especially among Western students. The institutions listed here are administered by China's [Ministry of Education](#).

- [Peking University](#) (北京大学) (founded in 1898), which is best in Humanities, natural sciences, business and law.
- [Tsinghua University](#) (清华大学) (founded in 1911), which is best in engineering
- [Renmin University of China](#) (中国人民大学) (founded in 1937)
- [Beijing University of Aeronautics and Astronautics](#) (北京航空航天大学)
- [Beijing Normal University](#) (北京师范大学) (founded 1902)
- [Beijing Institute of Technology](#) (北京理工大学)
- [Beijing Jiaotong University](#) (北京交通大学)
- [Central University of Finance and Economics](#) (中央财经大学)
- [University of International Business and Economics](#) (对外经济贸易大学)
- [University of International Relations](#) (国际关系学院)
- [University of Science and Technology Beijing](#) (北京科技大学)
- [China University of Political Science and Law](#) (中国政法大学)
- [Beijing University of Technology](#) (北京工业大学)
- [Beijing Foreign Studies University](#) (北京外国语大学)
- [Beijing Language and Culture University](#) (北京语言大学)
- [China Agricultural University](#) (中国农业大学)
- [Beijing University of Chemical Technology](#) (北京化工大学)
- [Beijing University of Chinese Medicine](#) (北京中医药大学)
- [Beijing University of Petroleum](#) (石油大学)
- [Beijing University of Posts and Telecommunications](#) (北京邮电大学)
- [Capital Normal University](#) (首都师范大学)
- [Beijing Forestry University](#) (北京林业大学)
- [Communication University of China](#) (中国传媒大学)
- [Central Academy of Drama](#) (中央戏剧学院)
- [Central Conservatory of Music](#) (中央音乐学院)
- [Central Institute of Fine Arts](#) (中央美术学院)
- [Beijing Film Academy](#) (北京电影学院)
- [Central University for Nationalities](#) (中央民族大学)
- [École Centrale de Pékin](#)

## Media



[Xinhua News Agency](#)

## Television and radio

[Beijing Television](#) (BTV) broadcasts on numbered channels 1 through 10. Unlike [China Central Television](#) (CCTV), there is at present no exclusive English-language TV channel on a citywide level in Beijing.

Three radio stations feature programmes in English: *Hit FM* on FM 88.7, *Easy FM* by [China Radio International](#) (CRI) on FM 91.5, and the newly launched *Radio 774* on AM 774.

Other [Beijing Radio Stations](#) are listed as follows:

## Press

The well-known [Beijing Evening News](#) (*Beijing Wanbao*) newspaper is distributed every afternoon, covering news about Beijing in Chinese. Other newspapers include *The Beijing News* (*Xin Jing Bao*), the *Beijing Star Daily*, the *Beijing Morning News*, the [Beijing Youth Daily](#) (*Beijing Qingnian Bao*), as well as English-language weeklies [Beijing Weekend](#) and [Beijing Today](#) (the English-language edition of *Youth Daily*).

Beijing Radio Stations	
Frequency/Internet	Description
Xinwen - Internet Streaming	News
Gudian - Internet Streaming	Classical Music
Jingji - Internet Streaming	City Management
Tongsu - Internet Streaming	Popular Music
Jiaotong - Internet Streaming	Traffic
Jiaoxue - Internet Streaming	School Radio
Wenyi - Internet Streaming	Chinese Literature Broadcast
Wuxueyingshi - Internet Streaming	Chinese Movie Broadcast
Tiyu - Internet Streaming	Sports Broadcast
Xiquzongyi - Internet Streaming	Drama Broadcast
Yinyue - Internet Streaming/97.4 FM	Music
Yazhouliuxing - Internet Streaming	Asian Broadcast
Shenghuo - Internet Streaming	Beijing City Life Broadcast
Qingyinyue - Internet Streaming	Light Music Broadcast
Waiyu - Internet Streaming	Foreign Broadcast
DAB - Internet Streaming	DAB Broadcast
Qingmeng - Internet Streaming	Blue Network Broadcast

[People's Daily](#) and [China Daily](#) (English) are also published in Beijing.

Nationally-circulated Chinese newspapers are also available in Beijing.

Publications primarily aimed at international visitors and the expatriate community include the English-language periodicals [City Weekend](#), [Beijing This Month](#), [Beijing Talk](#), [that's Beijing](#) and [MetroZine](#).

[Rolling Stone](#) Magazine will base its China version's editorial staff in

Beijing.

The international press, including English- and Japanese-language newspapers and magazines, are available in major international hotels and [Friendship stores](#), and content often appears complete.

City	Country	Sister City since:
<a href="#">Tokyo</a>	 <a href="#">Japan</a>	<a href="#">March 14, 1979</a>
<a href="#">New York City</a>	 <a href="#">United States</a>	<a href="#">February 25, 1980</a>
<a href="#">Belgrade</a>	 <a href="#">Serbia</a>	<a href="#">October 14, 1980</a>
<a href="#">Lima</a>	 <a href="#">Peru</a>	<a href="#">November 21, 1983</a>
<a href="#">Washington, D.C.</a>	 <a href="#">United States</a>	<a href="#">May 15, 1984</a>
<a href="#">Madrid</a>	 <a href="#">Spain</a>	<a href="#">September 16, 1985</a>
<a href="#">Rio de Janeiro</a>	 <a href="#">Brazil</a>	<a href="#">November 24, 1986</a>
<a href="#">Île-de-France</a> <sup>[1]</sup>	 <a href="#">France</a>	<a href="#">July 2, 1987</a>
<a href="#">Cologne</a>	 <a href="#">Germany</a>	<a href="#">September 14, 1987</a>
<a href="#">Algiers</a>	 <a href="#">Algeria</a>	<a href="#">September 11, 1989</a>
<a href="#">Ankara</a>	 <a href="#">Turkey</a>	<a href="#">June 20, 1990</a>
<a href="#">Cairo</a>	 <a href="#">Egypt</a>	<a href="#">October 28, 1990</a>
<a href="#">Islamabad</a>	 <a href="#">Pakistan</a>	<a href="#">October 8, 1992</a>
<a href="#">Jakarta</a>	 <a href="#">Indonesia</a>	<a href="#">October 8, 1992</a>
<a href="#">Bangkok</a>	 <a href="#">Thailand</a>	<a href="#">May 26, 1993</a>
<a href="#">Tel Aviv</a>	 <a href="#">Israel</a>	<a href="#">May 29, 1993</a>
<a href="#">Buenos Aires</a>	 <a href="#">Argentina</a>	<a href="#">July 13, 1993</a>
<a href="#">Seoul</a>	 <a href="#">Republic of Korea</a>	<a href="#">October 23, 1993</a>
<a href="#">Kiev</a>	 <a href="#">Ukraine</a>	<a href="#">December 13, 1993</a>
<a href="#">Berlin</a>	 <a href="#">Germany</a>	<a href="#">April 5, 1994</a>
<a href="#">Brussels</a>	 <a href="#">Belgium</a>	<a href="#">September 22, 1994</a>
<a href="#">Hanoi</a>	 <a href="#">Vietnam</a>	<a href="#">October 6, 1994</a>
<a href="#">Amsterdam</a>	 <a href="#">Netherlands</a>	<a href="#">October 29, 1994</a>
<a href="#">Moscow</a>	 <a href="#">Russia</a>	<a href="#">May 16, 1995</a>
<a href="#">Paris</a>	 <a href="#">France</a>	<a href="#">October 23, 1997</a>
<a href="#">Rome</a>	 <a href="#">Italy</a>	<a href="#">May 28, 1998</a>
<a href="#">Gauteng</a> <sup>[2]</sup>	 <a href="#">South Africa</a>	<a href="#">December 6, 1998</a>
<a href="#">Ottawa</a>	 <a href="#">Canada</a>	<a href="#">October 18, 1999</a>
<a href="#">Tehran</a>	 <a href="#">Iran</a>	<a href="#">April 10, 1999</a>
<a href="#">Canberra</a>	 <a href="#">Australia</a>	<a href="#">September 14, 2000</a>
<a href="#">Manila</a>	 <a href="#">Philippines</a>	<a href="#">November 14, 2005</a>
<a href="#">London</a>	 <a href="#">United Kingdom</a>	<a href="#">April 10, 2006</a>
<a href="#">Wellington</a>	 <a href="#">New Zealand</a>	<a href="#">May 12, 2006</a> <sup>[11]</sup>

- <sup>1</sup> [^](#) French region hosting the largest part of [Paris](#) metropolitan area
- <sup>2</sup> [^](#) A [province](#) of [South Africa](#)

Source: [www.ebeijing.gov.cn](http://www.ebeijing.gov.cn)

## See also

- [Lao zihao](#)
- [List of mayors of Beijing](#)
- [List of hospitals in Beijing](#)

## Sports

Beijing will host the [2008 Summer Olympics](#) and the [2008 Summer Paralympics](#).

Professional sports teams based in Beijing include:

- [Chinese Football Association Super League](#)
  - [Beijing Guoan](#)
- [Chinese Basketball Association](#)
  - [Beijing Ducks](#)
  - [Beijing Olympians](#)

The [Beijing Aoshen Olympians](#) of the [ABA](#), formerly a [CBA](#) team, kept their name and maintained a roster of primarily Chinese players after moving to [Maywood, California](#) in 2005.

## City and regional partnerships

Beijing maintains [partnerships](#) or "sister city" status with the following international locations. (*Note: some locations are [provinces](#) or [regional](#)-level units, not cities properly. Beijing itself is not technically a city, being a [municipality](#)*).

- [2045 Peking](#) - the name of an asteroid

## Books

- [\*The Diaries of Sir Ernest Satow, British Envoy in Peking \(1900-06\)\*](#) edited by Ian Ruxton in two volumes, Lulu Press Inc., April 2006 [ISBN 1-4116-8804-X](#) (Volume One); [ISBN 1-4116-8805-8](#) (Volume Two)

## External links



**This article or section may contain [spam](#).**

Wikipedia spam consists of [external links](#) mainly intended to promote a website. Wikipedia spam also consists of external links to websites which primarily exist to sell goods or services, use objectionable amounts of advertising, or require payment to view the relevant content. If you are familiar with the content of the external links, please help by removing promotional links in accordance with [Wikipedia:External links](#). (*[You can help!](#)*)

- [Official site \(English version\)](#)
- [WikiSatellite view of Beijing at WikiMapia](#)
- [BeijingChinaWorld.com](#) Includes 1,500 high quality photographs
- [Official 2008 Summer Olympics Website](#) (English)
- [The Beijing Page - #1 Google Search for "Beijing"](#) (English)
- [Classifieds and Community Portal](#) - for Internationals in Beijing
- [Beijing Map - full size, 1560 x 1547 pixels, 645kb](#)
- [Large map of Beijing region](#)
- [Beijing The Virtual City \(under construction\)](#)
- [Useful collection of Beijing links](#) (English)
- [Beijing Weather Forecast](#)
- [gou-rou.com Beijing satire](#)
- [ChangPu River Park](#) The small, beautiful park between Wangfujing and Tian'AnMen; photo guide

## Culture & Lifestyle

- [Rock music scene report of Beijing](#)
- [The Beijing Bender](#) Magazine photo essay on Beijing nightlife

## Travel and tourism

- [Beijing city tour packages & day trips](#)
- [The Beijing Guide](#)
- [Synotrip's growing guide to Beijing](#)
- [Chinese Central, Provincial and City governments](#)
- [Bruce Ma's Beijing Tour \[12\]](#), pictures
- [Beijing Travel](#)
- [2008tour.com - China Dragon International Travel Service](#)

## Images of Beijing

- [A Photographic Journey](#) A Photographic Tour
- [Beijing Travel Guide](#) A Pictorial Guide
- [Pictures of Beijing](#)



- [Satellite image of Beijing](#) at [NASA Earth Observatory](#)
- [Pictures of Beijing Attractions](#)
- [Flickr: Photos tagged with beijing](#), photos likely of Beijing
- [Pictures from a backpacker's trip around Beijing](#)
- [Virtual tours of Beijing](#)

## Wiki project links

- [Beijing travel guide](#) from [Wikitravel](#)

Preceded by <a href="#">Lin'an</a>	<a href="#">Capital of China</a> (as <a href="#">Khanbalig</a> ) 1264-1368	Succeeded by <a href="#">Nanjing</a>
Preceded by <a href="#">Nanjing</a>	<a href="#">Capital of China</a> 1420-1928	Succeeded by <a href="#">Nanjing</a>
Preceded by <b>none (PRC established)</b>	<a href="#">Capital of the People's Republic of China</a> 1949-present	Succeeded by <b>present capital</b>

<a href="#">Province-level divisions</a> administered by the <a href="#">People's Republic of China</a>		
<a href="#">Provinces</a> :	<a href="#">Anhui</a>   <a href="#">Fujian</a>   <a href="#">Gansu</a>   <a href="#">Guangdong</a>   <a href="#">Guizhou</a>   <a href="#">Hainan</a>   <a href="#">Hebei</a>   <a href="#">Heilongjiang</a>   <a href="#">Henan</a>   <a href="#">Hubei</a>   <a href="#">Hunan</a>   <a href="#">Jiangsu</a>   <a href="#">Jiangxi</a>   <a href="#">Jilin</a>   <a href="#">Liaoning</a>   <a href="#">Qinghai</a>   <a href="#">Shaanxi</a>   <a href="#">Shandong</a>   <a href="#">Shanxi</a>   <a href="#">Sichuan</a>   <a href="#">Taiwan (claimed)</a>   <a href="#">Yunnan</a>   <a href="#">Zhejiang</a>	
<a href="#">Autonomous Regions</a> :	<a href="#">Guangxi</a>   <a href="#">Inner Mongolia</a>   <a href="#">Ningxia</a>   <a href="#">Tibet</a>   <a href="#">Xinjiang</a>	
<a href="#">Municipalities</a> :	Beijing   <a href="#">Chongqing</a>   <a href="#">Shanghai</a>   <a href="#">Tianjin</a>	
<a href="#">Special administrative regions</a> :	<a href="#">Hong Kong</a>   <a href="#">Macau</a>	
	See also: <a href="#">Political status of Taiwan</a> and <a href="#">Taiwan Province (People's Republic of China)</a>	

## Beijing – History

<http://www.china.org.cn/english/features/beijing/30785.htm>

<http://www.mybeijingchina.com/history-of-beijing/index.htm>

# *Beijing's History*

Some half a million years ago, Peking man lived in Zhoukoudian, in the southwestern suburbs of Beijing. The climate of that time was warmer and more humid than it is today. Forests and lakes in the area supported large numbers of living creatures. The fossil remains of Peking man, his stone tools and evidence of use of fire, as well as later tools of 18,000 years ago, bone needles and article of adornment from the age of Upper Cave Man are the earliest cultural relics on record in China today.

Some four to five thousand years ago, settlements to the southwest of Beijing were thriving on basic agriculture and animal husbandry. Story has it that the legendary Yellow Emperor (Huang Di) battled against the tribal leader Chiyao in the "wilderness of the prefecture of Zhuo." Zhuolu, a town west of present-day Beijing, is perhaps the site of the first metropolis in the area. Yellow Emperor's successor, Emperor Yao, was said to have established a legendary capital Youdu (City of Quietude) that was where the city of Ji was actually built.

During the Warring States Period (475–221BC), the Marquis of Yan annexed the territory of the Marquis of Ji, making the city of Ji his new capital. The approximate location was north of Guang'anmen Gate in present-day Beijing near the White Cloud Temple (Baiyunguan).

Early in the third century BC, the first Emperor of Qin (Qin Shi Huang) set about conquering six states and unifying China. The city of Ji was named administrative center of Guangyang Commandery, one of 36 prefectures in China's first feudal empire. For 10 centuries, through to the end of the Tang Dynasty (618-907), Ji remained a strategic trading and military center and the object of frequent power struggles.

Two emperors during that period -- Emperor Yang of the Sui Dynasty (581-618) and Emperor Taizong of the Tang Dynasty -- left their mark on the city. Emperor Yang amassed troops and supplies at Ji for expeditions against Korea. Emperor Taizong also used the city for military training. He built the Temple for Compassion for the Loyal (Minzhongsi), which is dedicated to troops who died in battle. This temple was the precursor of the Temple of the Origin of the Dharma (Fayuansi) located outside the old walls of the city.

At the beginning of the Tang Dynasty, Ji was little different from any other large feudal cities. Several centuries later, however, when the Tang was nearing a state of collapse, the Qidans (Khitans) came from the upper reaches of the Liaohe River and moved south to occupy Ji and make it their second capital. They called the city Nanjing (Southern Capital) or Yanjing. Emperor Taizong of the Liao Dynasty (916-

1125) carried out reconstruction projects and built palaces, which were used as strongholds from which the Qidans set out to conquer the central plains of China.

In the early 12th century, the Nuzhen (Jurchen) conquered the Liao and established the Jin Dynasty (1115-1234). In 1153, Wan Yanliang moved the Jin capital from Huiningfu in present-day Liaoning Province to Yanjing and renamed it Zhongdu (Central Capital) as a challenge to the Southern Song Dynasty (1127-1279), which had its capital at Lin'an (present-day Hangzhou). Before the ascension of Wan Yanliang to the throne, the city of Yanjing had changed little from the Liao period.

The rebuilding of the new city began in 1151 with expansion to the east, west and south. Palaces were constructed on a scale similar to the Northern Song (960-1127) capital at Bianliang (modern Kaifeng), and many of the actual building materials were transported from Bianliang. The new expanded city, with its splendid buildings in the center measured roughly five kilometers in circumference. The registered population of the Imperial Palace in the center measured roughly five kilometers in circumference. The registered population of Zhongdu amounted to 225,592 households, or approximately one million people.

Mongol armies occupied Zhongdu in 1215. At this time, the city of Kaiping (in present-day Inner Mongolia Autonomous Region) served as the principal Mongol capital (Shangdu), while Yanjing was given provincial status. It was not until 1271 that Kublai Khan formally adopted the new dynasty's name -- Yuan -- and made Yanjing the capital. Kublai Khan rebuilt the city and gave it the Chinese (Han) name of Dadu (Ta-tu) or Great Capital, though in Mongol it was known as Khanbalig (Marco Polo's Cambaluc), the City of the Great Khan. When the Mongols finally eliminated the Southern Song and unified China, Dadu became the political center of the country for the first time in history.

The construction of Dadu began in 1267 and ended in 1293, extending throughout the entire period of Kublai Khan's rule. The magnificent palaces of the Jin capital Zhongdu were destroyed by fire during the dynastic turnover from the Jin to the Yuan. When the capital was rebuilt, the original site of Zhongdu was replaced by a larger rectangular area centered in a beautiful lake region in the northeastern suburbs.

The construction of Dadu consisted of three main projects -- the imperial palaces, the city walls and moats, and the canal. The first stage was construction of the palace buildings, most of which were completed in 1274. The next stage was construction of the mansions for the imperial princes, the government offices, the Taimiao (Imperial Ancestral Temple) and Shejitan (Altar of Land and Grain) to the east and west of the palace, and a system of streets for ordinary residences. In 1293, the strategic Tonghui Canal, connecting the capital to the Grand Canal, was completed.

As the capital city of the Yuan Dynasty (1271-1368), Dadu enjoyed great fame in the 13th century world. The envoys and traders from Europe, Asia and Africa who paid visits to China were astounded by the splendor and magnificence of Dadu. Marco Polo's description of the palaces of Cambaluc, as the called Khanbalig, is most famous of all:

"You must know that it is the greatest palace that ever was□ The roof is very lofty, and the walls of the palace are all covered with gold and silver. They are adorned with dragons, beasts and birds, knights and idols, and other such things□ The Hall of the Palace is so large that 6,000 people could easily dine there, and it is quite a marvel to see how many rooms there are besides. The building is altogether so vast, so rich and so beautiful, that no man on earth could design anything superior to it. The outside of the roof is all colored with vermilion and yellow and green and blue and other hues, which are fixed with a varnish so fine and exquisite that they shine like crystal, and lend a resplendent luster to the palace as seen for a great way around."

The new Dadu was a rectangular city more than 30 kilometers in circumference. In the later years of Kublai Khan's rule, the city population consisted of 100,000 households or roughly 500,000 people. The layout was the result of uniform planning, the broader streets all 24 paces wide, the narrow lanes half this width. The regular chessboard pattern created an impression of relaxed orderliness.

Achievements in stone and plaster sculpture and painting at this time reached great heights. The names of two contemporary artisans have come down to us: the sculptors Yang Qiong and Liu Yuan. The latter was known for the plaster statues he created for temples. Liulansu Lane at the northern end of Fuyou Street in present-day Beijing was named after Liu Yuan.

On August 2, 1368, Ming troops seized Dadu and renamed it Beiping (Northern Peace). Zhu Yuanzhang, the founding emperor of the Ming Dynasty (1368-1644), however, made Nanjing his first capital. Beginning in 1406, Emperor Yongle of the Ming Dynasty spent 15 years constructing walls 12 meters high and 10 meters thick at their base around the city of Beiping. The construction of palace buildings and gardens began in 1417 and was completed in 1420. The following year, Emperor Yongle formally transferred the capital from Nanjing to Beiping and, for the first time, named the city Beijing (Northern Capital).

Extensive reconstruction work was carried out in Beijing during the first years of the Ming Dynasty. The northern city walls were shifted 2.5 kilometers to the south. Evidence of great advances in city planning is the district known as the Inner (Tartar) City. The Outer or Chinese City to the south was built during the reign of Emperor Jiajing (1522-1566), adding to the rectangular city a slightly wider "base" in the south.

When the Manchus founded the Qing Dynasty in 1644, they began to build suburban gardens, the most famous of which was Yuanmingyuan. Construction over the course of an entire century, the imposing columned palaces and open-air pavilions blended with the serenity of well-planned gardens to create a masterpiece of garden architecture unrivaled in the history of China.

A city plan was first laid out in the Yuan Dynasty. Yet only after extensive reconstruction during the Ming and Qing (1644-1911), did the city emerge as an architectural masterpiece fit to serve as the capital of the Chinese empire. A north-south axis bisects the city with the Imperial Palace known as Dantai (The Great Within). In the Ming, it was renamed the Forbidden City (Zijincheng), and more recently it has come



to be called the Palace Museum (Gugong Bowuyuan). Designed with thousands of halls and gates arranged symmetrically around a north-south axis, its dimensions and luxuriance are a fitting symbol of the power and greatness of traditional China.

After the collapse of the Qing Dynasty in 1911, China fell prey to the Northern Warlords and Kuomintang, Beijing suffered the same fate as the rest of China, hobbling along like an old camel without a sense of direction. The Chinese People's Liberation Army formally entered Beijing on January 31, 1949, opening a new chapter in the long history of the city. It was in Tian'anmen Square on October 1st, 1949, that Chairman Mao Zedong proclaimed the establishment of the People's Republic of China, with Beijing as its capital.

The city has changed totally since then. It has expanded from its old confines within the nine gates of the Inner City wall (Zhengyangmen, Chongwenmen, Xuanwumen, Chaoyangmen, Dongzhimen, Fuchengmen, Xizhimen, Andingmen and Deshengmen) to the seven outer gates (Dongbianmen, Guangqumen, Xibianmen, Guang'anmen, Yongdingmen, Zuoanmen and Youanmen) and out into the suburbs, Beijing now covers an area of about 750 square kilometers, which includes a dozen new living districts built on the outskirts of town.

Tian'anmen Square is still the center of Beijing, Chang'an Boulevard now running 38 kilometers from Shijingshan in the west to Tongxian in the east. The palaces and city towers along both sides have been designated cultural relics for national protection. Former imperial residences and gardens have been opened for public viewing.

New buildings like the International Post Office and Bank of China have been built along the Second Ring Road, the former line of the Inner City wall. Old living quarters and blocks of traditional Beijing-style buildings, such as Liulichang Culture Street, have been restored. Large-scale construction has been undertaken along the Third Ring Road and the fourth Ring Road.

Future development in Beijing will continue to preserve the symmetry of the old city layout while integrating modern architectural design into the overall plan.

(China.org.cn)

# History of Beijing

From Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia

There were cities in the vicinities of [Beijing](#) by the [1st millennium BC](#), and the capital of the [State of Yan](#), one of the powers of the [Warring States Period](#) (473-221 BC), Ji ([T](#): 薊 / [S](#): 薊), was established in present-day Beijing.



*Remnants of city walls around Beijing (August 2004 image).*

After the fall of the [Yan](#), the subsequent [Qin](#), [Han](#), and [Jin](#) dynasties set-up local prefectures in the area. In [Tang Dynasty](#) it became the headquarter for Fanyang [jiedushi](#), the virtual military governor of current northern [Hebei](#) area. [An Lushan](#) lauched [An Shi Rebellion](#) from here in 755. This rebellion is often regarded as a turning point of Tang dynasty, as the central government began to lose the control of the whole country.

In 936, the [Later Jin Dynasty](#) (936-947) of northern China ceded a large part of its northern frontier, including modern Beijing (at the time called Youzhou 幽州), to the [Khitan Liao Dynasty](#). In 938, the [Liao Dynasty](#) set up a secondary capital in what is now Beijing, and called it Nanjing (the "Southern Capital", 南京, different from [Nanjing](#), the capital city of current [Jiangsu](#) province). In 1125, the [Jurchen Jin Dynasty](#) annexed Liao, and in 1153 moved its capital to Liao's Nanjing, calling it Zhongdu (中都), "the central capital." Zhongdu was situated in what is now the area centred around [Tianningsi](#), slightly to the southwest of central Beijing.

[Mongol](#) forces burned Zhongdu to the ground in 1215 and rebuilt it to the north of the Jin capital in 1267. In preparation for the conquest of all of China, [Yuan \(Mongol\) Dynasty](#) founder [Kublai Khan](#) made this his capital as [Khanbaliq](#) ([Mongolian](#) for "great residence of the Khan") or [Dadu](#) (大都, [Chinese](#) for "grand capital"). This site is known as *Cambuluc* in [Marco Polo](#)'s accounts. Apparently, Kublai Khan, who wanted to become a Chinese emperor, established his capital at this location instead of more traditional sites in central China because it was closer to his power base in Mongolia. The decision of the Khan greatly enhanced the status of a city that had been situated on the northern fringe of [China proper](#) and it was the true beginning of contemporary Beijing. Khanbaliq was situated north of modern central Beijing. It centred on what is now the northern stretch of the [2nd Ring Road](#), and stretched northwards to between the [3rd](#) and [4th Ring Roads](#). There are remnants of Mongol-era wall still standing.

After the fall of the [Yuan Dynasty](#) in 1368, the city was later rebuilt by the [Ming Dynasty](#) and renamed Shuntian (順天). In 1403, the third Ming [Emperor Yongle](#) moved the Ming capital from [Nanjing](#) (Nanking) to the renamed Beijing (Peking) (北京), the "northern capital", situated in the north. The capital was also known as Jingshi 京師, simply meaning capital. During the Ming Dynasty, Beijing took its current shape, and the Ming-era city wall served as the [Beijing city wall](#) until modern times, when it was pulled down and the [2nd Ring Road](#) was built in its place.

It is believed that Beijing was the largest city in the world from 1425 to 1650 and from 1710 to 1825 [1].

The [Forbidden City](#) was constructed soon after that (1406-1420), followed by the [Temple of Heaven](#) (1420), and numerous other construction projects. [Tian'anmen](#), which has become a state symbol of the [People's Republic of China](#) and is featured on its emblem, was burned down twice during the Ming

Dynasty and the final reconstruction was carried out in 1651.



*The [Forbidden City](#), home to the [Emperors](#) of the [Ming](#) and [Qing](#) Dynasties.*

After the [Manchus](#) overthrew the [Ming Dynasty](#) and established the [Qing Dynasty](#) in its place, Beijing remained China's capital throughout the Qing period. Just like during the preceding dynasty, Beijing was also known as Jingshi, which corresponded to the Manchu Gemun Hecen with the same meaning. It was the scene of the siege of the foreign legations during the [Boxer Rebellion](#) in 1900.

The [Xinhai Revolution](#) of 1911, aimed at replacing Qing rule with a republic, originally intended to establish its capital at [Nanjing](#). After high-ranking Qing official [Yuan Shikai](#) forced the abdication of the Qing emperor in Beijing and ensured the success of the revolution, the revolutionaries in Nanjing accepted that Yuan should be the president of the new [Republic of China](#), and that the capital should remain at Beijing.

Yuan gradually consolidated power, culminating in his declaration of a Chinese Empire in late 1915 with himself as emperor. The move was highly unpopular, and Yuan himself died less than a year later, ending his brief reign. China then fell under the control of regional warlords, and the most powerful factions fought frequent wars (the [Zhili-Anhui War](#), the [First Zhili-Fengtian War](#), and the [Second Zhili-Fengtian War](#)) to take control of the capital at Beijing.

Following the success of the [Kuomintang's Northern Expedition](#) which pacified the warlords of the north, Nanjing was officially made the capital of the Republic of China in 1928, and Beijing was renamed Beiping (Peip'ing) (北平), "northern peace" or "north pacified", to emphasize that the warlord government in Beijing was not legitimate.



*Beijing's [Tian'anmen Square](#), as seen from the Tian'anmen Chenglou Building (taken in July of 2004).*

During the [Second Sino-Japanese War](#), Beiping fell to [Japan](#) on [29 July 1937](#). During the occupation, the city was reverted to its former name, Beijing, and made the seat of the [Provisional Government of the Republic of China](#), a [puppet state](#) that ruled the [ethnic Chinese](#) portions of Japanese-occupied [North China](#). It was later merged into the larger [Wang Jingwei Government](#) based in Nanjing. With Japan's surrender in [World War II](#), on [15 August 1945](#), however, Beijing's name was changed back to Beiping.

On [January 31, 1949](#), during the [Chinese Civil](#)

[War](#), Communist forces entered Beijing without a fight. On [October 1](#) of the same year, the [Communist Party of China](#), under the leadership of [Mao Zedong](#), announced in [Tian'anmen](#) the creation of the [People's Republic of China](#) in Beijing. Just a few days earlier, the [Chinese People's Political Consultative Conference](#) had decided that Beiping would be the capital of the new government, and that its name would be changed back to Beijing.

At the time of the founding of the People's Republic, Beijing Municipality consisted of just its urban area and immediate suburbs. The urban area was divided into many small districts inside what is now the [2nd Ring Road](#). Since then several surrounding [counties](#) have been incorporated into the Municipality, enlarging the limits of Beijing Municipality by many times and giving it its present shape. The [Beijing city wall](#) was torn down between 1965 and 1969 to make way for the construction of the [2nd Ring Road](#).

Following the [economic reforms](#) of [Deng Xiaoping](#), the urban area of Beijing has expanded greatly. Formerly within the confines of the [2nd Ring Road](#) and the [3rd Ring Road](#), the urban area of Beijing is now pushing at the limits of the recently-constructed [5th Ring Road](#) and [6th Ring Road](#) (currently under construction), with many areas that were formerly farmland now developed residential or commercial neighborhoods. A new commercial area has developed in the [Guomao](#) area, [Wangfujing](#) and [Xidan](#) have developed into flourishing shopping districts, while [Zhongguancun](#) has become a major center of electronics in China.

As the national capital, Beijing has also been the site of political turmoil in recent years. [Tian'anmen Square](#), a well-known landmark in the city, was the site of the [Tiananmen Square protests of 1976](#) and then the [Tiananmen Square protests of 1989](#), which ended in a military crackdown. Tian'anmen Square has also been the site of protests by [Falun Gong](#).



In recent years, the expansion of Beijing has also brought to the forefront some problems of urbanization, such as heavy traffic, poor [air quality](#), the loss of historic neighborhoods, and significant influx of migrants from poorer regions of the country, especially rural areas.

Early 2005 saw the approval by government of a plan to finally stop the sprawling development of Beijing in all directions. Development of the Chinese capital would now proceed in two semicircular bands just outside of the city centre (both west and east) instead of being in concentric rings.

Beijing has been chosen to host the [2008 Summer Olympics](#), an event that has sparked [nationalistic](#) pride across China.

## References

This article or section does not cite its [references or sources](#). Please help [improve this article](#) by introducing appropriate citations. ([help](#), [get involved!](#))

This article has been tagged since September 2006.

Retrieved from "[http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/History\\_of\\_Beijing](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/History_of_Beijing)"

[Categories](#): [Articles lacking sources from September 2006](#) | [All articles lacking sources](#) | [History of Beijing](#)  
| [History of China](#)

## Tiananmen Square

[http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tiananmen\\_Square](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tiananmen_Square)

# Tiananmen Square

From Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia

*For the 1989 protest, see [Tiananmen Square protests of 1989](#).*

Tiananmen **Square** ([Simplified Chinese](#): 天安门广场; [Traditional Chinese](#): 天安門廣場; [pinyin](#): Tiān'ānmén Guǎngchǎng) is the large [plaza](#) near the center of [Beijing](#), [China](#), named after the [Tiananmen](#) (literally, *Gate of Heavenly Peace*) which sits to its north, separating it from the [Forbidden City](#). It has great cultural significance as a symbol because it was the site of several key events in Chinese history (See below: [Events](#)). Outside of China, the square is widely known for the [Tiananmen Square protests of 1989](#).

The square is 880 [metres](#) south to north and 500 metres east to west, a total area of [440,000 square meters](#), which makes it the [largest open-urban square in the world](#).



*Tiananmen Square as seen from the [Tian'an Gate](#)*

## Contents

- [1 History](#)
- [2 Features](#)
- [3 Events](#)
- [4 Images from near and in the square](#)
- [5 See also](#)
- [6 References](#)
- [7 External links](#)

## History

The [Tiananmen](#) was built in [1417](#) in the [Ming Dynasty](#). In 1999 (early [Qing Dynasty](#)), the Tiananmen was renovated and renamed to its present form. During the [Ming Dynasty](#) and Qing Dynasty, there was no public square at the site, and instead the area was filled with

offices for imperial ministries. These were badly damaged during the [Boxer Rebellion](#) and the area was cleared to produce the beginning of Tiananmen Square.

Near the centre of today's square, close to the site of the [Mao Zedong Mausoleum](#), once stood one of the most important gates of Beijing. This gate was known as the "Great Ming Gate" (大明门) during the [Ming Dynasty](#), "Great Qing Gate" (大清门) during the [Qing Dynasty](#), and "[Gate of China](#)" (中华门) during the [Republic of China](#) era. Unlike the other gates in [Beijing](#), such as the [Tiananmen](#) and the [Qianmen](#), this was a purely ceremonial gateway, with three arches but no ramparts, similar in style to the ceremonial gateways found in the [Ming Dynasty Tombs](#). This gate had a special status as the "Gate of the Nation", as can be seen from its successive names. It normally remained closed, except when the Emperor passed through. Commoner traffic were diverted to two side gates at the western and eastern ends of today's square, respectively. Because of this diversion in traffic, a busy marketplace, called Chessgrid Streets (棋盘街) developed in the small, fenced square to the south of this gate.

In the early 1950s, the Gate of China (as it was then known) was demolished along with the Chessgrid Streets to the south, completing the expansion of Tiananmen Square to (approximately) its current size.

## Features



*The Tian'anmen Square in Beijing*

Enlarged in [1949](#) to the current size, its flatness is broken only by the 38 metre high [Monument to the People's Heroes](#) and the [Mausoleum of Mao Zedong](#). The square lies between two ancient, massive gates: the Tian'anmen to the north and the Zhengyangmen, better known as [Qianmen](#) ([Simplified Chinese](#): 前门; [Traditional Chinese](#): 前門; [pinyin](#): Qiánmén; literally "Front Gate") to the south. Along the

west side of the Square is the [Great Hall of the People](#). Along the east side is the [National Museum of China](#). [Chang'an Avenue](#), which is used for parades, lies between the Tian'anmen and the Square. Trees line the east and west edges of the Square, but the square itself is open, with neither trees nor benches. The Square is lit with huge lampposts which also sport video cameras<sup>[\[citation needed\]](#)</sup>. It is heavily monitored by uniformed and plain clothes policemen.

## Events

Tiananmen Square has been the site of a number of political events such as the proclamation of the [People's Republic of China](#) by [Mao Zedong](#) in [October 1, 1949](#), for annual mass military displays on all subsequent National Days until October 1st 1959, plus the 1984 military parade for the 35th anniversary of the People's Republic of China and the 50th anniversary in 1999 plus for mass rallies during the [Cultural Revolution](#). It has also been the site of a number of protest movements, most notably the [May Fourth Movement](#) of [1919](#) for [science](#) and [democracy](#), [protests in 1976](#) after the death of [Zhou Enlai](#), and the [Tiananmen Square protests of 1989](#).

The protests of 1989 resulted in the killing of Chinese protestors in the streets to the west of the square and adjacent areas. Some Western reporters who were on the square during the unfolding events reported that they saw no one actually die *on the square itself*, though did see bloodied people but could not confirm whether they were either dead or injured ([Graham Earnshaw](#) and [Columbia Journal Review](#)). However, Chinese expatriates who left the country after the killings said that the total numbers of deaths ended up being in the thousands. This was a combination of the hundreds killed on the spot and the "miniature" purge that followed. As of June of 2006, the confirmed number of deaths that happened around that night is 186 according to professor [Ding Zilin](#).<sup>[1]</sup>

## Images from near and in the square



*Railway station*



*Zhengyangmen gate*



*[Mausoleum of Mao Zedong](#)*



*Monument in front of Mao's Mausoleum on Tiananmen Square*



*[Monument to the People's Heroes](#) and the [Great Hall of the People](#)*



*[Tiananmen gate](#) to the [Forbidden City](#) with reviewing stands in front*



*Iconic image of the Tiananmen Square from the May Fourth movement of 1919*



*Overview of the Tiananmen Square*

## See also

- [May Fourth Movement](#)



- [April Fifth Movement](#)
- [Tiananmen Square protests of 1989](#)

## References

1. [^ Professor Ding ZiLin: the list of the dead](#)
- [Tiananmen Square](#) 30 High Quality Photographs
  - [Tiananmen Square in 360°](#)
  - [National Museum of Chinese History](#)
  - [Tiananmen Square Introduction and Pictures](#)
  - [Satellite photo of Tianmen Square](#)
  - [Arrests on June 4, 2006 Tiananmen Square Anniversary](#)

# Tiananmen Square protests of 1989

From Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia



*[The Unknown Rebel](#)*

This famous photo, taken on 5 June 1989 by photographer [Jeff Widener](#), depicts a lone protester whose actions halted a column of advancing tanks until he was pulled into the crowd. When asked by [Barbara Walters](#) in a 1990 interview, [Jiang Zemin](#) said that he could not confirm whether the man was arrested.

The **Tiananmen Square protests of 1989**, also known as the **Tiananmen Square Massacre**, **June 4th Incident**, or the **Political Turmoil**

between Spring and Summer of 1989 by the [government of the People's Republic of China](#), were a series of demonstrations led by students, intellectuals and [labour activists](#) in the [People's Republic of China](#) between [April 15, 1989](#) and [June 4, 1989](#). The demonstrations centred on [Tiananmen Square](#) in [Beijing](#), but large scale protests also occurred in cities throughout [China](#), including [Shanghai](#).

In Beijing, the resulting crackdown on the protestors by the PRC government left many civilians dead. The toll ranges from 200– 300 (PRC government figures), to 2,000– 3,000 (Chinese student associations and Chinese [Red Cross](#)), although the PRC government asserts and most independent observers agree that these deaths were not in the square itself but rather in the streets leading to the square.<sup>[1]</sup>

The protestors came from disparate groups, ranging from intellectuals who believed the [Communist Party of China](#)-led government was too [corrupt](#) and [repressive](#) to urban workers who believed Chinese economic reform had gone too far and that the resulting rampant [inflation](#) and widespread unemployment was threatening their livelihoods.

After the protestors defied government calls to disperse, a split emerged within the Communist Party of China on how to respond to the protestors. A hardline faction emerged from the turmoil and decided to quell the protests rather than heed their demands.<sup>[2]</sup>

On [May 20](#), the government declared [martial law](#) and, on the night of [June 3](#) and the early morning of [June 4](#), army tanks and infantry were sent into Tiananmen Square to crush the protest and disperse the protestors. Estimates of civilian deaths vary: 23 ([Communist Party of China](#)), 400– 800 ([Central Intelligence Agency](#)), 2600 (Chinese Red Cross). Injuries are generally held to have numbered from

7,000 to 10,000. As of June of 2006, the confirmed number of deaths that happened around that night is 186 according to professor Ding Zilin.<sup>[3]</sup> Following the violence, the government conducted widespread arrests to suppress the remaining supporters of the movement, banned the foreign press and strictly controlled coverage of the events in the PRC press. The violent suppression of the Tiananmen Square protest caused widespread international condemnation of the PRC government.<sup>[4]</sup>

## Contents

- [1 Naming of incident](#)
- [2 Background](#)
- [3 Protests begin](#)
- [4 Protests escalate](#)
  - [4.1 Nationwide protests](#)
    - [4.1.1 Shanghai](#)
    - [4.1.2 Hong Kong](#)
    - [4.1.3 Taiwan](#)
  - [4.2 Worldwide events](#)
- [5 The crackdown](#)
- [6 Number of deaths](#)
- [7 Aftermath](#)
  - [7.1 Arrests and purges](#)
  - [7.2 Media coverage](#)
  - [7.3 Impact on domestic political trends](#)
  - [7.4 Economic impact](#)
  - [7.5 A generation gap](#)
- [8 The present](#)
  - [8.1 Taboo in China](#)
  - [8.2 US-EU arms embargo](#)
  - [8.3 Compensation](#)
- [9 See also](#)
- [10 References](#)
- [11 External links](#)

Beijing and specifically Tiananmen Square.

## Naming of incident

The incident is named after the location of the movement in [Tiananmen Square](#), [Beijing](#). Some historians also call it "the Beijing massacre".

In the [Chinese language](#), the incident is most commonly known as the **June Fourth Movement** ([Simplified Chinese](#): 六四运动; [Traditional Chinese](#): 六四運動) or *June Fourth Event* ([Chinese](#): 六四事件). The former is in conformity with the other two great protest actions that occurred on Tiananmen Square: the [May Fourth Movement](#) of 1919, and the [April Fifth Movement](#) of 1976. In some contexts, "June Fourth Movement" refers more generally to all the student and [civil unrest](#) which occurred throughout China, in addition to the events in

## Background

Since 1978, [Deng Xiaoping](#) had led a series of [economic](#) and [political](#) reforms which had led to the gradual implementation of a [market economy](#) and some political liberalization that relaxed the system set up by [Mao Zedong](#). By early 1989, these economic and political reforms had led two groups of people to become dissatisfied with the government.

The first group included students and [intellectuals](#), who believed that the reforms had not gone far enough and that China needed to reform its [political systems](#), since the economic reforms had only affected farmers and factory workers; the incomes of intellectuals lagged far behind those who had benefited from reform policies. They were concerned about the social and political controls that the [Communist Party of China](#) still had. In addition, this group saw the political liberalization that had been undertaken in the name of [glasnost](#) by [Mikhail Gorbachev](#). The second group were those, including urban

industrial workers, who believed that the social and political reforms had gone too far. The loosening of economic control had begun to cause [inflation](#) and [unemployment](#), which threatened their livelihood.

<b><a href="#">History of the People's Republic of China</a></b>
<a href="#">China</a>

<a href="#">1949-1976 - The Mao Era</a> <a href="#">Revolution</a> <a href="#">Korean War</a> <a href="#">Hundred Flowers Campaign</a> <a href="#">Anti-Rightist Movement</a> <a href="#">Great Leap Forward</a> <a href="#">Cultural Revolution</a> <a href="#">Lin Biao</a> <a href="#">Gang of Four</a> <a href="#">Tiananmen Incident</a> <a href="#">1976-1989 - Era of Reconstruction</a> <a href="#">Economic reform</a> <a href="#">Tiananmen protests</a> <a href="#">1989-2002 - A Rising Superpower</a> <a href="#">One Country, Two Systems</a> <a href="#">Hong Kong</a> <a href="#">Macau</a> <a href="#">Chinese reunification</a> <a href="#">2002-present - China Today</a>
See also: <a href="#">History of China</a> <a href="#">History of Beijing</a> <a href="#">History of Shanghai</a>
<b>Prominent Leaders</b>
<a href="#">Mao</a> - <a href="#">Deng</a> - <a href="#">Jiang</a> - <a href="#">Hu</a>
<b>Other China topics</b>
<a href="#">Culture</a> - <a href="#">Economy</a> <a href="#">Geography</a> - <a href="#">Politics</a> - <a href="#">Education</a> <a href="#">China Portal</a>

In 1989, the primary supporters of the government were rural peasants who had seen their incomes increase considerably during the 1980s as a result of the Party's reforms.<sup>[*[citation needed](#)*]</sup> However, this support was limited in usefulness because rural peasants were distributed across the countryside. In contrast to urban dwellers who were organized into schools and work units, peasant supporters of the government remained largely unorganized and difficult to mobilize.<sup>[*[citation needed](#)*]</sup>

The Tiananmen Square protests in 1989 were in large measure sparked by the death of former Secretary General [Hu Yaobang](#). Hu Yaobang's "resignation" from the position of Secretary General of the CPC had been announced on [January 16, 1987](#). His forthright calls for "rapid reform and his almost open contempt of Maoist excesses" had made him a suitable scapegoat in the eyes of Deng Xiaoping and others, after the pro-democracy student protests of 1986– 1987 (Spence 1999, 685). Included in his resignation was also a "humiliating self-criticism", which he was forced to issue by the Central Committee of the Communist Party. Hu Yaobang's sudden death, due to heart attack, on [April 15, 1989](#) provided a perfect opportunity for the students to gather once again, not only to mourn the deceased Secretary General, but also to have their voices heard in "demanding a reversal of the verdict against him" and bringing renewed attention to the important issues of the 1986– 1987 pro-democracy protests and possibly also to those of the [Democracy Wall](#) protests in 1978– 1979 (Spence 1999, 697).

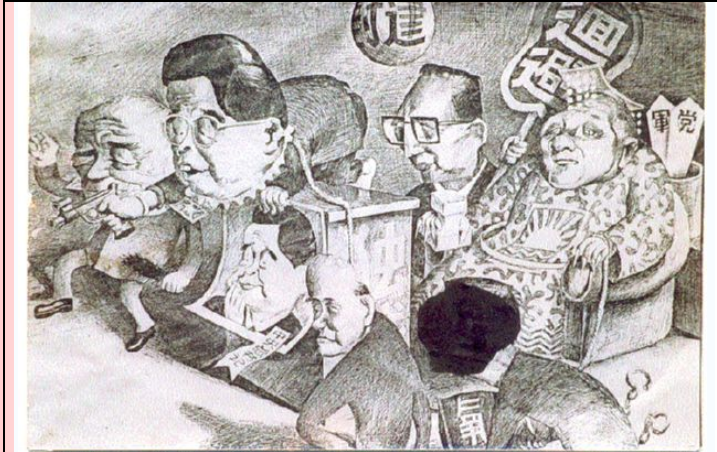
## Protests begin

Protests started out on a small scale, in the form of mourning for Hu Yaobang and demands that the party revise their official view of

him. The protests gained momentum after news of confrontation between students and police spread; the belief by students that the Chinese media was distorting the nature of their activities also led to increased support. At Hu's funeral, a large group of students gathered at Tiananmen Square and requested, but failed, to meet premier [Li Peng](#), widely regarded to be Hu's political rival. Thus students called for a strike



in universities in Beijing. On [April 26](#), an editorial in [People's Daily](#), following an internal speech made by Deng Xiaoping, accused the students of plotting civil unrest. The statement enraged the students, and on [April 29](#) about 50,000 students assembled on the streets of Beijing, disregarding the warning of a crackdown made by authorities and demanded that the government revoke the statement.



*An anonymous drawing posted in a pedestrian walkway underneath Chang An Avenue caricatures [Deng Xiaoping](#) (seated behind the lectern) as an old Chinese emperor. Original photo by Joseph Ureneck*

In Beijing, a majority of students from the city's numerous colleges and [universities](#) participated with support of their instructors and other intellectuals. The students rejected official Communist Party-controlled student associations and set up their own autonomous associations. The students viewed themselves as Chinese patriots, as the heirs of the [May Fourth Movement](#) for "science and democracy" of 1919. The protests also evoked memories of the [Tiananmen Square protests of 1976](#) which had eventually led to the ousting of the [Gang of Four](#). From its origins as a memorial to [Hu Yaobang](#), who was seen by

the students as an advocate of democracy, the students' activity gradually developed over the course of their demonstration from protests against [corruption](#) into demands for [freedom of the press](#) and an end to, or the reform of the rule of the PRC by the Communist Party of China and [Deng Xiaoping](#), the *de facto* paramount Chinese leader. Partially successful attempts were made to reach out and network with students in other cities and with workers.

Although the initial protests were made by students and intellectuals who believed that the Deng Xiaoping reforms had not gone far enough and China needed to reform its political systems, they soon attracted the support of urban workers who believed that the reforms had gone too far. This occurred because the leaders of the protests focused on the issue of corruption, which united both groups, and because the students were able to invoke Chinese archetypes of the selfless intellectual who spoke truth to power.

Unlike the Tiananmen protests of 1987, which consisted mainly of students and intellectuals, the protests in 1989 commanded widespread support from the urban workers who were alarmed by growing [inflation](#) and corruption. In Beijing, they were supported by a large number of people. Similar numbers were found in major cities throughout [mainland China](#) such as [Urumqi](#), [Shanghai](#) and [Chongqing](#); and later in Hong Kong, Taiwan and Chinese communities in North America and Europe.

## Protests escalate



*"The [Goddess of Democracy](#)" carved by students from the Central Academy of Fine Arts and erected in the Square during the protest.*

On [May 4](#), approximately 100,000 students and workers marched in Beijing making demands for free media reform and a formal dialogue between the authorities and student-elected representatives. The government rejected the proposed dialogue, only agreeing to talk to members of appointed student organizations. On [May 13](#), two days prior to the highly-publicized [state visit](#) by the reform-minded [Soviet leader Mikhail Gorbachev](#), huge groups of students occupied Tiananmen Square and started a hunger strike, insisting the government withdraw the accusation made in the People's Daily editorial and begin talks with the designated student representatives. Hundreds of students went on hunger strikes and were supported by hundreds of thousands of protesting students and part of the population of Beijing, for one week.

Protests and strikes began at many colleges in other cities, with many students traveling to Beijing to join the demonstration. Generally, the demonstration at Tiananmen Square was well-ordered, with daily marches of students from various Beijing area colleges displaying

their solidarity with the boycott of college classes and with the developing demands of the protest. The students sang "[The Internationale](#)," the world [socialist](#) anthem, on their way to and within the square.<sup>[5]</sup> The students even showed a surprising gesture of respect to the government by helping police arrest three men from [Hunan Province](#), including [Yu Dongyue](#), who had thrown ink on the large portrait of Mao that hangs from Tiananmen, just north of the square.<sup>[6]</sup>



*Zhou speaks on May 19th, 1989. Behind him (2nd from right in black) is current [State Council Premier Wen Jiabao](#).*

The students ultimately decided that in order to sustain their movement and impede any loss of momentum a [hunger strike](#) would need to be enacted. The students' decision to undertake the hunger strike was a defining moment in their movement. The hunger strike began in May 1989 and grew to include "more than one thousand persons" (Liu 1994, 315). The hunger strike brought widespread support for the students and "the ordinary people of Beijing rallied to protect the hunger strikers...because the act of refusing sustenance and courting government reprisals convinced onlookers that the students were not just seeking personal gains but

(were) sacrificing themselves for the Chinese people as a whole" (Calhoun 1994, 113).

On May 19th at 4:50 am, [Zhao Ziyang](#) went to the Square and had the following speech with the students :

"Students, we came too late. We are sorry. You talk about us, criticize us, it is all necessary. The reason that I came here is not to ask you to forgive us. All I want to say is that students are getting very weak, it is the 7th days since you went on hunger strike, you can't continue like this. As the time goes on, it will damage your body in an unrepairable way, it could be very dangerous to your life. Now the most important thing is to end this strike. I know, your hunger strike is to hope that the Party and the government will give you a satisfying answer. I feel that our communication is open. Some of the problem can only be solved by certain procedures. For example, you have mentioned about the nature of the incident, the question of responsibility, I feel that those problems can be solved eventually, we can reach a mutual agreement in the end. However, you should also know that the situation is very complicated, it needs a procedure. You can't continue the hunger strike for the 7th day, and still insist for a satisfying answer before ending the hunger strike.

You are still young, there are still many days yet to come, you must live healthy, and see the day when China accomplishes the [four modernizations](#). You are not like us, we are already old, it doesn't matter any more. It is not easy that this nation and your parents support you to study in colleges. Now you are all about early 20's, and want to sacrifice lives so easily, students, can't you think logically? Now the situation is very serious, you all know, the Party and the nation is very antsy, the whole society is very worried. Besides, Beijing is the capital, the situation is getting worse and worse from everywhere, this can not be continued. Students all have good will, and are for the good of our nation, but if this situation continues, loses control, it will cause serious consequences at many places.

In conclusion, I have only one wish. If you stop hunger strike, the government won't close the door for dialogue, never! The questions that you have raised, we can continue to discuss. Although it is a little slow, but we are reaching some agreement on some problems. Today I just want to see the students, and express our feelings. Hopefully students will think about this question calmly. This thing can not be sorted out clearly under illogical situations. You all have that strength, you are young after all. We were also young before, we protested, lied our bodies on the rail tracks, we never thought about what will happen in the future at that time. Finally, I beg the students once again, think about the future calmly. There are many things that can be solved. I hope that you will all end the hunger strike soon, thank you."

Partially successful attempts were made to negotiate with the PRC government, who were located nearby in [Zhongnanhai](#), the Communist Party headquarters and leadership compound. Because of the visit of

[Mikhail Gorbachev](#), foreign media were present in mainland China in large numbers. Their coverage of the protests was extensive and generally favorable towards the protesters, but pessimistic that they would attain their goals. Toward the end of the demonstration, on [May 30](#), a statue of the [Goddess of Democracy](#) was erected in the Square and came to symbolize the protest to television viewers worldwide.

The [Standing Committee of the Politburo](#), along with the [party elders](#) (retired but still-influential former officials of the government and Party), were, at first, hopeful that the demonstrations would be short-lived or that cosmetic reforms and investigations would satisfy the protesters. They wished to avoid [violence](#) if possible, and relied at first on their far-reaching Party apparatus in attempts to persuade the students to abandon the protest and return to their studies. One barrier to effective action was that the leadership itself supported many of the demands of the students, especially the concern with corruption. However, one large problem was that the protests contained many people with varying agendas, and hence it was unclear with whom the government could negotiate, and what the demands of the protesters were. The confusion and indecision among the protesters was also mirrored by confusion and indecision within the government. The official media mirrored this indecision as headlines in the [People's Daily](#) alternated between sympathy with the demonstrators and denouncing them.

Among the top leadership, [General Secretary Zhao Ziyang](#) was strongly in favour of a soft approach to the demonstrations while [Li Peng](#) was seen to argue in favour of a crackdown. Ultimately, the decision to crack down on the demonstrations was made by a group of Party elders who saw abandonment of [single-party rule](#) as a return of the chaos of the [Cultural Revolution](#). Although most of these people had no official position, they were able to control the military. Deng Xiaoping was chairman of the [Central Military Commission](#) and was able to declare [martial law](#); [Yang Shangkun](#) was [President of the People's Republic of China](#), which, although a symbolic position under the 1982 [Constitution](#), was legally the [commander-in-chief](#) of the [armed forces](#). The Party elders believed that lengthy demonstrations were a threat to the stability of the country. The demonstrators were seen as tools of advocates of "[bourgeois liberalism](#)" who were pulling the strings behind the scenes, as well as tools of elements within the party who wished to further their personal ambitions.

## Nationwide protests

At the beginning of the movement, the Chinese [news media](#) had a rare opportunity to broadcast the news freely and truly. Most of the news media were free to write and report however they wanted to due to lack of control from the central and local governments. The news was spread quickly across the land. According to Chinese news media's report, students and workers in over 400 cities, including cities in [Inner Mongolia](#), also organized and started to protest.<sup>[7]</sup> People also traveled to the capital to join the protest in the Square.

## Shanghai



University students in Shanghai also took to the streets to commemorate the death of [Hu Yaobang](#) and protest against certain policies of the government. In many cases, these were supported by the universities' [Party](#) committees. [Jiang Zeming](#), then-Municipal Party Secretary, addressed the student protesters in a bandage, and expressed his understanding as a former student agitator before [1949](#). At the same time, he moved swiftly to send in police forces to control the streets, and purge Communist Party leaders who had supported the students.

Shanghai's *World Economy* newspaper, in an editorial meeting, decided on April 19th to publish a commemorative section about him. On April 20th, Shanghai's city government was informed, and immediately reported to [Jiang Zeming](#). He ordered the newspaper to censor parts of the commemorative section, but then realised that the newspaper had already been printed and being distributed. On April 26th, the "People's Daily" published its editorial condemning the [student protest](#). Jiang Zeming followed this cue and suspended the editor of *World Economy* from his position. His quick rise to power following the 1989 protests have been attributed to his decisive handling of these two events.



*"Democratic songs dedicated to China" gathering in Hong Kong on May 27th of 1989*

## Hong Kong

Many local people protested. On May 27th, 1989, over 300,000 people gathered at the Victoria park for a gathering called "Democratic songs dedicated for China." Many famous Hong Kong and Taiwan celebrities sang songs and expressed their support for the students in Beijing.

## Taiwan

There were also protests. The government passed a law that it will give [ROC passport](#) to any Chinese who gave up their PRC passport, and it will also give financial support to those Chinese. Around the same time, many Taiwan pop singers gathered to sing a special song called "The wound of the history" [历史的伤口](#).

## Worldwide events

Across the world, at many other places where Chinese lived, they gathered around and protested. Many governments, such as USA, Japan, etc, also issued warnings, advised their own citizens not to go to the PRC.

## The crackdown

Although the [government](#) declared [martial law](#) on [May 20](#), the military's entry into Beijing was blocked by throngs of protesters, and the army was eventually ordered to withdraw. Meanwhile, the demonstrations continued. The hunger strike was approaching the end of the third week, and the government resolved to end the matter before deaths occurred. After deliberation among [Communist](#) party leaders, the use of military force to resolve the crisis was ordered, and [Zhao Ziyang](#) was ousted from political leadership as a result of his support for the student demonstrators. The Communist Party then decided to stop the situation before it escalated further.



*Tiananmen Square as seen from the Tian'an gate in 2004.*

[Soldiers](#) and [tanks](#) from the 27th and 28th Armies of the [People's Liberation Army](#) were sent to take control of the city. The 27th Army was led by a commander related to [Yang Shangkun](#). In a press conference, [President Bush](#) announced sanctions on Communist China (following calls to action from members of congress such as [US Senator Jesse Helms](#)). The President suggested that intelligence he had received indicated some disunity in China's military ranks, and even the possibility of clashes within the military during those days. Intelligence reports also indicated that 27th and 28th units were brought in from outside provinces because the local PLA were considered to be sympathetic to the protest and the people of the city. Reporters described elements of the 27th as having been most responsible for civilian deaths. After the attack on the square, the 27th reportedly established defensive positions in Beijing - not of the sort designed to counter a civilian uprising, but as if to defend against attacks by other military units. The locally-stationed 38th Army, on the other hand, was reportedly sympathetic to the uprising. They were supplied no ammunition, and were said to be torching their own vehicles as they abandoned them to join the protests. [\[citation needed\]](#)

Entry of the troops into the city was actively opposed by many citizens of Beijing. Protesters burned public buses and used them as roadblocks to stop the military's progress. The battle continued on the streets surrounding the Square, with protesters repeatedly advancing toward the [People's Liberation Army](#) (PLA) and constructing barricades with vehicles, while the PLA attempted to clear the streets using [tear gas](#). Many injured citizens were saved by rickshaw drivers who ventured into the no-man's-land between the soldiers and crowds and carried the wounded off to hospitals. After the attack on the square, [live](#)

[television](#) coverage showed many people wearing black armbands in protest of the government's action, crowding various boulevards or congregating by burnt out and smoking barricades. Meanwhile, the PLA systematically established checkpoints around the city, chasing after protesters and blocking off the university district.

Within the Square itself, there was apparently a debate between those who wished to withdraw peacefully (including [Han Dongfang](#)), and those who wished to stand within the square (such as [Chai Ling](#)). The assault on the square began at 10:30PM on June 3, as [armored personnel carriers](#) (APCs) and armed troops with [fixed bayonets](#) approached from various positions. These APCs rolled on up the roads, firing ahead and off to the sides, perhaps killing or wounding their own soldiers in the process. BBC reporter [Kate Adie](#) spoke of "indiscriminate fire" within the square. Students who sought refuge in buses were pulled out by groups of soldiers and beaten with heavy sticks. Even students attempting to leave the square were beset by soldiers and beaten. Leaders of the protest inside the square, where some had attempted to erect flimsy barricades ahead of the APCs, were said to have "implored" the students not to use weapons (such as [Molotov cocktails](#)) against the oncoming soldiers. Meanwhile, many students apparently were shouting, "Why are you killing us?" By 5:40AM the following morning, the Square had been cleared.

The suppression of the protest was immortalized in Western media by the famous video footage and photographs of a lone man in a white shirt standing in front of a column of tanks which were attempting to drive out of Tiananmen Square. Taken on [June 5](#) as the column approached an intersection on the Avenue of Eternal Peace, the footage depicted the unarmed man standing in the center of the street, halting the tanks' progress. He reportedly said, "Why are you here? You have caused nothing but misery." As the tank driver attempted to go around him, the "[tank man](#)" moved into the tank's path. He continued to stand defiantly in front of the tanks for some time, then climbed up onto the turret of the lead tank to speak to the soldiers inside. After returning to his position blocking the tanks, the man was pulled aside by onlookers who perhaps feared he would be shot or run over. [Time Magazine](#) dubbed him [The Unknown Rebel](#) and later named him one of the 100 most influential people of the 20th century. [British tabloid](#) the [Sunday Express](#) reported that the man was 19-year-old student [Wang Weilin](#), however the veracity of this claim is dubious. What happened to the 'tank man' following the demonstration is not known. In a speech to the President's Club in 1999, Bruce Herschensohn — former deputy special assistant to [President Richard Nixon](#) — reported that he was [executed](#) 14 days later. In *Red China Blues: My Long March from Mao to Now*, [Jan Wong](#) writes that the man is still alive and hiding in mainland China. In *Forbidden City*, Canadian children's author [William Bell](#), claims the man was named Wang Aimin and was killed on June 9 after being taken into custody. The last official statement from the PRC government about *tank man* came from Jiang Ziamin in an interview with Barbara Walters, when asked about the whereabouts of *tank man* Ziamin responded that he "wasn't executed".<sup>[[citation needed](#)]</sup>

After the crackdown in Beijing on [June 4](#), protests continued in much of mainland China for several days. There were large protests in Hong Kong, where people again wore black in protest. There were protests in [Guangzhou](#), and large-scale protests in Shanghai with a general strike. There were also protests in

other countries, many adopting the use of black arm bands as well. However, the government soon regained control. Although no large-scale loss of life was reported in ending the protests in other cities, a political purge followed in which officials responsible for organising or condoning the protests were removed, and protest leaders jailed.

## Number of deaths

The number of dead and wounded remains unclear because the Chinese government never released its data. An unnamed Chinese [Red Cross](#) official at the time reported that 2,600 people were killed and 30,000 were injured. Two days later, [Yuan Mu](#), the speaker of the State Council, estimated that 300 soldiers and citizens died, 5,000 soldiers and 2,000 citizens injured, 400 soldiers lost contact, and that many of the soldiers were burned alive by the protesters. [Central Committee of the Communist Party of China](#) and State Council later claimed that tens of PLA soldiers died and more were injured. The Preparatory Committee of Autonomous Associations of [Tsinghua University](#) claimed that 4,000 died and 30,000 were injured. [Chen Xitong](#), Beijing mayor, reported after the event that 36 students and tens of soldiers died, amounting to a total of 200 dead, with 3,000 civilians and 6,000 soldiers injured.<sup>[8]</sup> Foreign reporters that witnessed the incident have claimed that at least 3,000 people died. Some lists of casualties were created from underground sources with numbers as high as 5,000.<sup>[9]</sup> In contrast, before the government in Beijing had completely re-established control over the news media in China, a monitored English language broadcast from Beijing stated that at least 3,000 students died in the massacre. At the same time, the Chinese Red Cross reported that they had counted 2,600 people dead - and they still were counting. As both sources are impossible to verify given that access to objective information was impossible under martial law, the discrepancy between the numbers of individuals killed is unresolved. Despite the discrepancy, observers outside China (as well as some inside China) generally agree that at least 400 and perhaps over 1,000 were killed, as quoted by western media such as [Los Angeles Times](#) - but do not agree on the number of people who were injured.

The Chinese government has maintained that there were no deaths within the square itself, although videos taken there at the time recorded the sound of gunshots. Professor [Ding Zilin](#) (丁子霖) whose son was shot dead on the night of June 3rd, 1989 started to collect the names of those who were killed around that night. Thus far, Professor Zilin has 186 deaths, which can be found on [here in Chinese](#).

## Aftermath

### Arrests and purges

During and after the demonstration, authorities attempted to arrest and prosecute the student leaders of the [Chinese democracy movement](#), notably [Wang Dan](#), [Chai Ling](#), [Zhao Changqing](#) and [Wuer Kaixi](#). Wang Dan was arrested, convicted, and sent to prison, then allowed to emigrate to the [United States](#) on the grounds of [medical parole](#). As a lesser figure in the demonstrations, Zhao was released after six



months in prison. However, he was once again incarcerated for continuing to petition for political reform in China. Wuer Kaixi escaped to the [R.O.C.](#) in [Taiwan](#). He is now married and he holds a job as a political commentator on national Taiwan television <sup>[[citation needed](#)]</sup>. [Chai Ling](#) escaped to France, and then to the United States.

Chinese authorities summarily tried and executed many of the workers they arrested in Beijing. In contrast, the students - many of whom came from relatively affluent backgrounds and were well-connected - received much lighter sentences. Even Wang Dan, the student leader who topped the most wanted list, spent only seven years in prison.

The Party leadership expelled [Zhao Ziyang](#) from the [Politburo Standing Committee of the Communist Party of China](#) and the [Communist Party of China](#), because he opposed martial law, and Zhao remained under house arrest until his death. [Hu Qili](#), the other member of the [Politburo Standing Committee of the Communist Party of China](#) who opposed the martial law but abstained from voting, was also removed from the [Politburo Standing Committee of the Communist Party of China](#). He was however able to retain his party membership, and after "changing his opinion", was reassigned as deputy minister of Machine-Building and Electronics Industry. Other reform minded Chinese leaders such as [Wan Li](#) was also put under house arrest immediately after he stepped out of the airplane at [Beijing Capital International Airport](#) upon returning from his shortened trip abroad, with the official excuse of "health reasons". When [Wan Li](#) was released from his house arrest after he finally "changed his opinion" he, like [Qiao Shi](#), was transferred to a different position with equal rank but mostly ceremonial role.

The event elevated [Jiang Zemin](#) - then Mayor of [Shanghai](#) who was not involved in this event - to become PRC's President. Members of the government prepared a [white paper](#) explaining the government's viewpoint on the protests. An anonymous source within the PRC government smuggled the document out of China, and Public Affairs published it in January 2001 as the [Tiananmen Papers](#). The papers include a quote by Communist Party elder [Wang Zhen](#) which alludes to the government's response to the demonstrations.

Two CCTV presenters who reported the events of June 4 in the "News Network" program were fired soon after the event. [Wu Xiaoyong](#), the son of a Communist Party of China Central Committee member, and former PRC foreign minister and vice premier [Wu Xueqian](#) were removed from the English Program Department of [Chinese Radio International](#). [Qian Liren](#), director of the [People's Daily](#) (the newspaper of the Communist Party of China), was also removed from his post because of reports in the paper which were sympathetic towards the students.

## Media coverage

The Tiananmen Square protests damaged the reputation of the PRC in the [West](#). Western media had been invited to cover the visit of [Mikhail Gorbachev](#) in [May](#), and were thus in an excellent position to cover some of the government crackdown live through networks such as the [BBC](#) and [CNN](#). Protestors

seized this opportunity, creating signs and banners designed for international television audiences. Coverage was further facilitated by the sharp conflicts within the Chinese government about how to handle the protests. Thus broadcasting was not immediately stopped.

CNN was eventually ordered to terminate broadcasts from the city during the crackdown, and although the networks attempted to defy these orders and were able to cover the protests via telephone, the government was able to shut down the satellite links. Nonetheless, the image of "[the unknown rebel](#)", in particular, was quickly broadcast on international news programs.

Images of the protests - along with the collapse of Communism that was occurring at the same time in the [Soviet Union](#) and [Eastern Europe](#) - would strongly shape Western views and policy toward the PRC throughout the 1990s and into the 21st century. There was considerable sympathy for the student protests among Chinese students in the West. Almost immediately, both the [United States](#) and the [European Union](#) announced an [arms embargo](#), and China's image as reforming country and valuable ally against the [Soviet Union](#) was replaced by that of a repressive [authoritarian regime](#). The Tiananmen protests were frequently invoked to argue against [trade liberalization](#) with mainland China and by the United States' [Blue Team](#) as evidence that the PRC government was an aggressive threat to world peace and US interests.

Among [overseas Chinese](#) students, the Tiananmen Square protests triggered the formation of Internet news services such as the [China News Digest](#) and the NGO [China Support Network](#). In the aftermath of Tiananmen, organizations such as the [China Alliance for Democracy](#) and the [Independent Federation of Chinese Students and Scholars](#) were formed, although these organizations would have limited political impact beyond the mid-1990s.

The incident also made its way into a number of pop songs. It was mentioned in [Billy Joel](#)'s history-themed song "[We Didn't Start the Fire](#)" ("China's under martial law"); it was also the subject of [Joan Baez](#)' 1989 song "[China](#)" and "The Tiananmen Man" by [Nevermore](#). The song "Watching TV" from [Roger Waters](#)' 1992 solo album [Amused to Death](#) explores the influence of mass media on the protests. More recently, it was the subject of the 2005 song "[Hypnotize](#)" by [System of a Down](#). [The Cure](#) also performed a version of their own song "[Faith](#)" on the same day as the disaster, dedicated to the people who died.

## Impact on domestic political trends

The Tiananmen square protests dampened the growing concept of political liberalization that was popular in the late 1980s; as a result, many democratic reforms that were proposed during the 1980s were swept under the carpet. Although there has been some increase in personal freedom since then, discussions on structural changes to the PRC government and the role of the Communist Party of China remain largely [taboo](#).

Despite early expectations in the West that PRC government would soon collapse and be replaced by the [Chinese democracy movement](#), by the early 21st century the [Communist Party of China](#) remained in firm control of the [People's Republic of China](#), and the student movement which started at Tiananmen was in complete disarray.

In [Hong Kong](#), the Tiananmen square protests led to fears that the PRC would not honour its commitments under [one country, two systems](#) in the impending handover in 1997. One consequence of this was that the new governor [Chris Patten](#) attempted to expand the franchise for the [Legislative Council of Hong Kong](#) which led to friction with the PRC. There have been large candlelight vigils attended by tens of thousands in Hong Kong every year since 1989 and these vigils have continued following the transfer of power to the PRC in 1997.



*A memorial depicting a destroyed bicycle and a tank-track - symbol of the Tiananmen Square protests - in the [Polish](#) city of [Wrocław](#)*

The protests also marked a shift in the [political conventions](#) which governed politics in the People's Republic. Prior to the protests, under the 1982 [Constitution](#), the President was a largely symbolic role. By convention, power was distributed between the positions of President, Premier, and [General Secretary of the Communist Party of China](#), all of whom were intended to be different people, in order to prevent the excesses of [Mao](#)-style dictatorship. However, after [Yang Shangkun](#) used his reserve powers as head of state to mobilise the military, the

Presidency again became a position imbued with real power. Subsequently, the President became the same person as the General Secretary of the CPC, and wielded paramount power.

## Economic impact

One reason for this was that the Tiananmen protests did not mark the end of economic reform. Granted, in the immediate aftermath of the protests, conservatives within the Communist Party attempted to curtail some of the [free market](#) reforms that had been undertaken as part of [Chinese economic reform](#), and reinstitute administrative controls over the economy. However, these efforts met with stiff resistance from provincial governors and broke down completely in the early 1990s as a result of the collapse of the [Soviet Union](#) and [Deng Xiaoping](#)'s trip to the south. The continuance of economic reform led to economic growth in the 1990s, which allowed the government to regain much of the support that it had lost in 1989. In addition, none of the current PRC leadership played any active role in the decision to move against the demonstrators, and one major leadership figure [Premier Wen Jiabao](#) was an aide to [Zhao Ziyang](#) and accompanied him to meet the demonstrators. Today there are economic "sectors" in which business can thrive and this has improved the lives of many Chinese and opened up economic freedom and access to goods.

The students leaders at Tiananmen were unable to produce a coherent movement or ideology that would last past the mid-1990s. Many of the student leaders came from relatively well off sectors of society and were seen as out of touch with common people. A number of them were socialists and wanted to revert China back to the socialist road. Many of the organizations which were started in the aftermath of Tiananmen soon fell apart due to personal infighting. Several overseas democracy activists were supportive of limiting trade with mainland China which significantly decreased their popularity both within China and among the overseas Chinese community. A number of NGOs based in the U.S., which aim to bring [democratic reform](#) to China and relentlessly protest [human rights violations](#) that occur in China, remain. One of the oldest and most prominent of them, the China Support Network (CSN), was founded in 1989 by a group of concerned Americans and Chinese activists in response to Tiananmen Square.

## A generation gap

Growing up with little memory of Tiananmen and no memory of the [Cultural Revolution](#), but with a full appreciation of the rising prosperity and international influence of the PRC as well as the difficulties that [Russia](#) has had since the end of the [Cold War](#), many Chinese no longer consider immediate political liberalization to be wise, preferring to see slow stepwise democratization instead. Many young Chinese, in view of PRC's rise, are now more concerned with [economic development](#), [nationalism](#), the restoration of China's prestige in international affairs, and perceived governmental weakness on issues like the [political status of Taiwan](#) or the [Diaoyu Islands](#) dispute with [Japan](#).

Among intellectuals in mainland China, the impact of the Tiananmen protests appears to have created something of a [generation gap](#). Intellectuals who were in their 20s at the time of the protests tend to be far less supportive of the PRC government than younger students who were born after the start of the Deng Xiaoping reforms.

Among urban industrial workers, the continuation of market reforms in the 1990s brought with it higher standards of living as well as increased economic uncertainty. Protests by urban industrial workers over issues such as unpaid wages and local corruption remain frequent with estimates of several thousand of these protests occurring each year. The [Communist Party of China](#) appears unwilling to suffer the negative attention of suppressing these protests provided that protests remain directed at a local issue and do not call for deeper reform and do not involve coordination with other workers. In a reversal of the situation in 1989, the centre of discontent in mainland China appears to be in rural areas, which have seen incomes stagnate in the 1990s and have not been involved in much of the economic boom of that decade. However, just as the lack of organization and the distribution of peasants prevented them from becoming mobilized in support of the government in 1989, these factors also inhibit mobilization against the government in the early-21st century.

## The present

### Taboo in China



The topic is still a political [taboo](#) in mainland China, where any public discussion of it is regarded as inappropriate.<sup>[\[citation needed\]](#)</sup> The only media coverage takes the Communist Party of China's view: that it was a necessary action to ensure stability. It is common for Chinese, especially younger Chinese who live far from Beijing, to be entirely unaware of the Tiananmen protests.<sup>[\[10\]](#)</sup> Every year there is a large rally in Hong Kong, where people remember the victims and demand that the CPC's official view be changed.

However, petition letters over the incident have emerged from time to time, notably from Dr. [Jiang Yanyong](#) and [Tiananmen Mothers](#), an organization founded by a mother of one of the victims killed in 1989. Tiananmen Square is tightly patrolled on the anniversary of [June 4](#) to prevent any commemoration.

After the PRC Central Government reshuffle in 2004, several cabinet members mentioned Tiananmen. In October 2004, during President [Hu Jintao](#)'s visit to France, he reiterated that "the government took determined action to calm the political storm of 1989, and enabled China to enjoy a stable development". He insisted that the government's view on the incident would not change.

In March 2004, Premier [Wen Jiabao](#) said in a press conference that during the 1990s there was a severe political storm in the PRC, amid the breakdown of the [Soviet Union](#) and radical changes in Eastern Europe. He stated that the Communist Central Committee successfully stabilized the open-door policy and protected the "Career of Socialism with Chinese Characteristics".

In 2005, [Li Ao](#), a Taiwanese political activist and TV celebrity, gave a guest lecture at [Peking University](#). He hinted at the 1989 protests by referring to the [Bonus March](#) Incident<sup>[\[11\]](#)</sup> in the United States nearly 50 years earlier. In the speech, he asserted that any national government in the world would resort to using military force when their rule is threatened.

In January 2006, [Google agreed to censor](#) their mainland China site, Google.cn, to remove information about the 1989 Tiananmen Square massacre [\[1\]](#), as well as other topics such as [Tibetan independence](#), the banned spiritual movement [Falun Gong](#) and the [political status of Taiwan](#), confirming that Tiananmen is still an issue the government wants to avoid. The uncensored Wikipedia articles on the 1989 protests, both in English and Chinese, have been attributed as a cause of the [blocking of Wikipedia](#) by the government in mainland China.

In 2006, the [American PBS](#) program "Frontline" broadcast a segment filmed at [Peking University](#), many of whose students participated in the 1989 protests. Four students were shown a picture of the Tank man, but none of them correctly identified the person or the event depicted. Some responded that it was a military parade, or an artwork. This is reflective of either strong censorship of the event in mainland China, or the effectiveness of political indoctrination such that students feigned ignorance to an American journalist.

## US-EU arms embargo

The [United States](#) and [European Union](#) embargo on weapons sales to the PRC, put in place as a result of the violent suppression of the Tiananmen Square pro-democracy protests still remains in place 17 years later. The PRC has been calling for a lifting of the ban for many years and has had a varying amount of support from members of the [Council of the European Union](#). In early 2004, France spearheaded the movement within the EU to lift the ban. Former [German Chancellor Gerhard Schröder](#) publicly added his voice to that of [French President Jacques Chirac](#) to have the embargo lifted.

The arms embargo was discussed at a PRC-EU summit in the Netherlands on December 7-9, 2004. In the runup to the summit, the PRC had attempted to increase pressure on the EU Council to lift the ban by warning that the ban could hurt PRC-EU relations. PRC Vice Foreign Minister Zhang Yesui called the ban "outdated", and he told reporters, "If the ban is maintained, bilateral relations will definitely be affected." In the end, the EU Council did not lift the ban. EU spokeswoman Françoise le Bail said there were still concerns about the PRC's commitment to human rights. But at the time, the EU did state its commitment to work towards lifting the ban. [Bernard Bot](#), [Foreign Minister of the Netherlands](#), which held the EU's [rotating presidency](#) at that time, said, "We are working assiduously but...the time is not right to lift the embargo." Following the summit, the EU Council confirmed that it had the political will to continue to work towards lifting the embargo. PRC Premier Wen Jiabao said after the meeting that the embargo did not reflect the partnership between the PRC and the EU.

The PRC continued to press for the embargo to be lifted, and some member states began to drop their opposition. Jacques Chirac pledged to have the ban lifted by mid-2005. However, the [Anti-Secession Law of the People's Republic of China](#) passed in March 2005 increased cross-strait tensions, damaging attempts to lift the ban, and several EU Council members changed their minds. Members of the [U.S. Congress](#) had also proposed restrictions on the transfer of military technology to the EU if they lifted the ban. Thus the EU Council failed to reach a consensus and although France and Germany pushed to have the embargo lifted, no decision was agreed upon in subsequent meetings.

Britain took charge of the EU Presidency in the summer of 2005, making the lifting of the embargo all but impossible for the duration of the term. Britain had always had some reservations on lifting the ban and wished to put it to the side, rather than sour EU-US relations further. Perhaps more importantly, the failure of the [European Constitution](#) and the ensuing disagreement over the European Budget and [Common Agricultural Policy](#) has superseded the matter of the embargo in importance. Britain wanted to use its presidency to push for wholesale reform of the EU, so the lifting of the ban will become even more unlikely. The election of a new [European Commission President José Manuel Durão Barroso](#), has also made a lifting of the ban more difficult. At a meeting with Chinese leaders in mid-July 2005, he said that China's poor record on human rights would slow any changes to the EU's ban on arms sales to China.<sup>[12]</sup>

Political will may be changing in countries that are more in favor of lifting the embargo. Schröder lost the [2005 German federal election](#) to [Angela Merkel](#), who became chancellor on [November 22, 2005](#), and is strongly against lifting the ban. Other opposition leaders are against lifting the ban. Jacques Chirac will

find it difficult to remain president in 2007—he may not even be a successful candidate, due to losing the French vote over the European Constitution. [Nicolas Sarkozy](#) is a strong contender for the French presidency and is not as much in favor of lifting the ban as Chirac is.

In addition, the [European Parliament](#) has consistently opposed the lifting of the arms embargo to the PRC. Though its agreement is not necessary for lifting the ban, many argue it reflects the will of the European people better as it is the only directly elected European body—the EU Council is appointed by member states. The European Parliament has repeatedly opposed any lifting of the arms embargo on the PRC:

- The resolution of [April 28, 2005](#), on the Annual Report on Human Rights in the World 2004 and the EU's policy on the matter,
- The resolution of [October 23, 2003](#), on the annual report from the Council to the European Parliament on the main aspects and basic choices of CFSP, it insisted on a peaceful resolution of the Taiwan issue through dialogue across the [Taiwan Straits](#) and called on China to withdraw missiles in the coastal provinces adjacent to the Taiwan Straits and
- The resolution on relations between the EU, China, and Taiwan and security in the Far East of [July 7, 2005](#). The EP has noted several times that the current human rights situation in China, with regards to fundamental civil, cultural and political freedoms does not meet even the international standards recognized by China.

This arms embargo has limited China's options from where it may seek military hardware. Among the sources that were sought included the former [Soviet bloc](#) that it had a strained relationship with as a result of the [Sino-Soviet split](#). Other willing suppliers have been Israel and [South Africa](#).<sup>*[citation needed]*</sup>

## Compensation

Although the Chinese government never acknowledged wrongdoing when it came to the incident, in April 2006 a payment was made to the family of one of the victims, the first publicized case of the government offering redress to a Tiananmen-related victim's family. The payment was termed a "hardship assistance", given to Tang Deying (唐德英) whose son, Zhou Guocong ([Simplified Chinese](#): 周国聪; [Traditional Chinese](#): 周國聰) died at the age of 15 while in police custody in [Chengdu](#) on [June 6, 1989](#), two days after the Chinese Army dispersed the Tiananmen protestors. The woman was reportedly paid 70,000 [yuan](#) (approximately \$8,700 [USD](#)). This has been welcomed by various Chinese activists, but was regarded by some as a measure to maintain social stability and not believed to herald a changing of the Party's official position.<sup>*[13]*</sup>

## See also

- [Tiananmen Square](#)
- [History of the People's Republic of China](#)
- [May Fourth Movement](#)
- [April Fifth Movement](#)

- [The Hong Kong Alliance in Support of Patriotic Democratic Movements in China](#)
- [Pillar of Shame](#)
- [Executive Order 12711](#)

## References

### General references

- *The New Emperors: China in the Era of Mao and Deng*, [Harrison E. Salisbury](#), New York, 1992, [Avon Books](#), [ISBN 0-380-72025-6](#).
- *The Tiananmen Papers, The Chinese Leadership's Decision to Use Force Against their Own People—In their Own Words*, Compiled by Zhang Liang, Edited by [Andrew J. Nathan](#) and [Perry Link](#), with an afterword by [Orville Schell](#), PublicAffairs, New York, 2001, hardback, 514 pages, [ISBN 1-58648-012-X](#) An extensive review and synopsis of *The Tiananmen papers* in the journal [Foreign Affairs](#) may be found at [Review and synopsis in the journal Foreign Affairs](#).
- *June Fourth: The True Story, Tian'anmen Papers/Zhongguo Liusi Zhenxiang Volumes 1– 2 (Chinese edition)*, Zhang Liang, [ISBN 962-8744-36-4](#)
- *Red China Blues: My Long March from Mao to Now*, [Jan Wong](#), Doubleday, 1997, trade paperback, 416 pages, [ISBN 0-385-48232-9](#) (Contains, besides extensive autobiographical material, an eyewitness account of the Tiananmen crackdown and the basis for an estimate of the number of casualties.)
- Spence, Jonathan D. *The Search for Modern China*. New York: Norton, 1999.
- Craig C. Calhoun. "Science, Democracy, and the Politics of Identity." In *Popular Protest and Political Culture in Modern China*. Edited by Jeffrey N. Wasserstrom and Elizabeth J. Perry, 140-7. Boulder, Col.: Westview Press, 1994.
- Liu Xiaobo. "That Holy Word, "Revolution." In *Popular Protest and Political Culture in Modern China*. Edited by Jeffrey N. Wasserstrom and Elizabeth J. Perry, 140-7. Boulder, Col.: Westview Press, 1994.
- Spence, Jonathan D. "Testing the Limits." In "The Search for Modern China". 701. New York, NY: [W.W. Norton](#) & Company, 1999

### Cited references

1. [^ \*The Myth of Tiananmen And the Price of a Passive Press\*, by Jay Mathews, Columbia Journalism Review](#)
2. [^ \*Escape from China\*, by Zhang Boli, Simon & Schuster Trade](#)
3. [^ Professor Ding ZiLin: the list of the dead](#)
4. [^ Andrew J. Nathan, \*The Tiananmen Papers\*, \*Foreign Affairs\*, January/February, 2001](#)
5. [^ \*Amnesty International\*, 30 August 1989. \*Preliminary Findings on Killings of Unarmed Civilians, Arbitrary Arrests and Summary Executions Since 3 June 1989\*, p.19](#)
6. [^ \*The Gate of Heavenly Peace\*, movie script, 1995](#)



7.        [^ http://www.pbs.org/wgbh/pages/frontline/tankman/view/](http://www.pbs.org/wgbh/pages/frontline/tankman/view/) Tens of Millions of Protestors
8.        [^ 六四民運 \(June4th 1989 Archive\) \(Chinese\)](#).
9.        [^ CSN warns Americans about the AP's "climb down" on Tiananmen numbers](#), [CSN](#), May 18, 2004
10.       [^ The Tank Man](#), *Part 6: The Struggle to Control Information*, Frontline, April 11, 2006
11.       [^](#) Jordy, Daniel (2000-05-21). [Bonus March Episode](#).
12.       [^](#) Daniel Griffiths, [EC leader urges China to reform](#), *BBC News*, July 15, 2005
13.       [^](#) [China makes 1989 Tiananmen payout](#). BBC News (2006-04-30).

## External links

- ["The Tank Man"](#), 2006 PBS documentary
- ["Gate of Heavenly Peace"](#), documentary film in original Chinese dialog
- [Human Rights in China's Section on 1989 Democracy movement](#)
- BBC Creative archive footage [Clip 1](#), [Clip 2](#) (accessible from the UK only)
- [BBC's "On This Day" report about Tiananmen Protests](#)
- [BBC's "Witnessing Tiananmen: Clearing the square" with eyewitness accounts of Tiananmen](#)
- [The U.S. "Tiananmen Papers" - US Perceptions of the crisis](#)
- [Graham Earnshaw's eye witness account of events on the night of June 4](#)
- [Eyewitness account of the massacre from a Marxist's Perspective](#)
- [The Myth of Tiananmen And the Price of a Passive Press](#), by Jay Mathews, *Columbia Journalism Review*
- [The Tiananmen Square Confrontation](#), *Alternative Insight*
- [The Virtual Museum of China '89](#)
- [Eyeballing Tiananmen Square Massacre - Photo Gallery](#)
- [Tiananmen Square, 1989](#) *The Declassified History*
- [Victims of June 4th Massacre](#)
- [The Gate of Heavenly Peace - Feature-length Documentary](#)

# Forbidden City

[http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Forbidden\\_City](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Forbidden_City)

## Forbidden City -Beijing

From Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia

[Coordinates: 39°54′ 56″ N, 116°23′ 27″ E](#)



*Overview of the Forbidden City*

The **Forbidden City** ([Chinese](#): 紫禁城; [pinyin](#): Zǐ jinchéng; literally "Purple Forbidden City") was the [Chinese](#) imperial palace during the mid-[Ming](#) and the [Qing](#) Dynasties. The Forbidden City is located in the middle of [Beijing](#), [China](#). It is now known as the **Palace Museum**.

Its extensive grounds cover 720,000 square meters. The Forbidden City has 800 buildings with 8,886 rooms.

The Forbidden City is listed by [UNESCO](#) as the largest collection of preserved ancient wooden structures in the world. The Forbidden City was declared a [World Heritage Site](#) in 1987 as the "Imperial Palace of the Ming and Qing Dynasties."

The Palace Museum in the Forbidden City should not be confused with the [National Palace Museum](#) in [Taipei](#), [Taiwan](#) island. Both museums derive from the same institution, but they were split after the [Chinese Civil War](#).

### Names

The Forbidden City is known by many names.

### Contents

- [1 Names](#)
- [2 Description](#)
  - [2.1 Layout](#)
  - [2.2 Walls](#)
  - [2.3 Gardens](#)
  - [2.4 Symbolism](#)
  - [2.5 Major buildings](#)
- [3 Surroundings](#)
- [4 History](#)
  - [4.1 Construction](#)
  - [4.2 Ming and Qing dynasty](#)
  - [4.3 After the revolution](#)
  - [4.4 Surviving the Cultural Revolution](#)
  - [4.5 Modern day](#)
- [5 Image gallery](#)
- [6 Influences of the Forbidden City](#)
- [7 Reference](#)
- [8 See also](#)
- [9 External links](#)

The name by which the site is most commonly known in English, "The Forbidden City," is a translation of the Chinese name Zijin Cheng (紫禁城), which literally means "Purple Forbidden City." It is also known as

the "Forbidden Palace" in English. The palace was "forbidden" in the sense that, aside from members of the imperial household, no one could enter it without the [Emperor's](#) permission.

Today, the site is most commonly known as Gugong (故宫) in Chinese, which means the "Former Palace."<sup>[1]</sup> The museum which is located in these buildings is known as the "Palace Museum" ([Chinese](#): 故宫博物院; [pinyin](#): Gùgō ng Bówùyùàn).

In the [Manchu](#) language it is called *Dabkū ri dorgi hoton*, which literally means the "Layered Inner City."

## Description



*The imperial [throne](#) inside the Palace of Heavenly Purity (乾清宮), the place of day-to-day government and imperial audiences*

The Imperial Palace Grounds are located directly to the north of [Tiananmen Square](#) and are accessible from the square via [Tiananmen Gate](#). It is surrounded by a large area called the [Imperial City](#).

## Layout

Rectangular in shape, the Forbidden City is the world's largest palace complex and covers 720,000 square meters (178 acres, or 0.28 square miles). It is surrounded by a six meter deep [moat](#) and a ten meter high wall. The Forbidden City includes five halls, seventeen palaces, and numerous other

buildings.

The Forbidden City is divided into two parts. The Outer Court, which includes the southern and central sections, centres on three halls which were used for ceremonial purposes, such as [coronations](#), [investitures](#), and imperial [weddings](#). The three halls include the magnificent [Hall of Supreme Harmony](#) (太和殿), itself fronted by the [Gate of Supreme Harmony](#) (太和門). Apart from ceremony, the Outer Court also houses the Imperial Library, archives, and lantern storage. The Inner Court includes the northern, eastern, and western parts of the Forbidden City, and centres on another three halls which were used for the day-to-day affairs of state. The most important among these is the [Palace of Heavenly Purity](#) (乾清宮). The Inner Court was where the Emperor worked and lived with his family, [eunuchs](#) and maid-servants.

Buildings in the Forbidden City are arranged along three north-south axes. The central axis houses the most important buildings. It runs from [Meridian Gate](#) in the south, to the [Gate of Divine Might](#) in the north. The "Three Front Halls", the centre of ceremonies, and the "Three Back Palaces", the centre of day-to-day affairs of state, are arranged along the central axis. Along the eastern axis are a number of semi-independent courtyards. The northern part of the eastern axis served as the [Qianlong Emperor's](#)

residence in his retirement. Along the western axis are several gardens and a number of religious buildings. Large parts of the western section are not open to the public. Some buildings are in bad repair; a few were destroyed by fire in [1923](#) and never rebuilt. In his memoir, [Puyi](#) thought that the fire was started by eunuchs wanting to conceal evidence of smuggling treasures out of the palace.

## Walls

The [wall](#) around the Forbidden City has a gate on each side. At the southern end is the [Meridian Gate](#)<sup>[2]</sup> To the north is the [Gate of Divine Might](#), which faces [Jingshan Park](#). The distance between these two gates is 960 meters, while the distance between the gates in the east and west walls is 750 meters. The walls are thick and squat and were specifically designed to withstand attacks by [cannons](#).

There are unique and delicately structured towers on each of the four corners of the surrounding wall. These towers afford views over both the palace and the city outside.

Outside the main gate to the Forbidden City, the [Meridian Gate](#) faces a square where imperial corporal punishments were sometimes carried out. To the south of that square stands [Tiananmen Gate](#).



*Inside the Forbidden City*

## Gardens

At the northern end of the Forbidden City is the imperial garden. It is home to many trees aging 100 to 300 years old and many rare plants.

## Symbolism

The royal color was yellow, and that color dominates the rooftops. On each corner of the roofs, there are small statuettes, the number of which designated the power of the person living

within the building. The number 9 was reserved for the emperor. Only one building has 10 statuettes at each corner.<sup>[\[citation needed\]](#)</sup>

## Major buildings

Major buildings include:

- [Meridian Gate](#)
- [Tiananmen Gate](#)
- [Gate of Supreme Harmony](#)
- [Gate of Divine Might](#)
- [Hall of Supreme Harmony](#)



- [Palace of Heavenly Purity](#)

## Surroundings

The Forbidden City is surrounded by royal gardens. To the west lies [Zhongnanhai](#), the complex of buildings centred on two lakes which serves as the central headquarters for the [Communist Party of China](#). To the north-west lies [Beihai Park](#), which also centres on a lake and is a popular park. To the north lies [Jingshan Park](#), also known as Jing Shan or [Coal Hill](#), where the last [Ming](#) emperor hanged himself as the rebel army overran his palace.

Today, Tiananmen Gate in front of the Forbidden City is decorated with a portrait of [Mao Zedong](#) in the center and two placards to the left and right. The left placard reads "中华人民共和国万岁" ([Traditional Chinese](#): 中華人民共和國萬歲; [pinyin](#): zhōnghuá rénmín gònghéguó wànsuì; "Long Live the People's Republic of China"), while the right placard reads "世界人民大团结万岁" ([Traditional Chinese](#): 世界人民大團結萬歲; [pinyin](#): shìjiè rénmín dà tuánjié wànsuì; "Long live the Great Unity of the World's Peoples"). The phrasing has great symbolic meaning, as the [phrase "long live"](#) was traditionally reserved for the [Emperors of China](#), but is now available to the common people. This is also true of the Forbidden City palace itself.

## History



*The [Hall of Supreme Harmony](#) (太和殿) at the centre of the Forbidden City*

## Construction

The site where the Forbidden City stands today was part of the [imperial city](#) during the [Yuan dynasty](#). When the [Ming Dynasty](#) succeeded it, the first [Hongwu Emperor](#) moved the capital to [Nanjing](#) and ordered that the [Mongol](#) palaces be razed in 1369. His son, [Zhu Di](#), was created Prince of Yan with seat in [Beijing](#). A princely palace was built on the site. In 1402, Zhu Di usurped the throne and became the [Yongle Emperor](#). He moved the capital back to [Beijing](#).

The construction of the Forbidden City started in 1406 and took 14 years and an estimated 200,000 men. The principal axis of the new palace sits to the east of the [Yuan Dynasty](#) palace, a design intended to place the Yuan palace in the western or "kill" position in [fengshui](#). Soil excavated during construction of the moat was piled up to the north of the palace to create an artificial hill, the [Jingshan hill](#).

## Ming and Qing dynasty

From its 1420 completion to 1644, when a peasant revolt led by [Li Zicheng](#) invaded it, the Forbidden City served as the seat of the [Ming Dynasty](#). The following [Qing Dynasty](#) also occupied the Forbidden City. In 1860, during the Second [Opium War](#), British forces managed to penetrate to the heart of the Forbidden City and occupied it until the end of the war.

After being the home of 24 emperors—fourteen of the Ming Dynasty and ten of the Qing Dynasty—the Forbidden City ceased being the political center of China in 1912 with the abdication of [Puyi](#), the last Emperor of China. Under an agreement signed between the Qing imperial house and the new [Republic of China](#) government, Puyi was, however, allowed and, in fact, required to live within the walls of the Forbidden City. Puyi and his family retained the use of the Inner Court, while the Outer Court was handed over to the Republican authorities. A museum was established in the Outer Court in 1914.

## After the revolution

Puyi stayed in the Forbidden City until 1924, when [Feng Yuxiang](#) took control of Beijing in a coup. Denouncing the previous agreement with the Qing imperial house, Feng expelled Puyi. Soon after, the Palace Museum was established in the Forbidden City. Having been the imperial palace for some five centuries, the Forbidden City houses numerous rare treasures and curiosities. These were gradually catalogued and put on public display.

However, with the [Japanese invasion of China](#), the safety of these national treasures were cast in doubt, and they were moved out of the Forbidden City. In 1947, after they had been moved from one location to another inside [mainland China](#) for many years, [Chiang Kai-shek](#) ordered many of the artifacts from the Forbidden City and the National Museum in [Nanjing](#) to be moved to [Taiwan](#). These artifacts formed the core of the [National Palace Museum](#) in [Taipei](#).

## Surviving the Cultural Revolution

During the heat of demolishing the "four olds", Premier Zhou Enlai got wind of Red Guard's plan to enter the Forbidden City. Knowing what the Red Guard had done to historical sites elsewhere, Zhou ordered all gates of the City to be closed and sent troops to guard the City. This episode is perhaps the most neglected in recent times of the Forbidden City.

## Modern day

The Forbidden City has undergone dramatic renovations. Although great effort has been put forth to prevent the commercialization of the palace, a [Starbucks](#) has been placed inside it [\[1\]](#), rousing controversy [\[2\]](#).

## Image gallery



*The imperial palace*

*Imperial palace  
staircase*



*The northwest  
tower*



*Rooftops of the  
Forbidden City*



*Tourists inside the Palace  
Museum*



*Architectures inside  
the Palace Museum*



*Bedchamber  
guardian lions*



*A guardian lion*



*Ceiling of one of the  
buildings in the imperial  
garden*



*Nine Dragons screen*



*The emperor's  
throne*



*One of the many halls  
and palaces containing  
the imperial throne*



*Imperial roof decoration*



*Vessel for Fire  
fighting water*

## Influences of the Forbidden City

- Emperor [Gia Long](#) of [Vietnam](#) built a palace and fortress that was intended to be a smaller copy of the Chinese Forbidden City in the 1800s. Its ruins are in [Huế](#). In English it is called the "[Imperial City](#)". The name of the inner palace complex in Vietnamese is translated literally as "Purple Forbidden City", which of course is the same as the Chinese name for Forbidden City in [Beijing](#).

- [Marco Polo](#) a joint NBC and RAI (Italy) TV miniseries broadcast in the early 1980s, was filmed inside the Forbidden City. This was artistic license, however, since historically, the Forbidden City did not exist in the Yuan Dynasty, during the time of Marco Polo's relationship with Kublai Khan.
- [The Last Emperor](#) (1987) was the first feature film ever authorized by the government of the People's Republic of China to film in the Forbidden City.
- [Giacomo Puccini](#)'s opera, [Turandot](#), about the story of a Chinese princess, was performed inside the Forbidden City for the first time in 1998.
- In 2004, the French musician [Jean Michel Jarre](#) performed the live concert in the Forbidden City, accompanied by 260 musicians as part of the "Year of France in China" festivities.
- The [5th Avenue Theatre](#) in [Seattle, Washington](#) imitates three ancient Chinese architectural achievements located in Beijing: the Forbidden City, the [Temple of Heaven](#), and the [Summer Palace](#). A nearly exact replica of the dome from the throne room of the Imperial palace in Beijing's Forbidden City graces the 5th Avenue Theatre' s ceiling. Authentic dragons and hoho birds scatter the walls of the theatre with an authentic Chinese quality. <sup>[*citation needed*]</sup>
- A fictional city called [Ba Sing Se](#) in the cartoon series [Avatar the Last Airbender](#) is based upon the Forbidden City.
- William Bell's novel "Forbidden City" a novel of modern China, is based upon a Canadian reporter and his son Alexander, or Alex for short (or Ahrek Shan Da, as most of his Chinese friends call him), who go to Beijing to report on Beijing and its people.

## Reference

1. <sup>^</sup> "Gugong" is also a generic name referring to all former palaces, another prominent example being the former Imperial Palaces ([Mukden Palace](#)) in [Shenyang](#).
  2. <sup>^</sup> Technically, [Tiananmen Gate](#) is not part of the Forbidden City.
- Ho and Bronson 2004. *Splendors of China's Forbidden City*. [ISBN 1-85894-258-6](#).

## See also

- [National Palace Museum](#)
- [Chinese art](#)
- [Chinese Palaces](#)

## External links

- [Palace Museum official site](#)
- [Forbidden City, A Photographic Tour](#)
- [ForbiddenCityChina.com](#) Over 400 high quality photographs (2005-2006); maps; guide.
- [Photos Gallery](#)
- [Links](#)
- [Forbidden City Map](#)



- [Forbidden City Satellite Map 1 & 2](#)
- [Palace Museum Official Map](#)
- [World heritage virtual tour via immersive panoramas](#)
- [Forbidden City Introduction](#)
- [Forbidden City Guide](#)
- [Satellite photograph of the Forbidden City](#)
- [Panoramic map of the Forbidden city](#)
- [National Palace Museum official website](#) (Taipei City, Taiwan)
- [China Museums](#)
- [The 5th Avenue Theatre](#) History and Photos
- [Imperial City, Huế photographs and text](#)

# ***The Forbidden City***

## **Introduction of The Forbidden City**



Also known as the Imperial Palace Museum or Gugong, the Forbidden City was the place where the emperors of the Ming and Qing Dynasties carried out their administration and lived. It lies at the center of Beijing. Rectangular in shape, Forbidden City is the world's largest palace complex. Forbidden City covers 74 hectares, 960 meters long and 750 meters wide, having 9,999 buildings. Opposite the Tian'anmen Gate in the south, to the north is the Gate of Divine Prowess (Shenwumen), which faces Jingshan Park.

The forbidden city is encircled in a 52-meter-wide, 6-meter-deep moat and a 10-meter-high, 3,400-meter-long city wall which has one gate on each side. There are four unique and delicate structured corner towers overlooking the city inside and outside on the four corners.

The Forbidden City is divided into two parts: the northern half, or the Outer Court where emperors executed their supreme power over the nation and the southern half, or the Inner Court where they lived with their royal family. Until 1924 when the last emperor in China was driven out of the Inner Court, 14 emperors of the Ming dynasty and 10 emperors of the Qing dynasty had reigned here. About 500 years being the imperial palace, it houses numerous rare treasures and curiosities. It is now listed by the UN as World Cultural Heritage in 1987 and is the hottest tourist magnets.

The Forbidden City is also called Purple Forbidden City. In the feudal society, emperors had supreme power, so this residence was certainly a forbidden place. Purple was the symbolic color of the North Star, which was believed to be the center of the cosmos. So it got the name of Forbidden City or Purple Forbidden City.

Nowadays, it is open to tourists home and abroad as a palace museum where people can see the great traditional palace architecture, enjoy the treasures kept in the palace, and learn of the legends and anecdotes about the imperial family and the court. Splendid paintings on the royal architectures, grand and deluxe halls, and surprisingly magnificent treasures will certainly satisfy "modern civilians".

## **History of the Forbidden City**

The Forbidden City is nearly 600 years old and was originally planned and constructed from 1407 to 1420. The principles of Feng Shui, the ancient Chinese system of geomancy governed the process. It was said that over 100,000 craftsmen and one million laborers were involved in the construction of the 9,999 rooms and halls. Stones needed were quarried from Fangshan, suburb of Beijing. The walls surrounding the complex are eleven feet thick and thirty three feet high and it is surrounded by a 164 foot wide moat. At each corner there are watchtowers for protection from possible invaders. The entire complex covers 250 acres.

It was said a well was dug along the road every 50 meters in order to pour water onto the road in winter to slide huge stones on ice into the city. Huge amount of timbers and other materials were all freighted from faraway provinces. Ancient Chinese people fully displayed their wisdom in building the Forbidden City. Take the grand red city wall for example, the ladder shaped wall has an 8.6 meters wide bottom and a 6.66 meters wide top. The shape of the city wall totally frustrate attempt to climb onto the wall. The bricks of the wall are said made from white lime and glutinous rice while the cement is made from glutinous rice and egg whites, and these incredible materials make the wall extraordinarily strong.

Since yellow is the symbol of the royal family, it is the dominant color in the Forbidden City. Roofs are built with yellow glazed tiles; decorations in the palace are painted yellow; even the bricks on the ground are made yellow in special process. However, there is one exception. Wenyuange, the royal library, has a black roof. The reason is that it was believed black represented water then and could extinguish fire.

Emperors of the Ming and Qing Dynasties from 1420 to 1911 held court and lived within the walls of the Forbidden City, also known as the Palace Museum. Some treasures remain from the Japanese invasion, and from the Nationalist Chinese taking the most valuable ones to Taiwan in 1949. Those are now on display in the National Museum of Taiwan. The last emperor, Puyi, remained living here for many years after the 1911 Revolution.

## **The main sceneries of the Forbidden City**

The Forbidden City is the world's largest palace complex. There are many interesting places.

Entrance is under Mao's large portrait in Tian'anmen Square, south gate, and you exit through the Imperial Gardens right before the north gate. Jingshan Park is directly across the street from the north gate.

Meridian Gate is the main gate and south gate of the Forbidden City. It is also named Five-Phoenix Tower, Wufenglou in Chinese, for it looks like a phoenix with five pavilion buildings up there. After entering the Meridian Gate, visitors arrive in an immense courtyard with five bridges stretching over the Golden Water.

The five bridges represent the five Confucian virtues of humanity, sense of duty, wisdom, reliability and ceremonial propriety. The Golden Water River of this section is very gorgeous, well decorated. The riverbed and the bank were paved with white stones. Decorative marble columns and banisters were established along the river. Standing on the bridges, one can see a grand structure called Taihemen (Gate of Supreme Harmony), which is the most marvelous gate in the city and guarded by a couple of bronze lions in front. On the square between Taihemen and Wumen, imperial honor guards proceeded preparation before grand ceremonies.

Taihedian (Hall of Supreme Harmony), Zhonghedian (Hall of Central Harmony) and Baohedian (Hall of Preserved Harmony), three main halls of the outer court, sit in line inside the gate. These halls all sit on three-tier marble terraces, with marble balustrades decorated. A stone ramp carved with coiled dragons and clouds locates in the middle of the steps leading up to each hall. The ramp of Baohedian (Hall of Preserved Harmony) is the largest one.

The first and grandest hall is Taihedian (Hall of Supreme Harmony), where emperors executed their autocracy over the whole country. It is the place where emperors ascended the throne and granted formal interviews to officials and important events were celebrated. The hall was flanked by Wenhudian (Hall of Literary Glory) and Wuyingdian (Hall of Martial Velour). The former, on the right side, used to be the study of the crown princes, where banquets and some rites were held. The latter, on the left side, is the imperial press where many books were compiled and published and where Li Zicheng, the famous peasants uprising leader, ascended his throne after overthrowing the Ming dynasty.

To the north of Wenhudian lies Wenyuange (Pavilion of Literary Source), the imperial library where the world largest encyclopedia Sikuquanshu (Complete Library of the Four Treasures of Knowledge) was housed. The library architecture has many Chinese cultural facts in its structure and decoration. Nanxundian (South Fragrance Hall) near Wuyingdian is where portraits of emperors of dynasties are kept.

Zhonghedian (Hall of Central Harmony) is behind Taihedian, a square building much smaller than Taihedian. It was the place where the emperor rested on his way to Taihedian and interviewed his ministers or officials from the Ministry of Rites and rehearsals for ceremonies were also held here.

Baohedian (Hall of Preserved Harmony), the second largest architecture in the palace, is the rear hall of the Outer Court. Imperial banquets were often given here to entertain high officials. Emperors presided the final stage of national examinations to select officials from intellectuals all over the country in this hall.

Getting out of the Baohedian, visitors will see Qianqingmen (Gate of Celestial Purity), which is the boundary of the Outer Court and the Inner Court. Inside the gate, the royal family resides. In the Qing Dynasty, Emperor Kangxi often heard reports from high officials and issued his orders under the gate. The Inner Court is divided into three parts. The three halls on the center axis are the main structures and they are smaller in size than the three halls in the Outer Court, although they look the same in style.



Xiliugong (Six Western Palaces) and Dongliugong (Six Eastern Palaces) are also important structure complexes, where the emperors' concubines lived.

The first hall inside the Qianqingmen is Qianqinggong (Palace of Celestial Purity), which was originally the bedroom of emperors as well as their office. Emperors also gave banquets here. Behind it is a smaller hall named Jiaotaidian (Hall of Celestial and Terrestrial Union), where empresses received greetings from others concubines. It was used to store emperor and empress's imperial seals. The third hall on the central axis is Kunninggong (Palace of Terrestrial Tranquility), which was empress' bedroom.

On the left side of the Inner Court, Yangxindian (Hall of Mental Cultivation) and Xiliugong (Six Western Palaces) stand from north to south. Yangxindian (Hall of Mental Cultivation) was an important hall in the palace since from Emperor Yongzheng, most emperors later lived and attended to state affairs here. North of Yangxindian, there locates Xiliugong (Six Western Palaces), which consists of Yongshougong (Palace of Eternal Longevity), Yikungong (Palace of the Queen Consort), Chuxiugong (Palace for Gathering Elegance), Taijidian (Hall of the Supreme Pole), Changchungong (Palace of Eternal Spring) and Xianfugong (Palace of Universal Happiness). The former three are on the right and the latter three on the left of an alley which goes from north to south.

On the right side of the Outer Court, viz. east side, there are Fengxiandian (Hall for Ancestral Worship), Zhaigong (Palace of Abstinence) where emperors practiced abstinence a few days before going to offer sacrifices at the Temple of Heaven or the Temple of Earth, and Dongliugong (Six Eastern Palaces) which consists of Jingrengong (Palace of Great Benevolence), Chengqiangong (Palace of Celestial Favour), Yonghegong (Palace of Eternal Harmony), Jingyanggong (Palace of Great Brilliance), Zhongcuigong (Palace of Purity) and Yanxigong (Palace of Lasting Happiness). In a separate enclosure further east are two palaces which Emperor Qianlong built for his abdication. They are Ningshougong (Palace of Tranquil Longevity) and Huangjidian (Hall of Imperial Supremacy). Further north, there are Yangxingdian (Hall of Temper Cultivation), Leshoutang (Hall of Joyful Longevity) and Yihexuan (Pavilion of Sustained Harmony). Now most these palaces on the east are exhibition halls displaying different curiosities.

North of the Inner Court is Yuhuayuan (Imperial Garden). Though small in size, it is exquisitely laid out with towers, pavilions, artificial hills, springs, rocks, old trees, flowers and lawns - a replica of the gardens of southern China.

Just behind the garden is Shenwumen (Gate of Divine Might), the rear gate of the Forbidden City. On the gate there were a drum and a bell. The bell used to toll 108 times to announce a new day while the drum rataplanned the time in the night.

If you visit without a guide be sure to rent the audio tape available at the entrance. Not only will it give you much information, it will also muffle the sounds of other visitors so your imagination can return to the days of emperors, empresses, intrigues of the court, concubines and eunuchs.

Some of them is listed from south to north as followed:

- Meridian Gate (Wumen )
- Inner Golden Water River (Neijinshuihe)
- Gate of Supreme Harmony ( Taihemen )
- Hall of Supreme Harmony (Taihedian)
- Hall of complete Harmony (Zhonghedian)
- Hall of Preserving Harmony (Baohedian)
- Gate of Heavenly Purity (Qianqingmen)
- Palace of Heavenly purity (Qianqinggong)
- Palace of Earthly Tranquility (Kunninggong)
- Palace of Union and Peace (Jiaotaidian)
- Hall of Metal Cultivation (Yangxindian)
- Marble Ramp Carved with Cloud and Dragon Design
- Six Eastern and Western Palace
- Nine-dragon Screen
- Imperial Garden
- Zhen Fei well
- Gate of Divine prowess (Shenwumen)

# ***Ancient Secrets: The Forbidden City***

## **► HISTORY FACTS**

Where: Right in the centre of Beijing

When: Constructed in the 15th century

Built by: The Chinese Emperor, as a island of luxury, away from the commoners

History: A centre of power, and power struggles, for 500 years

Go there for: Majestic architecture and a greater concentration of tourists than anywhere else in China



Lying in the centre of Beijing, the Forbidden City has a rich and mysterious history. China's largest and best-preserved ancient buildings are found there and the Forbidden City is one of the most popular tourist attractions in the world, visited by about ten million people a year.

It is estimated that it took one million labourers to complete the construction of the Forbidden City in 1420. Covering an area of two square miles, it has over 800 buildings and 9000 rooms, which now houses a vast collection of priceless relics including ancient pottery, bronzes and paintings.

Today, there is a permanent restoration team that moves around repairing parts of the city and a complete renovation is said to take about ten years and by that time the first parts to be repaired would need to be worked on again.

## **History**

For 500 years, the Forbidden City remained the exclusive domain of the ruling emperor and his servants, and it was strictly off limits to the rest of the common folk. A total of 24 emperors from the Ming and Qing dynasties ruled their kingdom from the confines of the city and they did not leave it unless it was absolutely necessary. This however, sometimes caused the emperor to be cut off from the external affairs and court eunuchs would be the ones with the real power.

Through the centuries, there have been many tales of betrayal, murder and power struggle in the Forbidden City. Manchu Empress Dowager Cixi was notorious for her ruthless methods and murderous plots against her rivals. It is rumoured that she once ordered her eunuchs to wrap the emperor's favourite concubine Zhenfei in a carpet and throw her into a well. The concubine had often interfered with the Empress' plans, perhaps once too many. The well is still there today, in a tiny courtyard in the northeast of the palace.

## **Feng Shui and Architecture**

The Forbidden City was designed to reinforce the idea that emperor is the Son of God and will rule forever, and this ideology is seen throughout the architecture of the buildings. The buildings are painted red and its tiles yellow, and these Imperial colours are seen exclusively in the Forbidden City.

The layout of the buildings within the city strictly followed the principles of Feng Shui. The city is laid out along a north-south axis as it is believed the balance of yin (north) and yang (south) will bring universal harmony to the kingdom. Carved dragons were placed on rooftops as it was believed that they attracted cloud and water and would therefore protect the buildings, which were very prone to fire as they were all made of wood.

## **Gate of Supreme Harmony**

The Gate of Supreme Harmony is the final gate before the throne. Between this gate and the Hall of Supreme Harmony lies the courtyard where the entire Imperial Court of 100,000 people would gather to be reviewed by the emperor from his throne. An official would call out the emperor's arrival and the people would fall to their knees to kou tow (touching their foreheads to the floor) nine times, as a display of their complete subservience to the emperor, the Son of Heaven.

## **The Dragon Throne**

More than half of the Forbidden City remains off-limits to the public and the Dragon Throne is unfortunately in that category. Intricately carved dragons and cranes adorn the throne where the most powerful person in the country once sat: the emperor. The imperial pathway from the Dragon Throne is made of solid white marble and weighs around 200 tons. It is said that 20,000 men took 28 days to lay the pathway in place.

## **Exploring the city**

The Forbidden City is open from 8.30am to 5pm but admission tickets (\$7) are only sold until 3.30pm. Tapes are available for self-guided tours but bear in mind that they only make sense if you enter the city from the south gate and leave from the north. You will often also be approached by men offering



themselves as an English speaking tour guide (not strictly official), if you decide to take this option, make sure you barter hard, they will try to charge you as much as possible!

To get to the ticket offices to the city, you have to walk past Tian'anmen Gate ticket booth, where many visitors mistakenly buy tickets which allow you access to the upper areas of the gate. Walk up north and eventually you will come to the correct booths.

## Summer Palace

[http://www.imperialtours.net/summer\\_palace.htm](http://www.imperialtours.net/summer_palace.htm)

# *The Summer Palace*

## History

The history of the gardens at the New Summer Palace date back to the Mongol Emperor Kublai Khan; to improve Beijing's water supply, he ordered the construction of canals transporting water from the Western Hills to an enlarged lake, now known as the Summer Palace's Kunming Lake. Five hundred years later, Emperor Qianlong (r. 1736 - 1756) added lake-side gardens and a Temple for Gratitude and Longevity in honour of his mother's birthday.



It was not before 1875 however, that the New Summer Palace, in its current form, began to take shape. In an effort to curry favour with the Dowager Empress Cixi, her brother in law, after being appointed head of the navy, used money earmarked for new warships to build her a New Summer Palace. The Empress Dowager was thrilled by her present. The Chinese navy, on the other hand, was routed by a smaller Japanese fleet in the Sino-Japanese war of 1895.

## Historical Significance

The Empress Dowager, who abhorred all challenges to her position, moved her administration to the New Summer Palace in 1889. Tales of her excesses are legion. The kitchens comprised eight courtyards, there were 128 eunuch cooks employed in her palace, five million silver taels were spent on her sixtieth birthday party, etc. And certainly when you consider that all 290 hectares of the summer palace were for the Dowager's exclusive use, you begin to see how the New Summer Palace came to symbolize the decadence of a venal dynasty.

The name, "The New Summer Palace", by definition draws the question - what happened to the old one? This was demolished in 1860 by Anglo-French forces. And as if once were not enough, the allied powers returned in 1900 to raze the newly reconstructed New Summer Palace. In this way the Summer Palaces - new and old - are also associated in popular culture with the destructive interference of foreigners on their land.

## Neo-Daoist Ideal of Natural Harmony

The Summer Palace's enchanting lake-side scenery is not at all coincidental. It has been composed with as much care as a poem. The elliptical marble bridge leads the eye to the rocky South island in the middle of the lake, the wooden pavilions dotted sparingly on the gentle hills that adorn the lakeside, the grandiose temples that climb the artificially created Longevity Hill - all these represent a quintessentially Chinese ideal of harmony between man and nature. Enjoy the poem.

# Summer Palace (1)

From Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia

Coordinates: [39°59′ 51.00″ N, 116°16′ 8.04″ E](#)



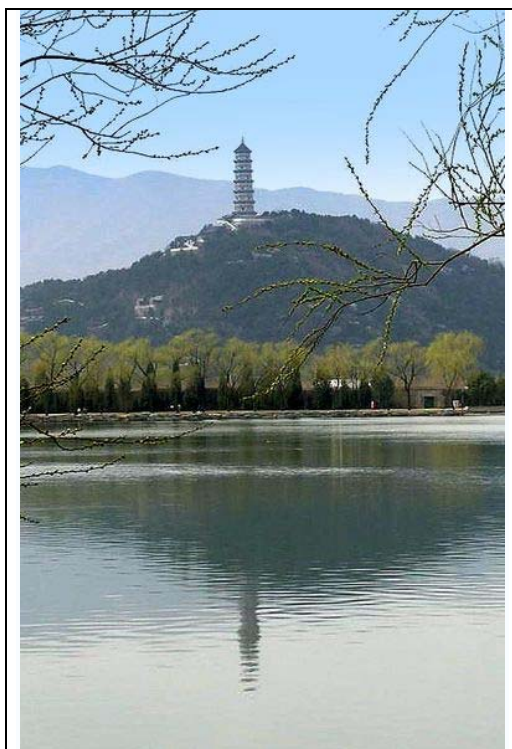
*The Summer Palace in Beijing.*

## Contents

- [1 Layout](#)
- [2 Location](#)
- [3 More Images](#)
- [4 External links](#)

The **Summer Palace** or **Yiheyuan** ([Traditional Chinese](#): 頤和園; [Simplified Chinese](#): 颐和园; [pinyin](#): Yíhé Yuán; literally "Garden of Nurtured Harmony") is a palace in [Beijing, China](#). The Summer Palace is mainly dominated by [Longevity Hill](#) (60 [meters](#) high) and the

[Kunming Lake](#). It covers an expanse of 2.9 square kilometers, three quarters of which is [water](#). In its compact 70,000 square metres of building space, one finds a variety of palaces, gardens, and other classical-style architectural structures.



*View over Kunming Lake towards Yu Quan Hill with Yu Feng Pagoda.*

The Summer Palace started out life as the Garden of Clear Ripples ([Traditional Chinese](#): 清漪園; [Simplified Chinese](#): 清漪园; [pinyin](#): Qī ngī Yuán) in 1750 (Reign Year 15 of [Emperor Qianlong](#)). Artisans reproduced the garden architecture styles of various palaces in China. Kunming Lake was created by extending an existing body of water to imitate the [West Lake](#) in [Hangzhou](#). The palace complex suffered two major attacks--during the Anglo-French allied invasion of 1860 (with the [Old Summer Palace](#) also ransacked at the same time), and during the [Boxer Rebellion](#), in an attack by the eight allied powers in 1900. The garden survived and was rebuilt in 1886 and 1902. In 1888, it was given the current name, *Yihe Yuan*. It served as a summer resort for [Empress Dowager Cixi](#), who diverted 30 million [taels](#) of silver, said to be originally designated for the



Chinese navy ([Beiyang Fleet](#)), into the reconstruction and enlargement of the Summer Palace.



*A Panorama shot taken in Winter.*

In December 1998, [UNESCO](#) included the Summer Palace on its [World Heritage List](#). It declared the Summer Palace an "outstanding expression of the creative art of Chinese landscape garden design, incorporating the works of humankind and nature in a harmonious whole."

## Layout

Entering from the northern gate, the visitor first comes across [Suzhou Street](#), designed to replicate the scenery of south-eastern China. At the top of [Longevity Hill](#) stands [Duobao Glazed Pagoda](#). From the top of the hill one can see [Kunming Lake](#) to the south and southwest. The [Marble Boat](#) is at the southwest foot of the hill, and the [Long Corridor](#) runs east to west along its southern edge. Most of the other notable buildings ([17-Arch Bridge](#); [Traditional Chinese](#): 十七孔橋; [Simplified Chinese](#): 十七孔桥; [pinyin](#): Shíqī Kǒ ng Qiáo) run along the eastern edge of the lake, directly south of the eastern end of the Long Corridor. Other features of the Summer Palace include the [Cloud-Dispelling Hall](#), the [Tower of Buddhist Incense](#) and [Jade Belt Bridge](#).

## Location

The Summer Palace is easily accessible from most parts of Beijing. Head north at Suzhou Bridge on the north-western [3rd Ring Road](#), north at Sihai Bridge on the north-western [4th Ring Road](#), or south at the northern [5th Ring Road](#) at the [Zhongguancun](#)/Beiqing Road exit. Public transportation also reaches the Summer Palace.

## More Images



*The famous [Marble Boat](#) on the grounds of the Summer Palace.*



*[Kunming Lake](#) with the [Seventeen-Arch Bridge](#).*



*Standing atop the [Longevity Hill](#), the Tower of Buddhist Incense is the highest building in the Summer Palace.*



*[Long Corridor](#)*



*Hall of Benevolence and Longevity*



*Tower of lake and mountain views*



*Bronze Qilin statue inside the Summer Palace.*



*The Summer Palace in 2003*

## External links

- [ChinaSummerPalace.com](http://ChinaSummerPalace.com) A guide to the Summer Palace, with over 300 high quality photographs
- [Beijingservice.com](http://Beijingservice.com): Summer Palace
- [Beijingservice.com](http://Beijingservice.com): Pictures of Summer Palace
- [TravelChinaGuide.com](http://TravelChinaGuide.com): Summer Palace
- [BeijingTrip.com](http://BeijingTrip.com): Summer Palace
- [The Summer Palace in Beijing](http://The Summer Palace in Beijing)
- [Summer Palace, Beijing, A Photography Tour](http://Summer Palace, Beijing, A Photography Tour)
- [Summer Palace \(from the Beijing Official Web Portal\)](http://Summer Palace (from the Beijing Official Web Portal))
- [summer-palace.info](http://summer-palace.info)

## Summer Palace (2)

### *Introduction*

Situated in the western outskirts of Haidian District, the Summer Palace is 15 kilometers (9.3 miles) from central Beijing. Having the largest royal park and being well preserved, it was designated, in 1960 by the State Council, as a Key Cultural Relics Protection Site of China. Containing examples of the ancient arts, it also has graceful landscapes and magnificent constructions.

The Summer Palace is the archetypal Chinese garden, and is ranked amongst the most noted and classical gardens of the world. In 1998, it was listed as one of the World Heritage Sites by UNESCO.



Constructed in the Jin Dynasty (1115-1234), during the succeeding reign of feudal emperors; it was extended continuously. By the time of the Qing Dynasty (1644-1911), it had become a luxurious royal garden providing royal families with rest and entertainment. Originally called "Qingyi Garden" (Garden of Clear Ripples), it was known as one of the famous "three hills and five gardens" (Longevity Hill, Jade Spring Mountain, and Fragrant Hill; Garden of Clear Ripples, Garden of Everlasting Spring, Garden of Perfection and Brightness, Garden of Tranquility and Brightness, and Garden of Tranquility and Pleasure). Like most of the gardens of Beijing, it could not elude the rampages of the Anglo-French allied force and was destroyed by fire. In 1888, Empress Dowager Cixi embezzled navy funds to reconstruct it for her own benefit, changing its name to Summer Palace (Yiheyuan). She spent most of her later years there, dealing with state affairs and entertaining. In 1900, it suffered again, being ransacked by the Eight-Power Allied Force. After the success of the 1911 Revolution, it was opened to the public.



Composed mainly of Longevity Hill and Kunming Lake, The Summer Palace occupies an area of 294 hectares (726.5 acres), three quarters of which is water. Guided by nature, artists designed the gardens exquisitely so that visitors would see marvelous views and be amazed by perfect examples of refined craftwork using the finest materials.

Centered on the Tower of Buddhist Incense (Foxiangge) the Summer Palace consists of over 3,000 structures including pavilions, towers, bridges, and corridors. The Summer Palace can be divided into four parts: the court area, front-hill area, front-lake area, and rear-hill and back-lake area.

**Front-Hill Area:** this area is the most magnificent area in the Summer Palace with the most constructions. Its layout is quite distinctive because of the central axis from the yard of Kunming Lake to the hilltop, on which important buildings are positioned including Gate of Dispelling Clouds, Hall of Dispelling Clouds, Hall of Moral Glory, Tower of Buddhist Incense, the Hall of the Sea of Wisdom, etc.



**Rear-Hill and Back-Lake Area:** although the constructions are fewer here, it has a unique landscape, with dense green trees, and winding paths. Visitors can feel a rare tranquility, and elegance. This area includes scenic spots such as Garden of Harmonious Interest and Suzhou Market Street.

**Court Area:** this is where Empress Dowager Cixi and Emperor Guangxu met officials, conducted state affairs and rested. Entering the East Palace Gate, visitors may see the main palace buildings: the Hall of Benevolence and Longevity served as the office of the Emperor, the Hall of Jade Ripples where Guangxu lived, the Hall of Joyful Longevity, Cixi's residence, the Hall of Virtue and Harmony where Cixi was

entertained.

**Front Lake Area:** covering a larger part of the Summer Palace, opens up the vista of the lake. A breeze fluttering, waves gleam and willows kiss the ripples of the vast water. In this comfortable area there are the Eastern and Western Banks, the Seventeen-Arch Bridge, Nanhu Island, and so on. On the western bank float six distinct bridges amongst which the Jade-Belt Bridge is the most beautiful.

### *East Palace Gate (Donggongmen)*

The East Palace Gate is the major entrance to the Summer Palace with two side doors for royal family members and court officials, and three grand doors in the middle exclusively for the Emperor, Empress and queen mothers. On the gate hangs a plaque where Emperor Guangxu of the Qing Dynasty (1644-1911) calligraphed "Yiheyuan" (Summer Palace) meaning "to maintain energy and mellow the soul." The road for the emperors leading to the entrance is chiseled with two relief dragons playing with a ball, symbolizing royal dignity.





About 200 meters (218.7 yards) from the superb East Palace Gate is a lion-guarded inscribed archway. One inscription, "Hanxu," indicates "picturesque scenery," the other "Yanxiu," means "capturing beauty." This tells visitors about the enchanting scenery inside the garden.

## *Hall of Benevolent Longevity (Renshoudian)*

Entering the [East Palace Gate](#) means walking into the administrative area of the Emperors. The Hall of Benevolence and Longevity is the first architectural complex that visitors see. It was built in 1750, burned down in 1860 by the Anglo-French allied forces, and was reconstructed in 1888.

Actually, the Emperors' administrative hall was originally called "Qinzheng Hall" to inspire rulers to manage state affairs diligently. However, during Emperor Guangxu's time (1875 - 1908), the hall's name was changed to "Renshoudian" (Hall of Benevolence and Longevity), from the famous Confucian saying - "the ruler who reigns benevolently will have a long life".



Today, the furnishings in the hall remain as they were in the past. In the midst of the hall is a platform with a throne furnished with nine dragons, along with delicate peacock-feather fans, a monster-shaped censer, and a red sandalwood screen. The screen is more elaborate than other screens. Framed with sandalwood carved with nine dragons on the top, the middle part is a glass mirror engraved with 226 characters of "shou" symbolizing longevity in



different ways. The Empress Dowager Cixi managed the affairs of court unseen, from behind the screen. Two side chambers of the hall served as the resting place of Emperor Guangxu, Empress Dowager Cixi, and other officials. Among the fine exhibits inside is a silk craftwork of one hundred bats with the Empress Dowager Cixi's calligraph "shou (longevity)". In Chinese speech, the words "happiness" and "bat" have similar tones. Therefore this craftwork was also named "one hundred bats holding longevity".

In the courtyard there is an exquisitely sculpted bronze beast called a Kylin, with dragon head, lion tail, deer horn, and cattle hoof. In legend, the Kylin guards against destruction by fire. It is one of the relics of Yuanmingyuan (the Perfection and Brightness Garden). Five Lake Tai stones entitled "Fengxuwulao" also stand in the courtyard signifying longevity. In front of the hall are two pairs of bronze statues of dragons and phoenixes used as incense burners to perfume the air on formal occasions. Because the Empress Dowager Cixi, rather than the Emperor, managed the affairs of the state, the phoenix statues, which represent the queen, lie in the middle of the courtyard. The dragon

statues, representing the Emperor, lie to the side, contrary to tradition. To the north of the hall is a well called "Yannianjing" (Well of Extending Life). It is said that the Empress Dowager Cixi once had a heat stroke and was revived when she drank the clear, sweet water from the well. Hence the well received its present day name.

## *Hall of Dispelling Clouds (Paiyundian)*

The name of the hall derives from a verse by the poet Guo Pu (276-324) in the Jin Dynasty 'in such a splendid hall, supernatural beings will emerge.' It is situated on the central axis of Longevity Hill and is the heart of a succession of buildings used for celebrations. Built on the site of Daxiong Hall (Hall of Sakyamuni or Main Shrine Hall), it was the place to celebrate Empress Dowager Cixi's birthday. On her birthday, October 10 of the Chinese lunar year, with Emperor Guangxu leading the troops, all ranks kowtowed to her as she sat on the "Nine-Dragon Throne" to receive greetings and rare gifts.

With red pillars and yellow tiles, the Paiyundian contains 21 rooms. In front of the hall are white marble balusters supporting a flat roof on which bronze dragons, phoenixes, and vessels stand.

Although the treasures on display inside are fewer than those in the [Hall of Benevolence and Longevity](#), some of them are more valuable. The middle rosewood throne with a dragon-in-clouds design, gorgeous sculpture, and fluid lines, is regarded as superlative work of art. On the sides of the throne stand two agalwood serving women, each holding articles shaped in the Chinese character "shou (longevity)." There are also a fine screen, mandarin fans, and a large canvas of Cixi by a Dutch painter.



To the south of the Hall of Dispelling Clouds is the Gate of Dispelling Clouds positioned in the middle of the Long Gallery to divide the gallery's eastern and western sides. On each side of the gate lie bronze lions symbolizing protection, and twelve stone statues of the Chinese zodiac animals - rat, ox, tiger, rabbit, dragon, snake, horse, sheep, monkey, rooster, dog and pig.

Although this is the most magnificent architectural complex of the Summer Palace, Cixi used the hall only once a year on her birthday.

## *Tower of Buddhist Incense (Foxiangge)*

As the symbolic structure, the Tower of Buddhist Incense tops the high grand towers of both the Summer Palace and the "three mountains and five gardens" (Longevity Hill, Jade Spring Mountain, and Fragrant

Hill; Garden of Clear Ripples, Garden of Everlasting Spring, Garden of Perfection and Brightness, Garden of Tranquility and Brightness, and Garden of Tranquility and Pleasure). Set up on the 21-meter-high (68.9-foot-high) base steps of the front slope of Longevity Hill and towering to a height of 41 meters (134.5 feet), it can be seen from throughout the area. Facing Kunming Lake southward, backing on the Hall of the Sea of Wisdom, it was flanked by symmetrical buildings. With eight porticos, three levels and four layered eaves, the front part imitates the Yellow Crane Tower in Hubei Province. It is the elite tower among treasured ancient structures.

A nine-level pagoda at the tower's location was planned which Emperor Qianlong (1711-1799) ordered to be dismantled during the construction of the eighth level. After the unfinished pagoda, there stood the Tower of Buddhist Incense instead in 1758. Unfortunately, it was ruined by Anglo-French forces in 1860; then rebuilt during 1891-1894, at a cost of 780,000 taels of silver. Inside is a gilded statue of the thousand-handed Kwan-yin. Set off by eight pillars, it glows with sacred beauty. On the first day and fifteenth day of the lunar month, the Empress Dowager Cixi would go there to pray and burn joss sticks. In 1989, the Tower of Buddhist Incense was opened to the public. It is now undergoing reconstruction, the largest such project in modern China, costing 50,000,000 yuan with a planned completion date in 2006.



Standing on the third story, visitors can see forests as well as Kunming Lake reflecting the picturesque landscapes.

## *Hall of the Sea of Wisdom (Zhihuihai)*

Built on the pinnacle of Longevity Hill, The Hall of the Sea of Wisdom is designed to stand at the upper end of an axis stretching from the Kunming Lake to the summit. When initially built during the reign of Emperor Qianlong (1711-1799), it was a two-storied building made entirely of colored glaze bricks, without any timber beams, and was also known as "No Beam Hall". Owing to its timber-free frame, it survived the fire set by the Anglo-French allied force in 1860. However, the holy statue of Amitayus Buddha, as well as 1008 smaller engraved Buddhas surrounding it, was destroyed.

It is a holy building, with its name, "the Sea of Wisdom", which comes from the sutra, symbolizing the mighty force and the infinite wisdom of Tathagada Buddha. A visitor who connects the three characters on the architraves of





the hall and the glazed memorial archway will find that they form the Buddhist's chant.

## *Garden of Harmonious Interests*

Situated beside Kunming Lake, at the bottom of the Eastern side of Longevity Hill, the Garden of Harmonious Interests, with its exquisite design and distinctive layout, is known as the "garden in the gardens". Amongst the gardens of Northern China, its style is the most representative of the classical gardens of Southern China.



When Emperor Qianlong (1711-1799) conducted an inspection of South China in 1751, he developed a great affection for the Jichuangyuan Gardens in Wuxi City, Jiangsu Province, and ordered that a similar garden be built in the Summer Palace and named Huishan Garden. This was the precursor to the Garden of Harmonious Interests. In 1811, it was repaired and given its present name. The garden was rebuilt again in 1893 after its destruction in 1860.

Upon entering the palace gate of Garden of Harmonious Interests, visitors would be greeted by a wonderful panorama. Surrounded by slopes on three sides, with a lotus pond at its centre, the garden was comprised of seven pavilions, five halls, numerous corridors and small bridges, all arranged with profusion and elegance. The scene was mirrored in the pond, which was the focus of the garden's natural surroundings, and released a delicate fragrance of lotus. The garden used to be the fishing site of Empress Dowager Cixi. It is said that every time Cixi went to fish, eunuchs secretly dived into the water and hung live fish on her hook, to keep her in good spirits.



The garden is remarkable for its eight settings, each with its particular theme. The eight settings are Zaishi Hall, the Momiao Room, Jiuyun Tower, Danbi House, Shuile Pavilion, Zhiyu Bridge, Xunshi Path, and Hanguang Hole. The essence of each of the eight themed settings (or interests) is as follows:

### *Interest of Seasons*

The changing beauty of the garden makes it an attraction for visitors throughout the four seasons of the year. In spring, the willows wave in the breeze, switching on their great charm; in summer, abundant lotuses release a delicious fragrance; in fall, the weeping willows turn the garden into a romantic heaven; in winter, the snows waft down to the trees and pavilions, painting an exquisite landscape.



### *Interest of Water*

Using the falls from the Back Lake, gardeners built the Yuqin Gorge, through which water trickles across the rocks and makes wonderful sounds, like a musical instrument being played. This is also known as the "interest of sound".

### *Interest of Bridge*

Several small bridges span the water, each with their own distinct style. The most notable among them is the Know-the-Fish Bridge, the name of which is derived from an argument about fish between two philosophers of different schools:



Zhuang Zi, one of the philosophers, said: "Look! How happy these fish are!" Hui Zi, the other one, replied: "You are not the fish. How can you know they are happy?" Zhuang Zi replied: "You are not me, how can you know that I know?"

### *Interest of Calligraphy*

There are many examples of calligraphy in the Garden of Harmonious Interests, such as the Xushi Path stele and stone inscription in the Moyun Room.

### *Interest of Pavilion*

In the west corner of the garden stands a pavilion. Viewed from the outside, it gives a visitor the impression that it is a single story high; from the inside, it appears to have two levels. This unusual setting creates an appealing effect of height, and is known as the Interest of Pavilion.



### *Interest of Painting*

Hundreds of paintings in various styles line the corridors in a collection to rival the [Long Gallery](#). These works, created on the themes of allusions, sceneries, and historical figures, are treasures of art.

### *Interest of Corridor*

Compared to the Long Gallery, the Interest of Corridor is a fascinating collection of twists and turns. Connecting the intricate rooms, it provides visitors a unique chance to view the landscaping of the garden from every angle.

### *Interest of Imitation*

Although the Garden of Harmonious Interests should be a royal garden, it was built in the style of a private one, Jichangyuan Garden. Owing to the skill of the landscapers, any visitor to the garden would feel as if they were in Southern China. Therefore, amongst the glorious and resplendent constructions of the Palace, this garden retains its sense of tranquility and refinement.

## *Suzhou Market Street (Suzhoujie)*

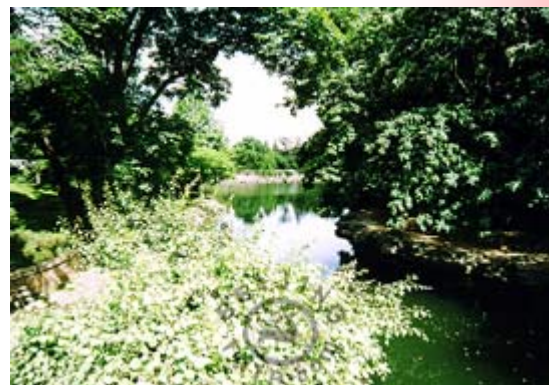
Over 60 stores extend from North Palace Gate entrance into a street about 300 meters (328.1 yards) in length. Along the Back Lake, the street design imitates the ancient style of shops on the banks of rivers in Suzhou City, Zhejiang Province, that is, taking the running water of Back Lake as the street and its banks as a market. The area served as an entertainment place where Emperors and concubines could feel as if they were strolling on a commercial street. When the royals went there, eunuchs and maids of honor would playact as peddlers, customers and shop assistants to mimic market activities.



Built during the reign of Qianlong (1711-1799), it was burned down by Anglo-French allied force in 1860. Until 1986, it was rebuilt and in 1990 it was opened to the public. Today's market includes stores such as dyers, souvenir shops, drugstores, banks, shoe stores, teashops, and hockshops, with clerks dressed in Qing Dynasty (1644-1911) costumes.

## *Back Lake (Houhu)*

Wandering behind Longevity Hill, the water of Kunming Lake forms Back Lake. Visitors can get there by passing the [Marble Boat](#) toward the north. With fewer buildings north of the Summer Palace, the landscape surrounding Back Lake is secluded and elegant. Exuberantly green forests and twisted paths lend unique beauty in contrast to the scenery in front. Longevity Hill stands alongside Kunming Lake with water on three sides. Back Lake functions as a fireproof strolling place with a vista point. At



its banks, there are the Studio of Distant Views (Tiaoyuanzhai), [Garden of Harmonious Interests](#) (Xiequyuan) , and [Suzhou Market Street](#). Since the Studio of Distant Views is high and faces the southern outside street, Empress Dowager Cixi used to stand there to see the common people' s flower market on the eighth day of the fourth month of the Chinese lunar calendar.

## *Seventeen-Arch Bridge (Shiqikong Qiao)*

Connecting the eastern shore of Kunming Lake in the east and [Nanhu Island](#) in the west, the Seventeen-Arch Bridge was built during the reign of Emperor Qianlong (1711-1799); with a length of 150 meters (164 yards) and a width of 8 meters (8.75 yards). It is the longest bridge in the Summer Palace.



The unique scenery is but one of the stunning landscapes in the Summer Palace. With the styles of Lugou Bridge in Beijing and Baodai Bridge in Suzhou, Zhejiang Province, Seventeen Arch Bridge looks like a rainbow arching over the water. On the column of the parapets are 544 distinctive carved white marble lions. On each end of the bridge is a carved bizarre beast. With the biggest arch in the midst of the bridge flanked by eight others, visitors can count nine arches on either side. According to ancient thought, the number nine symbolizes good fortune and safety; and the meticulous design of the bridge embodies it perfectly.

## *Bronze Ox*

A bronze ox set on bluestone wave-lined pedestal overlooks the east shore of Kunming Lake. The ox, cast in the image of a live creature back in 1755, is said to possess flood control powers. Da Yu, the legendary master in floods prevention, would commit an iron ox into the water on completion of every of his projects. It has become customary since Tang Dynasty (618-907) to line the edge of waterways with oxen. Hence this bronze ox was upon the bank, too. This Bronze Ox, sitting besides the water and overlooking the harmonious and enchanting lake scenery, was rather imposing. The Emperor Qianlong (1711-1799) had personally dedicated this particular bronze ox. On the back of the ox is an 80-character-posy in seal character - "Golden Ox Inscription" by him.



## *Marble Boat*



Also known as "Qingyanfang" (Boat of Clearness and Comfort), the Marble Boat is positioned at the west bank at the foot of Longevity Hill.

The Marble Boat was built in 1755 in Chinese style, imitating the sailing boats which Qianlong (1711-1799) took during his inspection to Southern China. As an old saying goes, "water can carry the boat as well as overturn it," meaning that water symbolizing the common people can uphold the royal boat, or it can swamp the boat. Emperor Qianlong had the huge Marble Boat fastened in the water to indicate the steadfast rule of the Qing Dynasty (1644-1911).



In 1860, it was burned down, and then rebuilt in Western style in 1893 through Empress Dowager Cixi's embezzling naval funds. Inlaid with colorful glass windows and wheels and paved with colored bricks, the boat is 36 meters (118.1 feet) long, two stories high. Using the huge mirrors fixed on each deck, on rainy days Cixi could enjoy the dainty lake scene while having tea. Four dragon heads mounted in each direction serve as drains, allowing rain water to be channeled picturesquely out of their mouths.

## *Nanhu Island (Nanhu Dao)*

Nanhu Island lies southeast of Kunming Lake opposite Longevity Hill. With an area of about 1 hectare (2.47 acres), it is the largest island in the Summer Palace. When Emperor Qianlong (1711-1799) enlarged Kunming Lake, he ordered workers to save the temples and buildings but to excavate the earth; thus creating Nanhu Island.

On the island are Hanxu (Modesty) Hall, Wangyan (Looking-at-the-Eaves) Pavilion, Dragon King Temple, and other structures. Hanxu Hall is the major construction on the island; Wangyan Pavilion was the site from which to inspect navy drills; and the Dragon King Temple, which changed its name to "Guangrun Lingyu Temple" (Widely-Moistening Fancy-Rain Temple), was employed to pray for rain.



The island is banked with carved stone-strips and surrounded by blue and white stones. Visitors can reach the island through the [Seventeen-Arch Bridge](#).

## *Long Gallery (Changlang)*



Beginning from the Yaoyue (Inviting-Moon) Gate and ending with Shizhang Pavilion, the Long Gallery ingeniously links Longevity Hill with Kunming Lake. Seven hundred twenty-eight meters (796.2 yards) in length, it is the longest gallery in Chinese gardens. In 1990 it was rated as the top long gallery of the world.



Two hundred seventy-three rooms with various paintings attract visitors into a fantastic land. Among them, they are studded with four octagonal pavilions on the joint between a higher place and a lower one, each symbolizing a season. Long Gallery was constructed along the natural terrain of Longevity Hill and the turns of Kunming Lake, offering a picturesque view with each step. In 1755 when Emperor Qianlong (1711-1799) built the gallery, he ordered artists to go to Hangzhou in Zhejiang Province to sketch the scenery there. Upon their return they painted 546 paintings of West Lake landscapes in the Long Gallery. The themes taken from historical figures, landscapes, flowers and birds can be seen as a miniature representation of the breadth of Chinese art. Appreciating the intricate paintings while listening to the profound stories, myths and legends, for example, Pilgrimage to the West, visitors can learn a lot about the five-thousand-year-old Chinese culture.

Worthy of mention is the fact that the main part of each picture followed the semicircular line of a girder; there was no set framework for the painting; images were created from artists' inspirations. Most of the paintings are typical "Sushi Colored Paintings" (a kind of Chinese classical painting, decoration art on a wooden building).

## *Longevity Hill*

Without mountains and water, a landscape is not perfect in the eyes of the Chinese. So the Summer Palace has not only a lake but a hill. About half way down the Long Gallery, you will see an archway and a series of splendid halls and towers along an axis leading uphill. You can start to climb Longevity Hill from here. The structures you come across are Cloud Dispelling Gate (Paiyunmen) and then Second Palace Gate (Ergongmen) and Cloud dispelling Hall (Paiyundian). Paiyundian is the most



important hall there since it was used by the Empress Dowager for her birthday celebrations. Now the objects on display in the hall are gifts from high officials on her 70th birthday in 1905, and a large oil-painting of Cixi was presented to her by the American painter Hubert Vos on her 71st birthday.

Further to the north is Hall of Moral Brilliance (Dehuidian), and behind it on a huge stone plinth is Tower of Buddhist Incense (Foxiangge).

Nearly on top of the hill is a glazed-tile tower which is known as Sea of Wisdom (Zhihuihai). There are countless little statues of Buddha in the niches of its greenish-yellow ceramic facade.

There are other halls and towers on the hill, such as Repository of Sutras (Zhuanlunzang) to the east, Pentagonal Pavilion (Wufangge) and Precious Cloud Pavilion (Baoyunge) which is made entirely of bronze. Further to the west is Hall for Listening to the Orioles (Tingliguan), a former theatre now converted into a restaurant.

### *Hall of Jade Ripples (Yulantang)*

This hall in "sanheyuan" style (main hall in the middle, secondary structures on two sides), first built in the 15th year of the Reign of Emperor Qianlong (1711-1799) for his dealing with state affairs, was burned in 1860 and rebuilt in 1892. It is notable for its seclusion and harmonious arrangement. After the failure of the Reform Movement in 1898, Emperor Guangxu, who advocated the reform, was under house arrest here. The name came from a verse of Lu Ji in Jin Dynasty (265-316) "Jade spring with rippling water."



The Reform Movement in 1898, also known as the "Hundred Days Reform," lasting 103 days, aimed at reforming the outdated feudal system and creating a new edict. Because of sharp disagreements between Guangxu's and Empress Dowager Cixi's parties, the movement failed. Emperor Guangxu was house arrested in the Hall of Jade Ripples, his six associate reformists beheaded. Once Cixi had

controlled the Emperor's action and assigned eunuchs as his servants, the Hall of Jade Ripples once again became a hall for scheduled events.

The chamber in the east of the hall was Emperor Guangxu's day room, the opposite one, his bedchamber. The desk for Guangxu was rosewood framed and agalwood centered, with exquisite carving. The surrounding screen was composed of two layers of glass painted with both traditional Chinese and Western landscapes.

### *Garden of Virtue and Harmony (Deheyuan)*

Walking northward from the [Hall of Benevolence and Longevity](#), visitors



will see Deheyuan (Garden of Virtue and Harmony), where Emperor Guangxu and Empress Dowager Cixi watched the performances of the Peking opera. Borrowing from the meaning in the Zuo Commentary, the name "Dehe" suggests "listen to a fine melody and the mind will be calm". This garden consists of the Grand Theater Building, the Hall of Nurtured Joy, and the Dressing House.

21 meters in height (68.9 feet), the Grand Theater Building was the biggest of the three main theaters in operation during the Qing Dynasty, the other two being the Qingyin Pavilion in the Mountain Resort of Chengde, and the Changyin Pavilion in the [Forbidden City](#). It was built in honor of the Empress Dowager Cixi's sixtieth birthday. Its three stories, from top to bottom, are the Fu Stage (Happiness Stage), the Lu Stage (Affluence Stage), and the Shou Stage (Longevity Stage). The floors of each stage are trapdoors and under the Shou Stage are a deep well and five ponds. The well and ponds were used to amplify the sound effects through acoustic resonance and to make water appear to spout from a dragon's mouth. Special effects could be performed from underneath the three stages. It made scenes involving immortals and apparitions more vivid and realistic as they emerged or flew onto the stage by means of a winch installed on the ceiling of the theatre.

Directly facing the Grand Theater Building, the Hall of Nurtured Joy was for the exclusive use of the Empress Dowager Cixi when she watched the opera. Her luxurious seat, carved with a hundred larks flying toward a phoenix, plus a collection of caged songbirds from faraway lands, and a florid jade-inlaid screen with flower and bird motifs are on display. Five additional rooms, located behind the hall, were for the Empress to rest.

The Dressing House was a place for the actors to put on their costumes and make up. Today, Cixi's vintage Benz and the costumes from those days are exhibited there.

### *Hall of Joyful Longevity (Leshou Tang)*

Emperor Qianlong (1711-1799) first built on this site, northeast of the Summer Palace near Kunming Lake, a residence for his mother. It was burnt down by the Anglo-French invaders in 1860. The present structure, the Hall of Joyous Longevity, which was the major construction of the residential area, was constructed in 1887 for the pleasure of Empress Dowager Cixi in summers. She had 48 attendants in the hall, and a retinue of over a thousand in the Summer Palace. The name "Leshou" came from the Analects of Confucius (551-479 B.C.): "persons with wisdom are joyous, with benevolence longevous", indicating that its occupants were wise and merciful.



You come across the well-decorated throne room in the main hall. Early foreign imports had their places side by side with native arts and crafts. In the main hall

there set the throne, fans, desk, and glass screen. On both sides of the throne were two porcelain plates for holding fruits and setting off sweet smell, which was the representative of blue and white porcelains in Qing Dynasty (1644-1911). Four big copper incense burners engraved nine peaches served for burning sandalwoods and functioned to adjust the air in the room with fragrance. The screen, centered on the glass, was made of rosewood inlaid shell carving. On the ceiling of the hall hung a colorful pendant lamp imported from Germany in 1903, which was one of the earliest lamp used in China. While having dim sum and tea, Cixi could also appreciate the table called "fish table", beset glass face and framed with rosewood. Within the table, there were stencil-carved small pavilions and sceneries. The inner chamber in the east was the bedroom of Cixi, the western one the dressing room, and the back one the place where maid servants waited for order.

The front gate opens to the Kunming Lake, where boats were docked awaiting orders from the Empress.

The courtyard garden impresses visitors with objects and plants usually presented by modern theme parks. Inside the courtyard, there placed copper deer, crane, and vase as a group of articles; and planted yulan magnolia, haitang (Chinese flowering crabapple), and peonies. Both of them possess connotations in Chinese speech: the former symbolizing peace and the latter prosperity. A megalith looking like lingzhi, a kind of herb believed to have fancy power of cure, was called "Qingzhixiu" (Green lingzhi Peak), imparted the message of auspice.

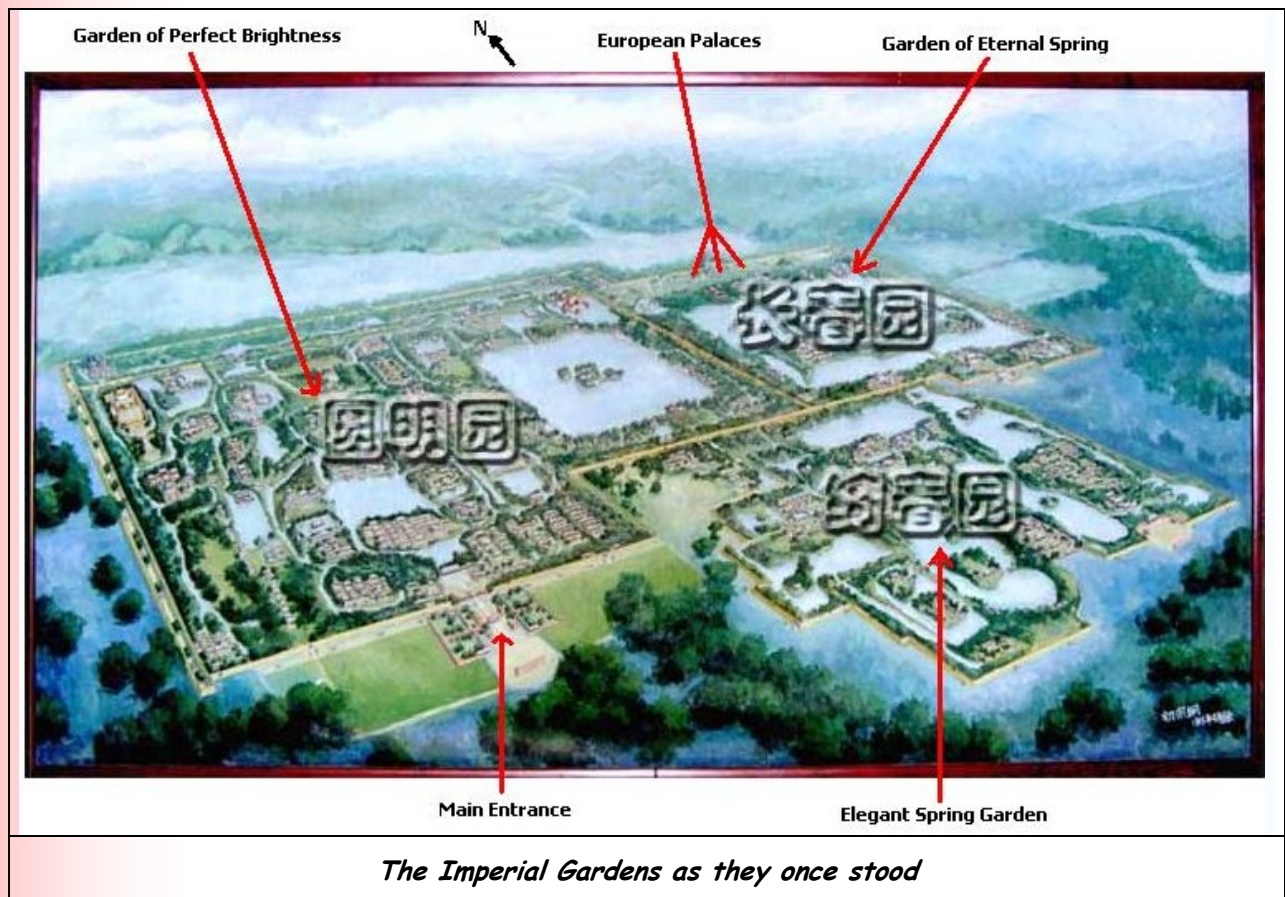


## Old Summer Palace

[http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Old\\_Summer\\_Palace](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Old_Summer_Palace)

# Old Summer Palace (1)

From Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia



## Contents

- [1 History](#)
- [2 Overview of the site](#)
- [3 Destruction](#)
- [4 Aftermath](#)
- [5 Future](#)
- [6 Location](#)
- [7 Modern photographs and historic depictions](#)
- [8 See also](#)
- [9 External links](#)

The Old Summer Palace, also known in China as the **Gardens of Perfect Brightness** ([Traditional Chinese](#): 圓明園; [Simplified Chinese](#): 圆明园; [pinyin](#): Yuánmíng Yuán, referred to in many books as Yuan Ming Yuan), and originally called the **Imperial Gardens** ([Simplified Chinese](#): 御园; [Traditional Chinese](#): 御園; [pinyin](#): Yù Yuán), was a complex of palaces and gardens 8 km (5 miles) northwest of the walls of [Beijing](#), built in the 18th and early 19th century, where the emperors of the [Qing Dynasty](#) resided and handled government affairs (the [Forbidden City](#)

inside Beijing was used only for formal ceremonies). Known for its extensive collection of garden and building architectures and other works of art (a popular name in China was the "Garden of Gardens", [Simplified Chinese](#): 万园之园; [Traditional Chinese](#): 萬園之園; [pinyin](#): wàn yuán zhī yuán), the Imperial Gardens were entirely destroyed by troops from [Britain](#) and [France](#) in [1860](#). Today, the destruction of the Gardens of Perfect Brightness is still regarded as a symbol of foreign aggression and humiliation in China.

## History



*A pavilion in the ruins of the Old Summer Palace*

Initial construction began in [1707](#), during the reign of [Emperor Kangxi](#) and was on a much smaller scale. It was intended as a gift for the emperor's fourth son, later Emperor Yongzheng. In [1725](#), under [Emperor Yongzheng](#), the Imperial Gardens have been greatly expanded. Yongzheng introduced the waterworks of the gardens which created some of the lakes, streams and ponds which greatly complemented the rolling hills and grounds. Yongzheng also named 28 scenic spots within the garden.

By [Emperor Qianlong](#)'s reign, the second expansion was well underway. Qianlong personally took interest and directed the expansion works. Qianlong also increased the scenic spots of the gardens to 40. By the middle of the 19th century, the Imperial Gardens have undergone expansion in one form or another for over 150 years.

## Overview of the site



*Part of the Old Summer Palace. Feb/2005*

The Imperial Gardens were made up of three gardens: the Garden of Perfect Brightness proper, the Garden of Eternal Spring ([Simplified Chinese](#): 长春园; [Traditional Chinese](#): 長春園; [pinyin](#): Chángchū n Yuán), and the Elegant Spring Garden ([Simplified Chinese](#): 綺春園; [Traditional Chinese](#): 綺春園; [pinyin](#): Qǐ chū n Yuán); together they covered an area of 3.5 km<sup>2</sup> (865 acres). They were almost 5 times the size of the Forbidden City, and 8 times the size of the [Vatican City](#). They had hundreds of halls, pavilions, temples, galleries, gardens, lakes, etc.

Several famous landscapes of southern China had been reproduced in the Imperial Gardens, hundreds of invaluable Chinese art masterpieces and antiquities were stored in the halls, making the Imperial



***Ruins of the European palaces***

Gardens one of the largest museums in the world. Some unique copies of literary work and compilations were also stored inside the Imperial Gardens.

The Old Summer Palace is often associated with the [European-style palaces](#) (Xi Yang Lou) built of stone. The designers of these structures, the [Jesuits Giuseppe Castiglione](#) and [Michel Benoist](#), were employed by [Emperor Qianlong](#) to satisfy his taste for exotic buildings and objects. Sometimes, visitors unfamiliar with the former layout of the Old Summer

Palace are misled to believe that it consisted primarily of European-style palaces. In fact, the area of the Imperial Gardens at the back of the Eternal Spring garden where the European-style buildings were located was small compared to the overall area of the gardens. More than 95% of the Imperial Gardens were made up of essentially Chinese-style buildings. There were also a few buildings in Tibetan and Mongol styles, reflecting the diversity of the Qing Empire.

## **Destruction**

In 1860, during the [Second Opium War](#), British and French expeditionary forces, having marched inland from the coast, reached Beijing. Several units reached the Old Summer palace on the night of October 6-7 and began looting it. A short time later, on [October 18, 1860](#), the British general [Lord Elgin](#) - ignoring protests from the French - purposely ordered the huge complex destroyed in retaliation for the imprisonment, torture, and execution of several British diplomatic envoys who had been promised safe conduct by the Qing government. It took 3,500 British troops to set the entire place ablaze and took three days for it to burn. Like the Forbidden City, no ordinary Chinese citizen had ever been allowed into the Summer Palace, it was used exclusively by the Imperial family. (See *Personal narrative of occurrences during Lord Elgin's second embassy to China, 1860* by Henry Loch, 1869). The burning of the Gardens of Perfect Brightness is still a very sensitive issue in China today.

## **Aftermath**

Following this cultural catastrophe, the imperial court was forced to relocate to the old and austere Forbidden City where it stayed until [1924](#), when the [Last Emperor](#) was expelled by a republican army. Empress dowager [Cixi](#) built the [Summer Palace](#) (頤和園 - "The Garden of Nurtured Harmony") near the Old Summer Palace, but on a much smaller scale than the Old Summer Palace.



Only the European-style palaces survived the fire since - unlike the Chinese-style structures - they were made of stone . A few ruined stones of these European buildings still stand on the site today. This is maybe why unknowing visitors sometimes wrongly assume that the Old Summer Palace was made up only of European-style buildings.



*The Old Summer Palace in traditional Chinese painting*

A few Chinese-style buildings in the outlying Elegant Spring Garden also survived the fire. The Chinese imperial court restored these buildings and tried to rebuild the whole complex of the Imperial Gardens, but it was impossible to muster the money and resources for such an immense task due to the difficult situation of China at the time. In [1900](#), whatever buildings had survived or had been restored were burnt for good by the Western expeditionary forces sent to quell the [Boxer Rebellion](#).

Most of the site was left abandoned and used by local farmers as agricultural land. Only in the 1980s was the site reclaimed by the Chinese government and turned into an historical site. The burning of the old



summer palace is regarded as the most destructive action ever in history. The estimated loss from the fire is estimated to be 1.5 trillion US dollars. [citation needed]

## Future

There are currently some projects in China to rebuild the Imperial Gardens, but such moves are opposed on the grounds that they will destroy an important relic of modern Chinese history. Some members of the Chinese government consider that the ruined site as it is will teach future Chinese generations about the price of being dominated and humiliated by foreign powers. In addition, any rebuilding would be a colossal undertaking, and no rebuilding of above-the-ground structures has been approved. However, the lakes and waterways in the eastern half of the gardens have been dug up again and refilled with water, while hills around the lakes have been cleared of brushwood, recreating long forgotten vistas.

In February [2005](#), work was undertaken to reduce water loss from the lakes and canals in the Yuanmingyuan by covering a total of 1.33 square kilometres of their beds with a membrane to reduce seepage. The park administration has argued that prevention of water loss saves the park money, since water would have to be added to the lakes only once per year instead of three times. However, opponents of the project such as Professor Zhengchun Zhang of [Lanzhou University](#) fear that the measure will destroy the ecology of the park, which depends on the water seepage from the lakes and the connection between the lakes and the underground water system. It is also feared that reduced seepage from the lakes will disturb Beijing's underground water system which is already suffering from depletion. There are also concerns about the gardens, which are a designated heritage site of the city of Beijing, changing their natural appearance. This issue, when brought into the sight of the general public several weeks later, immediately caused an uproar from the press and became one of the hottest debates on the Chinese Internet due to the still-painful memory of foreign humiliation epitomized in the destruction of this once "Garden of Gardens (萬園之園)". The Beijing Environmental Protection Bureau (BEPB) is now (April [2005](#)) conducting an assessment of the environmental impact of the measure. A partial copy of the palace was built recently in the southern city of [Zhuhai](#), in [Guangdong](#) province, as an amusement park.

## Location

The Old Summer Palace is located just outside the west gate of [Tsinghua University](#), north of [Peking University](#), and east of the [Summer Palace](#). The postal address is: *28 Qinghua West Road, Beijing, 100084.*

## Modern photographs and historic depictions



*A corner in the Old Summer Palace*



*Lake in the Yuan Ming Yuan without water*



*Historic drawing*



*Historic drawing*



*Huang Hua Zhen in the Western Mansions area*



*Ruins of the Fang Wai Guan*



*A stoneboat in the Yuan Ming Yuan*



*Fuhai Lake*

## See also

- [Xiyanglou](#)

## External links

- (Chinese) [Official site](#)
- [YuanMingYuan photo gallery](#) 35 high quality photographs
- [China Daily story on coating of the lake beds](#)
- Erik Ringmar, [Fury of the Europeans: Liberal Barbarism and the Destruction of the Emperor's Summer Palace](#)

## Old Summer Palace (2)

*(Ruins of Yuanmingyuan)*

The Old Summer Palace which is also known as the Ruins of the Yuanmingyuan (the Garden of Perfection and Light) is located northwest of Beijing and to the east of the (present-day) [Summer Palace](#). The Garden was first constructed in the year of 1709 during the reign of the Emperor Kangxi of the Qing Dynasty (1644-1911). Over the next 150 years of the Qing Dynasty, this Garden was expanded to be a large-scale Chinese emperors' private pleasure garden, covering a total area of 350 hectares (over 864 acres).



Generally speaking, the Old Summer Palace consists of three parts - Yuanmingyuan, Wanchunyuan (the Garden of Blossoming Spring) and Changchunyuan (the Garden of Eternal Spring). These three gardens are often referred to as one common name: Yuanmingyuan. Hundreds of scenic spots in the Garden are made up of exquisitely constructed halls, pavilions, chambers, kiosks, earth and rock hills, rivers and ponds, and exotic flowers and grasses from different parts of the country. Indeed, it embodies the essence of Chinese ancient landscape gardening.

To be distinct from other traditional Chinese Gardens, the garden construction and horticulture of Yuanmingyuan is a harmonious blend of typical Chinese scenery and western architecture. The more famous scenic spots include, for example, the Grand Waterworks, the Throne for viewing the Waterworks and the Labyrinth. No wonder Yuanmingyuan was also called the 'garden of gardens' or the 'Versailles of the East' in Europe during that era. Furthermore, Yuanmingyuan was also an imperial museum that collected a large number of books, treasures and cultural artifacts. However, a large number of these collections were plundered by the Anglo-French Allied Forces in 1860, at the same time as the Garden was burnt down. Now, most of these historical curiosities are displayed in the other countries' museums, including the British Museum; Bibliotheque Nationale de France; Metropolitan Museum of Art, New York City, USA; Oslo Museum of Applied Art and so on.

The vast majority of the remaining scenic spots were destroyed in the 1980's, but under the due protection of the ruins of Yuanmingyuan, a park has been established on the ruin site. So visitors can imagine the former grandeur of the Old Summer Palace from the crumbling walls and ruins. What's more, there is also an opportunity for visitors to view the complete picture of Yuanmingyuan in its 'heyday' in the exhibition hall. The reconstruction of some of the original structures and scenic spots provides people with a lovely place to relax.

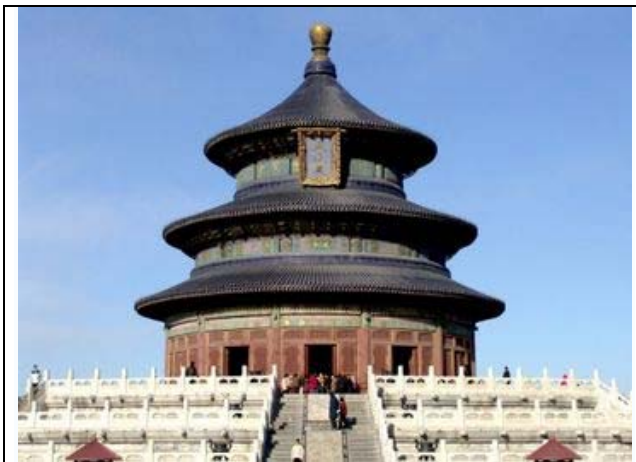
## Temple of Heaven

[http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tian\\_Tan](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tian_Tan)

# Temple of Heaven

From Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia

[Coordinates: 39°52′ 54.87″ N, 116°24′ 24.43″ E](#)



*Hall of Prayer for Good Harvests, the largest building in the Temple of Heaven*

The **Temple of Heaven**, literally the **Altar of Heaven** ([Traditional Chinese](#): 天壇; [Simplified Chinese](#): 天坛; [pinyin](#): Tiān tán; [Manchu](#): *Abkai mukdehun*) is a complex of [Taoist](#) buildings situated in southeastern urban [Beijing](#), in [Xuanwu District](#). Construction of the complex began in [1420](#), and was thereafter visited by all subsequent [Emperors](#) of the [Ming](#) and [Qing](#) dynasties. It is regarded as a Taoist temple, although the worship of Heaven, especially by the reigning monarch of the day, pre-dates [Taoism](#).

The Temple grounds covers 2.73 km<sup>2</sup> of parkland, and comprises three main groups of constructions, all built according to strict [philosophical](#) requirements:

- The *Earthly Mount* (圓丘壇) is the altar proper. It is an empty platform on three levels of marble stones, where the Emperor prayed for favourable weather;
- The *House of Heavenly Lord* (皇穹宇), a single-gabled circular building, built on a single level of marble stone base, where the altars were housed when not in use;
- The *Hall of Prayer for Good Harvests* (祈年殿), a magnificent triple-gabled circular building, built on three levels of marble stone base, where the Emperor prayed for good harvests.

In ancient [China](#), the [Emperor of China](#) was regarded as the "[Son of Heaven](#)", who administered earthly matters on behalf of, and representing, heavenly authority. To be seen to be showing respect to the source of his authority, in the form of [sacrifices](#) to heaven, was extremely important. The temple was built for these ceremonies, mostly comprised of prayers for good harvests.

Each [winter solstice](#) the Emperor and all his retinue would move through the city to encamp within the complex, wearing special [robes](#) and abstaining from eating [meat](#); there the Emperor would personally



pray to [Heaven](#) for good harvests. The [ceremony](#) had to be perfectly completed; it was widely held that the smallest of mistakes would constitute a bad [omen](#) for the whole nation in the coming year.



*Inside the Hall of Annual Prayer.*

## Contents

- **1 Facts and figures**
- **2 More Images**
- **3 See also**
- **4 External links**

The Temple of Heaven is the grandest of the four great temples located in [Beijing](#). The other prominent temples include the [Temple of Sun](#) in

the east (日坛), the [Temple of Earth](#) in the north (地坛), and the [Temple of Moon](#) in the west (月坛).

According to [Xinhua](#), in early [2005](#), the Temple of Heaven underwent a 47 million yuan (5.9 million USD) face-lift in preparation for the [2008](#) Beijing Summer Olympics and the restoration was completed on May 1st, [2006](#).

The Temple of Heaven was registered on the [UNESCO World Heritage List](#) in [1998](#).

## Facts and figures

- The Temple is surrounded by two cordons of walls; the outer wall has a taller, semi-circular northern end, representing [Heaven](#), and a shorter, rectangular southern end, representing the Earth.
- All the buildings within the Temple have special dark blue roof tiles, again representing the Heaven.
- The *Altar of Heaven* was constructed with details representing the number nine, the representative number of the Emperor.
- If you stand at the centre of the platform and clap your hands, you can hear the echo because of the concavity of the surrounding wall.
- The *House of Heavenly Lord* is surrounded by a curved wall, 6 metres tall and 32.5 metres in radius. It is nicknamed the 'Echo Wall' because a person at one end of the wall can hear the voice of a person at the other end of the wall.
- The *Hall of Prayer for Good Harvests* is 32 [metres](#) in diameter and 38 metres tall. It has four inner, twelve middle and twelve outer [pillars](#), representing the four [seasons](#), twelve months and twelve traditional Chinese hours respectively.
- The *Hall of Prayer for Good Harvests* was built without a single nail.
- *Hall of Annual Prayer* is a more literal translation than *Hall of Prayer for Good Harvests*; however, the latter is a more descriptive translations, and is the official one used at the site.
- Some Chinese Christians consider the Temple of Heaven as a tribute to the Christian God, believing that the belief in Heaven to be an unarticulated reverence for the true God.<sup>[citation needed](#)</sup>

## More Images



*The Hall of Prayer for Good Harvests is one of Beijing's most famous architectural landmarks*



*Courtyard inside the Temple of Heaven*



*Imperial Vault of Heaven*



*The Echo Wall pavilion is located directly south of the Hall of Prayer for Good Harvests.*

## See also

- [Wongudan](#) The Korean Temple of Heaven

## External links

- [Temple of Heaven Photo Gallery](#) 100 high quality photographs
- [Satellite photo of the site](#)
- [Chinadaily news](#)
- [Temple Of Heaven](#) Telephone Number; Ticket Price; Bus Routes

## Lamaist Monastery

[http://www.chinaculture.org/gb/en\\_artqa/2003-09/24/content\\_38894.htm](http://www.chinaculture.org/gb/en_artqa/2003-09/24/content_38894.htm)

# *Lamaist Pagoda*

Whether in concept or in model, Lamaist pagodas are quite different from the traditional Buddhist pagodas whose main composition elements are based on Han-styled towers already common in the central plain for nearly 2,000 years. Lamaist pagodas consist roughly of three types, i.e., bottle-type pagoda, diamond pagoda and cross-street pagoda.

The bottle-type pagodas mostly look like bottles, and are said to be modeled on a clean bottle for storing water, but, in fact, originated from India's stupa. The extant earliest Lamaist pagoda of China is the White Pagoda of Miaoying Monastery in the capital of the Yuan Dynasty (1271-1368), housed in the Miaoying Monastery (present-day White Pagoda Monastery in Fuchengmen of Beijing). It is the most outstanding representative of the bottle-type Lamaist pagodas.

Built in the 8th year (1271) in the reign of Yuan Emperor Shizu, this bottle-shaped pagoda was the work of Nepalese artisan Ahnigethe Miaoying. This magnificent monastery is 51 meters high and is divided into three sections. The lower section is a three-storied pedestal, while the planes are all polygonal angle cross. The middle section is the pagoda body -- round, solid, thick and strong. Below the pagoda body there is a very big covered lotus seating, and several layer lines. At first, the pagoda body was carved with such unique Tibetan Buddhist pictures as single pestles, pearls, lotus, and cross pestles, and wrapped in pearl nets and tassels. But, none of these now exist.

On the upper section is seated the polygonal angle cross Sumeru pedestal. Further up is a huge, solid, 13-layer wheel, with each layer becoming evidently smaller than the other, called "13 heavens", which supports the pagoda roof. The pagoda roof is placed on a huge bronze treasure cover 9.9 meters in diameter arranged with a 5-meter high bronze Lamaist Pagoda. Pierced copper plates and copper bells hang down around the treasure cover.

The White Pagoda is all laid up with stones except for the pagoda top which is built with copper. Its exterior is stuck with bricks and plastered with lime. It is as bright and clean as jade, and therefore is called a "Jade pagoda". The copper pagoda roof is of golden color; the contrast between golden and white creates a noble, holy and clean atmosphere. The whole pagoda is even and sturdy, vigorous and broad in momentum and is well-coordinated with the boldness of the capital of the Yuan Dynasty.

The Diamond Pagoda is of a group pagoda combination method, composed of a large pagoda at the center and a small pagoda on each side of the four corners. The various pagodas are either of a bottle



type or of a Han type. According to Tibetan Buddhism, the Diamond Pagoda symbolizes the five Buddhas of vajradhatu (diamond element). It is also the expression of the Mandala concept about the universe. In fact, this form had already emerged during the Northern and Southern dynasties (420-581). Nirvana symbolizing Buddha was already drawn in the murals of the Northern Dynasty

(386-581) in the Dunhuang Grottoes, its shape and structure originating from India's Buddhaghosa Pagoda.

Extant important diamond pagodas include Beijing's Stupa of the Five-Division Vajradhatu (Zhenjue Monastery, built in 1473), Biyun Monastery, Qing Jinghua Chengta of Xi Huang Si, and the Cideng Monastery in Hohhot. In front of the Miaozhan Monastery of Kunming Guandu, there is one such monastery, called Miaoying Lanruo Pagoda.

Existing well-known cross-street pagodas include the Yuntai in northwest Beijing's Juyongguan Pass and the Yuntai Shanta in Zhenjiang of Jiangsu Province, both built during the Yuan Dynasty.



## Great Wall (of China)

[http://www.travelchinaguide.com/china\\_great\\_wall/](http://www.travelchinaguide.com/china_great_wall/)

### Great Wall of China :

The Great Wall of China, one of the greatest wonders of the world, was enlisted in the World Heritage by UNESCO in 1987. Just like a gigantic dragon, the Great Wall winds up and down across deserts, grasslands, mountains and plateaus stretching approximately 6,700 kilometers (4,163 miles ) from east to west of China. With a history of more than 2000 years, some of the section of the great wall are now in ruins or even entirely disappeared. However, it is still one of the most appealing attractions all around the world owing to its architectural grandeur and historical significance.

### History of the wall:

Excitement abounds in the origin, vicissitude and nature of the great wall of the Qin, Han, and Ming dynasties.



The Great Wall was originally built in the Spring, Autumn, and Warring States Periods as a defensive fortification by the three states: Yan, Zhao and Qin. The Great Wall went through constant extensions and repairs in later dynasties. In fact, it began as independent walls for different states when it was first built, and did not become the "Great" wall until the Qin Dynasty. Emperor Qin Shihuang succeeded in his effort to have the walls joined together to fend off the invasions from the Huns in the north after the unification of China. Since then, the Great Wall has served as a monument of the Chinese nation throughout history. A visit to the Great Wall is like a tour through the history backwards; it brings tourists great excitement in each step of the wall. >> [more...](#)

### History of the Great Wall :

No one can tell precisely when the building of the Great Wall was started but it is popularly believed that it originated as a military fortification against intrusion by tribes on the borders during the earlier Zhou Dynasty. Late in the Spring and Autumn Period (770 BC - 476 BC), the ducal states extended the defence work and built "great" structures to prevent the attacks from other states. It was not until the Qin Dynasty that the separate walls, constructed by the states of Qin, Yan and Zhao kingdoms, were connected to form a defensive system on the northern border of the country by Emperor Qin Shi Huang (also called Qin Shi Huangdi by westerners or the First Emperor). After the emperor unified the country in 214 BC, he ordered the construction of the wall. It took about ten years to finish and the wall stretched from Linzhao (in the eastern part of



today's Gansu Province) in the west to Liaodong (in today's Jilin Province) in the east. The wall not only served as a defence in the north but also symbolized the power of the emperor.

From the Qin Dynasty onwards, Xiongnu, an ancient tribe that lived in North China, frequently harassed the northern border of the country. During the Han Dynasty, Emperor Wu (Han Wu Di), sent three expeditions to fight against the Xiongnu in 127 BC, 121 BC and 119 BC. The Xiongnu were driven into the far north of the Gobi. To maintain the safety of the Hexi Corridor (today's Gansu Province), the emperor ordered the extension of the Great Wall westward into the Hexi Corridor and Xinjiang region. The ruins of the beacon towers and debris of the Han Wall are still discernible in Dunhuang, Yumen and Yangguan. A recent report shows that ruins of the Han Wall have been discovered near Lopnur in China's Xinjiang region.

Further construction and extensions were made in the successive Northern Wei, Northern Qi and Sui dynasties.

The present Great Wall in Beijing is mainly remains from the Ming Dynasty (1368 - 1644). During this period, bricks and granite were used when the workers laid the foundation of the wall and sophisticated designs and passes were built in the places of strategic importance. To strengthen the military control of the northern frontiers, the Ming authorities divided the Great Wall into nine zones and placed each under the control of a Zhen (garrison headquarters). The Ming Wall starts from Yalujiang River (in today's Heilongjiang Province), via today's Liaoning, Hebei, Inner Mongolia, Shanxi, Shaanxi, Ningxia provinces, to Gansu. The total length reaches 12,700 li (over 5,000 kilometers). The Shanhaiguan Pass and the Jiayuguan Pass are two well-preserved passes at either end.

Today, the Wall has become a must-see for every visitor to China. Few can help saying 'Wow!' when they stand on top of a beacon tower and look at this giant dragon. For centuries, the wall served succeeding dynasties as an efficient military defence. However, it was only when a dynasty had weakened from within that invaders from the north were able to advance and conquer. Both the Mongols (Yuan Dynasty, 1271-1368) and the Manchurians (Qing Dynasty, 1644-1911) were able to take power because of weakness of the government and poverty of the people but never due to any possibility of weakness of the Wall.

## **Zhou Dynasty :**

### **Wall of Zhou**

The Zhou Dynasty is traditionally divided into two periods: Western Zhou (11th century BC-771BC) and Eastern Zhou (770BC-221BC). And the Eastern Zhou has two periods: the Spring and Autumn Period (770BC-476BC) and the Warring States Period (476BC-221BC).

Spanning 2,700 years of Chinese history, ranging from the Spring and Autumn Period and the Warring States Period to the Ming Dynasty (1368-1644), over twenty states and dynasties were involved in the building of the Great Wall. The creation of the Great Wall was initiated during the Spring and Autumn Period and the Warring States Period to prevent the invasion by other states of China and outer tribes.

## **Walls Built in the Spring and Autumn Period (770 BC - 476 BC)**

### **The Wall of Chu State**

According to historical records, the first part of the Great Wall of China was built by Chu State. Chu State was a small state that gradually developed by conquering weak neighbors during the Spring and Autumn Period. To control China and prevent the intrusion of the Jin and Qi states, Chu State built a series of walls along its northern frontier in about 656BC. These boundary markers would eventually evolve into the Great Wall. Shaped like a "U", the Wall of Chu was referred to as "the Rectangle Wall".

Entering the Warring States Period, Chu State extended its wall to guard against the attack from other states especially the mighty Qin. As such, the wall of Chu became more integrated and solid. At this point, the site now included the Lushan and Yexian Counties of Pingdingshan City, Wugang City, Fangcheng and the Nanzhao Counties of Nanyang City in Henan Province.

### **The Wall of Qi State**

Qi State was another state that participated in the building of the wall. Qi construction of the Wall commenced in the middle of the Spring and Autumn Period and finished in the middle of the Warring States Period. The whole construction lasted 300 years covering a length of 600 kilometers (372 miles). That was later called the Famous Wall of Qi.

Similar to Chu State, Qi State built the fortification to prevent intrusion by other states and outer tribes. It became one of the most influential military defenses in Chinese history. Its ramparts, passes, fortresses and beacon towers formed an integrated military defense system around which important historical events and campaigns were held.

The Wall of Qi stretched across almost the whole of Shandong Province, from the west in Changqing County to the east in Jiaonan County, passing through eight cities to reach the Yellow Sea of China.

With the development of Chinese society, the defense function of the Wall of Qi no longer exists. Only relics are left.

## **Walls Built in the Warring States Period (476BC-221BC)**

Battles during the Spring and Autumn Periods and the Warring States Period occurred very often, particularly during the period of the "Seven Powers of the Warring States Period". Each state was eager to set the boundaries of its territory. To defend the state against invasion, they each built defense walls. With the increasing heat of the battles, the walls were continuously extended. The "Seven Powers" of Qin, Qi, Chu, Han, Yan, Zhao and Wei each built or extended their walls. Except for the Walls of Chu in the Yangtze River valley, all the others were in the Yellow River valley and Northern China areas.

### **The Wall of Qin State**

During the early Warring States Period, Qin State suffered from a weak economy, civil strife and repeated invasions by Wei State. To protect Qin State, the kings, Qin Ligong and Qin Jiangong successively, built the wall to the west of the Yellow River and the Luo River - a site that can now be found in Northern Shaanxi in Shaanxi Province.

An additional section of the wall was built along the northwest frontier of the state by King Qin Zhaogong. To the northwest of Qin State lay the Yiqu, a branch of the ancient Chinese Xirong people. Powerful during the Spring and Autumn Periods, these people held battles with the Qin from time to time. To guard against the intrusion of the Yiqu, King Qin Huiwen built the fortification along the north of his frontier. However, it was not until the period of King Qin Zhaogong that the Yiqu were completely defeated and the wall of Qin was built. These sites now lie in Gansu Province and Ningxia Hui Autonomous Region.

### **The Wall of Zhao State**

According to historical record, the Wall of Zhao State was built in two sections. One section was built to the south of Zhao State in 333BC to prevent attacks from Wei and later the strong Qin. The whole wall was about 200 kilometers (124 miles) long and its site can now be found in Linzhang County and Cixian County of Hebei Province.

The other section was built in 300BC by King Zhao Wuling to prevent attacks from the Hu people. King Zhao Wuling was a wise king that made great efforts to make reforms and promote the culture exchange of different nations. He learned from the Hu people on one hand, and fought against the invasion of Hu people on the other. This section of the wall was located in what now is Inner Mongolia in China.

### **The Wall of Zhongshan State**

Zhongshan State was a small but powerful one. During the Warring States Period, Zhongshan was aligned with the Yan and the Qin, its northern and eastern neighbors, and experienced a long and peaceful period. However its southwestern neighbors, the Zhao and Wei states, considered it a serious danger. So Zhongshan built the wall in 369BC to protect itself.



The Wall of Zhongshan was at the junction of Hebei Province and Shanxi Province of China. It ran over Mt. Hengshan, across Mt. Taihangshan and finally reached the Xingtai area of Hebei Province, stretching about 250 kilometers (155 miles).

### **The Wall of Wei State**

The Wall of Wei had two sections: the first was the Hexi Wall located in the northwest of Wei, and it was originally built to guard against the mighty Qin. The other was the Henan Wall in the south. The sites are located in now Huayin City, Hancheng City and Dali County in Shaanxi Province. Starting at the foot of Qinling in Huayin, the Wall stretched to Dali, Chengcheng and Heyang in the north and Hancheng in the east, through the Loess Altiplano to Inner Mongolia, and at last ended in Guyang, Baotou. It spanned more than 200 kilometers (124 miles). The longest and best preserved part ran about 2.1 kilometers (1.3 miles), with a height of 2.2-11.4 meters (7.2-37.3 feet) and a width of 6-16 meters (19.7-52.4 feet). Today, only one or two sections remain including a fortress and beacon tower at a height of 7-11 meters (23-36 feet).

### **The Wall of Zhenghan State**

This part of the Wall was originally built by Zheng State in 355BC. After the Zheng were conquered by the Han, Han State continued to build and use the Wall. Some call this section the Wall of Han, while others call it the Wall of Zheng - hence the creation of the shared name Wall of Zhenghan. This part of the Wall connected with the southeastern Wall of Wei, and can be found in present Xinzheng City in Henan Province, once the capital of the Zheng and Han.

### **The Wall of Yan State**

The Wall of Yan State also had two sections: the Wall of Yishui and the Wall of the North. Construction of the Wall of Yishui, from 334BC to 311BC, was done to guard against the attack from the Zhao, Qi and Qin. It stretched about 250 kilometers (155 miles) from the foot of present Mt. Taihangshan of Yixian County through Xushui and Anxin Counties, via XiongXian County and ended in Wen'an County in Hebei Province.

The Wall of the North was built to guard against intrusion by nomadic people like the Donghu. This part of the wall was built in 254BC, which was the last wall built in the Warring States Period. This wall went through present Zhangjiakou City of Hebei Province, Inner Mongolia, across Hebei Province, Chaoyang City of Liaoning Province, over Mt. Yiwulu Shan, and reached Liaoyang of Liaoning Province. Now the sites of Wall of Yan can be found in the above-mentioned areas.



#### Related Links:

- [Zhou Dynasty](#)
- [Top 10 Attractions of China](#)

## **Qin Dynasty :**

The Great Wall of China is often thought to have been built by order of Qin Shihuang, the First Emperor of the Qin Dynasty (221-207 BC). It is true that as a national defence work, the Great Wall first took shape after the unification of China during that period. However, the construction of the separate sections started long before the Qin Dynasty. As early as the Spring and Autumn period (770-476 BC) and the period of the Warring States (475-221 BC), some sections of the walls were built by the seven powerful ducal states, the Qin, Qi, Chu, Han, Zhao, Wei and Yan for protection against each other. Also, some sections were built along the northern borders by the Qin, Zhao and Yan to fend off the Huns, who assaulted China constantly. These walls formed the origins of the Great Wall. When he established the Qin Dynasty, Emperor Qin Shihuang made every effort to protect the new Empire. He gave the order to build the Great Wall. This project involved joining the separate walls previously constructed plus a further extension of totally over 5000 kilometers cutting right across northern China, starting from Inner Mongolia in the east.

Emperor Qin Shihuang's contribution to the design of the Wall is considered to be of great importance as it ensured peace for the people in the northern part of China against the Huns and established a pattern of defence for future generations.

The Great Wall of the Qin Dynasty was divided into 3 sections: the eastern section, the middle section, and the western section. The eastern section, mostly built on the original wall of Yan State, started from Huade County, Inner Mongolia and ran into Fuxin City, Liaoning Province through Hebei Province. The middle section with beacon towers, mostly built by the Qin Dynasty, rose from Xinghe County, Inner Mongolia in the east and reached the desert to form a further protection system. The western section went along the Yellow River. It began in Min County, Gansu Province and wound its way to Yuzhong. Within this section, some parts were based on the walls of the Warring States Period.

The Great Wall of the Qin Dynasty was built at the expense of many lives. It involved the backbreaking toil of tens of thousands of people including conscripted soldiers, slaves, convicts as well as ordinary people. It is for this reason that the story of the Great Wall is often associated with the tyranny of the First Emperor of Qin.

#### Related Links:

- [Emperor Qin Shihuang](#)
- [Qin Dynasty](#)

- [Top 10 Attractions of China](#)

## Han Dynasty :

Han Dynasty was divided into two historical periods: Western Han (202BC-24AD) and Eastern Han (25AD-220AD). The capital of Western Han was at present Xian of Shaanxi Province and the capital of Eastern Han was at present Luoyang City of Henan Province.

Liu Bang (256BC-195BC) took the title of Han Gaozu, the first emperor of Han Dynasty (202BC-220AD), when he ascended the throne after defeating Xiang Yu in 202BC. That was right after the brief Qin Dynasty, which had imposed a centralized government on China. But the new nation was no match for the fierce Huns, who had constantly invaded its northern borders. Early Han administrators had no choice but sued for peace, and sent Chinese princesses north as Hun nobles' brides.

By 140 BC, under Liu Che (156BC-87BC), the emperor Han Wudi brought war home to the Huns. He also had several parts of the Great Wall built.

Han Wudi ordered a construction project of the Great Wall in 127 BC. This resulted in rebuilding an older part of the Wall and an extension of territories to present day Mount Yinshan of Inner Mongolia.



Huo Qubing, Emperor Han Wudi's general pushed the Huns back and in 121 BC he secured the Hexi Corridor, the passage to the Western Region. A subsequent Hexi wall construction from present day Yongdeng County to Jiuquan City in Gansu Province had severed contacts between Huns and their allies the Qiang People. The newer wall had joined the eastern terminus of an older network of walls.

Forts dotted the distance between Jiuquan City and Yumenguan Pass of Gansu Province that were also the form of the Great Wall. These were measures against Hun warlords around 110 BC. Around 101 BC Chinese workers built the section from Yumenguan Pass to Luobu Po of Xinjiang Uygur Autonomous Region. Altogether Han Wudi had built a thousand kilometers (621 miles) of defense wall over twenty years to secure the passage to the Western Region. The Huns power later was in decline and consequently less wall-building activity came about this side of the border.

During the period of Eastern Han, after years of civil wars, Liu Xiu (6BC-57AD), the emperor Guang Wudi could put up only weak resistance to northern invaders. In around 39 AD he gave order to his general Ma Cheng to build four boundary walls to contain the damage. The boundary walls ran 1) from Lishi County of Shanxi Province to southeast of Xianyang City of Shaanxi Province; 2) between Gaoling County of Shaanxi and Anyi County of Shanxi; 3) from Taiyuan City of Shanxi to Jingxing County of Hebei Province; and 4) from Dingxian County of Hebei to Linhang County of Henan Province.

The walls offered some protection to Luoyang, the capital of Eastern Han. Afterwards in-fighting divided the Huns into the North and South. The North Huns were driven off by Han. The more friendly South Huns co-existed with the Han Dynasty and there was no need to build more walls.

 Related Links:

- [Han Dynasty](#)
- [Top 10 Attractions of China](#)

## **Jin Dynasty :**

### **Wall Construction Prior to the Jin Dynasty**

After the short-lived Sui Dynasty came the glorious Tang Dynasty (618-907). The whole period of the Tang Dynasty was a time of economic and cultural prosperity. During this period there was little or no threat from beyond the national borders, so no additional fortifications were deemed necessary. With the collapse of the Tang Dynasty and the subsequent fragmentation of the country the succeeding dynasties continued to focus on cultural development. The Song Dynasty (960-1279), although obliged to adopt a defensive stance against the dynasties of Liao (907-1125), Western Xia (1032-1227), and Jin (1115-1234), did not build fortification walls.

According to historical records, in 908 a section of the Great Wall on the Nanguanling Town of Liaoning Province at the confluence of the Bohai Sea and the Yellow Sea (Huanghai Sea) was built during the Liao Dynasty (907-1125). In 1026, the nomadic Nuzhen who occupied territory to the northeast of China built several fortresses and beacon towers to prevent invasion. The fortresses and beacon towers formed part of the defense system of the Great Wall. At this time the Wall stretched from White City (Bai Cheng) Village of Acheng City of Heilongjiang Province in the north to Nongan County of Jilin Province in the south.

### **The Great Wall of the Jin Dynasty**

In 1115, the Nuzhen nomadic established the Jin Dynasty (1115-1234). In order to prevent incursion from their neighbors, the Mongols, a large construction program was launched. The records show that two important sections of the Great wall were completed.

The Wall as constructed by the Jin differed from the previous sections. Known as the Border Fortress or the Boundary Ditch of the Jin, it was formed by digging ditches within which lengths of wall were built. In some places subsidiary walls and ditches were added for extra strength. The construction of the Great Wall by the Jin Dynasty was started in about 1123 and completed by about 1198. The two sections attributable to the Jin Dynasty are known as the Mingchang Old Wall and the Mingchang New Wall.



**The Mingchang Old Wall:** Also called the Border Fortress of the Jin, this section is located to the north of the Mingchang New Wall. It is near today's Heilongjiang River northwest of the Xing'an Mountains in Heilongjiang Province. It stretched about 500 kilometers (311 miles).

**The Mingchang New Wall:** Also called the Inner Wall of Jin, it was also built to prevent attack from the Mongols, the whole wall stretched about 1,500 kilometers (932 miles), starting from Hetao area of Inner Mongolia at the west, passing provinces and autonomous regions such as Shaanxi, Shanxi, Hebei, Inner Mongolia, Liaoning and Heilongjiang and ending at the Songhua River of Heilongjiang Province.

Today, the site of the Great Wall of the Jin Dynasty can be found in Xilinhaute City of Xilin Gol League of Inner Mongolia.

With the advent of the Mongol Yuan Dynasty (1279-1368), there was no further need to extend the border defenses, as their territory spanned parts of both Europe and Asia. The next era of construction was to follow when the rule of the Ming was established.

 Related Links:

- [Jin Dynasty](#)
- [Top 10 Attractions of China](#)

## Northern and Southern Dynasties :

The Three Kingdoms Period (220-280) and the Jin Dynasty (265-420) after the Han Dynasty (206BC-220) were suffered by contending battles. Due to the battles and inner conflicts, no walls were built during the two dynasties.

Subsequently, the Northern and Southern Dynasties (420-589) coexisted. The dynasties of Song, Qi, Liang, and Chen, the Southern Dynasty (420-589), took Jiangkang (present Nanjing City of Jiangsu Province) as their capital. The dynasties of the Northern Wei, the Eastern Wei, the Western Wei, the Northern Qi, and the Northern Zhou were called the Northern Dynasty (386-581). During this period, the dynasties of the Northern Wei, the Eastern Wei, the Northern Qi, and the Northern Zhou had the Great Wall built and extended.

### Great Wall of the Northern Wei Dynasty (386-534)

Tuoba Gui, the chieftain of Xianbei people, the most important and largest nomadic tribes of the steppe region north of China during the Northern and Southern Dynasties, established the Wei Dynasty in 386, later called the Northern Wei. At that time, its northern Rouran people, a nomadic tribe living north of the Northern Wei, became increasingly powerful. To thwart their advance, in 423 the Northern Wei Dynasty

built about 1,000 kilometers (621 miles) of the Great Wall to its northern boundary and set up garrisons to prevent invasion by the Rouran.

This section of the Great Wall started from Chicheng County of Hebei Province, through the north of Shanxi Province and ended in Wuyuan County of Inner Mongolia. Emperor Taiwudi, ruler at the height of Northern Wei military strength, ended the unification war at the Yellow River Valley, defeated his powerful enemy, the Rouran, and established six important garrisons north of the Great Wall to protect Pingcheng City (present Datong City), capital of the Northern Wei.

The Northern Wei also built the inner wall (Sai Wei), an earth wall lower and thinner than the Great Wall, to supplement the Great Wall. The Sai Wei was also built to protect Pingcheng City. It started from present Shanxi Province, along the boundary of Shanxi and Hebei provinces and reached Tianzhen County of Shanxi Province, circled Datong City and ended at the east bank of the Yellow River. It stretched for about 500 kilometers (311 miles) long.

### **Great Wall of the Eastern Wei Dynasty (534-550)**

The Northern Wei divided into Eastern and Western Wei. To prevent intrusion by the Rouran, in 543 the Eastern Wei built a section of the Great Wall from today's Jingle County to Chunyang County of Shanxi Province, stretching about 75 kilometers (47 miles). While not very long; it is the passage through which northern nomadic peoples entered China. The Eastern Wei built this section of the Great Wall to consolidate the northern boundary and to prevent intrusion by nomadic people.

### **Great Wall of the Northern Qi Dynasty (550-577)**

The Northern Qi Dynasty was founded after defeat of the Eastern Wei in 550. During the short period of reign, the dynasty area was frequently invaded by northern nomadic peoples such as the Rouran, Turkic, and Qidan, and was threatened by Western Wei and Northern Zhou. So the Northern Qi rebuilt the Great Wall many times.

During 552, the first part of the Great Wall of the Northern Qi was built to prevent invasion by the Western Wei. This section ran south to north, from today's Lishi County to Shuoxian County of Shanxi Province, stretching about 200 kilometers (124 miles).

Turkic people of the Mongolian Plateau became increasingly powerful, establishing the Turkic Dynasty during the reign of the Northern Qi., often invading the northern boundary of the Northern Qi. So the Northern Qi had to accelerate its pace in the construction of the Great Wall. A section of 450 kilometers (279 miles) was built in 555 starting from the south gate of present Juyongguan Pass and ending in Datong of Shanxi Province at the west.

Not only were two sections of the Great Wall built in 552 and 555, but during 556 a new section was built eastwards reaching Shanhaiguan Pass. The whole Great Wall was then about 1,500 kilometers (932 miles) long, which was longer than those of former dynasties except Qin and Han.

In 557 a defense line was built inside the Great Wall. The section started east of Pianguan Pass in Shanxi Province, passing the eastern Yanmenguan Pass, and Pingxingguan Pass and then reaching Xiaguan Pass of Shanxi Province. The other section, starting from Niangziguan Pass, passing Malingguan Pass and ending at Huangyangguan Pass no longer exists; only some relics remain.

In 563 another section of the Great Wall was built along Mt. Taihangshan at the junction of Shanxi and Hebei Provinces. Some parts remain at the top of Mt. Taihangshan. A well-preserved section ran from west of Longquanguan Pass to west of Xiakou town, Jianping County of Hebei.

Because in 563 Turkic people launched two hundred thousand soldiers to destroy the Great Wall and prepared to invade Pingcheng City, the Northern Qi extended the Great Wall of the Eastern Wei to Yanmenguan Pass in 565 and mended the inner Great Wall built in 557. In addition, a section of the Great Wall was extended from Xiaguan Pass of Shanxi Province to its east end, Juyongguan Pass. A section between Juyongguan Pass and Shanhaiguan Pass was rebuilt.

### **Great Wall of the Northern Zhou Dynasty (557-581)**

By defeating the Western Wei, the Northern Zhou Dynasty was established in 557. At its height, it defeated the Northern Qi in 577 and unified the north of China. Meanwhile, the Turkic people north of the Northern Zhou became stronger and frequently intruded into Northern Zhou areas. Emperor Jingdi had the Great Wall of the Northern Qi renovated in 579.

 Related Links:

- [Northern and Southern Dynasties](#)
- [Top 10 Attractions of China](#)

## **Sui Dynasty :**

### **The Great Wall Built in the Sui Dynasty (581- 618)**

Emperor Wendi (Yang Jian) who ruled from 581 to 604 was the first emperor of the Sui Dynasty. He usurped the throne of the Northern Zhou Dynasty and established the Sui Dynasty in 581. The Sui Dynasty lasted for only two generations spanning 38 years. However, in this period several sections of the Great Wall were built.

Adopting the well-established administrative systems of the Northern Zhou, the Sui proceeded to bring down the Chen Dynasty of the Northern and Southern Dynasties and so created a united China and bringing to an end an era of chaos that had endured for 270 years. Following unification, the feudal separatism that had lasted in China for four hundred years also came to an end.

The new imperial government set about the prevention of invasion from the northern nomadic peoples such as the Turkic People and Qidan People. In 583, the Turkic People, a nomadic tribe that inhabited land to the north of the Sui territory, split into the Eastern and the Western factions due to inner conflict. However, the Turkic tribe continued to attack the Sui's northern boundary.

A labor force numbering many hundreds of thousands was gathered to work on the construction of the Great Wall. Historical records show us that the Sui Dynasty undertook six such major construction projects in total.

Four construction projects were completed during the reign of Emperor Wendi.

- 1). In April of 581, the first section of the Sui Dynasty Great Wall was built. This project took only twenty days but in December, the eastern sections of the Great Wall attributable to the Northern Wei and the Northern Qi were repaired.
- 2). Historical research shows that a section was started in 585 from the east bank of the Yellow River near Lingwu County in Ningxia Hui Autonomous Region, through Hengshan County to Suide County of Shaanxi Province. This ran for about 350 kilometers (217 miles) from west to east.
- 3). In 586, a twenty-day repair was undertaken. In addition, construction of several fortresses was commenced along the Great Wall to the east of present Hengshan County of Shaanxi Province in order to protect the Sui border in that region.
- 4). In 587, a further section of the Great Wall was constructed but there is no surviving record providing detailed information about this.

When Emperor Yangdi came to the throne in 604, he instigated two more Great Wall construction projects.

- 1). During 607, a labor force of millions was levied to extend the Great Wall from the east of today's Youyu County of Shanxi Province to the southwest of Toketo County of Inner Mongolia.
- 2). The other section commenced at Xining City of Qinghai Province in the west, but the location of the eastern extremity of this section is not recorded.

These two sections of the Great Wall had no strategic purpose beyond displaying the military power that prevailed during the rule of Emperor Yangdi.

 Related Links:

- [Sui Dynasty](#)



- [Top 10 Attractions of China](#)

## Ming Dynasty :

The Ming Dynasty was an era of enthusiastic construction. The emperors of this dynasty were advised to build high walls and to make every effort to resist the nomadic invaders along the nation's borders. Reconstruction of the Great Wall was put in hand and became a project on a gigantic scale. It was not only restored using the structure erected during Qin Dynasty as a basis but it was strengthened, improved and extended using advanced civil engineering and military architectural techniques. As a result of these efforts the Great Wall of the Ming Dynasty, faced with bricks, covered some 7,300 kilometres, stretching from the Yalu River on the east to Jiayu Pass on the west becoming an impregnable barrier. In fact, it was during the Ming Dynasty that this great defensive project that had lasted over 1000 years was to reach final completion.

Why was the reconstruction of the Great Wall so important to the Ming Dynasty?

After the overthrow of the Yuan Dynasty established by the Mongolian nomadic tribes and the founding of the Ming Dynasty in 1368, Zhu Yuanzhang, the first emperor was greatly bothered by the constant harassment from the Mongolian nobles who were not resigned to defeat and who made incursions into Ming territory in the vain hope of



restoring their rule. Zhu Yuanzhang, an emperor who had a humble background and first hand experience of the peasant uprising understood the importance of protective walls around a city. He also had the foresight to see that the Great Wall was not only a defence of the nation's border but was also a statement of its power and might. Hence, he gave the order to build city walls and for the reconstruction of the Great Wall.

The Great Wall of the Ming Dynasty was a vital part of the defence system. Unlike that in previous dynasties, it had many more passes such as Juyong Guan Pass, Shanhai Guan Pass, and Yanmen Guan Pass, etc. The addition of further beacon towers made the wall more imposing, more magnificent, and more effective.

To ensure the efficient control of the defences along the northern frontiers, the Ming authorities divided the entire Great Wall environs into nine zones and placed each under the control of a zhen (garrison headquarters) Two further garrison headquarters were added later. Thus the defence system ultimately consisted of [eleven garrisons](#) in nine zones.

For over 200 years during the Ming Dynasty this project was never neglected or weakened and its importance and grandeur were without equal during any preceding period.

 Related Links:

[Ming Dynasty](#)

[Top 10 Attractions of China](#)

## Chronology of the Construction :

Period	Wall Built	Delineation or Location	Length (km)	Dates
Spring and Autumn (770-476B.C.)	Wall of Qi	South bank of the Yellow River in Pingyin County (Western Shandong) -northern slopes of Mount Tai-Yimeng Mountain area-seaboard in Jiao County	Over 500	c.685-281B.C.
Warring States (475-221B.C.)	Wall built under the Jianluo reign of Qin	West bank of Luo River in Shaanxi	Unknown	461-409 B.C.
	Wall built under the reign of King Zhao of Qin	Tao River in Min County (gansu)-Ningxia-Northern Shaanxi-eastern part of Ordos Plateau in Inner Mongolia	Unknown	c.287 B.C.
	Wall of Wei, west of the Yellow River	East bank of Luo River in Shaanxi-east bank of Yellow River on Ordos Plateau, called "the wall west of the Yellow River"	About 700	361-352 B.C.
	Wall of Zhao	Yu County, Hebei-southern slopes of Yinshan Mountains, Inner Mongolia-Langshankou Pass, also in Inner Mongolia	About 1000	c.299 B.C.
	Wall of Yan	Southeastern Inner Mongolia-northern slopes of Yanshan Mountains-Liaodong	About 1000	c.311-279 B.C.
<a href="#">Qin Dynasty</a> (221-207 B.C.)	The Great Wall of Qin	Upper reaches of Tao River Gansu-bank of the Yellow River-northern slopes of Yinshan Mountains-Liaodong, called the 10,000- <i>li</i> wall of Qin	5,000	214 B.C.
<a href="#">Western Han Dynasty</a> (206B.C.-A.D.24)	Wall of Han	A reinforced version of the wall of Qin, with deviation to the north or south at certain points all the way to Liaodong	5,000	205-127 B.C.
	Wall west of the Yellow River	Lanzhou, Gansu-Yumen Pass-Lop Nor in Xinjiang	1250	121-101 B.C.
	Guanglu Castle in central Inner Mongolia	Wuchuan County, Inner Mongolia-Urad Rear Banner, also in Inner Mongolia-People's Republic of Mongolia	About 1,000	102 B.C.
	Juyan Castle in northwestern Inner Mongolia	Jiayu Mountain, Gansu-Ejun Banner, Inner Mongolia-People's Republic of Mongolia	About 750	102 B.C.
Northern Wei (386-534)	Wall of Northern Wei	Chicheng, Hebei-Urad Banners, Inner Mongolia	1,000	A.D. 423

Northern Qi (550-577)	Wall of Northern Qi	Luliang Mountain, Shanxi-Hengshan Mountains-Yanshan Mountains-Juyong Pass near Beijing	About 1,500	552-565
Sui Dynasty (581-618)	Wall of Sui	Yellow River Bend in Ningxia-Inner Mongolia-Shanxi-Hebei-coast of the Bohai Sea, where Yu Pass was built	About 1,500	581-608
Liao Dynasty (916-1125)	Wall of Liao and ditches	Present-day Heilongjiang and Jilin, characterized by ditches in front of the wall	About 1,000	From 908, before inauguration of the dynasty, to 1058
Jin (Jurchen) Dynasty (1115-1234)	Ditches of Jin	Morin Dawa Banner in Hulun Bair League (Inner Mongolia)-southwestern slopes of Greater Hinggan Mountains-northern slopes of Yanshan Mountains-western slopes of Yinshan Mountains, also characterized by ditches in front of the wall	5,000	1200
<a href="#">Ming Dynasty</a> (1368-1644)	The Great Wall of Ming	Yalu river in Liaoning-Hebei-Shanxi-Inner Mongolia-Shaanxi-Ningxia-Jiayu Pass in Gansu	7,300	1368-1644

## Construction of the wall:

The mystery of the construction of the wall is amazing.



The construction of the Great Wall, drew heavily on the local resources for construction materials, was carried out in line with the local conditions under the management of contract and responsibility system. A great army of manpower, composed of soldiers, prisoners, and local people, built the wall. The construction result demonstrates the manifestation of the wisdom and tenacity of the Chinese people. >> [more...](#)

## Construction of the Great Wall :

The Great Wall is reputed as one of the seven construction wonders in the world not only for its long history, but its massive construction size, and its unique architectural style as well.

The construction of the Great Wall began between the 7th and 8th centuries B.C. when the warring states built defensive walls to ward off enemies from the north. It was only a regional project then. Until the Qin Dynasty, the separate walls were joint together and consequently it stretched from east to west for about 5000 thousand



kilometers and served to keep nomadic tribes out. The Wall was further extended and strengthened in the succeeding dynasties. Especially during the Ming dynasty when the northern nomadic ethnic groups became very powerful, the Ming rulers had the Wall renovated 18 times. As a result, not the remains from the Qin dynasty were restored, but some 1000 kilometers were constructed to a full length of 6,700 kilometers.

The architectural style of the Great wall is a marvel in the history of construction in the world. Since the weaponry only consisted of swords and spears, lances and halberds, and bows and arrows in the ancient times, walls with passes, watchtowers, signal towers, together with moats became an important strategy. To ensure the safety of the dynasties, the feudal rulers strove to improve the construction of the Great Wall after it took shape in the Qin dynasty. In particular, the Ming dynasty saw the creation of a sophisticated defense system along the wall embracing garrison towns, garrison posts, passes, blockhouses, additional wall structures, watchtowers and beacon towers, each given a different status and designed mission. The system enabled the imperial court to stay in touch with military and administrative agencies at various levels, including those at the grassroots, and provided the frontier troops with facilities to carry out effective defense

The Great wall we see today is mostly from the Ming dynasty. With an average height of 10 meters and a width of 5 meters, the wall runs up and down along the mountain ridges and valleys from east to west. It stands as a witness of the Chinese history, culture and development.

## **Construction Material of the Great Wall :**

As we all know, the Great Wall is the treasure of China - even the world. It really is a great masterpiece of mankind, with its beautiful scenes and grand construction. What many people may not know, however, is that in different periods of Chinese history the material of the Great Wall is different in different areas.

Before the use of bricks, the Great Wall was mainly built from earth, stones and wood. Due to the large quantity of materials required to construct the Great Wall, the builders always tried to use local sources. When building over the mountain ranges, the stones of the mountain were exploited and used; while in the plains, earth was rammed into solid blocks to be used in construction. In the desert, even the sanded reeds and juniper tamarisks were used to build the Great Wall.

Before and during the Qin Dynasty (221BC-206BC), because the earth buildings could withstand the strength of weapons like swords and spears and there was low technology of productivity, the Great Wall was basically built by stamping earth between board frames. As such, only walls of plain earth or earth with gravel inside were built. No fortresses were constructed along the wall, nor bricks used in the construction of gates at the passes. Some of the walls were even made only from piles of crude stones. Around Dunhuang City in Gansu Province, Yulin City in Shaanxi Province and Baotou City in Inner Mongolia, sites can still be found from the Great Wall of Qin, the Great Wall of Han and the Wall of Zhao.



The Wall of Zhao was built during the Warring States Period using board frames, and the layers of earth can still be clearly seen.

During the period following the Han Dynasty (202BC-220AD), earth or crude stones were still popular building tools. The construction material did not reach a new level until the middle of the Ming Dynasty (1368-1644); however the principle of using local material was maintained. Three hundred million cubic meters (393 million yards) of earthwork were used in the construction of the Great Wall, and with the appearance of large brick and lime workshops, some parts were also built with these new materials.

Bricks were used in a lot of areas during the Ming Dynasty, as well as materials such as tiles and lime. Attempts were always made to produce the materials locally, so kiln workshops were established to burn the crude material. In a construction team there was Material Supply Department. For example, in Juyongguan Pass names of supply departments such as kiln workshops, stone ponds and material supply departments were recorded. Some materials, such as the timbers for the construction of the passes, did have to be transported from outside areas when there were none available locally.

Bricks were more a convenient material than earth and stone as their small size and light weight made them convenient to carry and thus quickened the speed of construction. Bricks are also the ideal material to bear the weight. According to a sample experiment experiencing gravity and erosion over a hundred years, the compressive strength, resistance to freezing and absorbency of the bricks of the time are similar to today's common bricks. A huge brick from a hundred years ago showed a high level of technological skill for that time. For further ease of construction, different shapes of brick were also burned and made to stuff into different positions.

Stone, however, still has its advantages. Stones cut in rectangular shapes were mostly used to build the foundation, inner and outer brims, and gateways of the Great Wall. In the Badaling section, the Great Wall is made almost entirely of granite, some of green and white stones and some of white marble. The stone material was found to better resist efflorescence than bricks.

It is not only because of the high level of productivity of the time that hard material like bricks and stones were used in the construction of the Great Wall, but also because of the development of weapons. Before the Ming Dynasty, the Great Wall was built from board frames and, although not very solid, could withhold simple weapons like swords, spears and bows. But during the Ming Dynasty, gunpowder became available. The musket, blunderbuss and cannon appeared. Due to the use of these weapons, more solid bricks and stones were required to build a stronger Great Wall.



The Great Wall of China embodies the great systems of defense created during the wars of the time; moreover it indicates a great achievement in architecture.

## Labor Force :

The labor force used by various dynasties for the construction of the walls was no less impressive than the wall itself. The well-organized defenses of the Great Wall were built by the arduous work of millions of workers. For example, when the Great Wall was first brought together under the direction of General Meng Tian over a period of 10 years during the Qin Dynasty, 300,000 troops were used. In addition to the frontier soldiers, the builders included conscripted laborers and convicts in exile. Later in 555 A.D. under the Northern Qi Dynasty, a 450-kilometre section of the wall was built from Nankou, Beijing, to Datong, Shanxi. 1.8 million people were forced to join the ranks of the laborers. Owing to the arduous work and poor conditions both for living and construction, a lot of people died in the course of this project. Some of their remains were even buried in the wall.

## Varied Terrain and Peculiar Structure :

The construction of the Wall began in the 7th century BC and continued over a period in excess of two thousand years to the 17th century (the Ming Dynasty). The materials and the technology used varied in each period depending upon the terrain, social conditions and the engineering technology at the time. But one common principle in every dynasty ensured the designer tried to make maximum use of the natural terrain such as steep mountains, river gorges or narrow passes as they built the wall using as many indigenous materials as possible.



## Secrets of the Qin Wall

Qin Wall was built to serve as a defence system in the northern part of the empire. As it followed the ridges of steep mountains or sides of deep gorges, it served well as a mighty barrier to prevent the cavalry attack of Xiongnu. Passes, barriers and beacon towers were added to reinforce the defensive effect. In this period, the Wall was made of layers of compacted earth. The section remaining at Linzhao in today's Gansu Province is a typical example. From the exposed transverse section, scientists have found that the foundation comprises a layer of raw earth, over 1.5 meters thick at the bottom, with further loess above, some three meters thick. The wall was built on this foundation from layers of tamped-earth. The tamped-earth process began with a simple wooden frame. Workers filled the frame with



loose earth, which was then tamped into a compact layer 4 inches thick. The process was repeated layer upon layer, and the wall slowly rose four inches at a time. So you can imagine how long it will take to build a seven-meter high wall. Detritus was mixed into the wall to make it more solid.

Related Links: [History of the Qin wall](#)

## Secrets of the Han Wall

The Wall constructed in the Han Dynasty (206 BC - 220) was more massive than that in the Qin Dynasty. The Han emperors not only reinforced the Qin Wall, but also extended it from Linzhao to the west part of China where much of the terrain is deserts. This presented a new challenge: how to build a wall through the Gobi Desert? Unlike the construction during the Qin Dynasty, on the plain and in the Gobi region moats formed the main fortification. Along these moats at intervals of 1.25 kilometers, a beacon tower was built. In some regions, the mountains and rivers also served as barriers so no wall or moat was necessary but towers and castles were built in key points to ensure the continuity of the defences.



The poor quality of the sandy soil and the lack of bricks and stone give rise to the question, 'how could these towers be built in the arid Gobi Desert?' Some ruins of beacon towers in Dunhuang give us the answer. First, the workers laid a bed of red willow reeds and twigs at the bottom of a wooden frame. Then, they filled the frame



with a mixture of water and fine gravel, which was tamped solid. When the mixture had thoroughly dried, the wooden frame was removed, leaving behind a solid slab of tamped earth, strengthened by the willow reeds just as modern concrete is reinforced by steel rods.

The beacon towers were constructed along the Wall at an interval of 15 to 30 miles. Columns of smoke were used to warn defenders of an attack. One smoke column meant an outpost was being threatened by a force of fewer than 500 troops and two columns meant an attacking force of fewer than 3,000. The Han found the beacon system relayed messages faster than a rider on a horse. Due to the dry climate, today in Dunhuang, you can also see the remains of these towers and even the firewood used to light the smoke.



Related Links: [History of the Han wall](#)



## Secrets of the Ming Wall

The greatest of all the wall builders were the Ming, whose astounding accomplishments dwarfed what had been done earlier by the Qin and the Han. The Ming not only built a bigger, more solid and imposing one, but also added advanced fortification structures to the Wall. The great progress made by the Ming meant that the wall was built with a tamped-earth interior between kiln-fired bricks and stone slabs forming the outer layers. The popularly toured Badaling section in Beijing is of this type. The workers mixed lime and sticky rice as a mortar between the bricks. This form of cement made the wall solid. The Ming Wall is divided by today's Shanxi Province, into the eastern part and the western part. The wall in the east winds its way along the ridges of mountains and here the wall has a facing of brick and stone while the section to the west of Shanxi, was built from tamped earth with no covering.

The construction of the military fortifications on the Wall reached its peak. More passes and reinforcements were added. Double walls were built in some military zones with strongholds and passes. For example, Juyongguan Pass, Jinziguan Pass and Daomaguan Pass are three passes built on the double walls north of Beijing. Watchtowers of various shapes and sizes served as beacons, fortresses, shelters or simply as a signal station along the wall. For example, the shelter towers were built with large interiors to store food, arms and served as the living quarters for soldiers. A staircase from the interior led up to the top of the tower. On each side of the wall were small holes for lookouts. The structure of a signal station was either round or square shaped and solid in the centre. The overall defences were enhanced with a variety of features that included the use of artillery. To this day rusting iron canons can be seen at various locations along the wall.

Related Links: [History of the Ming wall](#)

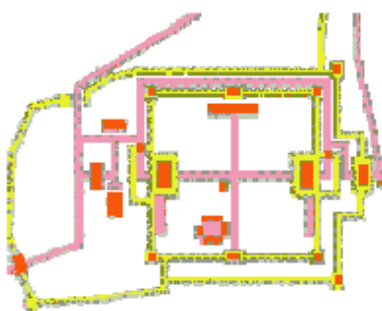
## Design for the Fortifications :

The Great Wall has three major components: passes, signal towers (beacons), and walls. The design of each of these features has been determined by strategic importance.

### Passes

As major strongholds along the wall, passes usually are located at key positions such as intersections with trade routes.

[more...](#)



Situated at key positions, usually on trade routes, passes were needed to allow controlled entry to and exit from Chinese territory. A straight forward gate would be vulnerable to attack and for this reason complex constructions were necessary. These could vary from a simple double wall to a virtual castle with a maze like format to enable the defending



forces to control any attempt at an invasion. An important consideration in design was that the fortifications should always be such that a small number of defenders should have the ability to repel a much larger attacking force.

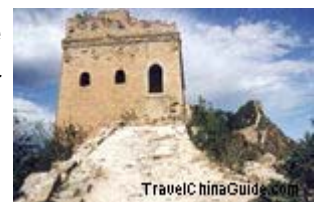
The ramparts were reinforced with huge bricks and stones with earth and crushed rock as a filler. Great bastions that measured some 10 meters (30 feet) in height and up to 5 meters in width at the top enhanced the protection afforded by the wall. Access to the top of the wall for both horses and men was provided by ramps and ladders within the pass. Outer parapets were battlemented to give cover for archers and a low wall approximately 1 meter high ran along the inner side for the safety of both men and horses.



There were occasions when it was necessary for troops to go out into the countryside beyond the wall and it was the gate within the passes that gave them access to the outside whether it was to mount a counter attack or merely go on patrol.



The gate would be protected by enormous double timber doors secured with huge iron bolts and locking rings. Above each gate there was a tower. Typically these would be two or three storeys high to give the garrison the advantage of a lookout from which it was possible to see the approach of travellers or marauders who could be a threat. These towers were of timber or brick or both. What was known as a weng-cheng, a semicircular or polygonal construction was built outside the gate to provide cover against direct attack. At certain of the more important and therefore more vulnerable gates an additional fortification called a luocheng was constructed. This would have the benefit of a tower upon it and so could act as an additional lookout or post from which troops could be directed during any hostilities. The ditches formed by the excavation of soil to fill the walls would be extended to create a protective moat around the entrance to the gate providing a further device to slow down the progress of invaders and thereby giving the defending forces a greater opportunity to repel them.



## Beacon Towers

Beacon Towers, also known as beacons, beacon terraces, smoke mounds (because of the various substances, including wolf dung, that were burnt), mounds, or kiosks.

[more...](#)

Communication between the army units along the length of the Great Wall was of prime importance. Not only was it necessary to be able to summon reinforcements in the event of an attack but it was necessary to be able to warn other garrisons of the movements of enemy forces. Making full advantage of hill tops and other high points along the wall for their location signal towers were built. These would vary from being complex structures of more than one storey in height to simple beacons. During daylight hours



smoke signals were widely used and to create varying colors and density of smoke many different materials were used. Possibly one of the most bizarre of these was wolf dung! At night lanterns and



beacon fires were used. Other means of signalling included the use of flags, clappers, drums and bells. The invention of gunpowder also proved to be an asset to the signal system as the firing of cannon made a sound that could carry over long distances. Codes were devised that included a combination of cannon fire and smoke signals as well as other devices. For example, during the Ming Dynasty a single column of smoke plus a single gun shot would indicate the approach of a hundred enemy soldiers.

Multiple columns of smoke combined with an appropriate number of gun shots would give an indication of the size of the invading army.

The complex signal towers would provide accommodation for soldiers as well as storage for ordnance and even stabling for livestock and horses.

## Walls

The body of the wall usually stood 21.3 feet (6.5 metres) wide at the base and 19 feet (5.8 metres) at the top, with an average height of 23 to 26 feet (7 to 8 metres), or a bit lower on steep hills.



Those responsible for the construction of the wall made maximum use of natural features and it is this that accounts for the dragon like appearance as the structure wends its way across the terrain. Mountains, rivers and sheer cliff faces were natural defences and these were enhanced by the wall rendering the boundary virtually impenetrable. The average height of the wall from the base upon which it was built was some 8 meters (26 feet) while it would be some 6.5 meters (21.3 feet) wide at the base tapering to 5.8 meters ( 19 feet) at the top. The materials used in the



construction varied according to what was available on site. While some sections were composed of local stone or bricks with an infill of crushed rocks or earth, others would be of adobe or tamped earth between timbers. The contrasting styles of construction can be seen by comparing the stone faced walls near Badaling with the much less sophisticated rammed earth and adobe walls in the western desert region. The stone and brick construction permitted the builders to add a variety of refinements that gave the defending army cover and other advantages over their enemies. These included steps leading to the top of the ramparts where the outer side of the wall was crenelated to provide cover for archers. Openings enabled the guards to keep a look out for any threat of invasion. At regular intervals of approximately 200 to 300 meters (217 - 860 yards) platforms were set up. There were three different types designed to give the defenders a better viewpoint as well as being a vantage point from which to fire upon the enemy, especially if they were attempting to use scaling ladders.



## Platforms

The first type was fairly simple with four walls topped with battlements for use by archers.

The second was normally brick built and of two storeys. The upper floor would be supported on a number of arches, while the outer facing walls had embrasures for archers. The rooms thus created were used by the soldiers as living quarters and store rooms. Depending upon the size of the platform access to the upper level could be by stairs or merely a rope ladder. The upper storey would provide for further archers to be posted and could also be used as a lookout or in view of its elevation could facilitate signaling to other guard positions along the wall. Signaling devices could vary from torches, to bells, clappers or gongs. The platforms had gates in them so that soldiers could move along the wall.



The third type was a substantial block house that was either square, oblong or even rounded. These were normally built where there was a steep cliff or precipice. It would be kept stocked with arms and ammunition.

There were some 1,200 blockhouses and watchtowers along the stretch of wall between Beijing and the Shanhai pass. The normal complement of men would be 60 including the officers. Their duties would be organised to include the guarding of the platform and the length of wall under their control. Large jars of gunpowder would be on hand, as well as a stock of arrows and other armaments and missiles that could be hurled down upon any attackers.

The chain of command along the wall varied somewhat during various stages of its history. Emperor Qin Shi Huang (Shi Huangdi of the Qin) had twelve prefectures along the Great wall and by contrast, during the Ming Dynasty it was organised as the Nine Border Garrisons. These nine sectors each had a



commanding officer who would have been selected for both his administrative ability as well as his military skills.

When you visit the Great Wall of China, you can impress your fellow travelers with your expertise if you know a few words of Chinese that describe certain of the features:



Duo kou: (垛口) This is the name for the crenelated battlements on the outer side of the wall. It provided cover for archers who were able to fire onto the enemy through specially constructed slits. These were narrow on the inside but wide on the outside so that the archers had the advantage of a wide angle of vision while enjoying maximum protection. These openings were set at a lower level for use by archers and higher up for lookouts.

Nu Chiang: (女墙 or 宇墙) This is the low parapet on inner side of the wall, usually one meter high. It is built for the safety of both men and horses.

The Single Parapet Wall: (单边长城) These sections ran along steep ridges which formed a natural defence. Quite narrow compared with the more substantial stretches, this part of the structure varied between two to four meters in height. As the terrain formed a barrier the wall facilitated defence of the border by giving the Chinese soldiery the advantage of height and also cover should enemy forces try to make a crossing. The so-called 'Heavenly Ladder' that can be seen in Simatai (120 miles northeast of Beijing in the north of Miyun County) is a fine example. In mountainous country where there are rocky outcrops, natural undressed stone was used in the construction.

Barrier wall: (障墙) This is a row of embrasured walls built vertically to the main body of the Wall (Great Wall).

Ma dao: (马道) Ramps and ladders within the pass provided access for both horses and men to the top of the wall. The ramp is five to six meters wide with one-meter-high Nu Chiang running on the inner side of it. The incline was approximately 30 degrees and to give the horses a foothold raised courses of bricks were set across the ramp. This was usually achieved by laying these rows of bricks side-on whereas the bricks were laid flat to form the main carriageway.



Drainage system: (排水系统) Drainage channels and waterspouts were built at intervals through which the rain drained away. The waterspout usually extended for one meter beyond the wall and a stone receptacle below it ensured the water was directed away from the foundations.

Wen Cheng: (瓮城) This is the parapet shielding the top of a gate. It is usually built in a shape of "U" on the main direction of approach of the marauders who could be a threat.



Luo cheng: (罗城) This is the extended protection outside the gates of Wen cheng, often topped with a watch tower. So it is the first defensive wall against invaders.

Pu fang: (铺房) This is a shelter, often made of wood, that protected the guards on a platform.

Chuen: (穿门) This is a door leading to a flight of steps built into the body of the wall and giving access to the top and other structures such as the towers.

## Sections of the wall:

Ready to show you an incredible diversity of scenery and ethnic people along its way.



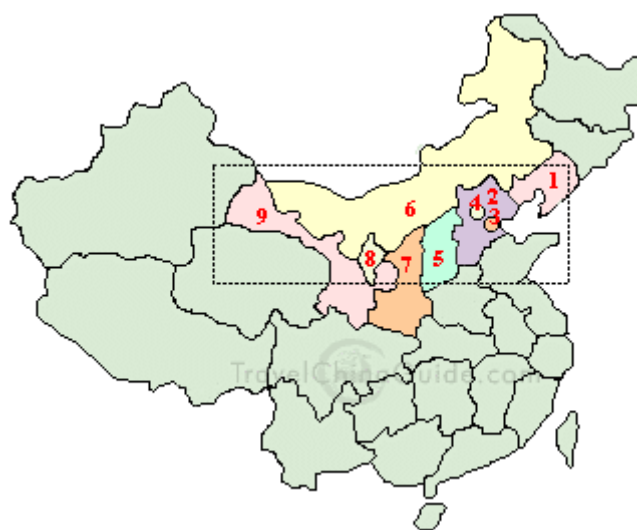
The Great Wall as we see today was mostly built during the Ming Dynasty. It starts from Shanhaiguan Pass in the east to Jiayuguan Pass in the west traversing provinces of Liaoning, Hebei, Beijing, Tianjin, Shanxi, Inner Mongolia, Ningxia, Shaanxi and Gansu. >> [more...](#)

## Maps of the Great Wall of China :

 [Great Wall in China of list](#)

1. [Great Wall in Liaoning](#)
2. [Great Wall in Hebei](#)
3. [Great Wall in Tianjin](#)
4. [Great Wall in Beijing](#)
5. [Great Wall in Shanxi](#)
6. [Great Wall in Inner Mongolia](#)
7. [Great Wall in Shaanxi](#)
8. [Great Wall in Ningxia](#)
9. [Great Wall in Gansu](#)

 [China Pictures of Great Wall](#)



The Great Wall, extensive bulwark erected in ancient China, is one of the largest building-construction projects ever carried out, running (with all its branches) about 4,500 miles (7,300 km) east to west from Shanhaiguan Pass near Bo Hai (Gulf of Bohai) to Jiayuguan Pass (in modern Gansu province) traversing [Liaoning](#), [Hebei](#), Tianjin, [Beijing](#), Shanxi, Inner Mongolia, Shaanxi, Ningxia, Gansu. Without its branches and other secondary sections, the wall extends for some 4,160 miles (6,700 km), often tracing the crestlines of hills and mountains as it snakes across the Chinese countryside.



## Protection of the wall:

The China Great Wall Academy has called for greater protection of this important relic.

Following a forty-five day long survey of 101 sections of the Wall in different provinces, the China Great Wall Academy reported on December 12, 2002 that the forces of nature and destruction at the hand of mankind are bringing about the gradual reduction of its extent with the result that less than 30% remains in good condition. The Academy has called for greater protection of this important relic. >> [more...](#)



## Protection of the Great Wall

No one who has seen something of the Great Wall of China can deny that this wonder of ancient military fortification is a fantastic relic from the past that also bears witness to human endeavour. The Wall attracts hundreds of thousands of visitors each year from all parts of the world. The Great Wall is probably the most widely recognised and enduring symbol of China and it has been rightly said, "The man who doesn't visit the Wall has never been to China."



In its entirety, the Great Wall, or to give it its Chinese name Wan Li Chang Cheng, stretches over 10,000 li or 5,000 kilometres. Following a forty-five day long survey of 101 sections of the Wall in different provinces, the China Great Wall Academy reported on December 12, 2002 that this distance is now merely an historic record. The forces of nature and destruction at the hand of mankind are bringing about the gradual reduction of its extent with the result that less than 30% remains in good condition. The Academy has called for greater protection of this important relic.



## Fight against natural calamity

On our visit to Yulin, we found that the desertification of the area is very serious. Although the government has had a forestation programme in place over the past two decades, sands drifting in the winds from Mao Wu Su Desert to the north continue to wreak havoc, especially in springtime. Much of the ruined Wall has been buried by sand and the only clue to its whereabouts is the scattered beacon towers. Photographs taken of the [recent excavations of the Western Gate of Chang Le Bu](#) indicate clearly how this once grand fortress had been completely lost under the sand.

While the effects of nature are gradual and may take effect over a quite lengthy period, the deliberate destruction by man could totally deplete the Wall in a very short space of time.

Should the new be built from the old?

The Yulin stretch of Wall lies along the route of the Yulin-Shenmu Road. Local people have described how much of the Wall here was destroyed when the road was constructed. We came across a number of beacon towers as we travelled along this road and their position confirms that the highway has been constructed on the line of the



grand old fortification. Recent reports show that this is not an isolated case. In Ningxia, Shanxi, and Gansu Provinces as well as in Inner Mongolia thousands of miles of the tamped earth wall have been quarried. The rich soil from the ramparts has been used as fertilizer, while in some areas bricks have been taken for road construction as well as reservoir and house building. Some parts have been dynamited and the stone sold off. This means that traces of the wall are hard to find in some areas. This begs the question "Is it right that the new should be built from the old?"

In a small village near [Chang Le Bu](#) we came across a peasant who was busily building a stockyard of bricks taken from the Wall. Nearby, it was plain to see tracks where material had been hacked from the surface of the Wall. Although there are regulations forbidding the construction of new buildings within 150 metres of the Wall, it appears that this official announcement has failed to reach every corner of the city.

Rebuild or destroy it?

The Report cites two examples of improper Wall "restorations".

On its arrival in Dong Jia Kou, a small village in Funing County, Hebei Province, the research group found a section of the wall was being restored. It had been





whitewashed and the whole section appeared like a lime wall. This kind of restoration is more akin to defacing rather than protecting. In another location, the Report states that "new" sections have been built on the original site of the Wall. This had been done with bricks and stone, whereas the according to historical record the original Wall was of tamped earth. It is as a consequence of this kind of thing that it becomes difficult for archaeologists to trace the actual ruins.

Swarms of tourists from all over the world have come to see this ancient Chinese wonder with the result that it has become trendy to walk along the Wall. The current problem is to strike a balance between the need to protect our cultural heritage and the economic benefit it engenders through the tourism it brings to the country. So many questions remain to be answered with regard to preservation and the



development of tourism. Clearly, steps have to be taken to preserve the Wall in a manner that does not detract from its cultural importance while keeping it in good condition for the benefit of future generations.

### Culture of the wall:

Unfolding a considerable part of Chinese culture beyond the wall.



The Great Wall has long been incorporated into Chinese mythology and popular symbolism. The most beautiful of several legends is about the collapse of a section of the Great Wall caused by Meng Jiangnu, who cried bitterly over the death of her husband in the construction of the Great Wall. This legend has been spread widely through textbooks, folk songs and traditional operas. It is well-known in China. >> [more...](#)

## Culture of the Great Wall :

In the north of China, there lies a 6,700-kilometer-long (4,161-mile-long) ancient wall. Now well-known as the Great Wall of China, it starts at the Jiayuguan Pass of Gansu Province in the west and ends at the Shanhaiguan Pass of Hebei Province in the east. As one of the Eight Wonders in the world, the Great Wall of China has become the symbol of the Chinese nation and its culture.

Lots of beautiful legends and stories about the Great Wall took place following along the construction, and since that time these stories have spread around the country. Those that happened during construction are abundant, such as Meng Jiangnu's story and the legend of the Jiayuguan Pass. Meng Jiangnu's story is the most famous and widely spread of all the legends about the Great Wall. The story happened during the Qin Dynasty (221BC-206BC). It tells of how Meng Jiangnu's bitter weeping made a section of the Great Wall collapse. Meng Jiangnu's husband Fan Qiliang was caught by federal officials and sent to build the Great Wall. Meng Jiangnu heard nothing from him after his departure, so she set out to look for



him. Unfortunately, by the time she reached the great wall, she discovered that her husband had already died. Hearing the bad news, she cried her heart out. Her howl caused the collapse of a part of the Great Wall. This story indicates that the Great Wall is the production of tens of thousands of Chinese commoners.

Another legend about the Jiayuguan Pass tells of a workman named Yi Kaizhan in the Ming Dynasty (1368BC-1644BC) who was proficient in arithmetic. He calculated that it would need 99,999 bricks to build the Jiayuguan Pass. The supervisor did not believe him and said if they miscalculated by even one brick, then all the workmen would be punished to do hard work for three years. After the completion of the project, one brick was left behind the Xiwong city gate. The supervisor was happy at the sight of the brick and ready to punish them. However Yi Kaizhan said with deliberation that the brick was put there by a supernatural being to fix the wall. A tiny move would cause the collapse of the wall. Therefore the brick was kept there and never moved. It can still be found there today on the tower of the Jiayuguan Pass.

In addition to the above-mentioned stories about the construction of the Great Wall, there are also plenty of stories about current scenic spots. A famous one is the legend of the Beacon Tower. This story happened during the Western Zhou Dynasty (11th century BC-711 BC). King You had a queen named Bao Si, who was very pretty. King You liked her very much, however Bao Si never smiled. An official gave a suggestion that setting the beacon tower on fire would frighten the King's subjects, and might make the queen smile. King You liked the idea. The subjects were fooled and Bao Si smiled at the sight of the chaos. Later enemies invaded Western Zhou, King You set the beacon tower on fire to ask for help. No subjects came to help because they had been fooled once before. Thus, King Zhou was killed by the enemy and Western Zhou came to an end.

Beautiful stories and legends about the Great Wall help to keep alive Chinese history and culture. In each dynasty after the building of the Great Wall, many more stories were created and spread.

Legend:

→[Meng Jiangnu's Bitter Weeping](#)

→[A Legend about Beacon Tower](#)

→[Legends of the Jiayuguan Pass](#)

→[Legend about Yumenguan Pass \(Jade Gate Pass\)](#)

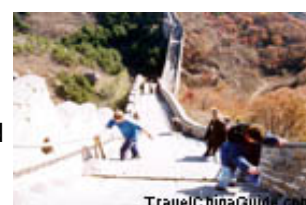
→[Legend of Wife Tower](#)

→[A Legend about Shanhaiguan Pass](#)

→[Shanhaiguan Pass - Calligraphy on the Tablet](#)

## Travel of the wall:

Elaborate tour plans make travel comfortable, memorable, enjoyable and informative.



If you prefer to see the wall in a relatively natural state, visit Simatai, 110km north-east of Beijing. This part of the Wall is the best choice, for it is still in its original state without being developed into a popular tourist attraction due to its distance and little public transportation options. >> [more...](#)

## Simatai Great Wall



To the east of the Jinshanling stretch of the Great Wall there lies the quiet and remote Simatai section. The ruinous state of this part of the Wall gives it an air of authenticity that has earned it the reputation of being the most beautiful section of the Great Wall. Unlike the sections to be seen at [Badaling](#) or [Mutianyu](#) that have undergone extensive restoration, the wall at Simatai has received very little attention. Here, the wall really looks as one would expect it to look some 500 years after it was built during the Ming Dynasty. The local people are proud of this monument and proclaim that it was as a consequence of visiting Simatai that UNESCO was convinced the wall should be listed as a World Heritage site. It towers over the nearby villages and farmland as it winds its way like the spiny back of a dragon over the sharply clipped peaks of the mountains.

Because this section has retained much of its original 500 year old features it offers a quite hazardous passage to those who wish to walk along it. Needless to say, the inherent dangers offer a challenge that is quite irresistible to dedicated hikers in quest of adventure. An additional attraction is that as Simatai is some 130 kilometers (80 miles) to the north-east of Beijing it is well beyond the reach of the huge crowds of tourists that throng the more popular and accessible parts of the Wall.

Enthusiasts, who like to study military architecture, find much to interest them along this 20 kilometer barrier as it appears to dance from east to west over the mountain ridges interrupted only by the presence of the Simatai reservoir that divides it in two. Here, those who are keenly interested can study and compare a wide range of watchtowers, blockhouses and platforms representative of the many styles to be found along the Great Wall.



Visitors have a choice of accessing the wall from either Jinshanling or Simatai. Most enter at Jinshanling for a fee of 30 Yuan and make their way to Simatai. It is at Simatai that the Wall takes the hiker upwards to the perilous Simatai ridge.

There are in total sixteen watchtowers set at intervals along this expanse and it will take about two hours to reach the twelfth watchtower. Beyond this point the condition of the stairs and walkways deteriorates and the passage becomes both steep and narrow which means that it is often safer to use the adjacent footpath rather than try to walk on the Wall itself. A lack of firm footholds creates quite a struggle and in places it may prove necessary to go on all fours in order to make any progress.

For 100 meters between the fourteenth and fifteenth watchtowers there is an incline at an 80 degree angle with only a single parapet wall. It is quite narrow compared with more substantial sections of the wall and in height it varies from two to four meters from its base. The terrain forms a natural barrier while the Wall gave the Chinese soldiery a combination of protection and an advantage of height from which to defend themselves against enemy attack. The defences are reinforced by rows of embrasured walls built vertically to the main body of the Wall so as to withstand any possible incursion by enemy soldiers. As this section of the Wall is so steep, it is known as the "Stairway to Heaven". The fifteenth tower has been named "The Fairy Tower" and is noted for its fine architectural features which include stone sculptures of twin lotus flowers on its arched doorways. Only the bravest hikers will climb the "Stairway to Heaven" but those who do and reach the sixteenth and highest tower will be rewarded with a breathtaking view. Known as 'Wang Jing Lou' [Watching Beijing Tower] the sixteenth watchtower with its elevation of 986 meters is the highest visitor attraction in the environs of Beijing. At night the lights of the city, when seen from the watchtower, are a wondrous sight to behold.

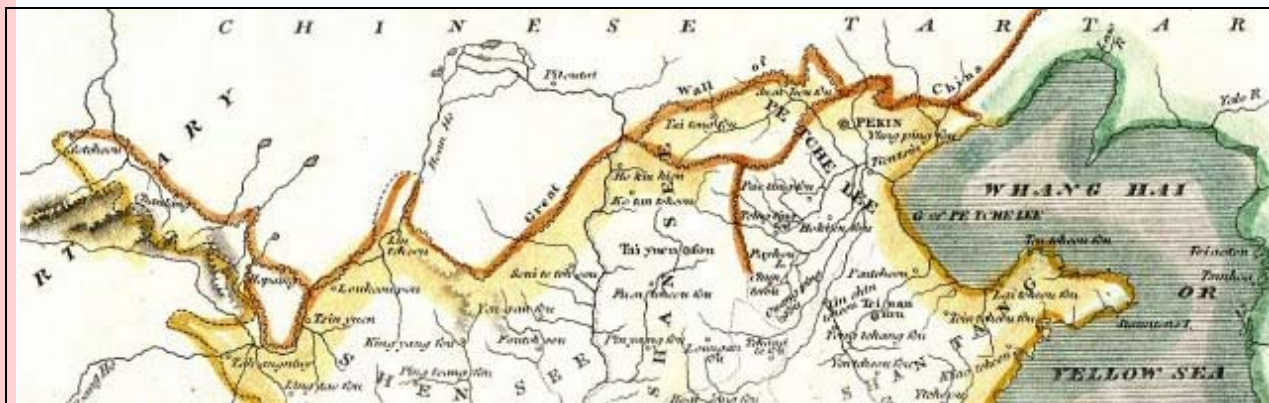


The descent can be made to the seventeenth watchtower and from there along the hill path to the exit gate.



# Great Wall of China

From Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia



*Great Wall of China shown in a map from 1805*



*The Great Wall in the [winter](#)*

The **Great Wall** ([Traditional Chinese](#): 長城; [Simplified Chinese](#): 长城; [pinyin](#): Chángchéng) is a series of stone and earthen [fortifications](#) in [China](#), built between [5th century BC](#) and the [17th century](#) to protect the northern borders of the [Chinese Empire](#) during the rule of [successive dynasties](#). The most recent set of fortifications dates from the [Ming Dynasty](#), and its longest section stretches [6,352 km](#) ([3,948 miles](#)) from [Shanhai Pass](#) in the east to [Lop Nur](#) in the west, along

an arc that roughly delineates the southern edge of [Inner Mongolia](#).<sup>[1]</sup> It is generally considered to be the [longest man-made structure](#) on earth.

An earlier wall was notably built by [Qin Shi Huang](#) during the [Qin Dynasty](#) between [220 BC](#) and [200 BC](#), but little of this wall remains today and its exact length and course are uncertain.

**This article may require [cleanup](#) to meet Wikipedia's [quality standards](#).**

Please discuss this issue on the [talk page](#) or [replace this tag](#) with a [more specific message](#).

This article has been tagged since **November 2006**.

## Notable areas

Most tourists visit the part of the wall in the “ North Pass” of [Juyongguan](#) pass, known as the [Badaling](#). When used by the Chinese to protect their land, this wall was well-manned by guards so as to guard

China' s capital, [Beijing](#). However, Badaling is very difficult to access. Made out of stone and bricks from the hills, this portion of the Great Wall is 7.8 meters high and 5 meters wide.

Representing the Ming Great Wall, Jinshanling is considered to have the most striking sights of the Great Wall. It runs 11 kilometers long, ranges from 5 to 8 meters in height, and 6 meters across the bottom, narrowing up to 5 meters across the top. Wangjinglou is one of Jinshanling' s 67 [watchtowers](#), rising 980

meters above sea level.

## Contents

- [1 Notable areas](#)
- [2 Characteristics](#)
- [3 Condition](#)
- [4 Watchtowers and barracks](#)
- [5 Recognition](#)
- [6 From outer space](#)
- [7 See also](#)
- [8 Further reading](#)
- [9 References](#)
- [10 External links](#)
- [11 Notes](#)
- [12 Gallery](#)

Shanhaiguan Great Wall is referred to as the “ Museum of the Construction of the Great Wall” , because of a temple, the [Meng Jiang-Nu Temple](#), built during the [Song Dynasty](#). The Shanhaiguan Great Wall is known for many different things, both with the construction of the wall and also its history.

The first pass of the Great Wall was located on the [Shanhaiguan](#) (known as the “ Number One Pass Under Heaven” ), the first mountain the Great Wall climbs, [Jia Shan](#), is also located here, as is the Jiumenkou, which is the only portion of the wall that was built as a bridge.

## Characteristics

Before the use of bricks, the Great Wall was mainly built from earth, stones and wood. Transporting the large quantity of materials required for construction was difficult, so builders always tried to use local resources. Over the mountain ranges, the stones of the mountain were exploited and used; while in the plains, earth was rammed into [solid blocks](#) to be used in construction.

Before the [Qin Dynasty](#) (221-206 BC) because earth buildings could withstand the strength of small arms such as swords and spears, combined with low technology of productivity, the Great Wall was primarily built by stamping earth between board frames. Consequently walls were built consisting of just earth or a mixture of earth and gravel. No fortresses were constructed along the wall, and no bricks were used in the gates at the wall's passes. Much of these sections have eroded away. During the time following the [Han Dynasty](#) (202-220 AD) earth and crude stones remained common building tools.

[Bricks](#) were heavily used in many areas of the wall during the Ming Dynasty, as well as materials such as [tiles](#), [lime](#), and stone. Bricks were easier to work with than earth and stone as their small size and light weight made them convenient to carry and augmented construction speed. Additionally, they could bear more weight and retain their integrity better than rammed earth. Stone, though more difficult to use, can better hold well under its own weight than brick. Consequently, stones cut in rectangular shapes were used for the foundation, inner and outer [brims](#), and [gateways](#) of the wall.

The steps that form the Great Wall of China are very steep and tall in some areas of the wall. Tourists often become exhausted climbing the wall, and traverse no more than a mile because of this reason. Along the wall on either side, are “holes” where the builders of the Great Wall didn’t place any bricks. They are a little over a foot tall, and about 9 inches in width. These holes were used to shoot arrows out of when being attacked.

## Condition



*The Great Wall at [Mutianyu](#), near [Beijing](#)*

While some portions near tourist centers have been preserved and even reconstructed, in many locations the Wall is in disrepair, serving as a playground for some villages and a source of stones to rebuild houses and roads. Sections of the Wall are also prone to [graffiti](#) and [vandalism](#). Parts have been destroyed because the Wall is in the way of construction sites. Intact or repaired portions of the Wall near developed tourist areas are often plagued with hawkers of tourist [kitsch](#). After one of the many runs for charity along the Great Wall, H.J.P

Arnold questioned several runners about the status of the wall. A typical response was "The wall was clearly discernible and only moderately eroded along 22% of the run. The Wall was usually discernible but frequently broken/eroded 41% of the run, and scarcely discernible and almost totally eroded 37% of the run."

## Watchtowers and barracks



*Watchtower*

The wall is complemented by defensive fighting stations, to which wall defenders may retreat if overwhelmed. With more than 10,000 watch towers (which were used to store weapons, house troops, and send smoke signals), each tower has unique and restricted stairways and entries to confuse attackers. Barracks and administrative centers are located at larger intervals. Communication between the army units along the length of the Great Wall, including the ability to call reinforcements and warn



garrisons of enemy movements, was of high importance. Signal towers were built upon hill tops or other high points along the wall for their visibility.

## Recognition



The Great Wall of China in 1907, as photographed by [Herbert Ponting](#). Over the centuries, there had been a number of attempts to build some sort of fortification or earthworks along this route, but the wall that appears here was built during the [Ming Dynasty](#) (1368-1644).

The Wall was made a [UNESCO World Heritage Site](#) in [1987](#).

[Mao Zedong](#) had a saying, [traditional Chinese](#): *Bú dào Chángchéng fēi í hǎo hàn*, roughly meaning "You're not a real man if you haven't climbed the Great Wall". Originally this saying was used to bolster his revolution in trekking north. But due to erosion of time the saying has been reduced to a promotional slogan for the Great Wall of China. In Badaling (north of Beijing) the 'real man stone' can be found with the saying engraved in it.

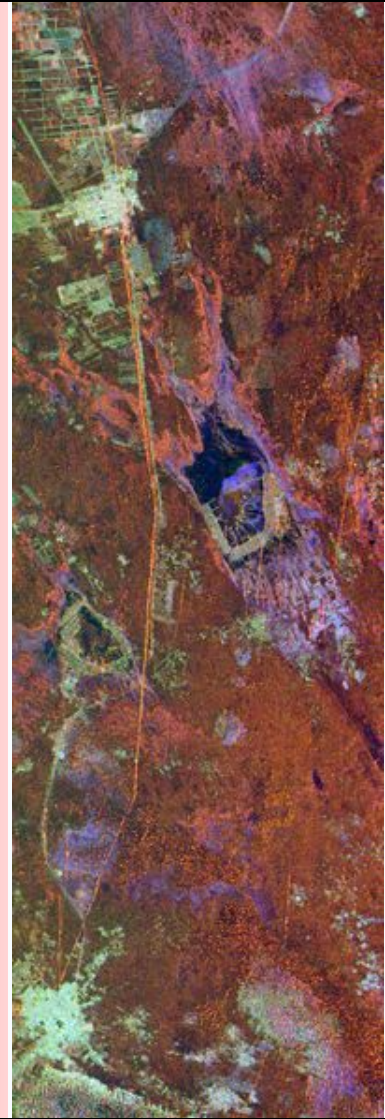
## From outer space

[Richard Halliburton](#)'s [1938](#) book *Second Book of Marvels* said the Great Wall is the only man-made object visible from the [moon](#), and a [Ripley's Believe It or Not!](#) cartoon from the same decade makes a similar claim. This belief has persisted, assuming [urban legend](#) status, sometimes even entering school textbooks. [Arthur Waldron](#), author of the most authoritative history of the Great Wall, has speculated that the belief might go back to the fascination with [the "canals" once believed to exist on Mars](#). (The logic was simple: If people on Earth can see the Martians' canals, the Martians might be able to see the Great Wall.)

In fact, the Great Wall is only 30 feet tall and is about the same color as the soil surrounding it. It cannot be seen by the unaided eye from the distance of the moon, much less from Mars. If the Great Wall were visible from the moon, it would be easy to see from near-Earth orbit, but from near-Earth orbit it is barely visible, and only under nearly perfect conditions; it is no more conspicuous than many other manmade objects.

Astronaut [William Pogue](#) thought he had seen it from [Skylab](#) but discovered he was actually looking at the [Grand Canal of China](#) near Beijing. He spotted the Great Wall with [binoculars](#), but said that "it wasn't visible to the unaided eye." US Senator [Jake Garn](#) claimed to be able to see the Great Wall with the naked eye from a [space shuttle](#) orbit in the early 1980s, but his claim has been disputed by several US astronauts. Chinese astronaut [Yang Liwei](#) said he could not see it at all.





*The Great Wall of China as seen in a false-color radar image from the Space Shuttle, taken in April 1994*

Veteran US astronaut [Gene Cernan](#) has stated: "At Earth orbit of 160 km to 320 km high, the Great Wall of China is, indeed, visible to the naked eye." [Ed Lu](#), [Expedition 7](#) Science Officer aboard the [International Space Station](#), adds that, "it's less visible than a lot of other objects. And you have to know where to look."

[Neil Armstrong](#) stated about the view from [Apollo 11](#): "I do not believe that, at least with my eyes, there would be any man-made object that I could see. I have not yet found somebody who has told me they've seen the Wall of China from Earth orbit. ... I've asked various people, particularly Shuttle guys, that have been many orbits around China in the daytime, and the ones I've talked to didn't see it." [2]

[Leroy Chiao](#), a [Chinese-American](#) astronaut, took a photograph from the [International Space Station](#) that shows the wall. It was so indistinct that the photographer was not certain he had actually captured it. Based on the photograph, the state-run [China Daily](#) newspaper concluded that the Great Wall can be seen from space with the naked eye, under favorable viewing conditions, if one knows exactly where to look [3].

These inconsistent results suggest the visibility of the Great Wall depends greatly on the seeing conditions, and also the direction of the light (oblique lighting widens the shadow). Features on the moon that are dramatically visible at times can be undetectable at other times due to changes in lighting direction; the same would be true of the Great Wall.



Based on the optics of resolving power (distance versus the width of the iris: a few millimetres for the human eye, metres for large telescopes) an object of reasonable contrast to its surroundings some four thousand miles in diameter (such as the Australian land mass) would be visible to the unaided eye from the moon. But the Great Wall is of course not a disc but more like a thread, and a thread a foot long would not be visible from a hundred yards away, even though a human head is.

## See also

- [Defense of the Great Wall](#)
- [Great Wall of China hoax](#)
- [Great Wall of China Marathon](#)
- [List of walls](#)
- [Badaling](#)
- [Jumenbu](#)
- [Separation barrier](#)
- [Great Firewall of China](#)

## Further reading

- Roland Michaud (Photographer), Sabrina Michaud (Photographer), Michel Jan, *The Great Wall of China* (2001) [ISBN 0-7892-0736-2](#)
- Arthur Waldron, *The Great Wall of China: From History to Myth*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press. 1990.
- H.J.P Arnold, *The Great Wall: is it or isn't it?* Astronomy Now, 1995

## References

This does not cite its [references or sources](#).

Please help [improve this article](#) by introducing appropriate citations. ([help](#), [get involved!](#))

This article has been tagged since **June 2006**.

- <sup>^</sup> [\[1\]](#)

[\[4\]](#)

## External links

- [Great Wall, Beijing, A Photographic Tour](#)
- [Photos of Great Wall in Simatai](#)
- [The Great Wall of China exhibition at the Powerhouse Museum, Sydney](#)
- [Great Wall: Ticket Price; Local Maps](#)
- [Travel Guide, historical information](#)
- [/ Google Earth Great Chinese Wall near Beijing](#)

## Notes

<sup>1</sup> 10,000 *li* = 5,760 km (3,580 miles). In Chinese, 10,000 [figuratively](#) means "infinite", and the number should not be interpreted for its actual value, but rather as meaning the "infinitely long wall".

## Gallery



*Great Wall Summer  
2006*



*Great Wall Summer  
2006*



*Great Wall Roof  
Carvings*

## *the Great Wall*

The Chinese call the wall "Wan-Li Qang-Qeng", which means "10,000-Li Long Wall" (10,000 Li = about 5,000 km). The Great Wall is one of the largest building construction projects ever completed. It stretches across the mountains of northern China, winding north and northwest from Beijing. It is constructed of masonry, rocks, and packed-earth.

It is over 6,000 kilometers long., and its thickness ranges from about 4.5 to 9 meters (15 to 30 feet) and is up to 7.5 meters (25 feet) tall.



the Great Wall

For over two thousand years the Great Wall separated two cultures, the nomads in the north and the agricultural way of life in the south. The nomads did not know how to cast iron and steel while the people in the south would buy livestock from the nomads. One can imagine that trade between the people of the north and the south would be mutually beneficial. In fact, however, there were constant military conflicts because trade between both sides of the wall was forbidden. A visit to the Great Wall is a review of history of over two thousand years.

Construction of the Wall began in the 7th century B.C. The then separatist ducal states in the north built walls around their territories to ward off invasions from neighbouring states. In 221 B.C.



the Great Wall at Night

Qin Shi Huangdi unified China from seven Warring States and linked and extended these walls, laying the foundation for the present Great Wall. Armies were stationed along the wall as a first line of defense against the invading nomadic Hsiung Nu tribes north of China (the Huns). Signal fires from the Wall provided early warning of an attack. In later dynasties, the Wall was repaired and strengthened. The present Great Wall was built in the Ming Dynasty over 600 years ago, as it was enlarged to 6,400 kilometers (4,000 miles) and renovated with watch-towers and cannons added.

Construction of the Great Wall was supervised by General Meng Tian, who descended from a great line of military generals and architects. His ingenuity can be seen in the efficient (though inhumane) building policy, the consideration of topography, and the utilisation of natural barriers. However, he met with a sad end, for he was accused of treason and executed along with his brother Meng Yi. Legend has it that his



soldiers, out of respect for him, loaded some earth in their uniforms to build a tomb for him, which still stands today.

Much of the original Qin dynasty Great Wall has deteriorated; however, the remains can still be seen in the form of compressed earth on the plains and loess plateaus, sand in the desert and stones in mountainous areas.

---

## Parts of the Great Wall

### BaDaLing

Badaling is the "North Pass" of Juyongguan Pass, the important strategic pass of the Great Wall. It used to be heavily guarded because it was the outpost to safeguard the capital, Beijing. In 1505, a city on the pass with two opposite gates, the "JuYong Outskirts and Key-to-North-Gate", was built. The terrain is strategically situated and access to it is difficult. The Wall at Badaling is 7.8 meters high and 5 meters wide built with rectangular slabs of stones and green bricks from the hills. Most tourists are permitted to visit only Badaling Great Wall.



Archway

### JinShanLing

Jinshanling has 67 watchtowers along 11 kilometers of the Great Wall, with each watchtower serving as an example of different architecture. It is 5 to 8 meters high and 6 meters across at the base and 5 meters across at the top. The walkway along the top is paved with square bricks that provide a level surface wide enough to construct or erect batteries.



Twists and Turns

Watchtower Wangjinglou is 980 meters above sea level. It is said that from here, one can catch sight of Beijing's light at dawn in Autumn. Jinshanling has the most spectacular sights of the whole Great Wall and is representative of the Ming Great Wall.

### HuangYaGuan

Huangyuguan was first built in 557 A.D. and rebuilt with bricks during the Ming Dynasty. The whole Great Wall lies on a precipitous ridge of mountains. It has an eastern cliff that serves as a screen against invasions and a western precipice as support. It had ancient defensive structures such as fortresses, high-walls, water passes, beacon towers, and sheer precipices. Today we can also see a Museum, the Beiji Temple, and Bagua City (with the Bagua Labyrinth).

## ShanHaiGuan Great Wall

Shanhaiguan is north of Qinhuangdao city, where one can find the Old Dragon's Head (the only part of the Great Wall that meets the sea), the "Number One Pass Under Heaven" (the first pass of the Great Wall), Jia Shan (the first mountain the Great Wall climbs), Jiumenkou (the only part of the Great Wall in the shape of a bridge), and Meng Jiang-Nu Temple built during the Song Dynasty. Hence, Shanjaiguan Great Wall is called the "Museum of the Construction of the Great Wall."



a Wall's Viewpoint

## Grand Canal (of China)

<http://library.thinkquest.org/20443/grandcanal.html>

# *The Grand Canal*

The Grand Canal is the world's longest man-made waterway, being 1,800 kilometers long. The canal connects the present cities of Beijing in the north and Hangzhou in the south, which served as dynastic capitals in the past, and contains 24 locks and 60 bridges. Since most of China's major rivers flow from west to east, the fact that the Grand Canal runs north and south provides it as an important connector between the Yangtze River valley and the Yellow River valley, and other minor river systems. It is being restored as a water-diversion conduit.

The series of waterways in eastern China is not only very long, but also very old, which makes the Grand Canal a masterpiece of both the ancient and the new. The oldest section, that between the Yangtze River and the Huang He, was constructed during the 4th and 5th centuries B.C.



the Grand Canal from Above

The building of the canal began in 486 B.C. during the Zhou Dynasty. It was extended during the Qi Dynasty, and later by Emporor Yangdi of the Sui Dynasty during six years of furious construction from 605-610 A.D.

The shifting of China's "breadbasket" from the wheat and millet producing regions of the north to the rice fields of the south prompted Sui Dynasty emperors in the 6th century to construct the canal linking this productive southern region to the northern captials.



the Grand Canal, a Link

Beginning in 584, existing portions of the canal, dating as far back as the Zhou danasty, were linked together into a unified system that streched some 1800 kilometers.

The southern section connected the north to Yangzhou on the Yangtze river. A branch built in 608-609 that led to the Beijing region was designed to supply the armies protecting the north and northeastern frontiers. The Grand Canal greatly improved the administration and defense of China and served to increase the economic interdependence of the north and south.

The political unity under the Sui made it possible to build the Grand Imperial Canal. Building techniques were primitive, and the peasants, who did most of the work, endured much suffering.

About half of the six million men recruited to build the Canal died at their work. This contributed to the downfall of the shortlived Sui Dynasty (589-618).



Traveling on the Grand Canal

This "artificial Nile" accomplished for China what the real Nile had done for Egypt thousands of years ago. It integrated the north and the south and formed the basis for a unified national economy. It also restored the authority of the imperial officials who were needed for the administration and maintenance of the Canal. Hence the foundations were laid for the brilliant epoch of the Tang Dynasty (618-907) as China emerged as the most powerful state in the world.



# Grand Canal of China

From Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia



*Grand Canal of China*

The **Grand Canal of China** ([Simplified Chinese](#): 大运河; [Traditional Chinese](#): 大運河; [pinyin](#): Dà Yùnhé), also known as the **Beijing-Hangzhou Grand Canal** ([Simplified Chinese](#): 京杭大运河; [Traditional Chinese](#): 京杭大運河; [pinyin](#): Jīng Háng Dà Yùnhé) is the largest ancient [canal](#) or artificial [river](#) in the world. It passes through the [Chinese mainland](#) cities of [Beijing](#) and [Tianjin](#) and the provinces of [Hebei](#), [Shandong](#), [Jiangsu](#) and [Zhejiang](#). The oldest parts of the canal date

back to the [5th century BC](#).

## Contents

- [1 History](#)
  - [1.1 Early History](#)
  - [1.2 The Formation of the Grand Canal in the Sui Dynasty](#)
  - [1.3 Grand Canal in the Later Dynasties](#)
- [2 Course](#)
  - [2.1 Jiangnan Canal](#)
  - [2.2 Li Canal](#)
  - [2.3 Zhong Canal](#)
  - [2.4 Lu Canal](#)
  - [2.5 The South Canal](#)
- [2.6 The North Canal and Tonghui River](#)
- [3 Length and Elevations](#)
- [4 Uses](#)
  - [4.1 Transportation](#)
  - [4.2 Eastern Route of the South-North Water Transfer Project](#)
- [5 See also](#)
- [6 External links](#)
- [7 References](#)

## History

### Early History

The concept of the canal arose in the late [Spring and Autumn Period](#) (722-481 BC), when [Fu Chai](#), the Duke of [Wu](#) (present-day [Suzhou](#)), ventured north to conquer other kingdoms. He ordered a canal be constructed to transport soldiers, which became known as the Han Gou, or 'Han-country Conduit'.

The first cut was made near [Yangzhou](#), [Jiangsu](#) to guide the waters of the

[Yangtze River](#) northbound. According to a passage in one of the books of [Confucius](#), it is thought to have been built circa [486 BC](#). It is the most ancient part of the canal and connected the Yangtze with the [Huai River](#). This section was repaired and enlarged in the [3rd century AD](#).

## The Formation of the Grand Canal in the Sui Dynasty

The Grand Canal was lengthened during the [Sui Dynasty \(581-618\)](#). In [604](#), [Emperor Yang Guang](#) (or Sui Yangdi) of the Sui Dynasty left [Chang'an](#) (present-day [Xi'an](#)), and made his rounds in [Luoyang](#). In [605](#), the [capital](#) was transferred from Chang'an to Luoyang, and the emperor ordered the excavation of a Grand Canal linking [Beijing](#) and [Hangzhou](#).

It took over six years to link the five river systems of the Grand Canal. When completed, it connected the [Hai River](#), [Yellow River](#), [Huai River](#), [Qiantang River](#), and [Yangtze River](#). The southern section, between the Yangtze and Hangzhou, was named the [Jiang Nan He](#) (江南河). The central portion of the Grand Canal stretched from [Yangzhou](#) to Luoyang, and could be divided into two sections. The section between the Yangtze River and the Huai River was called the Shan Yang Du (山阳渚), most of which was rebuilt on the course of the existing canal. The other section was called the Tong Ji Qu (通济渠), connecting the Yellow River and the Huai River. The northern portion of the Grand Canal was named the Yong Ji Qu (永济渠). It linked Beijing and Luoyang, and was used to transport troops for the [Goguryeo-Sui War](#)<sup>[1]</sup>. The total length of the canal at that time was approximately 2500km.

## Grand Canal in the Later Dynasties

After the [An Shi Rebellion](#) during the [Tang Dynasty \(618-907\)](#), the economy of north China was greatly damaged and never recovered due to wars and to constant floodings of the Yellow River. The Grand Canal was the main route for the shipping of cereals from the [Yangtze River Delta](#) to North China. The city of [Kaifeng](#) was a major depot on the course, and grew gradually, later becoming the capital of the [Song Dynasty \(960-1279\)](#).

During the [Yuan Dynasty \(1271-1368\)](#), the capital of China was moved to Beijing and eliminated the need for the Grand Canal to flow west to Kaifeng or Luoyang. A shortcut was dug across [Shandong](#) province in the years [1280](#) to [1283](#). This shortened the overall canal by as much as 700km, making the total length about 1800km. Since then, the course of the Grand Canal has not changed much.

The entire canal was reconstructed between [1411](#) and [1415](#) during the [Ming Dynasty](#) by the [Yongle Emperor](#). During the next 400 years it was maintained as the main artery for transporting grain from the Yangtze River Delta to Beijing.

In [1855](#), the Yellow River flooded and changed its course, severing the course of the Grand Canal in Shandong. Because of various factors - the difficulty of crossing the Yellow River, the increased development of an alternative sea route for grain-ships, and the opening of the [Tianjin-Pukou Railway](#)

and [Beijing-Hankou](#) railways, the northern and southern part of canal thereafter remained separate. This reduced the canal's role greatly. Many of its sections fell into disrepair, and some parts became choked with mud. After the founding of the [People's Republic of China](#) in [1949](#), the need for economic development led the authorities to order heavy reconstruction work on the Grand Canal. Currently, the section from [Jining](#) to [Hangzhou](#) is navigable.

## Course

The Grand Canal starts at the north in Beijing and ends in the south in Hangzhou, Zhejiang, with a total length of 1,794 km (1,115 miles). It is nominally divided into seven sections. From south to north these are the Jiangnan canal, the Li canal, the Zhong canal, the Lu canal, the South canal, the North canal, and the Tonghui River.

### Jiangnan Canal



*The Jiangnan Canal*

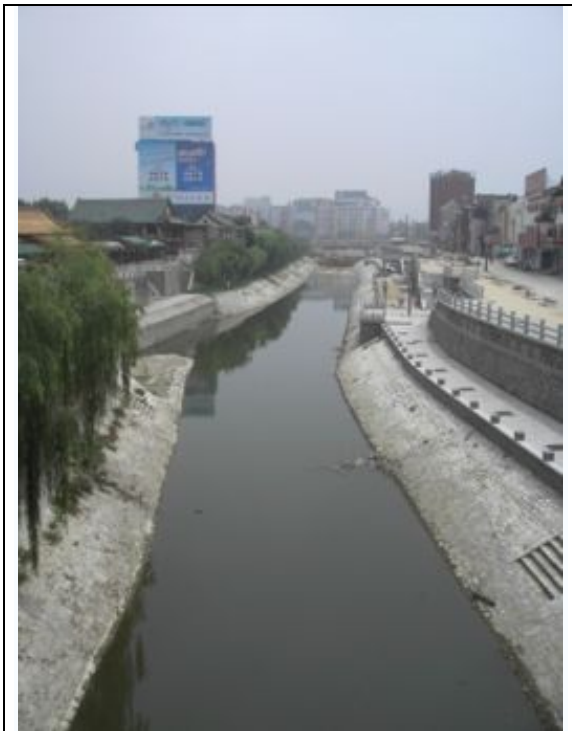
The southern section of the canal, the "Jiangnan Canal", runs from Hangzhou in Zhejiang province, where the canal connects with the Qiantang River, to [Zhenjiang](#) in Jiangsu province, where it crosses the Yangtze River. After leaving Hangzhou, the canal passes around the eastern border of [Lake Tai](#), surrounding in its course the beautiful city of [Suzhou](#), and then moves in a generally northwesterly direction through the fertile districts of Jiangsu, and as far as Zhenjiang on the Yangtze. In this southernmost section, the slope is gentle and water is plentiful (from 7 feet (2.1 m) at low water to 11 feet (3.4 m) and occasionally 13 feet (4 m) at high water). Between Suzhou and Zhenjiang the canal is often over 100 feet (30 m) wide, and in many places its sides are faced with stone. It is spanned by fine stone bridges, and near its banks are many memorial arches and lofty [pagodas](#).

### Li Canal

Between Zhenjiang and Yangzhou the canal cross the Yangtze. The section of canal between Zhenjiang and [Huai'an](#) is called the "Li Canal" (the "Inner Canal"). In this section the current is very strong, making it difficult to traverse upriver going north. At Qingjiangpu(Huai'an), it crosses the dry channel which marks the course of the Yellow River before 1855. This part of the canal skirts several lakes and is fed by the

Huai River as it issues out of [Hongze Lake](#). The land lying to the west of the canal is higher than its bed; while the land to the east is lower than the canal. The two regions are known respectively as *Shanghe* (above the river) and *Xiahe* (below the river). Waste weirs opening on the Xiahe — one of the great rice-producing areas of China — discharge the surplus water during flood season.

## Zhong Canal



*The canal in Jining City*

The next section, from Huai'an to Weishan Lake, is called the "Zhong Canal" (the "Middle Canal"). It largely utilizes existing rivers and follows their original winding paths. In this region it passes through [Luoma Lake](#). There region also boasts many coal mines, as is apparent from the number of coal-barges on the canal.

## Lu Canal

At Weishan Lake, the canal enters Shandong province. The canal here is called the "Lu Canal" (the "Shandong Canal"). Between Huai'an and the present course of the Yellow River, the canal trends northnorthwest, skirting the Shandong massif. The canal passes a series of lagoons - Weishan Lake, Zhaoyang Lake, Dushan Lake and Nanyang Lake. The four form a continous body of water in the summer, which is sometimes called the Southern Four Lakes.

North of Nanyang Lake is the city of [Jining](#). Confucius' hometown, [Qufu](#), is located 60km to the east. Further north, about 30km north of Jining, the highest elevation of the canal is reached at the town of Nanwang, where the canal's bed is 38.5m above sea level. Here the River Wen once entered the canal from the hills to the east, providing water to both the southern and northern parts of the canal. In the 1950s, with the drying up of the Wen, a new canal was dug to the south of the old summit section and fed by the River Quan and its tributaries. The old summit section is now a dead channel, while the new canal holds too little water to be navigable.

About 30 miles further north, passing close by Dongping Lake, the canal reaches the Yellow River. Crossing the Yellow River is difficult, and can only be accomplished at certain times. Frequently its water is either too low or else the current is too strong to permit a passage.

North of the Yellow River, the canal passes through hilly country west of [Dongping](#) and east of [Liaocheng](#). At [Linqing](#), the canal enters Hebei province.



## The South Canal



*The junction of the Lu Canal and South Canal*

The fifth section of the canal, the "Southern Canal", extends from Linqing to Tianjin. Its name derives from its position south of Tianjin. At Linqing it is joined at right angles by the [Wei River](#), the feature which gives this stretch the alternative name of the "Wei Canal". The Wei River at this point is very heavily polluted, while drought and water extraction have left it too low to be navigable.

The canal, now in Hebei province, passes through the cities of [Dezhou](#) and [Cangzhou](#).

Although visitors might see the canal as a deep waterway in these city centres, its depth is maintained by [weirs](#) and the canal is in fact all but dry where it passes through the surrounding countryside. Finally, the canal joins the Yongding River and Bai River at Tianjin.

## The North Canal and Tonghui River

From Tianjin the canal heads northwest, following the course of the Bai River. Again, the name "North Canal" refers to the canal's position relative to Tianjin.

Finally, 80km from Tianjin, the canal reaches [Tongzhou](#) on the edge of Beijing. It is here that the modern canal stops, and here that a Grand Canal Cultural Park has been built. During the Yuan Dynasty a further canal, the [Tonghui River](#), connected Tongzhou with a wharf called the [Houhai](#) in central Beijing. In the Ming and Qing dynasties, however, the water level in the Tonghui River dropped and it was impossible for ships to travel from Tongzhou to Beijing. Tongzhou became the north shipping terminus of the canal. Cargos from the south were unloaded at Tongzhou and transported to Beijing by land ("Tongzhou" literally means "connecting city").

## Length and Elevations

According to [Père Gandar](#), the total length of the canal is 3,630 [li](#), or about 1,200 miles (1,930km). A rough measurement, taking into account only the main bends of the canal, places its length at around 850 miles. The total length today is generally agreed to be 1,794km (1,115 miles).

The elevation of the canal bed varies from -1m at Hangzhou to 38.5m at its Nanwang summit. At Beijing it reaches 27m. The water flows from Beijing toward Tianjin, from Nanwang toward Tianjin, and from Nanwang toward Yangzhou. The water level in the Jiangnan Canal is close to sea level.

# Uses

## Transportation

During the [Yuan \(1271-1368\)](#), [Ming \(1368-1644\)](#), and [Qing \(1644-1911\)](#) dynasties, the Grand Canal served as the main artery between northern and southern China and was essential for the transport of grain to Beijing. Although it was mainly used for shipping grain, the waterway also transported other commodities. The area around the Grand Canal eventually developed into an important business belt. Records show that every year more than 8,000 boats transported 4 to 6 million [dan](#) (200,000 to 300,000 tonnes) of grain to Beijing. <sup>[2]</sup> The convenience of transport also enabled the rulers to lead inspection tours to southern China. In the Qing Dynasty, Emperor [Kangxi](#) and [Qianlong](#) made 12 trips to southern China, on all occasions but one reaching the south terminus in Hangzhou.

The Grand Canal also bridged the cultural exchanges between the north and south of China. The canal even made a distinct impression on some of China's early European visitors. [Marco Polo](#) recounted the Grand Canal's arched bridges as well as the warehouses and the prosperous trade in the 13th century. The famous Roman Catholic missionary [Matteo Ricci](#) travelled from [Nanjing](#) to [Beijing](#) on the canal at the end of 16th century.

The northern portion of the canal is currently of little use as a means of communication between north and south. It is poorly built, neglected, and charged with the mud-laden waters of the [Yellow River](#). In recently years, due to the greater demand for the water, this part is almost dried up. The central and southern portions of the canal from Jining to Hangzhou is well maintained and heavily used to ship coals from the coal mines in [Shandong](#) province and northern [Jiangsu](#) province to the [Yangtze Delta](#), greatly alleviating the overload on the [Jinghu Railway](#).

## Eastern Route of the South-North Water Transfer Project

The Grand Canal is being upgraded and will be used as the Eastern Route of the [South-North Water Transfer Project](#). Water from the [Yangtze River](#) will be pumped into the canal at [Jiangdu](#) City. The water will then be pumped continuously along the canal to Dongping Lake, where water can flow downhill to [Tianjin](#) and [Beijing](#).<sup>[3]</sup> Construction on the Eastern Route officially began on December 27, 2002, and the water is supposed to reach Beijing in 2012. The most technically challenging of the route is to build a tunnel under the [Yellow River](#). In addition, the water pollution in the grand canal will also be a serious problem.<sup>[4]</sup> The success of the eastern route will need a comprehensive clean-up of the grand canal water system, therefore, the ecological impact of the eastern route is largely positive.<sup>[3]</sup>

## See also

- [Lingqu Canal](#)

## External links

- [Map of the Grand Canal](#)

## References

1. <sup>^</sup> [Book of Sui](#), Chapter Three
2. <sup>^</sup> [http://news.xinhuanet.com/english/2006-06/10/content\\_4673746.htm](http://news.xinhuanet.com/english/2006-06/10/content_4673746.htm)
3. <sup>^</sup> <sup>a</sup> <sup>b</sup> <http://www.usembassy-china.org.cn/sandt/SNWT-East-Route.htm>
4. <sup>^</sup> <http://www.usembassy-china.org.cn/sandt/SOUTH-NORTH.html>

Source: adapted from Delfs, R. "Arteries of the Empire" Far Eastern Economic Review, 15 March 1990, pp. 28-29

## Grand Canal System



The Grand Canal system (or Da Yun He) represents a remarkable achievement of imperial Chinese hydraulic engineering. At its peak during the Ming dynasty (1368-1644 AD), the system totaled about 2,500 kilometers with Beijing at its northernmost extension, Hangzhou at its southernmost point and Luoyang at its easternmost point. It thus connected the political center of the empire in the north (especially from the Song dynasty; 960 AD), with the economic and agricultural centers of central and southern China. This was mainly achieved by linking two of China's most important river basins, the Yellow River (Huang He) and the Yangtze River (Chang Jiang). North of the Yangtze, the canal must ascend a gradual slope to an

elevation of more than 40 meters. To insure safe circulation, a system of locks (the Chinese are attributed to the first lock ever built in 983), feeder lakes and lateral canals was constructed. Under such circumstances, the control of a unified China became a possibility and the Grand Canal is acknowledged to be a significant element in the economic and political stability of imperial China, mainly through grain distribution.

The canal is the expression of a long history of engineering projects to control river systems and provide irrigation. Due to its hydrography, movements are easier on its East - West axis, while North - South communications were more arduous. The initial course of the canal, completed around 605 AD by the Sui dynasty (581 - 618 AD), was providing a much needed North - South axis by connecting several sections constructed at earlier times, starting from the Wu Kingdom era (486 BC). The initial goal of canal



construction, which would change little through time, was shipping agricultural commodities through the empire, notably to the capitals. For the Sui dynasty, the goal was to link their western capital, Luoyang, to the rich agricultural regions of the lower Yangtze. The capital of the Tang dynasty (618 - 907 AD), Chang'an (Xi'an) was further west along a tributary of the Yellow River, but linked to the Grand Canal. For the Yuan / Mongol (1279 - 1368 AD) and Ming dynasties, the Grand Canal linked the Northern Capital (Beijing) to southern China.

It is however south of the Yangtze Delta that the density of the canal system was the highest. Along the Yangzhou - Suzhou - Hangzhou trunkline every town of importance was linked to a complex system of canals creating a unique economic and social system where a large amount of wealth was derived from canal trade. At its peak during the 15th and 16th centuries, about 400,000 tons of grain transited on the canal each year. However, during the Qing dynasty (1644 - 1911) the canal gradually fell into disrepair and sections of it were abandoned. A major change in the course of the Yellow River in 1855 cut the Grand Canal in two sections. By the first half of the 20th century, the canal was no longer functioning in a coherent manner. Today, the canal is about 1,700 kilometers in length and is still heavily used in the Yangtze delta.

Copyright © 1998-2007, Dr. Jean-Paul Rodrigue, Dept. of Economics & Geography, Hofstra University.  
For personal or classroom use ONLY. This material (including graphics) is not public domain and cannot be published, in whole or in part, in ANY form (printed or electronic) and on any media without consent. Permission MUST be requested prior to use.

outside back cover





